FULL PREPARATORY COURSE
OF
LATIN PROSE

CONSISTING OF

FOUR BOOKS OF CAESAR'S GALIC WAR
SALLUST'S CONSPIRACY OF CATILINE
EIGHT ORATIONS OF CICERO, AND
DE SENECTUTE (Cato Major)

EDITED BY

J. H. AND W. F. ALLEN AND J. B. GREENOUGH

BOSTON
GINN BROTHERS
1875
GAI IVLI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALlico

CAESAR'S GALlic War

FOUR BOOKS

Οὕτω δὲ ο θεὸς Καίσαρ ἐν τοῖς ὑπομνήμασιν εἰρηκέν.
Strabo iv. 1.

EDITED BY J. H. AND W. F. ALLEN AND J. B. GREENOUGH

BOSTON
PUBLISHED BY GINN BROTHERS
4 BEACON STREET
1875
Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1874, by
J. H. AND W. F. ALLEN AND J. B. GREENOUGH,
in the office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

Cambridge:
Press of John Wilson and Son.
NOTE.

This edition follows, with slight changes of orthography, the text of Nipperdey, the more important various readings being given in the notes. It is believed to be an advantage even to the youngest learner to deal with a standard text, and to know something of those variations which make the reading of an ancient classic differ from that of a modern author. In illustration of the narrative, constant use has been made of the more recent authorities, Mommsen, Long, Merivale, and the "History of Julius Cæsar" by Napoleon III., with the excellent school edition of Moberly. Much care has been taken, with the earlier portion especially, to furnish in the notes a guide to the thorough study of syntactical construction, for which no author is, by general consent, so well adapted as Cæsar.

The present volume contains the first four books of the Gallic War. A second part, when published, will contain the remaining books, with the three of the Civil War.

Cambridge, July 1, 1874.
CONTENTS.

THE LIFE OF CÆSAR .................................................... vii

Book I.—Helvetic War; Campaign against Ariovistus ........................................ 1

Book II.—The Belgian Confederacy ................................................................. 35

Book III.—Alpine Campaign; Naval Campaign; Southern Gaul ........................................ 53

Book IV.—Campaign against the Germans; First Invasion of Britain ....................... 69

Notes ............................................................................................................. 1
THE LIFE OF CAESAR.

Caius Julius Caesar was born, by the common account, July 12, B.C. 100; or, by a probable reckoning, two years earlier.* When "almost a boy," he was made a priest of Jupiter by Marius, his uncle by marriage. When still a youth of 18 or 20, he boldly refused to divorce his wife Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, and barely escaped the proscription of Sulla, who "saw many a Marius in that young man."

Though of patrician birth, Caesar was thus early allied with the popular party, which began to make head directly after the dictator's death. He went through the usual course of political honors to which a Roman of the higher ranks felt himself entitled. At the age of 35 (assuming the earlier date) he was Quæstor in Further Spain. Two years later he was Curule Ædile, an office which gave great opportunity to court popular honor, in its charge of public games and exhibitions.† By this time he was recognized as a party leader who would not scruple at the most daring and questionable measures, and was even suspected of having a hand in the schemes of Catiline.

* The common date rests on the statement of Plutarch, Suetonius, and Appian, that he died at the age of 56. On the other hand: 1. Marius, who died B.C. 86, would hardly have given a priesthood to a child of 13; 2. he received the usual honors, by the common reckoning, each two years earlier than the legal age; 3. certain coins struck by him in B.C. 49 have the date LII., apparently the years of his age.

† In Cæsar's games, "all the equipments, even the cages of the wild beasts, appeared of massive silver; and by a liberality which was all the more princely, that it was based solely on the contraction of debt" (in Latin phrase, "paid by other men's money").
The Life of Cæsar.

In b.c. 63 he was elected Pontifex Maximus,—that is, official head of the state religion,—in opposition to the leader of the aristocracy, Quintus Catulus. This was an open declaration of war against the governing aristocracy. Cæsar, it is said, refused a large offer made by Catulus to buy him off the course; and when the day of election came said to his mother, who would have kept him out of the struggle, "To-day shall see me pontifex maximus or an exile." The holy office alone could protect him from his creditors.

At this period Cæsar was chiefly known as a dissolute debtor and demagogue. Before leaving for his province, he was obliged to find security to the amount of 800 talents,—more than a million dollars. He is reported to have said, in his reckless way, that he wanted four million sesterces to be worth just nothing at all. But in Further Spain, as pro-prætor (b.c. 62), he displayed the civil and military ability which afterwards made him famous, as well as the financial ability which enabled him to pay off his debts in one campaign.

He returned to Rome the following year, and soon formed a political coalition with Pompey and Crassus, his contribution to the common stock being his influence in the political clubs and control of votes. This coalition is sometimes called "the first triumvirate."* One part of the bargain was that Cæsar should have the consulship for the next year (b.c. 59), and after that the government of Gaul for five years.† This embraced the three provinces of Gallia Nar—

* The term "triumvirate" means properly a commission or board of three men, invested by law with special powers and functions. This was the case with the triumvirate of Octavianus (Augustus), Antony, and Lepidus; but this earlier one was only a private knot of political aspirants.

† It was a law that both consuls and prætors should have their power (imperium) continued for a year after their term of office, and, under the title proconsul or pro-prætor, govern one of the military provinces. If the proconsul was not relieved at the end of the year, his power continued by the necessity of the case. In one
The Life of Cæsar.

bonensis, Gallia Cisalpina (North Italy), and Illyricum. Crassus and Pompey received no special authority at first, but remained in the city, ostensibly as private persons, to look after the interests of the coalition. This was further strengthened by the marriage of Pompey with Cæsar's young and beautiful daughter Julia.

After two successful campaigns in Gaul, in the spring of B.C. 56, Cæsar met his two confederates at Luca, in Etruria, to arrange their future schemes. The conference was held with great display, almost like a royal court. More than 200 senators were present, and 120 lictors were in attendance, attached to the several magistrates. At this conference it was agreed that Pompey and Crassus should hold the consulship the following year, and, after their term of office, should receive by popular vote a similar command to that held by Cæsar,—namely, that Pompey should command in Spain and Crassus in Syria for five years each; also that, when Cæsar's five years were up, he should receive in the same way a second term of five years. His ten years' administration would then close at the end of B.C. 49; after which time—an interval of ten years having elapsed—he would be eligible again as consul.

The programme was duly carried out. Crassus departed (B.C. 54) to his province, where he was defeated the next year by the Parthians in the battle of Carrhæ, and shortly after entrapped and killed. Pompey put his province in the hands of one of his subordinates, and remained in the neighborhood of Rome, unwilling to remove from the seat of his personal influence. The death of his wife Julia (B.C. 54) soon sundered the ties which bound him to Cæsar.

instance, that of Pompey, an extraordinary power was conferred upon the proconsul by act of the people (the Manilian Law). Regularly, however, the assignment of provinces was reckoned a part of the administrative powers of the Senate; and a law of Caius Gracchus directed that the consular provinces should be determined before the election,—that is, a year and a half in advance,—and then that the consuls should draw lots which to have.
Jealous from the first, he gradually became openly hostile to him; and at last he found himself leader of the Senate and the aristocracy against his revolutionary schemes.

The remainder of Cæsar's life belongs to the general history of Rome. At the close of the Gallic war, the senatorial party required that he should disband his army. This he refused to do, unless Pompey should make an equal surrender of military force. From these demands grew the charge of false play on each side, until the Civil War broke out (B.C. 49), and Pompey fled to Greece, where he was defeated the following year at Pharsalia. After his death, and the complete destruction of his party, Cæsar returned to Rome;* where, under the title and authority of Perpetual Dictator, he laid the first foundations of the imperial constitution. His reforms—some of them necessary, some enlightened and wise far beyond the statesmanship of his time—provoked the hate of a fanatic party, who vainly thought to restore the Republic; and on the Ides of March, B.C. 44, he was murdered in the Senate-house, by a conspiracy under the lead of Marcus Brutus.

GAUL AND GERMANY.

The district upon whose government Cæsar entered in the spring of B.C. 58 consisted primarily of the two Gallic provinces, Cisalpine and Transalpine. Cisalpine Gaul was the northern portion of Italy, which had been several centuries earlier occupied by invaders from Gaul proper, and which was not yet reckoned as politically a part of Italy: it was a wealthy, populous, and orderly country, the proconsul's main dependence for troops and supplies, and his regular winter residence. Transalpine or Narbonnese Gaul received its name from its capital, the Roman colony Narbo.

* It is a remarkable illustration of Roman feeling, that, on the day of his triumph, Cæsar, the epicurean rationalist, mounted on his knees the long flight of steps that led up to the Capitol, that by this act of ostentatious humility he might avert those divine judgments supposed to be provoked by inordinate felicity.
It contained some thriving cities and peaceful districts; but it had as a whole been only recently brought under the authority of Rome, and was still essentially a foreign country. It comprised the whole coast of the Mediterranean, from the Pyrenees to the Alps, its northern boundary being an irregular and uncertain line, separating the conquered nations of Gaul from those which were still free. To these two provinces was attached Illyricum, which was a source of strength, but did not receive much of his attention.

The authority of the governor over his province was that of a military commander, who was not amenable to the laws which protected the citizens in Rome. A few privileged cities or nations, as the old Greek city Massilia, and the allied tribe of the Ædui (after they were brought within the limits of the empire), were wholly exempted from his authority; but all other parts of the province, even Roman colonies like Narbo, were liable to tribute, and more or less under the jurisdiction of the governor. Each province had its financial officer, or quaestor, who ranked next the governor himself: the commander was likewise attended by staff-officers, legati (usually three in number), appointed by the Senate from persons of rank and position; and by an indefinite number of aids, contubernales or comites, who composed what was sometimes, but incorrectly, called the praetorian cohort. A consular army consisted regularly of two legions (at this time of from 3,000 to 3,600 men); to these were added auxiliaries, both foot and horse, while the governor had power to levy new legions as he required them. Thus we find that Cæsar had six legions in his campaign against the Nervii.

The free territories adjoining a Roman province were in no respect under the authority of the governor; but they were regarded as a legitimate field for his ambition, and there was no lack of pretexths for war. The Roman policy was to enter into friendly relations with one of the parties or tribes in the free territory, load this with favors and privileges, and make use of it to overcome their rivals; in Gaul the Ædui were the favored nation.
Cæsar's province, at its western extremity, touched Spain, a country which had belonged to the empire for more than 150 years. North of it lay three great nationalities, with all of which he was brought in contact. There were the Gauls, the Germans, and the Britons.

Free Gaul (Libera Gallia) consisted of all the unsubdued territory between the Pyrenees on the one side, and the Rhine and the Alps on the other, thus comprising, in general, modern France and Belgium, with parts of Holland, Germany, and Switzerland. The central portion of this territory, fully a half in extent and population, was occupied by Gauls proper, or, as they called themselves, Celts. Southwest of these were the Aquitani, of Iberian race, cognate to the Spanish. Northeast were the Belgians, whose ethnic affinities are much disputed; all that can be considered certain is that they were largely mixed with Germans.

The Gauls were an intellectual and prosperous people, far more civilized than either Germans or Britons. The country, though extensively covered with forests, especially towards the north, was well provided with roads and bridges. The entire population has been reckoned at about seven millions. The people of the Gallic race were tall, fair-complexioned, of restless, sanguine temperament, and addicted to fighting; but skilled in many arts,—some portions in weaving; the Aquitani, especially, in mining and engineering; and the Bretons (Veneti) in open-sea navigation, which they followed with stout high-built ships, leather sails, and iron chain-cables. Their dress included trousers and shirts with sleeves; they had a barbaric-taste for gaudy ornament; their arms were showy, but clumsy and ineffective beside the tempered weapons of the Romans.

With their culture, however, had come degeneracy in many shapes. They were divided into violently hostile factions, through which they fell an easy prey to the invader. They had numerous flourishing cities; which, however, had no political power, like those of Greece and Italy, but were merely places of residence and trade. Their government
The Life of Cæsar.

had fallen under the control of an arrogant and luxurious aristocracy, and their religion under a cruel and domineering priesthood. Of the two great factions, into which they were divided, the Ædui were the leaders in one, and they had thought to gain supremacy by entering into alliance with Romans. Their antagonists, the Sequani, had naturally looked in the opposite direction for allies, and found them in the Germans.

The Germans occupied nearly the same territory as at the present day; not so far west as now, but on the other hand extending farther to the east. Less advanced in civilization than the Gauls, they were still far from being savages. They appear to have been just emerging from what is known as the barbarous state, —beginning to acquire fixed habitations, and to cultivate the ground: they had no cities. They had brought with them from their migrations a remarkable political system, based upon an original community of origin, in which the patriarchal organization had already expanded into a multitude of petty nations, grouped into larger combinations of race. Their institutions were thoroughly democratic; they had noble families, but these possessed no political prerogatives; they elected kings, whose power was hardly greater than that of their general magistrates.

"The tribes which descended upon Britain had entered Europe not as a set of savages or wandering pastoral tribes, or mere pirates and warriors, but as colonists, who, rude as they may have been in dress and manners, yet, in essential points, were already a civilized people." Various considerations, says a recent writer, make it probable "that the Germans had come down from the northeast not very long before the Christian era, and intruded themselves, as a wedge, between those two more ancienly recorded nations (Scythians and Celts). . . . We shall see evidence of the continuous advance of a civilized race from the confines of India to these islands, and nothing indicative of a great rush from the North of wild hordes bent upon robbery and destruction, as it has been usually represented to have been. The gradual drying of the Caspian Sea left the interior of Asia more and more barren; the knowledge
of the useful metals facilitated the conquest of the savages of the West; and predatory bands of Huns and Turks, and allied nomadic nations, are likely to have accelerated the movement, by rendering the labors of agriculture less remunerative. Thus the migration, being one that proceeded from constantly acting causes, extended over many centuries. . . .

"In these mere names [of plants and fruits], setting aside all other sources of information, we discover that these people came from their home in the East with a knowledge of letters and the useful metals, and with nearly all the domestic animals; that they cultivated oats, barley, wheat, rye, and beans; built houses of timber, and thatched them; and what is important, as showing that their pasture and arable land was intermixed, and acknowledged as private property, they hedged their fields and fenced their gardens. Cæsar denies this; but the frontier tribes, with whom he was acquainted, were living under certain peculiar Mark laws, and were, in fact, little else than an army on its march. The unquestionably native, and not Latin or Celtic, origin of such names as Beach and Hawthorn, of Oats and Wheat, prove that although our ancestry may have been indebted to the provincials of the empire for their fruit-trees, and some other luxuries, for a knowledge of the fine arts, and the Latin literature, and a debased Christianity, the more essential acquirements, upon which their prosperity and progress as a nation depended, were already in their possession." — PRIOR, Popular Names of British Plants. Introd. 1863.

The Britons were, like the Gauls, of Celtic race, and resembled them in every respect, except that, being further from the civilized world, they were ruder, freer, and more warlike.

It was the destiny of Julius Cæsar to bring the great Gallic people into the system of civilization and government represented by Rome: it was a definite and large extension of the bounds of civilized society. From him, too, we have the earliest authentic accounts of the other two nationalities, the Germans and the Britons.

THE CAMPAIGNS IN GAUL.

The campaigns of Cæsar in Gaul lasted through eight seasons (B.C. 58–51), and are told in eight books,—the last
The Life of Cæsar.

written by Hirtius, an officer of Cæsar,—each book containing the operations of a single year. The following is a brief outline:—

I. Cæsar checks the attempt of the Helvetians to colonize in Western Gaul, and forces them, after a bloody defeat, to return to their own territory. He then engages with a powerful tribe of Germans, who had made a military settlement in Eastern Gaul, and drives them, with their chief Ariovistus, beyond the Rhine.

II. A formidable confederacy of the northern populations of Gaul is suppressed, with the almost complete extermination of the bravest Belgian tribe, the Nervii, in a battle which seems to have been one of the most desperate of all Cæsar ever fought. In this campaign, the coast towns of the west and northwest (Brittany) are reduced to submission.

III. After a brief conflict with the mountaineers of the Alps, who attacked the Roman armies on their march, the chief operations are the conquest of the coast tribes of Brittany (Veneti, etc.), in a warfare of curious naval engineering in the shallow tide-water inlets and among the rocky shores. During the season, the tribes of the south-west (Aquitani), a mining population, allied to the Iberians or Basques, are reduced by one of Cæsar’s officers.

IV. An attack from the Germans on northern Gaul is repulsed; and Cæsar follows them, by a bridge of timber hastily built, across the Rhine. Returning, he crosses to Britain in the early autumn, for a visit of exploration.

V. The partial conquest of Britain (second invasion) is followed by various movements in northern Gaul, in which the desperate condition of the Roman garrisons is relieved by the prudent and brave conduct of Labienus and Quintus Cicero.

VI. Cæsar makes a brief expedition across the Rhine, against the Germans. Some general disturbances are quelled, and northern Gaul is reduced to peace.

VII. Vercingetorix, a brave and high-spirited chief of southern Gaul, effects a confederacy of the whole country, which is at length subdued. Vercingetorix, in brilliant equipment, surrenders himself, to secure the quiet of the country, and is taken in chains to Rome, where he is afterwards put to death in Cæsar’s triumph.

VIII. Slight insurrections, breaking out here and there, are easily subdued; and the subjugation of Gaul is made complete.
GAUL
In the time of Caesar.

Scale of Miles, 10, 20, 40, 60, 80, 100.

Long. West 2

Latitude East from Greenwich.

BRITANNIA

Digitized by Google
THE GALLIC WAR.

BOOK I.

INTRODUCTION: Description of Gaul (Chap. 1).

The Helvetic War. — Orgetorix, an Helvetic chief, plans the invasion of Gaul: he conspires with the chiefs of several Gallic tribes; is brought to trial, escapes, and is put under the ban; soon afterwards dies (2–4). The Helvetians complete their preparations, and gather near the Rhone, requesting leave to pass peaceably through the Province. Cæsar delays them by pretexts, while he hastily throws up an earthwork to prevent their crossing the river. They attempt the passage, but are repulsed (5–8). Forming a league with the Sequani, they penetrate and ravage the territory of the Ædui, friends of Rome, who solicit protection. Cæsar, levying a force of upwards of 30,000, overtakes and cuts to pieces their rear-guard (Tigurini), at the crossing of the Arar (9–12). An embassy of the Helvetians, headed by the aged Divico, leads to no result. A cavalry skirmish, in which the Romans are worsted, together with the delay of supplies, shows the bad faith of a party among the Ædui, headed by Dumnorix; who is arrested, but spared on the intercession of his brother Divitiacus, and put under close guard by Cæsar (13–20). Cæsar makes preparations for attack, but is prevented by a false alarm, and moves towards Bibracte. The Helvetians, now well in advance, turn about for battle. They are forced to retreat to a hill, and attempt to flank the Romans; but are completely routed, and fly towards the north (21–26). They are at length forced to surrender. Six thousand escape, but are retaken, and put to death. The remainder are compelled to return to Helvetia, and rebuild the villages which they had destroyed (27–29).

The War with Ariovistus. — The chief populations of Gaul seek terms of amity, representing the condition of the country, especially under the invasions of the German Ariovistus, by whom the Sequani are chiefly oppressed (30–33). Cæsar sends envoys
to him, but receiving a haughty reply sets out on a forced march
towards the German frontier (34–38). His men are greatly terri-
fied, but are cheered by his assurances, especially of reliance on
the tenth legion (39–41). At the request of Ariovistus, a confer-
ence is held, but is broken up by signs of bad faith among the
Germans (42–46). A second conference, proposed by Ariovistus, is
refused, and he throws into chains the messengers sent by Cæsar.
After a cavalry skirmish, an indecisive battle follows, and the
Germans fall back to their camp (47–50). Cæsar attacks the
camp: the Germans, marshalled by tribes, defend their families and
equipage. A close and furious engagement follows, in which the
Germans are routed and driven to the Rhine. Ariovistus escapes,
a part of his household is taken, and Cæsar returns to his winter
quarters (51–54).

GALLIA est omnis divisa in partes tres; quorum
unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam
qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur.
Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt.
Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Ma-
tronae et Sequana dividit. ²Horum omnium fortissimi
sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate
provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mer-
catores saepe commeant, atque ea quae ad effeminandos
animos pertinent important; proximique sunt German-
is, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum contiñen-
ter bellum gerunt. ³Qua de causa Helvetii quoque
reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod sese quotidía-
nis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis
finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum
gerunt. ⁴Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere
dictum est, in ilium caput a flumine Rhodano; contine-
tur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum;
attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhe-
num; vergit ad septentriones. ⁵Belgae ab extremis
Galliae finibus oriuntur, pertinent ad inferiori partem
fluminis Rheni, spectant in septentrionem et orientem
solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos
montes et eam partem Oceani quae est ad Hispaniam pertinet, spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

2. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messala et M. Pisone consulibus, regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit, et civitati persuasit ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestaret, totius Galliae imperio potiri. 2 Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci natura Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte monte Jura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetii dividit. His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum infere possent; qua ex parte homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore adficiebantur. 4 Pro multitudine autem hominum, et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem milia passuum ccxl, in latitudinem clxxx patebant.

3. His rebus adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituerunt ea quae ad profiscendum pertinere comparare, jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. 2 Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt, in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. 3 Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaloedis filio; Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat, et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorigi Haeduo,
fratri Divitiaci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem con-
areetur persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonio
dat. 4 Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere,
propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus
esse: non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum
Helvetii possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis
regna conciliaturum confirmat. 5 Hac oratione adduc-
ti, inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant, et regno occu-
pato, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos,
totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

4. Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata.
Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinclis causam dicere
coegerunt. Damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut
igni cremaretur. 2 Die constituta causae dictionis,
Orgetorix ad judicum omnem suam familiam, ad
hominum melia decem, undique coegit, et omnes
clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum
habebat, eodem conduxit; per eos, ne causam diceret,
se eripuit. 3 Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis
jus suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque homi-
num ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus
est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur,
quìn ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

5. Post ejus mortem, nihilò minus Helvetii id quod
constituerant facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant.
Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt,
oppida sua omnia numero ad duodecim, vicos ad
quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt; fru-
mentum omne, præterquam quod secum portaturi
erant, comburunt, ut—domum reditioinis spe sublata—
paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium
mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre ju-
bent. 2 Persuadent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis
finitimis, uti, eodem usi consilio, oppidis suis vicis-
que exustis, una cum iis pro ficiscantur; Boiosque, qui
trans Rhenum incoluerant, et in agrum Noricum transierant Noriamque oppugnarant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.


7. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Gennam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat — erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una; pontem, qui erat ad Gennam, jubet rescindi. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitatis, cujus legationis Nammeius et Verudoctius principem locum obtinbant, qui dicerent 'sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propter ea quod alius iter haberent nullum: rogare, ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat.' Caesar, quod memoria tenebat L. Cassium consulem occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Hel-
vetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat; neque homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciundi, temperaturos ab injuria et maleficio existimabat. \textit{5 Tamen}, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites quos imperaverat convenirent, legatis respondit diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum; si quid vellent, ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.

8. Interea ea legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque qui ex provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem, murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim, fossamque perducit. \textit{2 Eo opere perfecto, praesidia disponit, castella communit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit.} \textit{8 Ubi ea dies quam constituerat cum legatis venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ali per provinciam dare; et, si vim facere conentur, prohibiturum ostendit.} \textit{4 Helvetii, ea spe dejecti, navibus junctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnumquam interdui, saepius noctu, si perrum pere possent conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et tela repulsii, hoc conatu destiterunt.}

9. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua Sequanis invitís, propter angustias ire non poterant. His cum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Haeduum mittunt, ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetrarent. \textit{2 Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat; et cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat, et quam plurimas civitates suo benefició habere obstrictas volebat.} \textit{8 Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis impetrat ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiuntur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent perficit: Se-
quani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant; Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuria transeant.

10. Caesari renuntiatur Helvetii esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Haeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in Provincia. 2 Id si fieret, intellegebat magno cum periculo provinciae futurum, ut homines bellicosos, populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. 3 Ob eas causas, ei munitioni quam fecerat T. Labienum legatum praefecit; ipse in Italian magnis itineribus contendit, duasque iibi legiones conscribit, et tres, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit, et, qua proximum iter in uteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. 4 Ibi Centrones et Graioceli et Caturiges, locis superioribus occupatis, itinere exercitum prohibere conturant. Compluribus his proeliis pulsis, ab Ocelo, quod est citerioris provinciae extremum, in fines Vocontiorum uterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiaivos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

11. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant, et in Haeduorum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur. Haedu, cum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: 2 Ita se omni tempore de populo Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberis eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint.’ 3 Eodem tempore Haedu Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Haeduorum, Caesarem certiorem faciunt, sese, depopulatis agris, non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere. 4 Item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad
Caesarem recipiunt, et demonstrant sibi praeter agri
solum nihil esse reliqui. 6 Quibus rebus adductus, Caes-
ar non expectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortunis
sociorum consumptis, in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

12. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Haeduorum
et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili leni-
tate, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluent, judicari non
possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus junctis transi-
bant. 3 Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est,
tres jam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen tradux-
isse, quartam sere partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam
esse; de tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris
profactus, ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flu-
men transierat. 3 Eos impeditos et inpinantes adgres-
sus, magnam partem eorum concidit: reliqui sese
fugae mandarunt, atque in proximas silvas abdide-
runt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus: nam omnis
civitas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divisa est. 4 Hic
pagus unus, cum domo exisset, patrum nostrorum
memoria L. Cassium consulem interfecerat, et ejus
exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita sive casu, sive
consilio deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Hel-
vetiae insinuem calamitatem populo Romano intulerat,
ea princeps poenas persolvit. 5 Qua in re Caesar non
solum publicas, sed etiam privatas injurias ulus est;
quod ejus soceri L. Pisonis avum, L. Pisonem legis-
tum, Tigurini eodem proelio quo Cassium interfec-
rant.

13. Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum
ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat,
atque ita exercitum traducit. 2 Helvetii, repentino
ejus adventu commoti, cum id quod ipsi diebus xx
aegerrume confecerat, ut flumen transirent, illum
uno die fecisse intellegerent, legatos ad eum mittunt;
cujus legationis Divico princeps suit, qui bello Cassiano
dux Helvetiorum fuerat. 3 Is ita cum Caesare egit:
Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisse atque esse voluissest; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani, et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset, cum ii, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret, aut ipsos despiceret; se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute quam dolo contedere, aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen caperet, aut memoriam proderet?

14. His Caesar ita respondit: 'Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent: qui si alicujus injuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se intellegaret quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo invito iter per provinciam per vim temptassent, quod Haeduos, quod Ambaros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, quodque tam diu se impune injurias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Con suasse enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulciscer velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea quae polliceatur facturos intellegat, et si Haeduis de injuriis quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum.' Divico
respondit: 'Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare consuerint; ejus rei populum Romanum esse testem.' Hoc responso dato, discessit.

15. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar, equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni provincia et Haeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant quas in partes hostes iter faciant. 2 Qui, cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti, alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. 8 Quo proelio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audaciussubstere nonnumquam, et novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacesserc coeperunt. 4 Caesar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in præsenta hostem rapinis, pabulationibus, populationibusque prohibere. 6 Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinis aut senis milibus passuum interesset.

16. Interim cotidie Caesar Haeduos frumentum, quod essent publice pollcitii, flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus (ut ante dicturn est) posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat: eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arare navibus subvexerat, propterea minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat. 2 Diem ex die ducere Haedui: conferri, conportari, adesse, dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit, et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnum copiam in castris habebat, — in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratu praererant quem vergobretum appellant Haedui, qui creator annuus, et vitae
necisque in suos habet potestatem, — 3 graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevetur; praesertim cum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit, multo etiam gravius quod sit destitutos queritur.

17. Tum demum Liscus, oratione Caesaris adduc tus, quod antea tacuerat proponit: 'Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. 3 Hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deter rere, ne frumentum conferant, quod praestare debeat: si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallo rum quam Romanorum imperia praefere; neque dubitare [debeant] quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Haeduis libertatem sint erepturi. 3 Ab eisdem nostra consilia, quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus enuntiari; hos a se coërceri non posse. Cum etiam, quod necessario rem coactus Caesar enuntiarit, intellegere sese quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse.'

18. Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratem, designari sentiebat; sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. 2 Quaerit ex solo ea quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacios. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vera: 'Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum. 3 Complures annos portoria reliqua que omnia Haeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. 4 His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse, et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu
semper alere et circum se habere, neque solum domi,
sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse; atque
(hujus potentiae causa) matrem in Biturigibus homini
illici nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse, ipsum ex
Helvetii uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et propin-
quas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse. 6 Fa-
vere et cupere Helvetii propter eam ad infinitatem, odisse
etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum
adventu potentia ejus deminuta, et Divitiacus frater in
antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus.
6 Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Hel-
vetios regni obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romani
non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea quam habeat
gratia, desperare. 7 Reperiebat etiam in quaerendo
Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante
diebus esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum a Dum-
norige atque ejus equitibus, — nam equitatu, quem
auxilio Caesaris Haedi miserant, Dumnorix praeerat:
eorum fuga reliquum esse equatum perterritum. 7

19. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspitiones
certissimae res accederent, — quod per fines Sequa-
norum Helvetios traduxisset, quod obsides inter eos
dandos curasset, quod ea omnia non modo injusto suo
et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod a
magistratu Haeduorum accusaretur, — satis esse causae
arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret,
aut civitatem animadvertere jubetet. 8 His omnibus
rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris sum-
mum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se
volu tum, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam
cognoverat: nam ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci ani-
mum offenderet verebatur. 8 Itaque prius quam quic-
quam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet, et
quotidianis interpretibus remotis, per C. Valerium
Prociliun, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem
suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat,
cum eo colloquitur; simul commonesfacit quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta; et ostendit quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit; petit atque hortatur, ut sine ejus offensione animi vel ipse de eo causa cognita statuat, vel civitatem statuere jubeat.

20. Divitiacus, multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus, obseccare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: "Scire se illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur; sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum non sua voluntate factum; qua re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur."

Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare petetur, Caesar ejus dextram prendit; consolatus rogat finem orandi faciat; tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et reipublicae injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat ostendit, quae ipse intellegat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspitiones vitet; praeterea se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

21. Æodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus hostes sub monte consedisse milia passuum ab ipsis castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent misit. "Renuntiatum est facilem esse. De tertia vigilia T. Labienum, legatum pro praetore, cum duabus legionibus et iis
ducibus qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubes; quid sui consilii sit ostendit. Ipse quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. 3 P. Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur, et in exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

22. Prima luce, cum summus mons a Labieno tene-retur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex capti-vis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admisso ad eum accurrit; 2 dicit montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. 3 Labienus, ut erat ei praecptum a Caesare, ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros exspectabat, proelioque abstinebat. 4 Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit et montem a suis teneri, et Helvetios castra movisse, et Considium, timore perterritum, quod non vidisset pro viso sibi renuntiasse. Eo die, quo consuerat intervallo, hostes sequitur, et milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

23. Postridie ejus diei, quod omnino bjudum super-erat, cum exercitu frumentum metiri pportaret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Haeduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius milibus passuum xviii ab-erat, rei frumentariae prospcionem existimavit: iter ab Helvetiiis avertit, ac Bibracte ire contendit. 2 Eares per fugitivos L. Aemilii, decurionis equitum Gallo-rum, hostibus nunntiatur. 3 Helvetii, seu quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis quod pridie, superioribus locis occupatis, proe-
lium non commississent, sive eo quod re frumentaria interclodi posse considerent, commutato consilio atque itinere converso, nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesarem in proximum collem subducit, equitatumque, qui sustineret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum [ita uti supra]; sed in summo junto duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime con- scriperat, et omnia auxilia conlocari, ac totum montem hominibus compreheri, et interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab his qui in superiore acie constiterant muniri jussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti, impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi confer- tissima acie, rejecto nostro equitatu, phalange facta, sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Romani conversa
signa bipartito intulerunt: prima et secunda acies, ut
victis ac summotis resisteret; tertia, ut venientes sus-
tineret. x

26. Ita acripe proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum
est. Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non
possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt,
alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt.
Nam hoc toto proelio, cum ab hora septima ad ves-
perum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo
potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta
pugnatum est, propter qua provallo carros objec-
rent, et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela
conictebant, et nonnulli inter carros rotasque mataras
ac liguas subictebant, nostrosque vulnerabant. x3 Diu
cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri
potiti sunt. Ibi Oregonis filia atque unus et filiiis
captus est. 4 Ex eo proelio circiter hominum milia
cxxx superfluerunt, eaque tota nocte continenter
ierunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermissa, in
fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, cum et pro-
ter vulnera militum, et propter sepulturam occisorum,
nostri triduum morati eos sequi non potuissent. 5 Ca-
esar ad Lingonas litteras nuntiosque misit, ne eos fru-
mento neve alia re juvarent: qui si juvissent, se eodem
loco quo Helvetios habiturum. Ipse, triduo intermisso,
cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

27. Helvetii, omnium rerum inopia adducti, legatos
de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in
itinere convenissent, seque ad pedes projecissent, sup-
pliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in
eo loco, quo tum essent, suum adventum exspectare
jussisset, paruerunt. 6 Eo postquam Caesar pervenit,
obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos persugissent, po-
poscit. Dum ea conquiritur et conferuntur, nocte
intermissa, circiter hominum milia vi ejus pagi qui
Verbigenus appellatur, sive timore perterriti, ne armis
traditis supplicio adficerentur, sive spe salutis inducti, quod in tanta multitudine dediticorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, prima nocte e castris Helvetiorum egressi, ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescit, quorum per fines ierant, his, uti conquererent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellet, imperavit: reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos omnes, obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis, in deditionem accepit. 

Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos, unde erant prosecti, reverti jussit; et quod, omnibus fructibus amissis, domini nihil erat quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam facerent; ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restituere jussit. 

Id ea maxime ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transient, et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent.

Boios, per tentibus Haeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem atque ipsi erant receperunt.

29. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numeros domo exisset eorum qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim pueri, senes mulieresque.

Quarum omnium rerum summa erat capitum Helvetiorum milia cclxxiii, Tulingorum milia xxxvi, Latobrigorum xiii, Rauracorum xxiii, Boiorum xxxii; ex his qui arma ferre possent, ad milia xci. 

Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia cclxxviii. Eorum qui domum redie runt, censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus milium c et x.
30. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatam convenerunt: 'Intellegere sese, tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum injuriis populi Romani ab his poenas bello repetisset, tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse; propterea quod eo consilio, florentissimis rebus, domos suas Helvetii reliquistissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent, imperioque potirentur, locumque domicilio ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum judicassent, reliquasque civitates stipendiarias haberent.' Petierunt, uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntate facere liceret: sese habere quasdam res, quas ex communi consensu ab eo petere vellent. 'Ea re permissa, diem concilio constituerunt, et jurejurando, ne quis enuntiaret, nisi quibus communi consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

31. Eo concilio dimisso, idem principes civitatum, qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem reverterunt, petieruntque, uti sibi secreto in occulto de sua omniumque salute cum eo agere liceret. 'Ea re impetrata, sese omnes flentes Caesar ad pedes projecerunt: 'Non minus se id contendere et laborare, ne ea quae dissent enuntiarentur, quam uti ea quae vellent impetrarent; propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent.' Locutus est pro his Divitiacus Haeduus: 'Galliae totius factiones esse duas; harum alterius principatum tenere Haeduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi cum tantopere de potentatu inter se multis annos contenderent, factum esse, uti ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germani mercede arcesserentur. 'Horum primo circiter milia xv Rhenum transisse; posteaquam agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamassent, traductos plures; nunc esse in Gallia ad centum et xx milium numerum.
Cum his Haeduos eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse. Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et sua virtute et populi Romani hospitalio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Gallia potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare nobilissimos civitatis, et jurejurando civitatem obstringere, sese neque obsides repetituros, neque auxilium a populo Romano imploraturas, neque recusaturas quo minus perpetuo sub illorum dicione atque imperio essent. Unum se esse ex omni civitate Haeduorum, qui adduci non potuerit ut juraret, aut liberos suos obsides daret. Ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse, et Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque jurejurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed peius victoribus Sequanis quam Haeduis victis accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset, tertiaque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupassisset, et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos dedecere juberet, propterea quod paucis mensibus ante Harudum milia hominum et eum venissent, quibus locus ac sedes pararentur. Futurum esse paucis annis, ut omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur, atque omnes Germani Rheum transirent; neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque hanc consuetudinem victus cum illa comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallorum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobriam, superbe et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cujusque liberorum poscere, et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem ejus facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse ejus imperia diutius sustinere. Nisi si quid in Caesare populoque Romano sit auxilli,
omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remotas a Germanis, petant, fortunamque, quae-cumque accidat, experiantur. 12 Haec si enuntiata Ariovisto sint, non dubitare, quin de omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sumat. Caesarem vel auctoritate sua atque exercitus, vel recenti victoria, vel nomine populi Romani, deterrere posse, ne major multitudo Germanorum Rhenum traducatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti injuria posse defendere.'

32. Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita, omnes qui aderant magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt. Animadvertit Caesar unos ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere quas ceteri facerent, sed tristes, capite demisso, terram intueri. 2 Ejs rei quae causa esset miratus, ex ipsis quaesit. Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia taciti permanere. Cum ab his saepius quaereret, neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiacus Haeduus respondit: 8 Hoc esse miseriorem et graviorem fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem quaeri neque auxilium implorare audent; absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrerent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate ejus essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.'

33. His rebus cognitis, Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit, pollicitusque est sibi eam rem curae futuram; magnam se habere spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem injurii facturum. Hac oratione habita, concilium dimisit. 2 Et secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem cogitandum et suscipientiam putaret: imprimis, quod Haeduos, fratres consanguineosque
saepenumero a senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in
dicione videbat Germanorum teneri, eorumque obsides
esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intellegebat; quod
in tanto imperio populi Romani turpissimum sibi et
reipublicae esse arbitrabatur. 3 Paulatim autem Ger-
manos consuecere Rhenum transire, et in Galliam
magnam eorum multitudinem venire, populo Romano
periculosum videbat; neque sibi homines feros ac
barbaros temperaturos existimabat, quin, cum omnem
Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique
secissent, in provinciam exirent, atque inde in Italiam
contenderent; 4 praesertim cum Sequanos a provincia
nuestra Rhodanus divideret: quibus rebus quam ma-
turrim occurrentum putabat. Ipse autem Ariovistus
tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumpserat, ut
ferendus non videretur.

34. Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legatos
mitteret, qui ab eo postularent, uti aliquem locum
medium utriusque conloquio deligeret: velle sese de
re publica et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere.
2 Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: 5 Si quid ipsi a
Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturumuisse; si
quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. 5 Prae-
terea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae
venire audere, quas Caesar possideret, neque exerci-
tum sine magno conlocatu atque molimento in unum
locum contrahere posse. 4 Sibi autem mirum videri,
quid in sua Gallia, quam bello vicisset, aut Caesari aut
omnino populo Romano negotii esset.'

35. His responsis ad Caesarem relatis, iterum ad
eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit: 5 Quo-
niam tanto suo populique Romani beneficio affectus,
cum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a senatu appel-
latus esset, hanc sibi populoque Romano gratiam
referret, ut in conloquium venire invitatus gravaretur,
neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum
putaret, haec esse quae ab eo postularet: 2 primum, ne quam multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traducetur; dein de obsides, quos haberet ab Haeduis, redderet, Sequanisque permetteret, ut quos illi haberent, voluntate ejus reddere illis liceret; neve Haeduos injuria lassesseret, neve his sociisque eorum bellum inferret. 3 Si id ita fecisset, sibi populoque Romano perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futuram: si non impetraret, sese, — quoniam, M. Messala M. Pisone consulibus, senatus censisset uti quicumque Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod commodo reipublicae facere posset, Haeduos ceterosque amicos populi Romani defenderet,—se Haeduorum injurias non neglecturum.'

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: 'Jus esse belli, ut qui vicissent, iis quos vicissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperarent: item populum Romanum victis non ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium, imperare consuge. 2 Si ipse populo Romano non praescriberet, quem ad modum suo jure uteretur, non oportere sese a populo Romano in suo jure impediri. Haeduos sibi, quoniam belli fortunam temptasset, et armis congressi ac superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem injuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret. 4 Haeduus se obsides redditurum non esse, neque is neque eorum sociis injuria bellum inlaturum, si in eo manerent quod convenisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent; si id non fecissent, longe ipsis fratrum nomen populi Romani afuturum. 5 Quod sibi Caesar de noniisiataret se Haeduorum injurias non neglecturum, neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse. Cum vellet, congregaretur: intellecturum quid invicti Germani, exercitassimi in armis, qui inter annos xiv tectum non subissent, virtute possent.'

37. Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata refere-
bantur, et legati ab Haeduis et a Treveris veniebant: Haedui questum, quod Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur: 2 sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere putisse; Treveri autem, pagos centum Suevorum ad ripam Rheni consedisse, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; his praesesse Nasuam et Cimberium fratres. 3 Quibus rebus Caesar vehementer commotus, matrandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Suevorum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque, re frumentaria quam celerrime potuit comparata, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum est et Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere, triduique viam a suis finibus profecisse. 4 Id ne accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimabat. Namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum usui erant, summa erat in eo oppido facultas; idque natura loci sic muniebatur, ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, propterque quod flumen [alduas] Dubis ut circino circumductum paene totum oppidum cingit; 5 reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum sexcentorum, qua flumen intermittit, mons continet magna altitudine, ita ut radices montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingant. 6 Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit, et cum oppido con jungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit, occupatoque oppido, ibi praesidiun conlocat.

39. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatusque causa moratur, ex percontatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitazione in armis esse praedicabant,
—saepenumero sese cum his congressos ne vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum dicebant ferre potuisse, —tantis subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret. 2 Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis reliquisque, qui, ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem securi, non magnum in re militari usum habebant: quorum alius alia causa inlata quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessarium esse diceret, petebat ut ejus voluntate discedere liceret; nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicioneum vitarent, remanebant. 3 Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur, aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. Volgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. 4 Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ii qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites centurionesque quique equitatu praerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris, magnitudinem silvarum quae intercederent inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam, ut satis commodo supportari posset, timere dicebant. 5 Nonnulli etiam Caesari nuntiabat, cum castra moveri ac signa ferri jussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites, neque propter timorem signa laturos.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato consilio, omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis centurionibus, vehementer eos incusavit: primum quod aut quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent. 2 Ariovistum se consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse: cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum judicaret? Sibi quidem persuaderi, cognitis suis postulatis atque aequitate condicionum specta, eum neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam
repudiaturum 8 Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? 4 Factum ejus hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, cum, Cimbris et Teutonis a Gaio Mario pulsis, non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus videbatur; factum etiam nuper in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen alienum usus ac disciplina, quae a nobis accepsent, sublevarent. 6 Ex quo judicari posse, quantum haberet in se boni constantia, prop- terea quod, quos alienam inermos sine causa timuissent, hos postea armatos ac victores superassent. 8 Denique hos esse eosdem, quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi, non solum in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus, plerumque superarint; qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitu non potuerint. 8 Si quos adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos, si quaque reperire posse, diurnitates bellii desetigatis Gallis, Ariovistum, cum multis menses castris se ac paludibus tenuisset, neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes jam de pugna et dispersos subito adortum, magis ratione et consilio quam virtute vicesse. 8 Cui rationi contra homines barbaros atque imperitos locus suisset, hac ne ipsum quidem sperare nostros exercitus capi posse. 8 Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem angustiasque itineris conferrent, facere arrogantem, cum aut de officio imperatoris desperare aut praescribere viderentur. 10 Haec sibi esse curae: frumentum Sequanos, Leucos, Lingones subministrare, jamque esse in agris frumenta matura; de itinere ipsos brevi tempore judicaturos. 11 Quod non fore dicto audientes neque signa laturi dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri: scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut male re gesta fortunam defuisse, aut aliquo facinore comperto avaritiam esse convictam: suam innocentiam perpetua vita, felicitatem Helvetio-
rum bello esse perspectam. 12 Itaque se quod in longiore diem conlaturas fuisset repraesentaturum, et proxima nocte de quarta vigilia castra motorum, ut quam primum intellegere posset, utrum apud eos pudor atque officium an timor valeret. 13 Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum sola decima legione iturum, de qua non dubitaret, sibique eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. 7 Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipe, et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.

41. Hac oratione habita, mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes, summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est; princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum é gratias egit, quod de se optimum judicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. 2 Deinde reliquae legiones cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum centurionibus egerunt, uti Caesari satisfacerent: se neque umquam dubitasse, neque timuisse, neque de summa belli suum judicium, sed imperatoris esse existimavisse. 3 Eorum satisfactione accepta, et itinere exquisito per Divitiacum, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem habebat, ut milium amplius quinquaquinta circitu locis apertis exercitum duceret, de quarta vigilia, ut dixerat, profectus est. 4 Septimo die, cum iter non intermittent, ab exploratoribus certior factus est, Ariovistus copias a nostris milibus passuum quattuor et viginti abesse.

42. Cognito Caesaris adventu, Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: quod antea de colloquio postulasset, id per se fieri licere, quoniam propius accessisset, seque id sine periculo facere posse existimare. 2 Non respuit condicionem Caesar, jamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id, quod antea petenti denegasset, ulter polliceretur; magnamque in spem veniebat, pro suis tantis populique Romani in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis postulatis, fore uti pertinacia desisteret.
8 Dies conloquio dictus est ex eo die quintus. Interim saepe ultracitrique cum legati inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus postulavit, ne quem peditem ad conloquium Caesar adduceret: vereri se, ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur; uterque cum equitatu veniret; alia ratione sese non esse venturum. \(4\) Caesar, quod neque conloquium interposita causa tolli volebat, neque salutem suam Gallorum equitatu committere audiebat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis, eo legionarios milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime confidebat, imponere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus facto esset, haberet. \(5\) Quod cum fieret, non inriddicule quidam ex militibus decimae legionis dixit, plus quam pollicitus esset Caesarem facere: pollicitum se in cohortis praetoriae loco decimam legionem habiturum; ad equum rescribere.

43. Planites erat magna, et in ea tumulus terrenus satis grandis. Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. \(2\) Eo, ut erat dictum, ad conloquium venerunt. Legionem Caesar, quam equis de vexerat, passibus ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo constiterunt. Ariovistus ex aequis ut conloquerentur, et praecepero se \(3\) amos ut ad conloquium adducerent, postulavit. \(8\) Ubi eo ventum est, Caesar initio orationis sua senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit, quod rex appellatus esset a senatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissime missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse, et pro magnis hominum officiis consuesse tribui docebat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi justam haberet, beneficio ac liberalitate sua ac senatus ea praemia consecutum. \(4\) Docebat etiam, quam veteres quamque justae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Haeduis intercederent, quae senatus consulta, quotiens quamque honorifica, in eos facta essent, ut omni tempore totius
Galliae principatum Haedui tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam appetissent, Populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratia, dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse: quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani adtulissent, id iis eripi quis pati posset? Postulavit deinde eadem quae legatis in mandatis dederat: ne aut Haeduis aut eorum sociis bellum inferret; obsides redderet; si nullam partem Germanorum domum remittere posset, at ne quos amplius Rhenum transire pateretur.

44. Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris paucis respondit; de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: 'Transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte, sed rogatum et accessitum a Gallis; non sine magna spe magnisque praemissis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sedes habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere jure belli, quod victores victis imponere consuerint. Non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse, ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio pulsas ac superatas esse. Si iterum experiri velit, se iterum paratum esse decertare; si pace uti velint, iniquum esse de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerint. Amicitiam populi Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse oportere, idque se ea spe petisse. Si per populum Romanum stipendium remittatur, et dediticii subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recusaturum populi Romani amicitiam quam adpetierit. Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa facere: ejus rei testimonium esse, quod nisi rogatus non venerit, et quod bellum non intulerit, sed defenderit. Se prius in Galliam venisse quam populum Romanum.
Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Romani Galliae provinciās finibus egressum. Quid sibi vellet? cur in suas possessiones veniret? 7 Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, si ut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedi non oporteret, si in nostros fines impetum faceret, sic item nos esse iniquos, quod in suo jure se interpellaremus. 8 Quod fratres Haeduos appellatos diceret, non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum, ut non sciret neque bello Allobrogum proximo Haeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos, in his contentionibus quas Haedui secum et cum Sequanis habuissest, auxilio populi Romani usos esse. 9 Debere se suspicari simulata Caesarem amicitia, quod exercitum in Gallia habeat, sui opprimenti causa habere. Qui nisi decedat, atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed hoste habiturum. 10 Quod si eum interfecerit, multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romani gratum esse factum: id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam ejus morte redimere posset. 11 Quod si discessisset, et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum, et quae cumque bella geri vellet, sineullo ejus labore et periculo conferetur.'

45. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non possit; et 1 Neque suam neque populi Romāni consuetudinem pati, uti optime merentes socios desereret, neque se judicare Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Romani. 2 Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutenos ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romanus ignovisset, neque in provinciam redegisset, neque stipendium imposisset. 3 Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, populi Romani justissimum esse in Gallia imperium; si judicium senatus observari opor-
teret, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluisset.'

46. Dum haec in conloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est equites Ariovisti proprius tumulum accedere, et ad nostros adequitare, lapides tælaque in nostros coniceret. 2Caesar loquendi finem facit, seque ad suos recipit, suasque imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes reicerent. 3Nam epi sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat, ut pulsis hostibus dici posset eos ab se per fidem in conloquio circumven-tos. 4Posteaquam in vulgus militum elatum est, qua adrogantia in conloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros ejus equites fecissent, eaque res conloquium ut diremisset, multo major alacritas studiumque pugnandi május exercitui injectum est.

47. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit: 'Velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eo: uti aut iterum conloquio diem constitueret, aut, si id minus vellet, e suis legatis aliquem ad se mitteret.' 2Conlo-quendi Caesari causa visa non est; et eo magis, quod pridie ejus diei Germani retineri non poterant, quin in nostros tela conicerent. Legatum e suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missurum, et hominibus feris objecturum existimabat. 3Commodissimum visum est Gaium Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri Caburi filium, summa virtute et humanitate adolescetem, — cujus pater a Gaio Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguæ Gallicae scientiam, qua multa jam Ariovistus longinquaque consuetudine utebatur, et quod in eo peccandi Germanis causa non esset, — ad eum mittere, et M. Metium, qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. 4His mandavit, ut quae diceret Ariovistus cognoscerent, et ad se referrent. Quos cum
apud se in castra Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo prae sente con clamavit: 'Quid ad se venirent? an speculandi causa?' Conantes dicere prohibuit, et in catenas conjecit.


49. Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commateu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sexcentos ab ipsis, castris idoneum locum delegit, acieque triplici instructa ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, uti dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sedecim milia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrerent et munitione prohiberent. Nihilo secius Caesar, ut ante constituerat,
duas acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere jussit. Munitis castris, duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum, quattuor reliquas in castra majora reduxit.

50. Proximo die, instituto suo, Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit, paulumque a majoribus castris progressus, aciem instruxit, hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit. 2 Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodirre intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppugnaret, misit. 3 Acrier utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu, suas copias Ariovistus, multis et inlatis et acceptis vulneribus, in castra reduxit. 4 Cum ex captivis quae-reret Caesar, quamobrem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc reperiebat causam, quod apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset, ut matresfamiliae eorum sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent, utrum proelium committi ex usu esset necne; eas ita dicere: 'Non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.'

51. Postridie ejus diei Caesar praesidium utrisque castris quod satis esse visum est reliquit, omnes alarios in conspectum hostium pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minus multitudine militum legionario rum pro hostium numero valebat, ut ad speciem alarii uter tur; ipse, triplici instructa acie, usque ad castra hostium accessit. 2 Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt, generatimque constitu erunt paribus intervallis, Harudes, Marcomannos, Tri boces, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suevos, om nibusque aciem suam rhedis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga relinqueretur. 3 Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentes passis manibus flentes implorabant, ne se in servitutem Romanis traderent.
52. Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaestorem praefecit, uti eos testes suae quisque virtutis haberet; ipse a dextra cornu, quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. 2 Ita nostri acriter in hostes, signo dato, impetum fecerunt, ita-que hostes repente celeriterque procurrent, ut spatium pilae in hostes coniciendi non daretur. Rejectis pilis, minimus gladii pugnatum est. 3 At Germani celeriter, ex consuetudine sua phalange facta, impetus gladiatorum exceperunt. Reperti sunt complures nostri milites, qui in phalangas insilirent, et scuta manibus revellerent, et desuper vulnerarent. 4 Cum hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextra cornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram aciem premebant. 5 Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulescens, qui equitatu praeeerat, quod expeditior erat quam ii qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

53. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga verterunt, neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum, milia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinquaginta pervenerunt. 2 Ibi perpauci aut viribus confisi tranare contenderunt, aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem pepererunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui navi-culum deligatam ad ripam nactus ea profugit: reliquis omnes equitatu consecuti nostri interfecerunt. 6 Duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueva natione, quam domo secum duxerat, altera Norica, regis Victionis soror, quam in Gallia duxerat a fratre missam: utraeque in ea fuga perierunt. Duae filiae harum altera occisa, altera capta est. 4 Gaius Valerius Procillus, cum a custodibus in fuga trinis catenis vinctus trahetur, in ipsum Caesarem, hostes equitatu persequentem, incidit. 5 Quae quidem res Caesari non minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem adutilit, quod hominem hones-
tissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium, sibi restitutum videbat; neque ejus calamitate de tanta voluptate et gratulatione quicquam fortuna diminuerat. 6 Is se praesente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni statim necaretur, an in aliud tempus reservaretur: sortium beneficio se esse incolumem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

54. Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato, Suevi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverteri coeperunt; quos Ubii, qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos [senserunt;] insecuti, magnum ex his numerum occiderunt. 2 Caesar una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis, maturius paulo quam tempus anni postulabat, in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit; hibernis Labienum praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est.
BOOK II.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY.—A league of the Belgian tribes is reported to Cæsar, who moves rapidly to the north, and accepts the submission of the Remi (1–3). Account of the Belgians and their tribes. Cæsar advances to the Axona, relieves the siege of Bibræx, the chief place of the Remi, and establishes a camp, strongly fortified (4–8). The Belgians attempt to cross the Axona, but are driven back, and pursued with great slaughter (9–11). Surrender of the Suessiones and Bellovaci: report of the Nervii, who wait to give battle across the Sabi (12–16). Position of the two forces: the Nervii attack with great fury, and throw the Romans into confusion, which is partly overcome by their admirable discipline (17–20). After various fortune, the Nervii assault the camp, which is saved, after a desperate struggle, by the personal address and courage of Cæsar (21–22). Labienus comes up with the tenth legion, and the tide is turned; the Nervii are crushed and almost exterminated (26–28). The Aduatuci: after sundry skirmishes they sue for peace; but renewing the fight after their surrender, are subdued, and upwards of 50,000 are sold as slaves (29–33). Meanwhile Crassus secures the submission of the coast population of the Veneti, etc.; Gaul appears wholly reduced to peace, and embassies are sent to Cæsar even from beyond the Rhine (34, 35).

CUM esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia [in hibernis], ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur, litterisque item Labieni certior fiebat, omnes Belgas (quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus), contra populum Romanum conjurare, obsidesque inter se dare. 2 Conjurandi has esse causas: primum quod vererentur ne, omni pacata Gallia, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde quod ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur,—partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Gallia versari noluerant, ita populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Gallia moleste serebant; 3 partim qui, mobilitate et levitate animi, novis imperiis studebant; ab nonnullis
etiam, quod in Gallia a potentioribus atque iis qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperio nostro consuequi poterant.

2. His nuntiiis litterisque commotus, Caesar duas legiones in ceteriore Gallia novas conscripsit, et inita aestate, in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret, Q. Pedium legatum misit. 2 Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum venit. Dat negotium Se-nonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea quae apud eos gerantur cognoscant, seque de his rebus certiorem faciant. 8 Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci. 4 Tum vero dubitandum non existimavit quin ad eos proficisceretur. Re frumentaria comparata, castra movet, diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

3. Eo cum de improviso celeriusque omni opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos Icassium et Andocumborium, primos civitatis, miserunt, qui dicerent: 2 Se suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittere, neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse, neque contra populum Romanum conjurasse, paratosque esse et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus juyare; 8 reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incolant, sese cum his conjunxisse, tantumque esse eorum omnium furem, ut ne Suesiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem jure et isdem legibus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, deterrere po- tuerint quin cum his consentirent.'

4. Cum ab his quaueret, quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent, et quid in bello possent, sic reperiebat: 2 plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis,
Rhenumque antiquitus traductos propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedisse, Gallosque qui ea loca incolerent expulisse, solosque esse qui, patrum nostrorum memoria, omni Gallia vexata, Teutonos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingredi prohibuerint; qua ex re fieri uti, earum rerum memoria, magnam sibi auctoritatem magnosque spiritus in re militari sumerent. De numero eorum omnia se habere explorata Remi dicebant, propterea quod propinquitatibus ad finititibusque conjuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognoverint. Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et virtute et auctoritate et hominum numero valere: hos posse conficere armata milia centum, pollicitos ex eo numero electa sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos: latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostra etiam memoria Divitiacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse regem Galbam; ad hunc propter justitiam prudentiamque suam totius bellum summam omnium voluntate deferri: oppida habere numero xii, polliceri milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervios, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habeantur, longissimeque absint; quindecim milia Atrebates, Ambianos decem milia, Morinos xxv milia, Menapios vii milia; Caletos x milia; Velocasses et Veromanduos totidem; Aduatucos decem et novem milia; Condrusos, Eburones, Caeroesos, Paemanos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad xx milia.

5. Caesar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione prosecutus, omnem senatum ad se convenire, principumque liberos obsides ad se adduci jussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum Haeduum magnopere cohortatus, docet
quanto opere rei publicae communisque salutis intersit manus hostium distineri, ne cum tanta multitudine uno tempore confligendum sit. 8 Id fieri posse, si suas copias Haedui in fines Bellovacorum introduxerint, et eorum agros populari coeperint. His mandatis, eum ab se dimittit. 4 Postquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit, neque jam longe abesse ab iis quos miserat exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen Axonam, quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum traducere maturavit, atque ibi castra posuit. 6 Quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat, et post eum quae essent tuta ab hostibus redebat; et, commagatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus, ut sine periculo ad eum portari posset efficiebat. 6 In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit, et in altera parte fluminis Q. Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus reliquit; castra in altitudinem pedum xii vallo fossaque duodeviginti pedum munire jubet.

6. Ab his castris oppidum Remorum nomine Bibrax aberat milia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegrre eo die sustentatum est. 2 Gallorum eadem atque Belgarum oppugnatio est haec. Ubi circumjuncta multitudine hominum totis moenibus undique in murum lapides jaci coepi sunt, murusque defensoribus nudatus est, testudine factura, portas succedunt murumque subruunt. 3 Quod tum facile fiebat. Nam cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conicerant, in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli. 4 Cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Icicius Remus, summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos, qui tum oppido praefuerat, unus ex iis qui legati de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

7. Eo de media nocte Caesar, isdem ducibus usus
qui nuntii ab Iccio venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios et funditores Baleares subsidio oppidaniis mittit; quorum adventu et Remis cum spe defensionis studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus eadem de causa spes potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque, paulisper apud oppidum morati, agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis aedificiisque quos adire poterant incensis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt, et ab milibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabatur, amplius milibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

8. Caesar primo, et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis, proelio superse- dere statuit; cotidie tamen, equestribus proeliiis, quid hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent periclita- batur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris ad aciem instruendam natura opportuno at- que idoneo,—quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planicie editus, tantum adversus in lati- tudinem patebat quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utraque parte lateris dejectus habe- bat, et in frontem leniter fastigatus paulatim ad plani- ciem redibat, ab utroque latere ejus collis transver- sam fossam obduxit circiter passuum quadrirgentorum et ad extremas fossas castella constituit, ibique tor- menta conlocavit, ne, cum aciem instructisset, hostes (quod tantum multitudine poterant) ab lateribus pug- nantes suos circumvenire possent. Hoc facto, duabus legionibus quas proxime conscripserat in castris relic- tis, ut, si quo opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reliquas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

9. Palaus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hos- tium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes exspectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transe- undi fieret, ut impeditos adgrederentur, parati in armis
erant. 2 Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundire equitum proelio nostris, Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. 3 Ibi vadis repertis, partem sua-rum copiarum traducere conati sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, castellum, cui praerat Q. Titurius legatus, expugnarent, pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popularentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatuque nostros proliferent.

10. Caesar, certior factus ab Titurio, omnem equitatum et levis armaturae Numidas, funditores sagittariosque pontem traducit, atque ad eos contendit. 2 Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine adgressi, magnum eorum numerum occiderunt: per eorum corpora reliquos, audacissime transire conantes, multitudine telorum repulerunt; primos, qui transierant, equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. 3 Hostes ubi et de expugnando oppido et de flumine transeundo spem se fessilisse intellexerunt, neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progresdi pugnandi causa viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentariae deficere coepit, concilio convocato, constituerunt optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti, et, quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent, et domesticis copiis rei frumentariae uterentur. 4 Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum atque Haeduos finibus Bellovacorum adpropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi ut diutius morarentur, neque suis auxilium ferrent, non poterat.

11. Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magno cum
Approach to Noviodunum.


Castris munitis, vineas agere quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere jacto turribusque constitutis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audie-
rant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti, legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt, et petentibus Remis, ut conservarentur impetrant.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis, atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditionem Suessiones acceptit, exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. 2 Qui cum se suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter milia passuum quinque abesset, omnes maiores natu, ex oppido egressi, manus ad Caesarem tendere, et voce significare coeperunt sese in ejus fidem ac potestatem venire, neque contra populum Romanum armis contendere. 3 Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset, castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque ex muro passis manibus suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

14. Pro his Divitiaci — nam post discessum Belgarum, dimissis Haeduorum copiis, ad eum reverterat — facit verba: 'Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Haeducae fuisset: 2 impulsos a suis principibus, qui dicerent Haeduos, ab Caesare in servitutem redactos, omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, et ab Haeduis defecisse, et populo Romano bellum intulisse. 3 Qui ejus consilii principes fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. 4 Petere non solum Bellovacos, sed etiam pro his Haeduos, ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. 5 Quod si fecerit, Haeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificaturum, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint.'

15. Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Haeduorum causa sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum dixit; quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate, atque hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides poposcit. 2 His traditis, omnibusque armis ex oppido
conlatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaque omnia sine mora dediderunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant; quorum de natura moribus-que Caesar cum quae reret, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus; nihil pati vini reli-quarumque rerum inferri, quod iis rebus relanguescere animos [eorum] et remitti virtutem existimarent: esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis; increpitare atque incusare reliquis Belgas, qui se populo Romano dedissent patriamque virtutem projecissent; confirmare sese neque legatos missuros, neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos.

16. Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniebat ex captivis Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius milia passuum x abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedisse, adventumque ibi Romanorum exspectare, una cum Atrebatis et Veromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utisque persuaserant, uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur); exspectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias atque esse in itinere; mulieres quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur in eum locum conjectisse, quo propter paludes exercitiui aditus non esset.

17. His rebus cognitis, exploratores centurionesque praemittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Cum ex dediticiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesar secuti una iter facade, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt; atque his demonstrarunt inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercede, neque esse quicquam negotii, cum prima legio in castra venisset, reliquaque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub arcinis adoriri; qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis, futurum ut reliquae contra consistere non auderent. Adjuvabat etiam eorum
consilium qui rem deserebant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed, quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent copiis), 4 quo facilius finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causa ad eos venissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis, crebrisque in latitudinem ramis enatis, et rubis sentibusque interjectis, esse cerant ut instar muri hae sepes munimenta praeberrrent, quo non modo non intrari, sed ne perspici quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impediretur, non omissendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

18. Loci natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebant. 2 Ab eo flumine pari adclivitate collis nascebatur adversus huic et contrarius, passus circiter ducentos infimus apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile introrsus perspici posset. 3 Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant; in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantar. Fluminis erat altitude pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequebatur omniibus copiis; sed ratio ordoque agminis alter se habebat ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. 2 Nam quod ad hostis adpropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat; post eas totius exercitus impedimenta conlocarat; inde duae legiones, quae proxume conscriptae erant, totum agmen claudebant, praesidioque impedimentis erant. 3 Equites nostri, cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi, cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt. 4 Cum se illi interdum in silvas ad suos recipereant, ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent, neque nostri longius quam quem ad finem perrecta loca aperta pertinebant cedentes insequi auderant, interim legiones sex, quae prima venerant, opere dimenso, castra
munire coeperunt. 6 Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab iis qui in silvis abditi latebant visa sunt, quod tempus inter eos committendi proelii convenerat, ut intra silvas aciem ordinemque constituerant atque ipsi sese confirmaverant; subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt, impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt. 6 His facile pulsis ac proturbatis, incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurrent, ut paene uno tempore et ad silvas et in flumine et jam in manibus nostri hostes viderentur. Eadem autem celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra, atque eos qui in opere occupati erant, contenderunt.

20. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum (quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurri oporteret), signum tuba dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causa processerant arcessendi, acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas et successus hostium impediebat. 2 His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, — scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus proeliiis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret, non minus commode ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis doceri poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere nisi munitis castris vetuerat. 8 Hi, propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium, nihil jam Caesaris imperium exspectabant, sed per se quae videbantur administrabant.

21. Caesar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites quam in partem foris obtulit decucurrit, et ad legiorem decumam devenit. 2 Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus, quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent, neu perturbarentur animo, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant quam quo telum adici posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. 8 Atque in
alteram partem item cohortandi causa profectus, pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia adcommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas scutisque tegmenta detrudenda tempus defuerit. *Quam quisque ab opere in partem casu devenit, quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad haec constitit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dmitteret.

22. Instructo exercitu, magis ut loci natura dejectusque collis et necessitas temporis, quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum diversis legionibus aliae alia in parte hostibus resisterent, seipusque densissimis (ut ante demonstravimus) interjectis prospectus impediretur, neque certa subsidia conlocari, neque quid in quaque parte opus esset provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque, in tanta rerum iniquitate, fortunae quoque eventus vari sequebantur.

23. Legionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistra parte acie constiterant, pilis emissis, cursu ac lassitudine examinatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates—nam his ea pars obluerat—celeriter ex loco superiori in flumen compulerunt, et transire conantes inscuti, gladiis magnam partem eorum impediam interfecerunt. *Ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt, et in locum iniquum progressi, rursus resistentes hostes redintegrato proelio in fugam conecerunt. Item alia in parte diversae duae legiones, undecima et octava, proligatis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. *At totis fere a fronte et ab sinistra parte nudatis castris, quom in dextro cornu legio duo-decima et non magno ab ea intervallo septima constitisset, omnes Nervii consectissimo agmine, duce Boduognato, qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum
locum contenderunt; quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

24. Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu pulsos dixeram, cum se in castra reciperen, adversis hostibus occurrebant, ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant; 2et calones, qui ab decumana porta ac summo jugo collis nostros victores flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi causa egressi, cum respexissent et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praecipites fugae sese mandabant. 3Simul eorum, qui cum impedimentis veniebant, clamor fremitusque oriebatur, alique aliam in partem perterriti ferebantur. 4Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Treveri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis, qui auxilii causa ab civitate ad Caesarem missi venerant, cum multitudine hostium castra complerii, legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, funditores, Numidas diversos dissipatosque in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus, domum contenderunt; Romanos pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos, civitati renuntiaverunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri, signisque in unum locum conlatis, duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, — 2quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis, signiferoque interfecto, signo amisco, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo P. Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus constecto, ut jam se sustinere non posset; 3reliquos esse tardiores, et nonnullos ab novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostis neque a fronte ex inferiori loco.
subeuntes intermittere, et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium quod summitti posset, — scuto ab novissimis uni militi detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit; centurionibusque nominatim appellatis, reliquis cohortatibus, milites signa inferre et manipulos laxare jussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent. Cujus adventu spe inlata militibus, ac redintegrato animo, cum pro se quisque in conspectu imperatoris etiam in extremis suis rebus operam navare cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardatus est.

26. Caesar, cum septimam legionem, quae juxta constiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum monuit, ut paulatim sese legiones conjungerent, et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, cum alius alii subsidium ferret, neque timente ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare coeperunt. Interim milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, proelio nuntiato, cursu incitato, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur; et T. Labienus, castris hostium potitus, et ex loco superiore quae res in nostris castris generentur conspicatus, decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit. Qui, cum ex equitum et calonum fuga, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

27. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio est facta, ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuissent, scutis innixi proelium redintegrarent; tum calones, perterritos hostes conspicati, etiam inermes armatis occurrerent; equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute deuerent, omnibus in locis [pugnant, quo] se legionariis militibus praeferrent. At hostes etiam in extrema spe salutis tantam virtutem praestiterunt,
ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi jacentibus insisterent, atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent; his dejectis, et coacervatis cadaveribus, qui superisset ut ex tumulo tela in nostros conicerent, et pila intercepta remitterent: ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines judicari deberet ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo redegerat.

28. Hoc proelio facto, et prope ad internecionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto, majores natu, quos una cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes coniectos dixeramus, hac pugna nuntauia, cum victoribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tum arbitrarentur, omnium qui supererant consensu, legatos ad Caesarem miserunt, seque ei dediderunt; et in commemoranda civitatis calamitate, ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum milibus LX VIX ad quingentos, qui arma ferre possent, sese redactos esse dixerunt. Quos Caesar, ut in miseris ac supplices usus misericordia videretur, diligentissime conservavit, suisque finibus atque oppidis uti jussit, et finitimis imperavit, ut ab injuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

29. Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nervii venirent, hac pugna nuntauia, ex itinere domum reverterunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis, sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie natura munimt contulerunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimas rupes desper tusque haberet, una ex parte leniter adclivis aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum reliquque batur; quem locum duplici altissimo muro munierant: tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacutas trabes in muro conlocabant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prognati, qui, cum iter in provinciam nostram atque
Italiam facerent, iis impedance, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, cæra flumen Rhenum depotis, custodiam ex suis ac praeidium sex milia hominum una reliquerunt. Hi post eorum obitum multos annos a finitimis exagitati, cum alias bellum inferrent, alias inlatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pacis facta, hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.

30. Ac, primo adventu exercitus nostri, crebras ex oppido excursions faciebant, parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendebant; postea vallo pedum xii in circuitu xv milium crebrisque castellis circummuniti, oppido sese continebant. Ubi vinces actis, aggere exstructo, turrim procul constitui viderunt, primum inridere ex muro, atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio instrueretur: quibus namibus aut quibus virtibus praesertim homines tantulae staturae — nam plerumque hominibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suorum brevitatis nostra contemptui est — tanti oneris turrim in muro sese conlocare confiderent?

31. Ubi vero moveri et adpropinquare moenibus viderunt, nova atque inusitata specie commoti, legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui ad hunc modum locuti: Non existimare Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tanta celeritate promovere possent; se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere, dixerunt. Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret. Sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtutis invidire; a quibus se defendere traditis armis non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a populo Romano pati, quam ab his per cruciatum interfici, inter quos dominari consuessent.
32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: 'Se magis consuetudine sua quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius quam murum aries attigisset se dedissent: sed deditioinis nullam esse condicionem nisi armis traditis. ² Se id quod in Nerviiis fecisset factum, finitumisque imperaturum, ne quam dediticiis populi Romani injuriam inferrent.' Re nuntiata ad suos, quae imperarentur facere. Dixerunt. ³ Armorum magna multitudine de muro in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, jacta, sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celata atque in oppido retenta, portis patefactis, eo die pace sunt usi.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire jussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus injuriam acciperent. Illi, ante inluctum est) consilio, quod deditione facta nostros praesidia deducturos aut denique indiligentius servaturos crediderant, — ² partim cum iis quae retinuerant et celaverant armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intexitis, quae subito, ut temporis exiguitas postulabat, pellibus induxerant, — tertia vigilia, qua minime arduus ad nostra munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repentino ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. ³ Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significatione facta, ex proximis castellis eo concursum est, pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter est, ut a viris fortibus in extrema spe salutis, iniquo loco, contra eos qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacerent, pugnari debuit, cum in una virtute omnis spes salutis consisteret. ⁴ Occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor, reliqui in oppidum rejecti sunt. Postridie ejus diei refractis portis, cum jam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris, sectionem ejus oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab iis qui emergant, capitum
numerus ad eum relatus est milium quinquaginta trium.

34. Eodem tempore a P. Crasso, quem cum legione una miserat ad Venetos, Unellos, Osismos, Curiosolitas, Esuvios, Aulercos, Redones, quae sunt maritimae civitates Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est omnes eas civitates in dicionem potestatemque populi Romani esse redactas.

35. His rebus gestis, omni Gallia pacata, tanta hujus belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, uti ab iis nationibus, quae trans Rhenum incoherent, mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, qui se obsides daturas, imperata facturas pollicerentur. ² Quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italian Illyricumque properabat, inita proxima aestate ad se reverti jussit. ³ Ipse in Carnutes, Andes Turonesque, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hibernacula deductis, in Italian profectus est. ⁴ Ob easque res ex litteris Caesaris dies quindecim supplecatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.
BOOK III.

ALPINE CAMPAIGN.—A garrison, under the command of Servius Galba, had been set to guard the passes of the Upper Rhone, but is threatened by a formidable force, and brought into extreme danger (1-3). After sustaining an attack of some six hours, the garrison make a sudden sally, drive back the enemy, destroy the neighboring villages, and retire to the lower country, south of Lake Geneva, for the winter (4-6).

NAVAL CAMPAIGN.—The sea-faring tribes of Brittany form a strong league, under lead of the Veneti, and demand back their hostages from Crassus (7, 8). Cæsar prepares a fleet upon the Loire; the enemy fortify themselves on the coast. Labienus is sent to guard the north, and Crassus to the south; and Brutus is put in command of the Roman fleet (9-11). Situation of the Venetian strongholds; description of the fleets (12, 13). Engagement of the fleets: the enemies' sailyards are cut away, and their ships dispersed; they surrender, their leaders are slain, and the rest sold as slaves (14-16). Meanwhile Sabinus, who is sent among the Unelli, on the Channel, a little further north, is attacked by them, but drives them back with great slaughter, and compels their surrender (17-19).

SOUTHERN GAUL.—Crassus, in Aquitania, after some skirmishing, is threatened by a strong league, relying chiefly on the solduri; but attacks them in their camp, and secures the conquest of the whole region (20-27). Cæsar, meanwhile, proceeds against the Morini, &c., along the coast of Flanders; and, as they retire to their marshes, falls back to winter quarters near the mouth of the Seine (28, 29).

CUM in Italian proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam, cum legione duodecima et parte equitatus, in Nantuatis, Veragros Sedunosque misit, qui ab finibus Allobrogum et lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano ad summas Alpes pertinent. ²Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter per Alpes, quo magnó cum periculo magnisque cum portoriis mercatores ire consuerant,
patesieri volebat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in his locis legionem hiemandi causa conlocaret. 8 Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis, castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis, obsidibusque datis et pace facta, constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus conlocare, et ipse cum reliquis ejus legionis cohortibus in vico Veragorum, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare; 4 qui vicus, positus in valle, non magna adjecta planicie, altissimis montibus undique continetur. 5 Cum hic in duas partes flumine divideretur, alteram partem ejus vici Gallis ad hiemandum concessit, alteram vacuam ab his relictam cohortibus adtribuit. Eum locum vallo fossaque munivit.

2. Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent, frumentumque eo comportari jussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse, montesque, qui impenderent, a maxima multitudine Sedunorum et Veragorum teneri. 2 Id aliquot de causis acciderat, ut subito Galli belli renovandi legionisque opprimendae consilium caperent: primum, quod legionem—neque eam plenissimam, detractus cohortibus duabus et compluribus singillatim, qui commeatus petendi causa missi erant—propter paucitatem despiciebant; 8 tum etiam quod propter iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem decurrerent et tela concicerent, ne primum quidem posse impetum suum sustineri existimabant. 4 Accedebat, quod suos ab se liberos abstractos obsidum nomine dolebat, et Romanos non solum itinerum causa, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis culmina Alpium occupare conari, et ea loca finitimae provinciae adjun-gere sibi persuasum habebant.

3. His nuntiis acceptis, Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum munitionesque plene essent perfectae, neque de frumento reliquoque commeatu satis esset
provisum, quod deditione facta obsidibusque acceptis nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato, sententias exquirere coepit. 2 Quo in consilio, cum tantum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac jam omnia fere superiora loca multitudine armatorum completa conspicerentur, neque subsidio veniri neque commeatus supportari intercluisit itineribus possent, 3 prope jam desperata salute, nonnullae hujusmodi sententiae dicebantur, ut impeditamentis relictis, eruptione facta, isdem itineribus quibus eo pervenissent, ad salutem contenderent. 4 Majori tamen parti placuit, hoc reservato ad extremum consilio, interim rei eventum experiri, et castra defendere.

4. Brevi spatio interjecto, vix ut iis rebus quas constituissent conlocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes ex omnibus partibus signo dato decurrere, lapides gaesaque in vallum conicere. 2 Nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare, neque ullum frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere, ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere et auxilium ferre; sed hoc superari, quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant: 5 quarum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem ejus loci, ubi constiterat, relinquendi ac sui recipiendi facultas dabatur.

5. Cum jam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur, ac non solum vires sed etiam tela nostros deficerent, atque hostes acrius instarent, languidioribusque nostris vallum scindere et fossae completre coepissent, resque esset jam ad extremum perducta casum, 2 P. Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus consectum vulneribus diximus, et item Gaius Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consiliis magni et virtutis, ad Galbam adcurrunt, atque unam
esse spem salutis doceunt, si eruptione facta extremum auxilium experirentur. Itaque, convocatis centurionibus, celeriter milites certiores facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium, ac tantum modo tela missa excipierent seque ex labore reficerent; post, dato signo, ex castris erumperent, atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent.

6. Quod jussi sunt faciunt, ac subito omnibus portis eruptione facta, neque cognoscendi quid fieret, neque sui colligendi hostibus facultatem reliquunt. Ita commutata fortuna, eos qui in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant undique circumventos interficiunt; et ex hominum milibus amplius triginta, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat, plus tertia parte interfecta, reliquos perterritos in fugam coniciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium copiis fusis, armisque exutis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt.

Quo proelio facto, quod saepius fortunam temptare Galba nolebat, atque alicio se in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rebus viderat, maxime frumenti commeatusque inopia permutus, postero die, omnibus ejus vici aedificis incensis, in provinciam reverti contendit, ac nullo hoste prohibente aut iter demorante, incolument legionem in Nantuatis, inde in Allobroges perduxit, ibique hiemavit.

7. His rebus gestis, cum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret. superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita inita hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes adire et regiones cognoscere volebat, subitus bellum in Gallia coortum est. Eius belli haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulescens cum legione septima proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemarat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat, praefectos tribunosque militum complures in finitimis civitates
frumenti causa dimisit; quo in numero erat T. Ter-
rasidius missus in Esuvios, M. Trebius Gallus in
Curiosolitas, Q. Velanius cum T. Silio in Venetos.

8. Hujus est cívitatis longe amplissima auctoritas
omnis orae maritimae regionum earum, quod et naves
habent Veneti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navi-
gare consuerunt, et scientia atque usu nauticarum
rerum reliquis antecedunt, et in magnó impetu maris
atque aperto paucis portibus interjectis, quos tenent
ipsi, omnes fere, qui eo mari uti consuerunt, habent
vectigales. 2 Ab his fit inítiúm retinendi Silii atque
Velanii, quod per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso
dedisser, recipératuros existímabant. 8 Horum au-
toritáte finitimí adductí (ut sunt Gallorum subita et
repentina consilia), eadem de causa Trebium Terra-
sidiumque retinént; et celeríter missís legátis, per
suos príncipes inter se conjúranti, nihil nisi communi
consilio actuós, eundemque omnis fortuña exitum
esse láturos; 4 reliquásque civitátes solícitánt, ut in ea
libertate quam a majoribus acceperánt permaneré,
quam Romanorum servítutem perferre málent. 6 Om-
ni ora marítima celeríter ad suam sententiám perdúcta,
communém ligationem ad P. Crassum mítunt, si
velit suos recipere, obsides sibi remítat.

9. Quibus de rebus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus,
quod ipse aberat longius, naves interim longas aedifi-
cari in flúmine Ligere, quod in fluít in Oceanum, re-
míges ex província instituí, nautás gubernatoresque
comparari jubet. His rebus celeríter administratís,
ipse, cum primum per anní tempús potuit, ad exerci-
tum contendit. 2 Veneti reliquaeque ítem civitátes,
cognito Caesáris adventu [certiores facti], simul quod
quantum in se facinus admississent intellegebant, legatos
—quod nomen ad omnes nationes sanctum inviolatum-
que semper fuisset — retentos ab se et in vincula conjet-
tos, pro magnitudine periculi bellum parare, et maxime
ea quae ad usum navium pertinent providere instituunt, hoc majore spe, quod multum natura loci confidebant. Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuariis, navigatio-nem impeditam propter inscientiam locorum paucita-temque portuum sciebant, neque nostros exercitus propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morari posse confidebant: ac jam ut omnia contra opinionem acci-derent, tamen se plurimum navibus posse, Romanos neque ullam faculatem habere: navium, neque eorum locorum ubi bellum gesturi essent vada, portus, insulas novisse; ac longe aliam esse navigationem in concluso mari atque in vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceano perspiciebant. His initis consiliis, oppida muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum esse bellum gestu-rum constabat, quam plurimas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismos, Lexovios, Namnetes, Ambiliatos, Morinos, Diablintres, Menapios adsci-scunt; auxilia ex Britannia, quae contra eas regiones posita est, accession.

10. Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi, quas supra ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant: injuriae retentorum equitum Romanorum, rebellio facta post deditioinem, defectio datis obsidibus, tot civitatum conjuratio; imprimis ne, hac parte ne-glecta, reliquae nationes sibi idem licere arbitrarentur. Itaque cum intellexeret omnes fere Gallos novis rebus studere, et ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitari, omnes autem homines natura libertati studere et con-dicionem servitutis odisse, priusquam plures civitates conspirarent, partiendum sibi ac latius distribuendum exercitum putavit.

11. Itaque T. Labienum legatum in Treveros, qui proximi flumini Rheno sunt, cum equitatu mittit. Huic mandat Remos relinquosque Belgas adeat, atque in officio contineat; Germanosque, qui auxilio a Belgis
arcessiti dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire contentur, prohibeat. 2 P. Crassum, cum cohortibus legionariis duodecim et magno numero equitatus, in Aquitaniam proficisci jubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur, ac tantae nationes con-jungantur. 8 Q. Titurium Sabinum legatum cum legionibus tribus in Unellos, Curiosolites Lexoviosque mittit, qui eam manum distinendam curet. 4 Decimum Brutum adulescentem classi Gallicisque navibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire jussret, praeficit, et, cum primum posset, in Venetos proficisci jubet. Ipse eo pedestribus copiis contendit.

12. Erant ejusmodi fere situs oppidorum, ut, posita in extremis lingulis promunturiisque, neque pedibus aditum haberent, cum ex alto se aestus incitavisset (quod [bis] accidit semper horarum xii spatio), neque navibus, quod rursus minuente aestu naves in vadis adflectarentur. 8 Ita utraque re oppidorum oppugnatio impede batur; ac si quando — magnitudine operis forte superati, extruso mari aggere ac molibus, atque his oppidi moenibus adaequatis — suis fortunis desperare coeperant, magno numero navium ad pulso, cujus rei summam facultatem habe bant, sua deportabant omnia, seque in proxima oppida recipiebant: ibi se rursus isdem opportunitatis loci defendebant. 8 Haec eo facilius magnam partem aestatis faciebant, quod nostrae naves tempestatibus detinebantur, sumpqua erat — vasto atque aperto mari, magnis aestibus, rarum ac prope nullis portibus — difficultas navigandi.

13. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant: carinae aliquanto planiores quam nostrarum navium, quo facilius vada ac decessum aestus excipere possent; 2 prorae admodum erectae, atque item puppes ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae; naves totae factae ex robere
ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam; transtra
pedalibus in altitudinem trabibus confixa clavis ferreis
digitis pollicis crassitudine; 3 ancorae pro funibus fer-
reis catenis revinctae; pelles pro velis alutaeque tenui-
ter confectae, hae sive propter lini inopiam atque ejus
usus inscientiam, sive eo (quod est magis verisimile)
quod tantas tempestatem Oceani tantosque impetus
ventorum sustineri ac tanta onera navium regi velis
non satis commode posse arbitrabantur. 4 Cum his
navibus nostrae classi ejusmodi congressus erat, ut
una celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret; reliqua
pro loci natura, pro vi tempestatum, illis essent aptiora
et accommodatoria. 5 Neque enim his nostrae rostro
nocere poterant—tanta in iis erat firmitudo—neque
propter altitudinem facile telum adiciebatur, et eadem
de causa minus commode copulis continebantur. 6 Ac-
cedebat ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et se vento
dedissent, et tempestatem ferrent facilius, et in vados
consisterent tutius, et ab aequo relictae nihil saxa et
cautes timerent; quarum rerum omnium nostris navi-
bus casus erat extimescendus.

14. Compluribus expugnatis oppidis, Caesar, ubi
intellexit frustra tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium
fugam captis oppidis reprimi neque iis noceri posse,
statuit exspectandam classem. 2 Quae ubi convenit
ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ccxx naves
eorum, paratissimae atque omni genere armorum
ornatissimae, profectae ex portu, nostris adversae con-
stiterunt; neque satis Bruto, qui classi praerat, vel
tribunis militum centurionibusque, quibus singulæ
naves erant adtributae, constabat quid agerent, aut
quam rationem pugnae insisterent. 8 Rostro enim
noceri non posse cognoverant; turribus autem excita-
tis, tamen has altitudo puppium ex barbaris navibus
superabat; ut neque ex inferiore loco satis commode
tela adici possent, et missa ab Gallis gravius accide-
rent. 4 Una erat magno usui res praeparata a nostris, — falces praecutaes insertae adfixaeque longuriis, non absimili forma muralium falcium. 5 His cum funes, qui antennas ad malos destinabant, comprehensi adductique erant, navigio remis incitato praerumpabantur. 6 Quibus abscessis antennae necessario concidabant; ut, cum omnis Gallicis navibus spes in velis armamentisque consistert, his ereptis, omnis usus navium uno tempore eriperetur. 7 Reliquum erat certamen positum in virtute, qua nostri milites facile superabant, atque eo magis, quod in conspectu Caesaris atque omnis exercitus res gerebatur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum latere posset; omnes enim colles ac loca superiora, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur.

15. Disjunctis (ut diximus) antennis, cum singulas binae ac ternaes naves circumsteterant, milites summa vi transcendere in hostium naves contendebant. 2 Quod postquam barbari fieri animadverterunt, expugnatis compluribus navibus, cum ei rei nullum reperiretur auxilium, fuga salutem petere contenderunt. 3 Ac jam, conversis in eam partem navibus quo ventus ferebat, tanta subito malacia ac tranquillitas exstitit, ut se ex loco commovere non possent. 4 Quae quidem res ad negotium conficiendum maxime fuit opportuna: nam singulas nostris consectati expugnaverunt, ut per-paucae ex omni numero noctis interventu ad terram pervenerint, cum ab hora fere quarta usque ad solis occasum pugnaretur.

16. Quo proelio bellum Venetorum totiusque orae maritumae confessum est.  Nam cum omnis juventus, omnes etiam gravioris aetatis, in quibus aliquid consiliis aut dignitatis fuit, eo convenenter, tum navium quod ubique fuerat unum in locum coegerant; 2 quibus amissis, reliqui neque quo se recipierent, neque quem ad modum oppida defenderent habebant. Itaque se
suaque omnia Caesari dediderunt. 3 In quos eo gra- 
vius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quo diligentius in 
reliquum tempus a barbaris jus legatorum conserva-
retur. Itaque, omni senatu necato, reliquos sub coro-
a na vendidit.

17. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titurius Sa-
binus, cum iis copiis quas a Caesare acceperat, in 
fines Unellorum pervenit. His praeerat Viridovix, ac 
ssummam imperii tenebat earum omnium civitatum 
quae defecerant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque 
copias coëgerat; 2 atque his paucis diebus Aulerci, 
Eburovices, Lexoviiique, senatu suo interfecto, quod 
auctores belli esse nolebant, portas claurerunt, seque 
cum Viridovice conjunxerunt; magnaque praeterea 
multitudo undique ex Gallia perditorum hominum 
latronumque convenerat, quos spes praedandi studium-
que bellandi ab agricultura et cotidiano labore revo-
cabat. 3 Sabinus idoneo omnibus rebus loco castris 
sese tenebat, cum Viridovix contra eum duum milium 
spatio consedisset, cotidieque productis copiis pug-
nandi potestatem faceret; ut jam non solum hostibus 
in contemptionem Sabinus veniret, sed etiam nostro-
rum militum vocibus nonnihil carperetur; tantamque 
opinionem timoris praebuit, ut jam ad vallum castro-
rum hostes accedere auderent. 4 Id ea de causa facie-
bat, quod cum tanta multitudine hostium, praesertim 
eo absentee qui summam imperii teneret, nisi aequo 
loco aut opportunitate aliqua data, legato dimicandum 
non existimabat.

18. Hac confirmata opinione timoris, idoneum quen-
dam hominem et callidum delegit, Gallum, ex iis quo-
auxillii causa secum habebat. Huic magnis praemiiis 
polllicationibusque persuadet, uti ad hostes transeat, 
et quid fieri velit edocet. 2 Qui ubi pro perfuga ad eos 
venit, timorem Romanorum proponit; quibus angustiis 
ipse Caesar a Venetis prematur docet; neque longius
abesse quin proxima nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum educat, et ad Caesarem auxilii ferendi causa proficiscatur. 3 Quod ubi auditum est, conclamant omnes occasionem negotii bene gerendi amittendam non esse, ad castra iri oportere. 4 Multae res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superiorum dierum Sabinis cunctatio, persuagae confirmatio, inopia cibariorum, cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat provisum, spes Venetici belli, et quod fere libenter homines id quod volunt credunt. 5 His rebus adducti, non prius Viridovicem reliquisque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. 6 Qua re concessa, laeti ut explorata victoria, sarmentis virgultisque oollectis, quibus fossas Romanorum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrorum editus, et paulatim ab imo adclivis circiter passus mille. Huc magno cursu contenderunt, ut quam minimum spati ad se colligendos armandosque Romanis daretur, examinatique pervernerunt. 2 Sabinus, suos hortatus, cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea quae ferebant onera, subito duabus portis eruptionem fieri jubeat. 3 Factum est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientia ac desetigatione, virtute militum et superiorum pugnarum exercitiatione, ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent, ac statim terga verterent. 4 Quos impeditos integris viribus milites nostri consecuti, magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquis equites consecatati paucos, qui ex fuga evaserant, reliquerunt. 5 Sic uno tempore et de navali pugna Sabinus et de Sabini victoria Caesar certior factus est; civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio dediderunt. 6 Nam ut ad bella susciienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates perferendas mens eorum est.

20. Eodem fere tempore P. Crassus cum in Aquita-
niam pervenisset,—quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et
regionum latitudine et multitudine hominum ex tertia
parte Galliae est aestimanda,—cum intellegeget in iis
locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis L.
Valerius Praeconinus legatus exercitu pulso interflectus
isset, atque unde L. Mallius proconsul impedimentis
amissis profugisset, non mediocrem sibi diligentiam
adhibendam intellegebat. 2 Itaque re frumentaria pro-
visa, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, multis praeterea
viris fortibus Tolosa et Narbone (quae sunt civitates
Galliae provinciae finitimae his regionibus) nomina-
tim evocatis, in Sontiatum fines exercitum introduxit.
Cum adventu cognito, Sontiates magnis copiis coactis
equitatuque, quo plurimum valebant, in itinere agmen
nostrum adorti, primum equestre proelium commise-
runt; deinde equitatu suo pulso, atque inequentibus
nostris, subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in
insidiis conlocaverunt, ostenderunt. Hi nostros disjec-
tos adorti, proelium renovarunt.

21. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sontiates,
superioribus victoriis *freti*, in sua virtute totius Aquita-
niae salutem positam putarent; nostri autem quid sine
imperatore et sine reliquis legionibus adulescentulo
duce efficere possent, perspici cuperent: tandem con-
fecti vulneribus hostes terga vertere. 2 Quorum magno
numero interflecto, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sontia-
tum oppugnare coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus,
vineas turreisque egit. 3 Illi, *alias* eruptione temptata,
*alias* cuniculis ad aggerem vineasque actis (cujus rei
sunt longe peritissimi Aquitani, propterea quod multis
locis apud eos aerariae *†* secturaeque sunt), ubi diligent-
tia nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellexe-
runt, legatos ad Crassum mitunt, seque in deditione
ut recipiat petunt. Qua re impetrata, arma tradere
jussi, faciunt.

22. Atque in ea re omnium nostrorum intentis ani-
mis, alia ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam imperii tenebat, cum sexcentis devotis, quos illi soldui-rios appellant, — 2 quorum haec est condicio, uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum iis fruantur quorum se amicitiae dediderint; si quid his per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant, aut sibi mortem consciscant; neque adhuc hominum memoria repertus est quisquam, qui eo interflecto, cujus se amicitiae devo-visset, mori recusaret, — 8 cum his Adiatunnus, eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab ea parte munitionis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti eadem deditiovis condicione uteretur ab Crasso impetrvat.

23. Armis obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in fines Vocatium et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum vero barbari commoti, quod oppidum et natura loci et manum munitum paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum erat, expugnatum cognoverant, legatos quoque versus dimittere, conjurare, obsides inter se dare, copias parare coepe-runt. 2 Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitates legati, quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae finitumae Aquitaniae: inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur; quorum adventu, magna cum auctoritate et magna cum hominum multitudine bellum gerere conantur. 3 Duces vero ii deliguntur, qui una cum Q. Sertorio omnes annos fuerant, summamque scientiam rei militaris habere existima-bantur. Hi consuetudine populi Romani loca cape-re, castra munire, commeatibus nostros intercludere instituunt. 4 Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit,— suas copias propter exiguitatem non facile diduci, hostem et vagari et vias obsidere et castris satis praesidii relinquere, ob eam causam minus commode frumentum commeatumque sibi supportari, in dies hostium numerum augeri,— non cunctandum existimavit quin pugna decertaret. 5 Ἡὰρ ἐς ἄδ consilium delata, ubi
omnes idem sentire intellexit, posterum diem pugnae
constituit.

24. Prima luce, productis omnibus copiis, duplici
acie instituta, auxiliis in medium aciem conjectis, quid
hostes consilii caperent exspectabat. 2 Illi, etsi propter
multitudinem et veterem belli gloriam paucitatemque
nostrorum se tuto dimicatuos existimabant, tamen
tutius esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, commatu in-
tercluso, sineullo vulnere victoria potiri; et, si propter
inopiam rei frumentariae Romani sese recipere coep-
issent, impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis insirmiore
animo adoriri cogitabant. Hoc consilio probato, ab
ducibus productis Romanorum copiis, sese castris
tenebant. 8 Hac re perspecta, Crassus, cum sua cunc-
tatione atque opinione timoris hostes nostros milites
alacriores ad pugnandum efficissent, atque omnium
voces audirentur, exspectari diutius non oportere quin
ad castra iretur, cohortatus suos, omnibus cupientibus,
ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum alii fossas complerent, alii multis telis
conjectis defensores vallo munitionibusque depellerent,
auxiliaresque (quibus ad pugnam non multum Crassus
confidebat) lapidibus telisque subministrandis et ad
aggerem cessitibus comportandis speciem atque opini-
onem pugnantium praebent; 2 cum item ab hostibus
constant er ac non timide pugnaretur, talaque ex loco
superiore missa non frustra acciderent, equites circum-
itis hostium castris Crasso renuntiaverunt, non eadem
esse diligentia ab decumana porta castra munita,
facilemque aditum habere.

26. Crassus, equitum praefectos cohortatus ut mag-
nis praemiis polluctionibusque suos excitarent, quid
fieri velit ostendit. 2 Illi, ut erat imperatum, eductis iis
cohortibus quae praesidio castris relictae intritae ab
labore erant, et longiore itinere circumductis, ne ex
hostium castris conspici posse nt, omnium oculis menti-
busque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eas quas diximus munitiones pervenerunt, atque his prorutis, prius in hostium castris constiterunt quam plane ab his videri, aut quid rei gereretur cognosci posset. 

Tum vero, clamore ab ea parte auditto, nostri redintegratis viribus, quod plerumque in spe victoriae accidere consuevit, acrius impugnare coeperunt. 

Hostes undique circumventi, desperatis omnibus rebus, se per munitiones deicere et fuga salutem petere intenderunt. 

Quos equitatus apertissimis campis consectatus, ex milium quinquaginta numero, quae ex Aquitania Cantabrisque convenisse constabat, vix quarta parte relicta, multa nocte se in castra recipit.

27. Hac audita pugna, maxima pars Aquitaniae sese Crasso dedidit, obsidesque ulter misit; quo in numero fuerunt Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Ptianii, Vocates, Tarusates, Elusates, Gates, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzates, Cocosates: paucae ultimae nationes, anni tempore confisae, quod hiems suberat, hoc facere neglexerunt.

28. Eodem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope exacta jam aestas erat, tamen quod, omni Gallia pacata, Mori Menapiique supererant qui in armis essent, neque ad eum unquam legatos de pace misissent, arbitratus id bellum celeriter confici posse, eo exercitum adduxit; qui longe alia ratione ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coeperunt. 

Nam quod intellegebant maximas nationes, quae proelio contendissent, pulsas superatasque esse, continentessque silvas ac paludes habebant, eo se suaque omnia contulerunt. 

Ad quarum initium silvarum cum Caesar pervenisset, castraque munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolverunt, et in nostros impetum fecerunt. 

Nostri celeriter arma ceperunt, eosque in silvas repulerunt, et compluribus interfectis, longius impeditioribus locis securi, paucos ex suis deperdiderunt.
29. Reliquis deinceps diebus Caesar silvas caedere instituit, et ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem conlocabat, et pro vallo ad utrumque latus exstruebat. 

3Incredibili celeritate magno spatio paucis diebus confecto, cum jam pecus atque extrema impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ipsi densiores silvas peterent, ejusmodi sunt tempestatibus consecutae, uti opus necessario intermitteretur, et continuatio ne imbrum diutius sub pellibus milites contineri non possent. 

4Itaque vasstatis omnibus eorum agris, vicis aedificiisque incensis, Caesar exercitum reduxit, et in Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus quae proxime bellum fecerant, in hibernis conlocavit.
BOOK IV.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE GERMANS. — The Suevi (Swabians), the most powerful tribe of Germans: their customs and warlike habit. They expel the Usipetes and Tencteri, who in their turn invade Northern Gaul (1–4). Advancing to strengthen the Gauls, who are about to yield, Caesar demands that the Germans withdraw: after some parley, they furiously attack the Roman cavalry (5–12). Detaining their envoys, Caesar attacks their camp, defeats and drives them to the Rhine (13–15). He then resolves to cross the Rhine: description of the Bridge (16, 17). After a short campaign in Germany, he returns to Gaul (18, 19).

FIRST INVASION OF BRITAIN. — Motives for the expedition: the reconnaissance and preparations (20–22). Arrival in Britain: resistance of the Britons; valor of a Roman centurion. Caesar lands, and after a sharp battle drives back the natives, who sue for peace (23–27). Meanwhile the Roman cavalry are forced back by a storm, and the fleet is seriously injured; on which the Britons renew hostilities (28–32). They attack a foraging party: their mode of fighting from war-chariots. Gathering a large force, they attack the Roman camp: defeating them, Caesar makes peace and returns to Gaul to avoid the stormy season (33–36). Suppressing some disturbances, he quarters his forces among the Belgians for the winter (37, 38).

EA quae secuta est hieme, qui fuit annus Gnaeo Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germani et item Tencteri magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari quo Rhenus influxit. ² Causa transeundi fuit quod, ab Suevis complures annos exagitati, bello premebantur et agricultura prohibebantur. Suevorum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. ³ Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt. ⁴ Hi rursus in vicem anno post in
committendum existimavit. 2 Est enim hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et viatores etiam invitatos consistere cogant, et quid quisque eorum de quale re audierit aut cognoverit quaerant; et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant quasque ibi res cognoverint pronuntiare cogant. 3 His rebus atque auditionibus permoti de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos in vestigio patefere necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus serviant, et plerique ad voluntatem eorum dicta respondeant.

6. Qua consuetudine cognita, Caesar, ne graviori bello occurreret, maturius quam consuerat ad exercitum proficiscitur. 2 Eo cum venisset, ea quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit: missas legationes ab nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos, invitatosque eos uti ab Rheno discenderent, omniaque quae postulasset ab se fore parata. 3 Qua spe adducti, Germani latius vagabantur, et in fines Eburonum et Condusorum, qui sunt Treverorum clientes, pervenerant. 4 Principibus Galliae evocatis, Caesar ea quae cognoverat dissimulanda sibi existimavit, eorumque animis permulsis et confirmatis, equitatuque imperato, bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.

7. Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delectis, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat. 2 A quibus cum paucorum dierum iter abesset, legati ab iis venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio: 4 Germanos neque priores populo Romano bellum inferre, neque tamen recusare, si laccessantur, quin armis contendant, quod Germanorum consuetudo haec sit a majoribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque decrepabi. 3 Haec tamen dicere, venisse invitatos, ejectos domo; si suam gratiam Romanis velint, posse iis utiles esse amicos; vel sibi agros adtribuant, vel patientur eos tenere quos armis posse derint: sese unis Suevis concedere, quibus ne dii
quidem immortales pares esse possint; reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.’

8. Ad haec quae visum est Caesar respondit; sed exitus fuit orationis: ‘Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent; neque verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare; neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros, qui dari tantae praesertim multitudini sine injuria possint; sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum finibus considere, quorum sint legati apud se et de Suevorum injuriis querantur et a se auxilium petant: hoc se Ubiis imperaturum.’

9. Legati haec se ad suos relaturos dixerunt, et re deliberata post dieum tertium ad Caesarem reversuros: interea ne propius se castra moveret petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit. Cognoverat enim magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causa ad Ambivaritos trans Mosam missam: hos exspectari equites, atque ejus rei causa moram interponi arbitrabatur.

10. Mosa profuit ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur Vacalus † insulamque efficit Batavorum, in Oceanum influit, neque longius ab Oceano milibus passuum LXXX in Rhenum influit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Mediomatricum, Tribocorum, Treverorum citatus fertur; et, ubi Oceano adpropinquavit, in plures defuit partes, multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quorum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur, multisque capitis in Oceanum influit.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum XII milibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere ne
longius progredaretur orabant. 2 Cum id non impe-
trassent, petebant uti ad eos equites qui agmen ante-
cessissent praemitteret, eosque pugna prohiberet, 
sibique ut potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mitt-
tendi; quorum si principes ac senatus sibi jurejurando 
fidem fecisset, ea condicio quae a Caesare ferretur 
se usuros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi 
tridui spatium daret. 3 Haec omnia Caesar eodem 
illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut tridui mora interposita 
equites eorum, qui abessent, revertentur: tamen 
se se non longius milibus passuum quattuor aquisitionis 
causa processurum eo die dixit; 
huc postero die quam 
frequentissimi convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis 
cognosceret. 4 Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni 
equitatu antecesserant, mittit qui nuntiarent ne hostes 
proelio lacerarent; et, si ipsi lacerarentur, sustine-
rent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

12. At hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexer-
runt, quorum erat quinque milium numerus, cum ipsi 
non amplius octingentos equites haberent, quod ii qui 
frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam nondum reddie-
rant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod legati eorum paulo 
ante a Caesare discesserant atque is dies induitii erat 
ab his petitus, impetu facto celeriter nostros pertur-
baverunt; 2 rursus resistentibus, consuetudine sua ad 
pedes desiluerunt, sub fossis equis compluribusque nos-
tris dejectis, reliquos in fugam conjecerunt, atque ita 
perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent quam 
in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. 3 In eo proel-
lio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quattuor et 
septuaginta; in his vir fortissimus, Piso Aquitanus, 
amplissimo genere natus, cujus avus in civitate sua 
regnum obtinuerat, amicus ab senatu nostro appel-
latus. 4 Hic cum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium 
ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit, ipse equo vulnerato 
dejectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit: cum circum-
ventus, multis vulneribus acceptis, cecidisset, atque id frater, qui jam proelio exesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitato equo se hostibus obtulit atque interfec-tus est.

13. Hoc facto proelio, Caesar neque jam sibi legatos audiendos neque condiciones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab iis, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent: \(^2\) exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae augerentur equitatusque revertetur, summae dementiae esse judicabat; et cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum jam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consecuti sentiebat; quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum existimabat. \(^3\) His constitutis rebus et consilio cum legatis et quaestore communicato, ne quem diem pugnae praeterrimeret, opportunissima res accidunt, quod postridie ejus diei mane, eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani frequentes, omnibus principibus majoribusque natu adhibitis, ad eum in castra venerunt: \(^4\) simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causa, quod (contra atque esset dictum, et ipsi petissent) proelium pridie commisissent; simul ut, si quid possent, de indutiis fallingo impetra-rent. \(^5\) Quos sibi Caesar oblatus gavisus, illos retineri jussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit, equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi jussit.

14. Acie triplici instituta, et celeriter \(viiii\) milium itinere confecto, prius ad hostium castra pervenit quam quid ageretur Germani sentire possent. \(^2\) Qui omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri et discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato, perturbantur; copiasne adversus hostem ducere, an castra defendere, an fuga salutem petere praestaret. \(^3\) Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri, pristini diei perfidia incitati, in castra inruperunt. \(^4\) Quo loco qui
celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris re-
stiterunt, atque inter carros impedimentaque proelium
commiserunt: at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulie-
rumque — nam cum omnibus suis domo exisserant
Rhenumque transierant — passim fugere coepit; ad
quos coniectandos Caesar equitatum misit.

15. Germani, post tergum clamore audito, cum suos
interfici viderent, armis abjectis signisque militaribus
relictis, se ex castris ejecerunt, et cum ad confluentem
Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, reliqua fuga desperata,
magno numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt;
atque ibi timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis
oppressi perierunt. 2Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes,
perpaucis vulneratis, ex tanti belli timore, cum hostium
numerus capitum ccccxxx milium fuisset, se in castra
receperunt. 3Caesar iis, quos in castris retinuerat,
discendendi potestatem fecit. Illi supplicia crucia-
tusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant,
remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar
libertatem concessit.

16. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Caes-
sar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum: quorum
illa suin justissima, quod, cum videret Germanos tam
facile impelli ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus
eos timere voluit, cum intellegerent et posse et audere
populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. 2Accessit etiam,
quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et
Tentertorum, quam supra commemoravi praedandi
frumentandique causa Mosam transisse, neque proelio
interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in
fines Sugambrorum receperat, seque cum iis conjunx-
erat. 3Ad quos cum Caesar nuntios misisset, qui
postularent, eos qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intelissent
sibi dederent, responderunt: Populi Romani im-
perium Rhenum finire: si se invito Germanos in
Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui
quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet? 4 Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere orabant ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suevis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus reipublicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum. 5 Tantum esse nomen atque opinionem ejus exercitus, Ariovisto pulso et hoc novissimo proelio facto, etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione et amicitia populi Romani tuti esse possint. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

17. Caesar, his de causis quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire neque satis tutum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque populi Romani dignitatis esse statuebat. 2 Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis proponebatur propter latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum, aut aliter non traducendum exercitum existimabat. 3 Rationem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sesquipedalia, paulum ab imo praecuta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo pedum duorum inter se jungebat. 4 Haec cum machinationibus immissa in flumen defixerat, fistucisque adegerat,—non sublicae modo directe ad perpendicularum, sed prone ac fastigate, ut secundum naturam fluminis pro- cumberent,—his item contraria duo ad eundem modum juncta, intervallo pedum quadragenum, ab inferiore parte contra vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuebat. 5 Haec utraque insuper bipedalibus trabibus immissis, quantum eorum tignorum junctura distabat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extrema parte distinebantur; quibus disclusis, atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitudo atque ea rerum natura, ut, quo major vis aquae se incitavisset,
hoc artius inligata tenerentur. 6 Haec directa materia injecta contexebantur, ac longuriis cratibusque co- sternebantur; ac nihilo secius sublicae et ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique agebantur, quae pro ariete subjectae et cum omni opere conjunctae vim fluminis exciperent; 7 et aliae item supra pontem mediocri spatio, ut, si arborum trunci sive naves deiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae, his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur, neu ponti nocerent.

18. Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto, exercitus traducitur. Caesar, ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relicto, in fines Sugambrorum contendit. 2 Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt; quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit, obsidesque ad se adduci jubet. 3 Sugambri, ex eo tempore quo pons institui coeptus est, fuga comparata, hortantibus iis quos ex Tenceteris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserant, suaque omnia exportaverant, seque in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

19. Caesar, paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus, omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis, frumentisque suc- cisis, se in fines Ubiorum recepit; atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suevis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: 2' Suevos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri compersissent, more suo concilio habito, nuntios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores, suaque omnia in silvis deponerent, atque omnes, qui arma ferre possent, unum in locum convenirent; hunc esse delectum me- dium fere regionum earum, quas Suevi obtinerent; hic Romanorum adventum exspectare, atque ibi de- certare constituisse.' 3 Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus rebus iis confectis, quarum rerum causa tra- ducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum
ineret, ut Sugambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem pro-
fectum arbitrus, se in Galliam receptit, pontemque rescidit.

20. Exigua parte aestatis reliqua, Caesar, etsi in
his locis (quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit)
maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci
contendit:" quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus
nostris inde sumministrata auxilia intellegebat; et, si
tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen mag-
no sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset
et genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus
cognovisset; quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita.

Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quis-
quam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam
atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum
est. 4 Itaque vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque
quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quan-
tae nationes incolarent, neque quem usum belli habe-
rent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent
ad majorum navium multitudinem idonei portus,
reperire poterat.

21. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum fa-
ceret, idoneum esse arbitratus, Gaium Volusenum cum
navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat, ut exploratis
omnibus rebus ad se quam primum revertatur. 2 Ipse
cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde
erat brevissimus in Britanniam trajectus. Huc naves
undique ex finitimis regionibus, et quam superiore
aestate ad Veneticum bellum effecerat classem, jubet
convenire. 3 Interim, consilio ejus cognito, et per mer-
catores perlatu ad Britannos, a compluribus insulae
civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur
obsides dare, atque imperio populi Romani obtene-
rare. 4 Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus, hortatus-
que ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit; et cum iis una Commiium, quem ipse Atrebatibus superatis regem ibi constituerebat, cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quam sibi fidelem esse arbitrabatur, cujusque auctoritas in his regionibus magni habelabatur, mittit. 5 Huic imperat, quas possit adeat civitates; horteturque ut populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. 6 Volumnus, perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset renuntiat.

22. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperii bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos pollicerentur. 2 Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportune accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat, neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat, neque has tantularum rerum occupationes Britanniae anteponendas judicabat, magnum iis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recepit. 3 Navibus circiter LXXX onerariis coactis contractisque, quot satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quod praeterea navium longarum habelabat, quae estori, legatis praefectisque distribuit. 4 Huc accedebant XVIII onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco ab milibus passuum VIII vento tenebantur, quo minus in eundem portum venire possent: has equibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Titurio Sabino et L. Aurunculeio Cotta legatis in Menapios, atque in eos pagos Morinorum ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, ducendum dedit; P. Sulpiciunm Rufum legatum, cum eo praesidio quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere jussit.
23. His. constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertia fere vigilia solvit, equitesque in ulteriorum portum proredi et naves conscendere et se sequi jussit. A quibus cum paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora circiter diei quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expostas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci haec erat natura, atque ita montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adigi posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum locum arbitratus, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit. Interim, legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex Voluseno cognosset et quae fieri vellet ostendit, monuitque ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritumae res postularent (ut quae celebrem atque instabilem motum haberent), ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatis ancoris, circiter milia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

24. At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognoto, praemisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti, nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficilas, quod naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poterant; militibus autem, ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi onere armorum oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnadum; cum illi aut ex arido, aut paulum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expeditis, notissimis locis, audacter tela conicerent, et equos insuspectos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque hujus omnino generis pugnae imperiti, non eadem alacritate
ac studio quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consuerant nitebantur.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quorum et species erat barbaris inusitator, et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus, et remis incitari, et ad latus apertum hostium constituiri, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac summoveri jussit; quae res magnus usus nostris fuit.  
2Nam, et navium figura et remorum motu et insitato genere tormentorum permoti, barbari constiterunt; ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt.  
3Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret: 4 Desilite, inquit, milites, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum rei publicae atque imperatori officium praestitero. Hoc cum voce magna dixisset, se ex navi projicit, atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit.
5Tum nostri, cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. Hos item ex proximis [primis] navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus adpropinquerunt.

26. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamem, quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insitere neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se adgregabat, magnopere perturbabantur; 2 hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circumsisteabant, aliis ab latere aperto in universos tela coniciebant. 3 Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri jussit, et quos laborantes conspexerat, his subsidia submittebat. 4 Nostri simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque
eos in fugam dederunt; neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

27. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt; obsides daturos quaeque imperasset facturos esse pollicii sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebus venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. 2 Hunc illi e navi exgessum, cum ad eos oratoris modo Caesaris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula conjecerant: tum, proelio facto, remiserunt; et in petenda pace ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignoscetur petiverunt. 3 Caesar questus, quod, cum ultero in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit, obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquioribus locis arcessitam paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. 4 Interea suas remigrare in agros jussurunt, principesque undique convenire, et se civitatesque suas Caesaris commendare coeperunt.

28. His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves XVIII, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. 2 Quae cum adpropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, et nulla earum cursum tenere posset; sed aliae eodem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est proprius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo deicerentur; quae tamen, ancoris jactis, cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum pro vectae continentem petierunt.

29. Eadem nocte accidit ut esset luna plena, qui
First Invasion of Britain.

Caesar

dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus compleverat; et onerarias, quae ad ancoras erant delicatae, tempestas afflictabat, neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur. 2 Compluribus navibus fractis, reliquae cum essent—funibus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis amissis—ad navigandum inutiles, magna (id quod necesse erat accidere) totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. 3 Neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent; et omnia deérant quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui; et, quod omnibus constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

30. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convenerant, inter se conlocuti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deésse intellexerent, et paucitatem militum ex castorum exiguitate cognoscerent,—quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat,—optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione facta, frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere, et rem in hiemem producere; quod his superatis, aut reditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque rursus conjuratione facta, paulatim ex castris discedere ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

31. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum, et ex eo quod obsides dare inter miserant, fore id quod accidit suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparat. 2 Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in castra conferebat, et quae gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur; et quae ad eas res erant usui ex con-
tinenti comportari jubebat. 3Itaque cum summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset effecit.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus bellorum suspicione interposita, —cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, —ii qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant Caesari nuntiaverunt pulverem majorem quam consuetudo ferret in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. 2Caesar, id quod erat suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consiliis, cohortes quae in stationibus erant secum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem cohortes succedere, reliquis armari et confestim sese subsequi jussit. 3Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi, atque aegre sustinere, et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela conici animadvertit. 4Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes huc nostros esse venturos, noctu in silvas delituerant; tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo occupatos, subito adorti, paucis intersectis, reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbav-erant, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

33. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnes partes perequitant, et tela coniciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant; et cum se inter equitum turmas insinua-verunt, ex essedis desiliunt, et pedibus proeliantur. 2Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt, atque ita currus conlocant, uti si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. 3Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant; ac tantum usu cotidiano et exercitazione efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incita-tos equos sustinere, et brevi moderari ac flectere, et
per temonem percurrere, et in jugo insistere, et se inde in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

34. Quibus rebus, perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae, tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tuit: namque ejus adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se extimore receperunt. 2 Quo facto, ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratu, suo se loco continuit, et brevi tempore intermisso in castra legiones reduxit. 8 Dum haec geruntur, nostri omnibus occupatais, qui erant in agris reliqui discesserunt. Secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent, et hostem a pugna prohiberent. 4 Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt. paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt, et quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus, celeriter magna multitudine peditatus equitatusque coacta, ad castra venerunt.

35. Caesar, etsi idem quod superioribus diebus acciderat fore videbat, — ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent,— tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrebas (de quo ante dictum est) secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. 2 Commissio proelio, diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt, ac terga verterunt. 8 Quos tanto spatio securi, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt; deinde, omnibus longe lateque aedificiis incensis, se in castra receperunt.

36. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperaverat, duplicavit, eaque in continentem adduci jussit; quod, propinquaque die aequinoc-iti, infirmis navibus hiemi navigationem subiciendam non existimabat. 2 Ipse, idoneam tempestatem nactus,
paulo post medium noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt: sed ex iis onerariae duae eosdem quos reliquì portus capere non potuerunt, et paulo infra delatae sunt.

37. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter trecenti, atque in castra contenderit, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti, primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt, ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere jussarent. ² Cum illi, orbe facto, sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter milia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata, Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt, atque amplius horis quattuor fortissime pugnaverunt, et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex his occiderunt. ³ Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abjectis armis terga verterunt, magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

38. Caesar postero die T. Labienum legatum, cum iis legionibus quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum, propter siccitates paludum, quo se recipierent non haberent (quo superiore anno perfugio fuerant usi), omnes fere in potestatem Labieni pervenerunt. ² At Q. Titurius et L. Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. ³ Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Ed duoae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt, reliquaeg neglexerunt. His rebus gestis, ex litteris Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu decreta est.
NOTES.

As Cæsar, though in many respects a book for advanced students, is often the first Latin classic put into the learner's hands, it may be well to give a few hints as to the method of study.

1. Before beginning to read, the learner should be familiar with the forms of Inflection, the simpler rules of Agreement and Construction of Cases (Gr. § 75, especially Rules 1–10, 14, 21, 26), and the Definitions contained in § 45.

2. In every sentence, begin by finding the leading verb with its subject, and its direct object if it has one; and so make the main thought clear before trying to bring in the subordinate parts.

3. Always look first at the inflectional terminations, so that the number, case, tense, person, &c., will instantly occur upon seeing a Latin word. The great fault of most learners is carelessness about inflections. It is much better to guess at the meaning of the word and know its form, than to neglect the form and be careful of the meaning.

4. In the use of Notes, it is generally best not to consult them till you have fairly tried without their aid; but, even if the sentence seems quite clear, never neglect to consult them afterwards. Sometimes they will give you information; generally they will put the matter in a new or clearer light.

5. Until you are quite familiar with the Syntax, consult all the references to the Grammar.* These at first are more numerous and elementary; but further on — especially in "Indirect Discourse" — they should be carefully studied, with the examples, and the more difficult points explained by the teacher.

6. Many references at first are to the short Rules for Parsing (Grammar, pp. 210, 211): it may be well to have most of these Rules quite familiar before going into the details of Syntax.

7. Lastly, remember that Cæsar was a man of action and great intelligence; that he always had a plain story to tell, and knew just what he meant to say. He is often awkward; he may be crafty, unscrupulous, insincere; but he is never obscure. And one should never be satisfied until he sees, or thinks he sees, exactly what his meaning is.

* The references are to Allen and Greenough's and Gildersleeve's Latin Grammars.
BOOK FIRST.

HELVETIAN WAR. — Early in the year 58 B.C., the whole population of Helvetia (northern Switzerland), amounting to about 360,000, attempted to pass by an armed emigration through the heart of Gaul, in order to settle somewhere near the shore of the Bay of Biscay, possibly with the hope of being masters of the whole country. They were hemmed in by the great natural barriers of the Alps, the Lake of Geneva, and the Jura mountains on the south and west; and pressed on the north by great hordes of Germans, who kept up a continual border war. Their fields were scant, their harvests insufficient, their people hardy and fearless. Their ambitious chief, Orgetorix, had prepared them so well for this enterprise, that his flight and death — when he was charged with guilty conspiracy, and put on trial for his life — caused no delay. The attempt was held in check by Cæsar, during a fortnight's parley, till sufficient earthworks had been thrown up along the Rhone to withstand their advance; the advance was then made in force along the narrow pass between that river and the Jura. But the Helvetians did not succeed in getting more than fifty miles beyond the frontier, when they were overtaken by Cæsar; who by a few light skirmishes and two bloody battles forced them back to their own territories, with the loss of more than 200,000 lives. This brief campaign, lasting only from March to June, is called the Helvetian war.

GALLIA, that is, independent Gaul, excluding the Roman province (Provincia) in the south-east, as well as Gallia Cisalpina, now northern Italy. It occupied the territory of France, including to the Rhine boundary, with most of the Netherlands and Switzerland (see Map).

omnis (predicate), as a whole.—est divisa, is divided; the adjective use of the participle, not the perfect passive (§ 72, 2, b; G. 439, r).

Belgæ, probably of the Cymric branch, allied to the Britons and the modern Welsh: they inhabited the modern Belgium, Picardy, and Champagne, and were considerably mixed with Germans (see ii. 1).—Aquitani, of the Spanish Iberians (the modern Basques), inhabiting the districts of Gascony and Guipure (see iii. 20).—Celtæ, probably of the Gaelic branch, represented by the Irish and the Highland Scotch.

aliam: alteram would be more usual, as meaning the second in the list.—tertiam qui . . . appellantur, the third [those inhabit] who are called, &c. It would read in full, tertiam [partem ii incolum] qui, etc.—ipsorum linguā, in their own tongue.—nostri, sc. linguā.

* Understand,
Galli: the word GAL is said to mean battle; hence GALA, warrior.

lingüā (abl. of specification, § 54, 9, R. 26; G. 397) ... different, differ in language, customs, and laws. The language of the Aquitani was Basque; of the Gauls proper, Celtic; of the Belgians, probably, Celtic mixed with German. (Observe that when three words, as lingua, etc., are used together, by Latin use there should either be no conjunction at all, as here, or one should be used with all except the first.)

Inter se = from one another: the preposition inter may be used to show any reciprocal relation, see § 19, 3, d. 99.

Dividit: the verb is singular, because the two rivers make one boundary (§ 49, 1, b; G. 202, r1); as we should say, is divided by the line of the Seine and Marne. 29.

2. horum, part. gen. with fortissimi, § 50, 2 (R. 10); G. 366.—propterea quod, because; lit. because of this, that, &c. These adverbial phrases, which are numerous in Latin, should always be carefully analyzed, though generally rendered by a single word in English. (Beginners constantly confound propterea, for that reason, with praeterea, besides.)

cultu, civilisation, as shown by outward signs; humanitate, refinement, of mind or feeling.

provinciae: the province of Gallia Narbonensis, organized about B.C. 120. Its chief cities were Massilia (Marseilles), an old Greek free city, and the capital, Narbo (Narbonne), a Roman colony. The name Provincia has come down in the modern Provence.

minime sēpe comment, least often penetrate. The verb commeo means, especially, to go back and forth in the way of traffic. The main line of trade lay across the country, by the river Loire.—mercatores: these were traders or pedlers, mostly from the seaport of Massilia; they travelled with pack-horses, mules, and waggons. A very common article of traffic (as with our Indian traders) was intoxicating drinks,—wines from the southern coast; which, especially, as Caesar says, “tend to debauch the character.” These people, it is said, would give the traders a boy for a jar of wine.

ea, object of important.—effeminandos, § 73, 2 (R. 41); G. 428.—Germanis, dat. § 51, 6 (R. 15); G. 356 (compare d; r4). The name is said to mean men of war.

trans Rhenum: the Rhine was, in general, the boundary between Gauls and Germans; though, as we shall see, a few German tribes had settled on the hither side.

continenter (adverb from the participle of contineo, hold together), incessantly; strictly, without any interruption.
3. *qua de causa, and for this reason, (§ 45, 6; G. 612): in* apposition with *quod ... contendunt.*

**Helvetii**, here, it will be noticed, reckoned as Gauls.—*praecedunt, excel;* lit. *walk before.*

*proelis,* abl. of means; *finibus,* abl. of separation. — *cum prohibent, while they keep them off (pro-habeo).* Observe that this conjunction is not properly spelled *quum,* on account of the old rule forbidding *u* to follow *u* or *v* in the same syllable (§ 1, 2, 6); but *cum* or *quom. — ipsi* (emphatic), *themselves.*

4. *eorum una pars, one division of them* (the Gauls), the people being put for the country. — *quam ... dictum est, which (it has been [already] said) the Gauls hold.* [Notice that in direct discourse it would be *Galli obtinent:* the subject-nom. is changed to acc., and the indic. to the infinit. after the verb of *saying, dictum est,* § 57, 8, e (R. 39); G. 527.] Here *quam* is the object and *Gallos* the subject of *obtinerent,* while the clause is the subject of *dictum est* (§ 70, 2, a; G. 528). — *obtinerent* (ob-teneo), not *obtain,* but *occupy:* strictly, *hold against* all claimants; what is called in law *adverse possession.* *Ob* in composition almost always has the sense of *opposing* or *coming in the way of* any thing.

*ab Sequanis, on the side of, &c. — vergit,* etc., *slopes to the north;* that is, the highlands (*Cevennes*) are along the southern boundary, and the rivers flow in their main course northerly.

*septentriones* (*septem triones,* "the seven plough-oxen"), *i.e.* the constellations of the great and little Bear. The word is used both in the singular (as a compound) and in the plural.

3. *ad Hispaniam, next to Spain,* i.e. the Bay of Biscay.

2. *nobilissimus* (root *gno, know*), of *highest birth.* Popular revolutions had, among the Gauls as among the Greeks and Romans, mostly dispossessed the old chiefs, or kings; and they had established an annual magistrate called *Vergobret* (ch. 20). But the heads of the ruling families would naturally be ambitious to recover what they could of the old class power; and Orgetorix is represented as aspiring to create a monarchy in Gaul.

**Orgetorix:** this name, by a probable derivation, means the *slaver.*

**Messala, etc.** (§ 84, 1): this was B.C. 61, three years before Cæsar's first campaign in Gaul. The construction of *consulibus* is abl. absolute, § 54, 10, 6 (R. 35); G. 408; not so formal as *while Messala and Piso were consuls,* but merely in their *consulship.* This was the usual way of denoting the year.

*conjunctionem, a league,* sworn to fidelity by oath (*juro). — nobilitatis:* from the account given in ch. 4, we see how immense was the class power still held by the nobles.
The Helvetic War.

civitati persuasit, § 51, 2, a (R. 16); G. 345: the direct object of persuasit is the clause ut ... exirent (§ 70, 3, a; G. 546, R 1); compare id, two lines below. All citizens, probably, had a right to vote; but their votes were easily "persuaded" by such means as Orgetorix possessed. (For the sequence of tenses in exirent, see § 58, 10, R.; G. 510).

per facile (predicate with esse, while its subject is the infinitive clause with potiri): that it was quite easy, since they exceeded all men in valor, to win the empire of all Gaul. — esse, indirect disc., depending on some such word as he said (§ 70, 2, c; G. 652, R').

cum praestarent, subjunctive after cum, meaning since, § 62, 2, e; G. 587, 4. — imperio, § 54, 6, d (R. 31); G. 405. The word properly means, authority held by force of arms.

2. hoc facilis, all the easier: § 54, 6, e (R. 33); G. 400. — id, obj. of persuasit (§ 51, 2, c; G. 344): we should say, persuaded them of it. — quod (adverbal accus.), correlative of hoc: the more easily, because, &c. — loci naturae, by the nature of the country. — continentur, are held in.

una ex parte, on one side: as in undique, on (lit. from) all sides, hinc, on this side, &c. The effect on the senses is supposed to come from the direction referred to.

3. his rebus, by these means. — fletat (imperf) = it was coming about more and more (§ 58, 3; G. 222): the subject ut ... possent (see § 70, R).

qua ex parte, on which ground: — some editions have qua de causa. — homines (a sort of apposition) = being (as they were) men eager for war. — bellandi, § 50, 3, b (R. 12); G. 374.

adfectebantur = afficiébantur: for the rule as to assimilation of consonants, compare § 1, 3, g. In this edition the unchanged form of the preposition is usually preferred.

4. pro, in proportion to. — multitudo: their numbers, including some small dependent populations, were 368,000 (see ch. 29). — angustos fines = too narrow limits: those here given are about 40 miles each way larger than the present boundaries of Switzerland.

milia passuum, miles (1000 paces), the regular way of stating this measure, mília being acc. of extent of space (R. 23), and passuum partit. genitive. The passus was the stretch from heel to heel, i.e. from where the heel is raised to where it is set down again; and is reckoned at five Roman feet. A Roman mile (mille passuum) was about 400 feet less than ours; it measures the distance which a soldier would march in "a thousand paces."

patebant: throughout the latter part of this chapter notice the use of the imperfect of description or general statement, compared with the perfect of simple narrative in persuasit, above, and constituerunt, &c., below.
3. *permoti*: this word seems to show something more than mere "persuasion" on the part of Orgetorix, cf. ch. 21. — *quae pertinerent*, dependent clause in indir. disc., § 66, 1, d; G. 653.

Observe that Latin employs different moods for the two forms of quotation, one for what is called Direct and the other for Indirect Discourse. Whenever the writer or speaker takes the responsibility of the statement, it is put in the Indicative, with commands in the Imperative. These are the moods of DIRECT DISCOURSE. When any thing is told not simply as a fact, but that *some one thought or said so*, the leading statement is put in the Infinitive, and all subordinate parts (including commands) in the Subjunctive. These are the moods of INDIRECT DISCOURSE. The narrative in this chapter will require a careful attention to the above distinction. Let the learner here study attentively the introductory paragraph and Remark of § 67 (G. 651). In Cæsar, all the speeches are given in the form of narrative; that is, in Indirect Discourse.

*comparare . . . confirmare*: these infinitives are construed as the *direct object* of the leading verb *constituerunt*, § 57, 8, c (R. 38); G. 424.

*quae pertinerent*, subjunctive because depending on the infinitive *comparare*: § 66, 2 (R. 47); G. 666.

*quam maximum*, as great as possible (§ 17, 5, b; G. 317. — *jumentorum, beasts of burden, properly, yoke-animals* (root *yu*, kindred with *vug* in *jungo, jugum*); *carrorum, two-wheeled carts*, suited to the narrow and rough roads.

2. *conficiendas* (FAC), *completing*: *con* in composition generally means *together*; or, as here, may be simply intensive. — *lege*: probably passed in a public assembly, which is what a Roman would understand by *lex*. — *in tertium annum confirmant, fix for the third year.*

3. *sibi susceptit, took on himself*. Observe the force of *sub*, as if he put his shoulders *under the load*. — *civitates, clans*, such as the *Ædui, Sequani, &c.*, — more than 80 in all, — whose territory had no local name, but was known only by that of the clan, which was sovereign and wholly independent, except for voluntary alliances (see ch. 30). The name *Gallia* itself — as was said of Italy a few years ago — was only "a geographical expression," implying no political sovereignty.

*persuadet, prevails on*: *suadet* would be, simply, *urges*. — *obtinuerat, had held*. — *amicus*, an honorary title given by the Roman Senate to friendly powers. — *ut . . . occuparet, to lay hands on*. This clause is the object of *persuadet* (§ 70, 3, a; G. 576, R); for the sequence of tenses, see § 58, 10, b; G. 510, R), which in English would be expressed by the infinitive. — *ante, here an adverb; in English we should say before him.*
Dumnorix (dat. after persuadet, p. 4), Dumnorix, a younger brother, restless, ambitious, and strongly attached to the old aristocracy of the clan: therefore a bitter enemy of the Roman supremacy. He afterwards headed a desertion of Cæsar’s cavalry, just before the second invasion of Britain, but was pursued and killed (v. 6).

4. Divitiāci: this Ēduan chief was of the order of Druids; he had been in Rome, where he made the acquaintance of Cicero and other eminent Romans. He was thoroughly impressed with the power and superiority of the Romans, and was a faithful friend and ally of Cæsar.

The name is by some thought to be a Druid title. The party of Druids, represented by Divitiacus and Liscus (chap. 16), was the popular party, strong especially in the large towns: it was opposed by the old clan feeling kept up by military or tribal chiefs (principes), such as Orgetorix and Dumnorix. The former, or popular party was headed by the Ēdui, the latter, or aristocratic, by the Sequani and Arverni. The Druids were a religious or priestly order, jealous of the aristocracy (equites) of the tribe or clan, which represented what may be called the patriotic or “native-Celtic” party (see vi. 12–17). A knowledge of this division helps clear up many of the events of Cæsar’s campaigns. Divitiacus was a name well known at Rome. A later writer gives an interesting picture of the Gallic chief standing and leaning on his shield while he made his appeal before the senate, declining (as a suppliant) the seat which was in courtesy offered him.

qui, i. e. Dumnorix. — principatum, highest rank, as distinct from political power. — plebi acceptus, a favorite with the people. — ut idem comaretur, to make the same attempt (lit. attempt the same thing): i. e. put down the constitutional authority, and establish a rule of military chiefs.

4. perfacile factu (§ 74, 2, r; G. 437, R1), very easy to do: in predicate agreement with conata perficere, which is subj. of esse. — illis probat, undertakes to show them, i. e. to Casticus and Dumnorix (conative present, § 58, 2, b; G. 218, R7).

non esse dubium quin, there is no doubt (he says) that: here esse is infin. of indirect disc.; for the construction of quin, see § 65, 1, b; G. 551. — Galliae, partitive gen. with plurimum. — plurimum possent = were the strongest. — confirmat, asserts (confidently).

5. oratione, plea, or argument (abl. of means). — fidem et jussurandum, i. e. assurance confirmed by oath. (This way of expressing a single idea by two nouns instead of a noun and adjective is called hendiadys; and is very common in Latin, especially in poetry.)

regno occupato (abl. absolute, expressing condition, see § 54,
Notes: Cæsar.

10, b, r; G. 408, r), in case they should get in their hands the royal power:—si occupaverimus.—per tres populos, i.e. Helvetii, Aedu, and Sequani; a league between these, they hope, will secure their power over all Gaul.—posse, equivalent to a future infinitive (see § 58, 11, f; G. 240).—Galliae, governed by potiri; see § 54, 6, d; G. 405.

4. ea res, this thing (i.e. conspiracy). The word res would often be best rendered by some more specific word in English, as action, fact, event, estate, &c., according to the passage. The Helvetians were prepared to emigrate in a body, and subdue the rest of Gaul; but not to surrender to Orgetorix the power thus acquired. His act was treason,—a conspiracy within a conspiracy.

moribus suis, according to their custom (abl. of manner).—ex vinolis (= vinculis; so hindrance for hinderance in English), out of chains, i.e. standing in chains. A Latin idiom, cf. ex equis, on horseback.—causam dicere, to plead his case, a technical expression for being brought to trial.

damnatum (sc. eum, object of sequi), if condemned. (In this sentence, the subject of oportebat is the clause damnatum . . . sequi; the subject of sequi is poenam; and ut . . . cremaretur is in apposition with poenam, defining the punishment: § 70, 4, f; G. 559.) Translate, it must needs be that the penalty should overtake him, if condemned, of being burned with fire. (For the ablative in i, see § 11, i. 3, b²; G. 60, 3, a. This form is often used by Cæsar and earlier writers.)

2. die constituta, on the day appointed, § 55, 1 (R. 34); G. 392; for the gender of die see § 13, 2, n.—causa dictionis, of the pleading of the case (it would be more usual to say dicenda): doubled genitives used in this way are said to be more frequent with Cæsar than with any other writer (§ 50, 2, R⁴; G. 361, R³).

ad judicium, near the [place of] judgment. —familiam, clansmen: by Roman use, this would mean slaves; but it is more probable that it here means all who bore his name, or regarded him as their chief. —ad . . . decem milia, to [the number of] 10,000.—clientes, retainers, volunteer or adopted followers; obseratos, debtors, the only class of slaves that seems to have been known in Gaul, see vi. 13, 2.—per eos, by their means (§ 54, 4, b; G. 403).

3. cum . . . conaretur, when the state attempted: relative time, § 62, 2, b; G. 582.—neque . . . suspicio (the true spelling of this word), and the suspicion is not wanting. The negative neque (= and not) is oftener best translated by dividing in this way.

quin . . . conscius (conscisco), that he decreed death to himself (his own death), i.e. committed suicide. Observe that ipse, self, agrees in Latin rather with the subject; not, as in English, with the
object. "Orgetorix (it will be noticed) was never in the power of the magistrates, he was not put in chains, nor did he die in prison."

5. nihil minus, often written in one word, as in English, nevertheless. — constiterant, had resolved: observe the pluperfect, as following the historical present. — ut ... exsant, in apposition with id: as we should say, "namely, to go forth."

ubi arbitrati sunt, when they judged: observe the regular use of the perfect indicative with ubi, postquam, etc., § 62, 2, a; G. 563. — rem, enterprise. — oppida, towns, fortified and capable of defence; vicus, villages, i.e. groups of houses about a single spot. (In a city, vicus is a street, considered as the houses occupied; via is the travelled way between them.) The villages and houses were burned, partly to cut off hope of return; partly to prevent their being occupied by their enemies, the Germans. — incendunt, set fire to.

praeterquam quod, excepting what: observe that in this phrase quam means than, and praeter is the comparative of praæ: lit. further than what. — comburunt, burn up. — molit a cibaria, milled bread-corn: every man to take his own supply for three months' use. — domum, § 55, 3, b; G. 410, following reditio nis.

2. Rauraci, etc., German tribes from Baden, just north of the Rhine. — uti, the older form for ut, common in Cæsar. — una cum ils, along with them (lit. by one way).

Boio (from whom the name Bohemia is derived): a Celtic tribe, whom the great German advance had cut off from their kinspeople towards the west, and who were now wandering homeless, some of them within the limits of Gaul.

5. Noriorum, Norssam (see map), the name sometimes given in modern times to the district about Nuremberg, some distance further north. — receptos ... ascisount: in English, in a sentence like this, we should use a separate verb instead of the participle (§ 72, 3; G. 667). Translate, they receive the Boi into their own number (ad se), and vote them in as allies to themselves.

6. omnino, in all, i.e. only. — itinera, itineribus: observe the form of this relative sentence (common in Cæsar), which gives the antecedent noun in both clauses. It is usually omitted in one or the other (see § 48, n): in English, almost always in the relative clause; in Latin, quite as often in the other. — possent (potential subj. § 60, 2, a; G. 602), i.e. they might go out [if they desired].

Sequana, i.e. the region now called Franche Comté, north of the Rhone: they gave their name to the river Seine (Sequana), living near its upper waters. — inter ... Rhodanum: the pass now guarded by the Fort l'Ecluse, about nineteen Roman (eighteen
and a half English) miles below Geneva. Between Geneva and this point the banks are steep on both sides the river; but with many spots of lower ground where a passage could easily be made. The Rhone at this part was the boundary of the Roman province. The choice was between crossing the river and proceeding along its northern bank.

vix, qua, etc., where carts could scarcely be hauled in single file (see § 18, 2, a; G. 95). — autem (a mild adversative), now.

2. molto facillium, much easier in itself; but it required them to crush the Roman legion at Geneva, and force their way through about fifty miles of territory occupied by the Roman arms. — prop-terea quod, see note to ch. 1. — nuper pacati erant, had been lately subdued (reduced to peace). A rebellion "of despair," B.C. 61, had been subdued by C. Pomptinus.

locis, loc. abl. (§ 55, 3, f; G. 385). — vado, by ford (wading, vadendo).

Genua (Geneva) is nearest to the modern German name (Genf); it is also spelled Genava and Geneva. The name is said to mean a mouth.

3. esse persuasuros [esse] (notice that in the future infinitive, used in indirect discourse, esse is usually omitted; in direct disc. it would be persuadebimus), they thought they should persuade: its object is Allobrogibus.—bono animo — well disposed: five years before, their envoys in Rome had intrigued with Catiline's agents, whom they at length betrayed (see Cicero, Cat. iii. § 22).

4. a. d. v. Kal. Apr. (see § 56, 1, f; G. App.), nominally, March 28 (§ 54, 3; G. App.). According to the astronomer Leverrier, the true date was March 24, or just after the spring equinox: others have made it as late as April 16. The calendar was in a state of great confusion at this time, and till Cæsar's reform, 12 years later. (For a character of the consuls Piso and Gabinius, see Cicero's speech on his own exile, Pro Sestio: "Select Orations."

7. Cæsari: he was at this time at Rome, having laid down his consulship, preparing to set out for his province. Every consul was entitled to the governorship of a province for one year after his term of office, and by a special law Cæsar's province had been conferred for a term of five years. This news hastened his movements.

id, in appos. with eos . . . conari (the real subject of esset), that they were attempting to force a march, &c. — maturat, hastens; travelling, his biographers say, 100 miles in a day. The subject, Cæsar, is here omitted with the leading verb, being expressed in the relative clause.

quam maximis potest itineribus (§ 17, 5, c; G. 317): potest is usual with Cæsar in this phrase, which is elliptical. In full it
would be, *tam magnis quam maximis*, as great as the greatest; i.e. the greatest possible (ch. 10*).

*ab urbe*: this word, unless some other place is indicated, always means Rome, the city. Caesar was near, but not in the city, not being permitted to enter it while holding the military authority (*imperium*) of proconsul.—*ulteriorem*, i.e. beyond the Alps. The northern part of modern Italy was still called *Gallia Cisalpina*, and was a part of Caesar’s province.

2. *provinciae* (dat.) *imperat*, levies on the province. The “entire province” probably included Dalmatia as well as Cisalpine Gaul, both being in Caesar’s jurisdiction.

3. *certiores facti sunt*, were informed.—*qui dicerent, who were* [instructed] to say (§ 64, 1; G. 544).—*sibi . . . liceat*: observe carefully the construction of the indirect discourse (§ 67, R. and 1; G. 65): in direct discourse it would be, “*Nobis est in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propere qua* quod ait iter *habemus* nullum; *rogamus, ut tua* voluntate id nobis facere liceat.” A little attention to this in the beginning will relieve this very frequent construction in Caesar of all difficulty.

*sibi*, dat. of possession (§ 51, 3; G. 349); of *esse*, the subj. is the clause *iter . . . facere*, while the whole passage *sibi . . . liceat*, is the object of *dicerent*. Render, *that they had [it] in mind to make, &c.—aliud . . . nullum*, like the English, *other passage had they none.*—*rogare*: of this verb the subject is *se*, understood; and the object is the clause *ut . . . liceat* (§ 70, 3, a; G. 546, R*): they begged it might be allowed them to do this with his consent.

4. *L. Cassium . . . occisum* [esse], object of *memoria tenebat*, as a phrase of knowing (§ 57, 8, e; G. 527). This defeat happened B.C. 107, in the terrible invasion of the Cimbri or Teutons, the Helvetians being their allies. “The army of Cassius was one of six swept away by these barbarians.”

6. *sub jugum, under the yoke* (hence the word *subjugate*). 

The *jugum* was made by sticking two spears in the ground, and laying another across them above. To pass under this was equivalent to *laying down of arms* by a modern army.

*concedendum* [esse], depending on *putabat*, impersonal (see § 73, 1, R; G. 427, R*): *thought that no concession should be made*, lit., “that it must not be yielded.”

*homines*, subj. of *temperaturos* [esse], depending on *existimabat*: *he judged that men of hostile temper* (abl. of quality, § 54, 7; G. 402), *if the opportunity were given* (abl. absolute) of *making a march* (gerundive, § 73, 3, a; G. 429) through the province, would not (neque) refrain from wrong and mischief.

5. *dum . . . convenientem* (§ 62, 2, d; G. 574), until the men
should muster. — *diem se sumpturum [esse], he would take time.*

si quid . . . reverterentur (subj. for imperat. § 67, 3; G. 664): in
direct discourse, *if you wish any thing* (said he), *return on the*
13th of April.

8. *ea legione, with that legion* (abl. of instrum.). In this sen-
tence, observe how all the qualifying clauses come first, and the
direct objects *murum, fossam*, come next before the leading
verb *perdicit* (§ 76, 1); while each relative belongs to *the verb*
*which comes next after it* unless another relative intervenes,—a
very convenient rule in analyzing a long and difficult sentence.

*decem novem, nineteen*, following the windings of the river
(see note, ch. 6). — *murum*: this rampart, or earthwork, was on
the south side of the river, leaving the passage undisputed along the
northern bank.

The banks of the Rhone in this part are generally rugged and steep,
with sharp ravines; there are only four short reaches—a little over
three miles in all—in this course of eighteen miles requiring defences,
and only two places where the river is fordable. Some remains of
Cæsar’s works can still be traced, according to the French engineers
who surveyed the ground under the orders of Napoleon III. Accord-
ing to Cæsar’s statement, the work was continuous (this is the meaning
of *perdicit*). We may assume, however, that the earth-wall was not
necessarily built up to the full height (16 feet) the whole distance, but
was often formed by digging away from the natural bank to form the
trench. At the same time, we must remember that the Roman soldiers
were accustomed to an amount of labor with the spade which no army
at the present day would submit to.

2. *castella, bastions or redoubts*, along the line of the works.—
*quo facilius possit, that he may the more easily*: the usual con-
struction (§ 64, 1, a; G. 545, 2). — *se invito* (abl. abs.), against
his will.

3. *negat se posse, says he cannot.* — *si consentur*, future con-
dition in indirect discourse: direct, it would be *si conabimini.*
— *prohibiturum [se esse] ostendit, shows that he shall stop*
them (pointing to his works).

4. *dejecti, down-cast*: *de in composition generally has the*
meaning *down.* — *nonnumquam, sometimes* (§ 41, 2, e, r.). —
*si . . . posseunt*, an indirect question (§ 67, 2, f; G. 603), depending
on *conati*: *trying if they could break through.* — *conatu*, abl. of
separation, following *destiterunt, desisted.*

9. *Sequinis invitis* (abl. abs. of condition), *in case the Sequani*
should refuse. — *sua sponte, by their own influence*: a rare mean-
ing of this phrase, which is generally, *of their own accord.* — *eo*
deprecatore (abl. of instrum.), by his means as advocate.—impretrarent, they might obtain [it].

2. gratiā, personal influence; largitio, lavish gifts and hospitalities, like those of old chiefs of the clan.—duxerat: this word is used of the man who marries a wife, i.e. he leads her to his own house; of the woman it is said, nubit viro (dat.), i.e. she puts on the veil for him.—novis rebus (dat. § 51, 2, b; G. 346, R), revolution, change in the state.—habere obstrictos, to keep close bound.

3. impetrat has for obj. ut . . . partiantur; and perfect, uti . . . dant: obtains (from their good will) that they will allow the Helvetii to go, &c., and brings it about that they exchange hostages.

7. 10. renuntiatur, word is brought back, i.e. from messengers sent to ascertain: the subject is the clause Helvetii esse, etc. (see note 7).—Tolosatium, of Tolosa, the modern Toulouse.

The Santones give the name to the modern province of Saintonge, on the Bay of Biscay. This is so far from the borders of the Province, as to show that Cæsar was only searching for a pretext; for of course he had no authority to interfere, unmasked, with a passage through the territory of the Sequani. One motive in writing the Commentaries, we must remember, was to produce political effect in Rome.

2. futurum [esse] ut haberet, etc., it would be to the great peril of the province (§ 70, r) that he would have: nearly = se habiturum [esse], a kind of periphrastic future (§ 58, 11, f; G. 240) carried into the past by sequence of tenses (intellegebat).—locis (loc. abl.) patentibus, in an open country: the S. W. part of Gaul is a broad river valley, giving easy access to the province.

3. munitioni praecit, he put in command of the fort.—Labienum: this was Cæsar’s best officer, a prominent and influential politician, of strongly democratic sympathies. He served Cæsar faithfully through the Gallic wars, but when the Civil war broke out, he joined what he conceived to be the party of the republic, went over to Pompey, and was killed at Munda.

legatum, aid, or staff-officer. There were generally three of them assigned to the commander by the Senate, his wishes being considered in the selection.

magnis itineribus, as in ch. 71. It is also the usual phrase for forced marches of an army. The ordinary day’s march of the Romans was about 15 miles; a magnum iter was from 20 to 25 miles, — each soldier carrying, besides his trenching tools, personal baggage (sarcina), five wooden palisades for fortifying the camp: in all, a weight often of 50 or 60 pounds.

legiones: a legion at this time consisted, theoretically, of ten cohorts of 600 men each,—all infantry; each cohort being divided.
into three manipes. Cæsar's legions, in fact, contained less than 3500 men each.

Aquileiam: an important Roman colony at the head of the Adriatic. It continued to be the chief port of trade for this region till outgrown by Venice.

qua proximum iter, i.e. by way of Susa and Turin, by Mt. Genève. Ocelum is identified with Houlx, a little south-west of Turin. The more direct way by Mt. Cenis began to be used under Augustus.

4. compluribus ... pulsis, interlocked order, his agreeing with pulsis (§ 76, 2, h).—ab Ocelo pervenit, came through from Ocelum.— trans Rhodanum, towards the west, as the Rhone, at Lyons, turns abruptly to the south. His object was to head off the Helvetians, who had advanced westwardly, north of the upper course of the river, and had now reached the territory of the Ædui. Cæsar's army by this time amounted to near 25,000 men; the Helvetians had between 80,000 and 100,000 warriors to oppose him, with (probably) at least 8500 waggons.

11. jam traduxerant, had already brought across; per angustias, i.e. though the pas de l'Écluse, before described. The emperor Napoleon III. enters into a calculation to show that Cæsar's absence cannot have occupied less than two months; so that the following events took place in the latter part of June.—rogatum (supine), to ask.

2. ita se, understand dicentes or some such word. In direct discourse, this will be, "Ita [nos] ... meriti sumus, ut pæne in conspectu exercitus tui, ... liberi nostri ... non debeant:" we have so deserved ... that our fields ought not to be wasted, &c.

meritos: "Alone among the Gauls," says Tacitus, "the Ædui claim the name of brotherhood with the Roman people" (Ann. xi. 25). There was even a later fiction of a common descent from Troy for the Arverni (Lucan, i. 427). So it was an old notion that Britain had its name from Brutus, a grandson of Ascanius.

3. Ædui Ambarri, the Ædui near the Arar (or Saone), occupying the angle between that river and the Rhone. (Some editions omit Ædui in this title; others write, eodem tempore quo Ædui, Ambarri quoque.)

necessarii, close connections (bound by necessitudo, which Cæsar used to call necessitas); consanguinei, blood-kindred.

depopulatis agris ... prohibere, their fields were already wasted, and they were with difficulty attempting to keep off, &c. (see § 72, 3, r; G. 667, r').

S. 4. nihil esse reliqui (part. gen.), there is nothing left to them, except the very soil of the fields.
5. *non exspectandum, must not wait.* — *sociorum:* the Helvetians would be sure to levy upon the allies of the Romans wherever they found them.

12. *flumen, etc., the Arar (Saone) is a river which flows through, &c.; not between, which would be expressed by dividit.* The Saone joins the Rhone about 75 miles south-west of Lake Geneva. — *lenitatem, not so much slowness as smoothness:* contrasting not only with the Rhone, but with the swiftness and turbidity of the rivers in Italy. "Caesar knew no streams 'waving their lazy lilies.'"

*ratibus, rafts of logs; litem, canoes of hollowed logs, joined, perhaps, two and two, with a broad deck covering them. The swift streams of the south of Europe are often crossed by boats swung from moorings at some distance up-stream, and carried across either way by the force of the current. — in ... fluent, indir. question following judicari.*

2. *partes, object of duxisse; flumen governed by trans in composition (§ 50, 2, b; G. 330, r), had conveyed three parts ... across this river. — Ararim: for the acc. in im, see § 11, i, 3, a' (names of rivers). — reliquam = reliquitam: in fact this adjective is, from its meaning, a kind of participle.

de tertia vigilia = just at midnight, the night, from sunset to sunrise, being divided into four equal watches.

3. *concidit (con, caedo), cut to pieces. — mandaverunt = mandaverunt (§ 30, 6, a; G. 191), abandoned (lit. give in hand, manu, do); abdiderunt, hid (lit. put away).

pagus, properly, "a military district round a fortified place." This district (Tigurinus) is about the modern Zurich.

4. *L. Cassium, see ch. 7*: — *deorum:* this reference to a special providence is not conceivable in so stern a realist as Cæsar. Compare his curious account of the divine omens which accompanied his victory over Pompey, B. C. iii. 105.

*qua pars intulerat ... ea persolvit, render that part which, &c. (see § 48, 3, b, r; G. 622).*

*poenas persolvit, paid to the uttermost the penalty.* Punishment was regarded among the ancients, not as suffering to be inflicted, but as of the nature of a fine or penalty to be paid; hence *sumere, to inflict,* and *dare or solvere, to suffer.*

In 4562, numerous remains were discovered buried in two trenches, probably of those slain in this battle, — "pell-mell, skeletons of men, women, and children." — *Hist. of Julius Caesar.*

5. *injurias, wrongs, not simply damage, as the word came to mean afterwards. From Cæsar’s point of view, an offensive war against Rome is necessarily wrong. Besides, hostility or friend-
ship towards a foreign state might become a family tradition, and so a bounden duty. — ultus est, avenged.

societ: L. Calpurnius Piso, father of Shakespeare’s Calphurnia, and consul of the present year (see end of ch. 6).

13. consequi, overtake (hence the frequent meaning acquire). — faciendum curat, provides for making (§ 72, 5, c; G. 431).

2. cum ... intellegere, clause of relative time (§ 62, 2, b; G. 282). — id, object of fecisse, and in appos. with ut ... transire. — diebus viginti, in the course of 20 days (§ 55, 1; G. 392). — in, upon, not simply over.

legatos, a participle of lego (depute), used as a noun; hence, diplomatically, envoy or ambassador, and in military affairs aid or lieutenant. — legationes, a collective noun, and so answering (by synesis) to the plural legatos. — Divico, now an old man, since the battle in which he was commander took place 49 years before.

9. 3. si pacem, etc.: compare the form of direct discourse given to this address, § 67, at the end. — in eam partem ... ubi, to whatever part, i.e. of Gaul. They were not, however, to be turned back from their migration. — reminisceretur (subj. for imperat.): remember [said he]. — incommodi, disaster: for the government of the genitive, see § 50, 4, a; G. 375.

4. improviso, unexpectedly, by surprise (properly abl. abs. § 54, 10, c; G. 438, R²). — suis, to their own people (§ 47, 3, a; G. 195, R¹). — ne tribueret (for imperative), do not ascribe it. — dolo, craft: insidiis, ambuscade.

5. ne committeret ut, etc., let it not be, &c. (§ 70, 4, e; G. 557). — ubi constitisset, where they had taken their stand (notice the intensive force of con).

14. eo (abl. of means) minus ... quod, ... teneret; he had all the less hesitation because he kept in mind, &c.

eo gravius ... quo minus (§ 54, 6, e, R); he was the more incensed, in proportion as the Roman people had less deserved, &c.

2. qui si fuisse, now if they (the Roman people) had been. — non fuisse (for fuisse of dir. disc.), it would not have been. — eo deceptum [esse], they had been deceived by this.

quare timeret: this indirect question is the subject of commissum [esse], in the sense of any thing that should give them fear, and follows intellegere: because they (the Roman people) did not know what they had done to be afraid of.

3. quod si (§ 52, 3, b; G. 331, R²) ... vellet, now if they should consent to forget, &c. — num posse = what! could they, &c.

injuriarum, obj. of memoriam. — eo invito = against their will (quod ... vexissent is a clause of fact, properly indicative, § 70, 5; G. 525, but subj. by indirect discourse).
4. *sua*, *their own* (the Helvictians); so *se tullisse* (=*intullisse*), that they had committed. The clause *quod... admirarentur* is subj. of *pertinere*: *As for* their insolent boasting of their victory and their surprise (no doubt) that they had been so long unpunished in their wrong, it amounts to the same thing.

5. *quos... his*, to grant an interval of prosperity and longer impunity to those whom they wish to punish for their guilt.

"Divico had not said any thing in the way of direct boasting. This eloquent passage was perhaps an answer to his manner, or to the fact that he was the same Divico who had slain L. Cassius." Observe the change to primary tenses, when the language of Caesar expresses a general truth.

6. *cum, though* (§ 62, 2, c; G. 587).—*sib, to hīm*, Cæsar.—*facturos, sc. eos.*—*Hæduis, dat. after satisfaciant, pay damages.*—*ipsa, dat. after intulerint.*

10. 15. *equitatum*: the cavalry was wholly made up of contingents furnished by subjects (of the provinces) or allies (as the *Ædui*).—*coactum habebat*, lit., *had got together* (§ 70, 3, b; G. 230): more strictly *held* (had in hand) after being collected.

2. *cupidius, too eagerly* (§ 17, 5, a; G. 312).—*novissimum agmen, the rear*: *agmen* is the army in line of march (ago); and its newest part is that which comes along last.—*alieno loco, an unfavorable ground* ("another's"); so *suō* would be favorable ("his own").

3. *sublati (tollo), elated*.—*equitibus, abl. of means.—sub sistere, to make a stand.—novissimo agmine* (loc. abl.), *at their rear.*

4. *satis habebat, held it sufficient*.—*hostem... prohibere*, in appos. with *satis*, as object of *habebat*.

5. *ita, uti, so that* (correl.).—*quinis, sensis*, distributives, implying that this was the constant or average distance between the two armies. The country here is very irregular and broken; so that it was impossible for Cæsar to get any advantage by a rapid march, or by an attack on the Helvetian rear.

16. *ootidie* = *quotidie* (§ 1, 2, b).—*Hæduos frumentum, required corn of the *Ædui* (§ 52, 2, c; G. 333).—*flagitare*, historical infinitive (§ 57, 8, h; G. 850).—*frigora, the cold season, or spells of cold*: not the cold in general. —*pabuli, green fodder* (root in pasoo).—*frumento, object of uti.—propterea... quod*, see ch. 19.

2. *ducere* (histor. infin.), *dragged on*.—*conferri, etc.* [frumentum]: as English has no present passive. translate actively, "said it was getting together, was coming in, was close by." —*metiri*, *measure out*: the allowance was 50 pounds a month.—*Divitiaco,
Lisco, abl. in appos. with principibus.—summo magistratui praefarat, held the chief office, of which the Celtic title was guerg breth, "executor of judgment," represented in Latin by Vergobretus. —in suos, over his people.

11. 3. necessario (attrib.), at so urgent a time; propinquus (pred.), with the enemy so near.

17. privatim plus possint, have more power in private station: some copies read privati, as private men.

2. improba oratione, reckless talk.—ne (§ 70, 3, e; G. 549) ... praeferre, from bringing the corn which they were bound to furnish; [representing that] if they could no longer hold the chief rank in Gaul, they prefer the rule of Gauls to [that of] Romans.

This sentence gives a good example of what is called a Various Reading. It must be remembered that these Commentaries were first written as rough notes, or memoranda, and were afterwards copied by hand for centuries before their form was fixed by printing. The sentence as it stands is that given in the best editions; some of which, however, have perferre, bear, for praeferre, prefer. In the above rendering, praestare has the active meaning to furnish; and quam the meaning than, after the comparative implied in praeferre. This makes the sense clear, but is awkward and hard. To remedy it, the neatest and best conjecture is to put the pause after conferant, read debeat for the plural debeant, and perferre for praeferre, thus: "detrerrere ne frumentum conferant; quod praestare debeant, si jam principatum Galliæ obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperium perferre." Here quod is because, and quam follows the comparative in praestare, taken in the neuter sense of excel; and the passage reads, from bringing in the corn; since it must be better (praestare debeat) to bear, &c. But there is no manuscript authority for debeat. Some would read dicant for debeant: since, they say, it is better, &c.; but this is mere conjecture. Others, again, put satius esse after perferre; but this is only an explanatory note, written by some early editor.

neque dubitare quin, § 65, 1, b; G. 550.—debeant: a word given thus in brackets is one of which the authority is doubtful; it may sometimes require to be omitted in translation.—superaverint, perf. subjunctive for fut. perf. (same form) of direct disc. —Hædus, dative, § 51, 2, e; G. 346.

3. a se, i. e. by Liscus, as chief magistrate. —quin etiam, nay even: often written as one word. —quam diu, as long as. —necessario, unavoidably; coactus, on compulsion.

18. pluribus præsentibus (abl. abs.), in the presence of several. —jactari, bandied about (freq. of jacio).

2. ex solo, from him apart. —secreto (secerno), each by himself. —summa audacia, [a man] of utmost boldness.
3. *portoria, customs-dues*, levied at the frontier, collected (apparently) as by the Romans, through *publicani*, who bid for the contract at public auction. The other *vectigalia*, farmed out for collection in the same way, were tithes on farm produce, rent of public pastures, &c. — *redempts*, agreeing with *vectigalia*, and taken with *habere, had bought in* (see §15'). — *illo licente, when he bid.*

4. *ad largendum, for gifts*, to buy political support.

12. *larger posse, had extensive power.* — *causa, for the sake:* as always when thus following a genitive. — *potentiae, power,* as an attribute of the person: *potestas* is power to do anything; *facultas, opportunity; imperium, military authority.* — *collocasse, had established* in marriage (*nuptium*). — *Biturigibus, near the modern Bourges.* — *ex matre, on the mother’s side.*

5. *favere ... Helvetiiis* (dat.), *he favored the Helvetians and desired* [their success]: some such object must be supplied to *cupere.* — *adfinitem, family alliance.* — *suo nomine, on his own account* (a legal phrase applying to business debts, &c.).

6. *si quid accidat* (a mild phrase), *in case of any disaster.* — *imperio* (abl. of circumstance), *under the rule.*

7. *quod ... factum, a kind of adverbial phrase = in regard to the unsuccessful cavalry-skirmish fought the other day.*

19. *res, facts.* — *accederent, were added*: *accedo* is used as a kind of passive of *addo.* — *inter eos, i.e. the Helvetii and Sequani.* — *injusso suo, etc., without his authority* (§12, 4, b) or *that of the state:* here *suo* is equivalent to a genitive. — *inscientibus ipsis,* without his own knowledge or that of the *Ædui.* — *in sum animadvertent, should bend his mind upon him, i.e. proceed against or punish him.*

2. *quod ... cognoverat, that he well knew,* &c. (the present inceptive, *cognosco,* having the meaning to learn). This clause, in apposition with *unum,* might in English be introduced by some such word as *namely.* — *studium, attachment as partisan; voluntatem, good will as friend.* — *supplicio, punishment or execution.* This word is derived from the adjective *supplex,* *down-bent,* signifying on the bended knee; i.e. either as a supplicant for mercy, or (as here) to receive the blow of the executioner.

3. *prinus quam conaretur, before he should attempt;* see § 62, 2, c.; G. 579. — *per* connects *Procillum with colloquitur.* — *principem, a leading man.*

13. *commonefácit, warns or notifies* (root in *moneo*). — *ipso,* i.e. *Divitiacus.* — *apud se, in his* (Cæsar’s) *presence.* — *offensione animi, displeasure* (of Divitiacus); *ipse,* which follows, refers to *Cæsar: he hopes, in what steps he takes or orders to be taken against Dumnorix, not to incur the resentment of his brother.*
20. *ne quid gravior* (a common phrase), *no severe measures.*

2. *scire se, etc.,* "I know," said he, "that this is true, and no one can be more pained at it than I." — *plus doloris* except as an adverb, this comparative can only be used, as here, with the partitive genitive. — *ipse, se, suam, seae,* all refer to Divitiacus; *ille to Dumnonix,* which is also the subject of *crevisset* and *uteretur.* — *opibus ac nervis = sineus of power,* obj. of *uteretur.* — *gratiam as well as perniciem* takes *suam.* — *amore fraterno* (§ 47, 5, c; G. 363, R¹), *love to his brother.*

3. *a Cæsare accidisset = should be done by Cæsar.* — *futurum [esse] uti . . . averterentur* (periphrastic future infin. § 58, 11, f; G. 240), *the heart of all Gaul would be turned from him.*

4. *rogat [ut] faciat,* see § 70, 3, f, R; G. 546, R². — *tanti, of so great account* (§ 54, 8, a; G. 379). — *condonet: “Cæsar pretended to yield to the prayers of the Druid, but in fact he yielded to necessity. He was in great straits, with a warlike enemy in front and doubtful allies around him, on whom his army was dependent for food.”* (Long: compare v. 6).

   *praeterita, things bygone* ("the past"). — *Dumnorigi ponit (= adpunit), sets over him.*

21. *qualis esset, etc.,* indir. question after *cognoscerent.* — *natura, character; qualis . . . ascensus = the chance of ascending it at [various points of] its circuit.* — *qui cognoscerent* (§ 65, 2, a; G. 634): the antecedent of *qui* is *quodam,* or some such word, as object of *misit, he sent men to ascertain.*

2. *facilem, sc. ascensum — pro prætore, with powers of prætor.* The praetor, like the consul, held the *imperium,* or power to command; a *legatus,* not possessing this in his own right, might be temporarily invested with it by his commander.

14. *duoibus (pred.), as guides.* — *qui . . . cognoverant, i.e. of the party of reconnaissance.* — *consilii, limiting quid, so signifying not his plan as a whole, but what he chooses to show of his plan.* — *de quarta vigilia, about 2 A.M.: the sun at this season rising here about 4 o'clock.* — *contendit (root TEN), pushed on.*

3. *Sulla, Crassi:* Sulla (the dictator) had conducted the war against Mithridates about 30 years before (B. C. 88–84), and Crassus that against Spartacus some years later (B. C. 71).

22. *aut Labieni, or Labienus's:* this predicate use of the genitive is rare in Latin. — *equo admissō = at full speed* (with reins thrown loose).

2. *insignibus, i.e. devices on shields and helmets, — stags' horns, eagles' plumes, &c., — the origin of modern heraldry.* (Observe that the name *Gallic* here applies to the Helvetians.) The inference from this report would be, that Labienus had been cut to
pieces, and Caesar must expect an attack at once. This accounts for his next movement, which was to fall back and wait in line of battle, while Labienus was vainly expecting him.

3. ut, as. — ne ... committerent ... essent, subject of erat præceptum. — ut ... fieret, so that the attack might be made on all sides at once. — monte occupato, etc., having seized the height continued to look out for our men.

4. molto die (loc. abl.), late in the day. — quod non vidisset, what he had not seen, sc. id, obj. of renuntiasse. — pro viso, as if seen. — quo, sc. eodem, at the same interval as usual. — tria (acc.), § 55, 2, b; G. 335.

23. diei, § 50, 4, e, r; G. 418 (end). — omnino, in all (only). — cum = within which. — Bibraequa, the modern Mont Beuvray, a considerable hill, about 10 miles west of Autun (Augustodunum). — rei frumentarise (dat.), the supply of corn.

2. fugitivae, runaways. The regular word would be trans fugas: the term which generally means fugitive slaves is here applied, contemptuously, to deserters from the cavalry of the Gallic allies.

decurions: the auxiliary cavalry (the entire cavalry force) was divided into aez, consisting each of 10 turmae, and these again into three decuriae, of probably 10 men, each commanded by a decurio. Aemilius was the senior officer.

3. eo magis (abl. of difference), all the more. — locis, etc., though holding higher ground.

15. eo quod ... confiderent (abl. of cause), for this reason because they felt sure that they (the Romans) could be cut off from their supplies.

itinere converso: the fatal step which led to their complete destruction.

The Helvetians were now well in advance of Caesar, and might probably have continued their march unmolested to the coast, had not their vain confidence turned them back. Caesar’s army was at this time not far from 60,000 men, including about 20,000 auxiliaries, mostly “Gaulish mountaineers,” so that he was a full match, in a fair field, for the Helvetians, who had now about 70,000 fighting men.

24. animum advertit (= vertit animum ad: usually written as one word, animadvertit): to turn the mind upon any thing is to notice it; hence this phrase takes a direct object (id) like a single transitive verb. — qui sustineret = to sustain (§ 64, 1; G. 544).

2. in colle medio, half way up the hill. — triplcem aolem, etc. — four veteran legions in triple line. The legion being composed of ten cohorts, four stood in the first line, — 10 men deep,
and three in each of the other lines, disposed in the following order (quincunx):

\[
\begin{array}{cccccc}
4 & 3 & 2 & 1 \\
7 & 6 & 5 & 8 \\
10 & 9 & & & & \\
\end{array}
\]

each cohort being mentioned in order of rank. — in summo jugo, i.e. on the level top of the hill. — ao = and thus. — sarcinas, see 103. — eum, this [place]. — his qui, etc., simply, those who stood in the upper (i.e. rear) ranks: these were the two new legions, opposed to veteranarum, above.

3. phalange facta: the phalanx was a close, compact body, distinguished from the legion, in which the men stood usually six feet apart, so as to give them great freedom of action. (See what is said of the interlocking of the shields in the next chapter.) — sub . . . successerunt, came up close below.

25. suo [equo], having sent back his own and all the others' horses. This was often done before an engagement (cf. Sall. Cat. 59). Probably Cæsar distrusted the good faith of his cavalry, which consisted principally of Gauls. He is reported to have said to his men, "I will mount again when the enemy run."

pilis, javelins: these consisted of a stout staff, with a long, sharp, slender head, projecting about nine inches, making a weapon about six feet long, which could be thrown with considerable force about 100 feet. Each Roman soldier (heavy-armed) had two of these, and a short cut-and-thrust sword. The mode of attack was (as here) to hurl the javelins, and then rush with the sword upon the disturbed ranks of the enemy.

2. impedimento, dat. of service, § 51, 5 (R. 20); G. 350. — pluribus, several. For the whole of this description, compare what is said of the form of this javelin and the close order of the phalanx. — scutis, shields of plank, five feet long, designed to protect the whole body: these were pierced and pinned together at the edges where they overlapped. — evellere, pull them out. — sinistra impedita (parenthesis), since the left hand was shackled. — mult ut, many [to such a degree] that. — nudus, unprotected.

3. pedem referre, fall back: not retreat, which would be terga vertere. — mille, acc. of distance, the idea of distance being implied in suberat.

4. capto monte, when they had reached the hill. — agmen claudebant, brought up their rear. The Boii or Tulingi, with about 15,000 men, had been in front of the Helvetian line of march, and were consequently in the rear when they faced round to attack Cæsar. They now struck at his exposed flank (laterae aperto) as they came upon the field (ex itinere).

16. conversa signa intulerunt, faced about and charged in two divisions. These stood not back to back, but at right angles
facing outward; the two front lines facing forward, while the third met the flank attack of the new-comers (venientes).

26. auncipiti, two-headed, thus facing two ways at once. — alteri, the Helvetians; alteri, the Boii, &c.

2. ab hora septima, i.e. from a little past I P. M.; sunset was about eight, so that each of the twelve daylight hours was about an hour and a quarter of our time. — aversum hostem = an enemy's back. — ad multam noctem, till late in the night. — pro vallo, as a barricade. — e loco superiore, from vantage-ground, i.e. the height of the carts, &c.—conicelbant, subicelbant, hurled (from above), thrust (from below). For the form of these words, see § 1, 3, d. The semi-vowel j is lost before i: therefore in most dictionaries look for conicelio, subjicio. — mataras, Gallic pikes, thrown from the hand; tragulas, heavy javelins, used by Gausls and Spaniards, and thrown by aid of a thong.

4. Lingōnum, i.e. the southern part of Champagne, towards the north. — propter gives the reason of morati.

5. Lingonas, Greek form of the accusative (§ 11, iii, 6, f), common in these names of tribes. — qui si juvissent = for if they should, &c. — eodem loco habiturum, would hold on the same footing.

In the year 1860, numerous burial mounds near the place of this battle (in which considerably more than 100,000 human beings must have perished) were opened, and found to contain skeletons buried face downward, with knives, bracelets, rings, and hair-pins of bronze, very similar to the relics discovered shortly before in the lake-dwellings of Switzerland. It has been conjectured that these lake-dwellings were among those destroyed at the time of the Helvetic migration (see De Saulcy, Campaigns of Cæsar in Gaul).

27. qui . . . paruerunt; observe the change of subject in this sentence, from legati to Cæsar, as well as the change of mood with the same subject, convenissent, paruerunt. The syntax will present no difficulty.

2. qui perfugissent, fugitive slaves from the Province. — conquiruntur, conferuntur: to express the present in English, it is often better to use the active form, while they are hunting these up and bringing them together. — noote intermissa, when the night was past: i.e. it was then ascertained what had happened early in the evening. — Verbigenus, from the parts between Berne and Lucerne.

17. occultari, be hid from Cæsar; ignorari, unknown to anybody. — contaderunt ad, made (rapidly) for.

28. quorum: the antecedent is his (dat.) following imperavit, the direct object of which is uti . . . reducere. — sibi (dat. of
reference, in his eyes.—reductos ... habuit, when brought back, he treated them as enemies, i.e. massacred them all: the phrase is regularly used in this signification.

in deditionem accepit: by this act they became formally the subjects of the Republic, and were entitled to its protection, as well as required to obey its requisitions and pay tribute.

2. reverti, turn back (from a march or journey; redire, go back, from a place of rest).—fructibus = frugibus (which is found in some copies), grain and other field produce.—copiam facerent, provide a supply.—ipsos, the Helvetians.

3. ea ratione, with this view: the word is connected both with res, thing, and reor, think.

4. potentibus Hœduis, to the Aeduoi, at their request: dat. after concessit, of which the object is, ut Boios collocarent. (Boios is put first in the sentence, for emphasis.)—parem atque ipsi erant = equal with themselves (§ 43, 3, a).—condicionem: for the form of this word, see § 1, 3, h.

29. tabulae, tablets, of the shape of a folding slate, with wax spread inside, written with a pointed instrument called stilus.

litteris Grœcis, i.e. in Greek characters, probably learned from colonists at Marseilles, as the Gauls had no alphabet of their own. Specimens of Gallic names on coins are in the names DUBNOREX, AIVICIACOS, VERCINGETORIXS. —ratio, an estimate, followed by the indir. question qui . . . exisset — confecta, made out.

2. capitum, “souls.”—ad milia xool, about 92,000.

3. summa, the sum: fuerunt agreeing with the plural predicate. Deducting the Boi, who were adopted by the Aeduoi, this reckoning would show an actual loss, in slain or captives (slaves), in this short campaign, of about 250,000, including probably about 150,000 women and children, or other non-combatants.

German Campaign.—The latter half of this Book is taken up with the expulsion of a military settlement of Germans, which had been made a few years before, under Ariovistus, chief of the tribe of Suevi.

The occasion of this new campaign was the following. The Aeduoi, jealous of the Sequani, who lived a little to the north, had laid excessive tolls on their trade, which consisted chiefly in the export of salted meats for the southern market.* This led to a war, in which the Sequani had invited the aid of the Germans under Ariovistus, about three years before the campaign of Cæsar. The Germans, once in Gaul, had exacted a large share of territory, and proved to be grasping and oppressive masters. Meanwhile the Helvetian war began to threaten. The Roman Senate, to make safe, passed the decrees before mentioned, promising favor and friendship to the Aeduoi (ch. 11); and at

* "From this region," says Strabo, "the best of pickled pork is sent to Rome" (iv. p. 192).
the same time sent messengers to Ariovistus, saluting him as king and friend (ch. 35), recognizing his claims on Gaul, and (it was said) inviting him to Rome. This was the year before, in Cæsar’s consulship. Now, however, that the fear of the Helvetians was passed, Cæsar found himself obliged to take sides in the old quarrel.

18. 30. populi Romani, against, &c. (obj. gen. after injurias). — ab his repetisset, had inflicted on them (see ch. 12). — ex usu, to the advantage.

2. ea consilio, with this design, expressed by the purpose-clause uti ... habenter. — florentissimus rebus, i.e. with no plea of necessity. — domicilio, for habitation. — ex magna copia = from a wide choice, implied in quem ... judicassent — stipendiarias, tributary: stipendium is the tax paid by a subject community.

3. uti sibi liceret, that it might be allowed them. — concilium totius Galliae: of course Cæsar had no authority to allow or prohibit a congress of independent Gaul. But, considering his power and ambition, they thought it best to secure his countenance (voluntate, not auctoritate) beforehand. They also had business that specially concerned him.

4. jurejurando sanxerunt, ordained under oath of secrecy: the object is ne quis, etc. — nisi quibus, etc., except [to those] to whom some commission should be assigned (pluperf. for fut. perf.).

31. eo concilio dimisso, i.e. when this assembly had been held and dissolved, after providing for the business now described. — secreto, apart; in occulto, in a secret place. — idem (idem), nom. plural.

2. Cæsari, dat. of reference (§ 51, 7, a; G. 343, R) = at Cæsar’s feet. — id (in appos. with ne ... enuntiarentur) contendere, etc., they no less urgently desired their account to be kept secret, than to obtain the thing they sought (disc. dixissent, for fut. perf. of direct).

3. actiones duas, see note, ch. 3. — principatum, headship. — alterius, notice the parallel expressions alterius Haduor, alterius Arvernos. Such antitheses are often a great help in translation. — Arvernos: these inhabited the mountainous country S. W. of the Aedui, the modern Auvergne. — factum esse uti, it came to pass that, &c. — Sequanis: these were the rivals of the Aedui on the north.

4. feri ac barbari: as to the condition of the Germans, see Introduction. — adamascent (= adamanissent, § 30, 6, a; G. 191), had become attached. — horum (emph.), of the latter. — copias (= opes), resources. — plures, notice the emphasis, also in nunc.

5. clientes, the subject states of the Ambarri, Segusiavi, &c. — omnem ... equitatum, of course an exaggeration: Divitiacus
was himself a noble, probably a senator; while his brother, Dumnorix, was a commander of the Æduan cavalry.

6. qui...potuissent, [they] who had once, &c., were compelled.—repetituros, demand back.—quo minus, following a verb of refusing (§ 65, 1, a; G. 547), seems originally to have been a phrase of courtesy, implying a less point-blank refusal than ne or quin.—dicione, i.e. to do their bidding.—potuerit, in direct discourse potuit, the perfect having a tendency to remain in the perfect, contrary to the rule.

7. Romam venisse, see note, ch. 3.

8. pejus accidisse, a worse thing had fallen. Observe that a misfortune is usually said accidere (verb-root CAD), as if it fell on one; while a good thing is said evenire.—Ariovistus, supposed to be the German word Heerfürst, "prince of the host."

tertiam partem, i.e. upper Alsace, a part of the German conquest of 1870. This was the same proportion of conquered land taken by the German invaders (Burgundians) in this very territory, in the fifth century of the Christian era. It seems to have been the ancient common law of conquest (Liv. ii. 41).—optimus: this district (Franche Comté) is one of the most beautiful in France, and the "best wooded." The chief export was dried meat and hams.—nunc...juberet: so too the Burgundians.—occupavisset, taken possession of.—quibus...pararentur, for whom room and settlements must be prepared.—juberet, in direct, jabet, he bids.—quibus...pararentur, who were to be provided with a place for habitation (subj. of purpose).

9. futurum esse uti (periphrastic future), the result would be. —neque enim introduces an explanation admitting no doubt.—hanc = nostram (§ 20, 2, a), said with some feeling of superiority or contempt.

10. autem, again, a slight antithesis between the king and the things mentioned before.—ut...viciter, indir. disc. for ut vicit (§ 62, 2, a; G. 563), having once conquered.—Magetobriam, a little west of Vesontio (Besançon).—in eos...edere, gave forth, i.e. wreaked all sorts of torments on them.—cruciatusque = of torture (hendiadys).

11. barbarum, etc., rude, passionate, and hasty.—nisi si (see § 61, 4, a; G. 592, R'), etc., unless they find some aid.

12. haec, notice the emphasis.—quin sumat, that he will inflict upon (§ 57, 2, N); lit. take a penalty of.—Rhenum, acc. after trans in traducatur (§ 52, 2, b; G. 339, R').

32. habita, having been spoken (the usual word).—unos, alone.

This whole scene is "most illustrative of the Gallic character."
2. quae esset, indir. question after miratus.—respondere, his-
torical infinitive.

3. hoc, in this respect.—solii, they alone.—ne . . . quidem,
not even secretly.—absentis (pred.), even when absent.—tamen,
even yet, whatever they might have to suffer.—Sequana, dat. of
virtual agent with perfere (§ 51, 4, a; G. 353), the Sequani
must endure (changing the voice).—tamen, i.e. even as it was.

33. sibi curae (dat. of service, § 51, 5; G. 350), a care to him.
—et . . . et, construe after adductum, induced by both . . . and.

2. secundum, in accordance with: lit. following (§ 73, 2, N;
G. 427, R').—quae putaret, indir. question, following hortaban-
tur.—Hæduos, obj. of videbat and subj. of teneri (below).

21. appellatos (pred.), who had been often called.—quod:
the antecedent is the preceding clause quod . . . intellegebat.

3. periculosem, pred., agreeing with Germanos consuescere,
etc., he saw it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans,
little by little, to get in the way of crossing the Rhine, &c.—sibi
temperaturas quin exirent, would check themselves from going
forth.—ut, as; fecissent being subjunctive as dependent on
exirent, § 66, 2 (R. 47); G. 666.

4. Rhodanus—only the Rhone.—rebus, dat. following occurr-
endum [sibl], § 51, 2, d (R. 18); G. 346: which things he thought
must be met at once.—tantos spiritus, such temper.—ferendus,
bearable.

34. ab eo, of him (§ 52, 2, c, R; G. 333, R').—conloquilo (dat.),
for a conference.—medium utriusque, between the two.—de re-
publica agere, to treat on public business.

2. si quid, etc., if he needed any thing from Caesar. Observe
in this sentence that the reflexives ipse and se refer to Ariovistus,
and the demonstratives is, ille, to Caesar.—se velit, wants of him :
the secondary accus. is in analogy with verbs of asking. The acc.
of neuter pronouns is often used with intransitive verbs or as a
double accusative.

4. mirum quid . . . esset, a sort of indir. question: it seemed
strange to him what business, &c.—in sua Gallia, in his own
[part of] Gaul.

35. tanto . . . adfectus, distinguished by so great favor, &c.
(see note before ch. 30): beneficio is explained by cum . . . esset,
and gratiam referret by ut . . . putaret; the first sibi refers to
Cæsar and the second to Ariovistus. In this sentence the causal
clause is quoniam . . . putaret, and the leading verb is esse:
Since, though so greatly favored by the Romans, he made such an
ill return (hanc gratiam referret) as to grudge coming to a con-
ference when invited, and would neither speak nor hear about the
common business, [therefore] this demand is made upon him, &c.  “Ariovistus knew as well as any one how much gratitude he owed to Rome for these beneficia.”

22. ne quam, not any. — voluntate, consent. — ejs refers to Ariovistus, and illis to the Sequani.

3. si non impetraret, if he (Cæsar) should not get [this pledge]. — Messala, etc., i. e. B. C. 61. M. Messala, etc., simply in the consulsip, &c., only to indicate the year. — obtineret, shoulr hold (as governor). — quod = so far as.— commodo república, to the advantage of the state. — censuisset, had voted. — defen- deret: see the reasons, in the note referred to above. — se, a repetition of sese above, to bring it nearer to its verb.

36. jus, a right. — vicissent for vicerint (fut. perf.) of direct disc. — its, obj. of imperarent: that those who conquer shall rule those they conquer as (quem ad modum) they will. The verbs are in the past by sequence of tenses (§ 58, 10, d; G. 216). — item, in like manner. — viotis, obj. of imperare. — alterius, any one's else.

3. sibi stipendiarios, tributary to himself. — qui faceret = in making (§ 65, 2, c; G. 637).

4. non . . . neque: [on the one hand] he would not restore, &c., but [on the other] he would not wrong fully (injurīa), &c. — convenedisset = had been agreed. — longe . . . afuturum, the name of brothers would be a great way off from them, i. e. too far to help them.

5. quod, etc., the whole clause is construed as an adverbial accusative: as to Cæsar's threat, &c. — secum, sua, observe that these refer one to Ariovistus, the other to his antagonist. — con- gredureretur (for imperat.), they might come on when they would; they should know, &c. — quid possent, what their strength was.

37. eodem tempore, et = at the same time [when] this mes- sage, &c.

23. questum, to complain (supine). — Treveris, from the region of Trèves, in the valley of the Moselle. — qui . . . essent, who (they said) had just come over (§ 66, 1; G. 509).

2. ne . . . datis, not even by giving hostages. — pagos (see note, ch. 12): these divisions were those known as hundreds, meaning not only the people, but the district (see iv. 1).

3. maturandum sibi, that he must hasten. — resisti (impers. § 51, 2, f; G. 208) posset, resistance could be made.

minus facile, i. e. it would be impossible; but this would be a word of ill omen. — ad, towards.

38. Vesontionem, the modern Besançon, about ninety miles E. N. E. of the former battle-ground. — profecisse, had advanced.
2. ne, following præcavendum (§ 70, 3, e; G. 549). — facultas = facility for obtaining (see note, ch. 31). — Dubis, the modern Doubs. This name is said to mean "black river;" or, in the form Alduas dubis, "river of black rocks." — ut, as it were.

3. spatium, obj. of continet. — sexcentorum, pred. gen. after est; for construction with amplius, see § 54, 5, c; G. 311, r. — ripæ (dat.), following contingent.

4. hunc [montem]: this an encompassing wall makes into a fortress. — occupato, taken possession of.

39. vocibus, talk. — prædioabant, vaunted.

24. sœpemnumero, oftentimes. Adverbs are frequently thus strengthened by a qualifying word, usually a genitive: as hic loci, &c. — congressos, when they met them. — occupavit, seized.

2. tribunis militum, infantry officers, six to each legion, who took command in turns of two months each; prœfectis, commanders of cavalry and auxiliaries; reliquis, i.e. aids or attachés (con-tubernales, comites), who attended the governor or commander of a province for the sake of military practice. All these were often appointed from mere personal or political motives, and were of small use in the service, as it proved here. This staff was sometimes called, irregularly, the prætorian cohort.

amicitia causa: Cæsar's earlier career had been that of a political adventurer. He was deeply in debt, and probably could not afford to refuse positions to the "poor relations" of his creditors, trusting the valor of his veterans to cover their short-comings.

allus alia causa, on various pretext (§ 47, 9; G. 306). — quam diceret, which, he said (§ 66, 1, d, r; G. 539, r).

3. vultum fingere, put on a brave face. — abditi, hiding. — testamenta obsignabantur, indicating utter despair. The word refers to a will, sealed and witnessed in due form,—not the mere informal declaration permitted to soldiers on the eve of battle (in procingu). "Did they make the Germans their executors? The mixture of vexation and comedy in Cæsar's narrative is amusing" (Moberly).

4. in castris = in military life. — centuriones, two to each maniple, who were promoted from the ranks, like modern "non-commissioned officers." — rem frumentarium . . . timere (accus. of anticipation, § 67, 2, c; G. 470), feared [for] the supply of corn, lest it might not be conveniently brought in (§ 70, 3, f; G. 552).

5. cum jussisset, for cum jusseris (fut. perf.) of direct disc. — dicto audientes, obedient to the word of command. — signa latus, would carry the standards, i.e. advance. These were bronze eagles carried on a flag-staff, one to each legion; and of course must be borne in the thick of the fight.
40. omnium ordinum: the centurions ranked from one to six in each of the ten cohorts (see note, ch. 24). To the ordinary council of war, only the first in each cohort was summoned. This was a full council of all the officers. — sibi quærendum . . . putes, thought they ought to inquire or have any idea, in agreement with the interrogative clause quam . . . ducerentur.

2. se consule (direct, me consule), in his consulship. — cur quisquam judicaret, why should any one so hastily think? For the form of question, see § 67, d, R; G. 654, r (direct, judicet, dubit. subj.); for the use of quisquam, implying a negative, see § 21, 2, h. — discessurum, would fall away. — sibi persuaderi, for his part he was persuaded (mihi persuadetur, § 51, 2, f; G. 208): the subject of persuaderi is eum . . . repudiaturum.

25. 3. quod si intulisset, but if he had, &c. (dir. disc. intulit). — quid tandem, what, pray, were they afraid of? — sua, their own; ipsius, his own: ipse, used in this way, is an indirect reflexive.

4. periculum (root in experior), a trial. — Cimbris, etc., A.D. 102 and 101, a little more than forty years before. — servili tumultu, the insurrection of the slaves (gladiators) under Spartacus, B.C. 73–71. These consisted largely of the Germans captured by Marius. A war at home, i.e. in Italy or on its borders, was called tumultus (see Cic. Phil. viii. 1). — quos . . . sublevarent (changing to passive so as to keep the emphasis), who yet were considerably helped by the training and discipline they had got from us.

5. quantum boni, how much advantage (§ 47, 4, a; G. 195, r), firmness has (for the tense of haberet, see § 58, 1a, d) — inermos, i.e. the slaves of Spartacus’s force. — quos . . . hos: notice the relative as usual preceding the antecedent.

6. hos, the Germans with Ariovistus. — quibuscum congressi, etc. (changing the relative clause), whom they have often met and beaten on their own ground (as well as, &c.). — qui, i.e. the Helvetii. — potuerint, see § 58, 1a, c, R; G. 513.

7. adversum prælium, see ch. 31. — si quos . . . commoveret, if any were alarmed by. — hos, etc., they could learn that when the Gauls were wearied out, &c. — Ariovistum, subj. of vicisse. — neque . . . fecisset, had given them no chance at him.

8. cui rationi, etc. (putting the noun in the demonstrative clause): not even Ariovistus himself hoped that our armies could be taken in by a stratagem which there had been room for against unskilled barbarians.

9. qui . . . conferrent, [as to those] who laid their own cowardice to the pretence about provisions, &c. — desperare, etc., to be discouraged about the commander’s doing his duty. — præscribere, sc. officium.
Campaign against Ariovistus.

10. subministrare, were [now] furnishing.

11. quod ... dicoantur (see § 70, 2, a; G. 528): as to its being said that they would not, &c. — nihil, noway. — quibuscoumque, dat. after audiens dicto: i.e. no one has ever had a mutinous army, who has not either been unsuccessful by his own fault, or been convicted of avarice by some overt act. — suam, his own, emphatic by position; equivalent to in his case. — innocentiam: the technical word, meaning freedom from the charge of plunder and extortion. In fact, Cæsar’s fault lay just the other way, a lavish and reckless generosity. (In this sentence, in chiastic order, innocentiam is opposed to avaritiam, and felicitatem to male re gesta, a peculiarly Latin turn.)

26. 12. quod ... fuisset, what he had intended to defer; repräsentaturum, he will do at once. — prætoriam cohortem = body-guard, the correct use of the term: compare note, ch. 39łę.

This celebrated speech of Cæsar to his men, though in what seems to us the awkward and cold form of indirect discourse, is an admirable model of military eloquence, and deserves attentive study.

41. innata est, sprang up. — optimum judicium fecisset, had expressed the most favorable opinion (a technical phrase).

2. cum tribunis ... egerunt, etc., urged upon the tribunes to apologize. — summa belli = the policy of the campaign. — suum, imperatoris, predicate after esse (§ 50, 1, c; G. 365).

3. satisfactione, apologio (compare satisfacerent, above). — ei, in him. — millium [passuum] limits circuitu, by a circuit of more than fifty miles. — locis apertis, through the open country, so as to avoid a return of the panic.

4. a nostris, from ours (i.e. forces).

42. per se, so far as he was concerned (the regular expression with licet).

2. petenti [Cæsari], when he asked it. — fore uti desisteret (periphrastic future following spem), that he would cease from his stubbornness.

27. 3. utro citoque, hither and yon (lit. beyond and this side). — alia ratione, on any other terms. — veniret for veniat (hortatory) of direct discourse.

4. interposita causâ (abl. abs.), by putting in an excuse. (Notice that excuse has the same root as causa.) — Gallorum equitatu: he had no other, see note, ch. 23ę. — equitibus, dative following detractis (§ 51, 2, c; G. 346). — eo, upon them (= iis, § 48, 5ę). — si quid, etc., if there should be need of any active measures: quid is adverbial acc. (§ 52, 3; G. 331, Rę); facto, § 54, 1, d; G. 390.
5. quod omu fieret, while this was taking place.—ad equum rescribere, he enrolled them among the knights. The equites were not only the cavalry-service in war, but a special privileged class in Roman politics.

43. satis grandis, pretty large.—tumulus terrenus—*a smooth* (i.e. not rocky) hill.

2. equis, on horseback.—passibus ducentis—320 yards.—denos, ten on each side.

3. beneficia, favors.—munera: according to Livy (xxx. 15), the gifts sent to Masinissa were “a golden crown and bowl, a curule chair, an ivory staff, an embroidered toga, and a tunic with palm-leaf figures” (worn in triumphal processions).—pro . . . tribui, was usually granted only in return for special services.

docebat, reminded.—aditus, way of intercourse.—ea præmiae consecutum, had attained these prizes, as if he had eagerly sought them (compare introductory note to ch. 30). The tone of Cæsar’s speech shows his intention of affronting the pride of Ariovistus.

4. necessitudinis, alliance. The word means, strictly, any close bond of a moral nature, such as kindred, family connection, guest-friendship, or personal intimacy (see note to Cicero, Verres I. § 11).—ipsis, the Romans.—intercederent, came in.—senatus consulta, properly, executive orders of the Senate, which had no authority to pass laws.—ut, how.

28. 5. sui nihil, nothing of their own (dignity, &c.).—quod . . . ad tulissent, what they had brought [as their contribution] to the alliance.

6. postulavit eadem—he made the same demands.—at, at least.

44. rogatum et arcessitum—*at the request and summons.*

2. sibi, on him (referring to the main subject).

3. pace uti, enjoy peace.—sua voluntate, by their own consent.
—oportere, impersonal: its subject is amicitiam . . . esse.—id (neut.), *this result* : not the friendship (amicitia), which was their own voluntary offer.

4. si . . . remittatur, future cond. (§ 67, 1, c.; G. 659): the pres. for imperf. for greater vividness.—per, through the means of: subtrahantur, are got away (by underhand means).—non minus libenter, with no less pleasure.

5. quod . . . traducat, as for his bringing over (the quod clause of fact, made subj. by indir. disc.).—defenderit, warded off.

29. 7. hanc Galliam, this part of Gaul.—ut . . . sic, as . . . so.—quod = in that.

8. imperitum rerum, ignorant of affairs.—bello proximo, i.e. B.C. 62.
9. debere se suspicari, etc., he had ground to suspect, that Caesar, in keeping an army in Gaul, kept it with pretense of friendship, [but really] to ruin him.

10. nobilibus gratum, a favor to the nobles. Caesar was the recognized head of the party opposed to the Senate and nobility. Many of the aristocracy would be glad of any safe way to be rid of him. See Cic. Fam. viii. 1, for the way rumors of disaster to Caesar were spread among his enemies in Rome.—id compertum habere, had ascertained (§ 72, 3, b; G. 230).

45. in eam sententiam quare = to this effect [to show] that. — negotio, enterprise. — neque se judicare, and he did not consider.

2. bello superatos, b.c. 121, when the Allobroges were subdued, and the Province (probably) organized. — ignovisset, had pardoned: in fact, they lay beyond the naturally strong frontier of the Cevennes.

3. antiquissimum quodque (see § 17, 5, c) = as far back as you can go, i.e. to those victories of Fabius.

30. 46. conicere = conjicere: see § 1, 3, d.

3. periculo legionis, danger to the legion. — committendum non ut dici posseit = no ground should be given for saying (cf. § 70, 4, c; G. 557). — per fidem, through [misplaced] trust.

4. elatum est, it was reported. — qua adrogantia usus, with what display of insolence. — omnia Gallia (abl. of separation, with interdixisset, § 54, 1; G. 383), had ordered the Romans (dat. following inter-), away from all Gaul. — ut, how (indir. question).

47. uti constitueret, following velle (§ 70, 3, b; G. 532). — si minus, if not.

2. retineri quin, be kept from (§ 65, 1, b; G. 550). — poterant = potuerant. — legatum e suis = one of his own officers. — magno . . . missurum, it would be at great risk that, &c.

3. Flacco, governor of Gaul b.c. 83. It was customary for slaves or aliens to become clients of the person from whom they received freedom or citizenship; and to take his gentile name (§ 15, 19). Thus here Procillus takes the name (C. Valerius) of his patron Flaccus, retaining his own as cognomen. — civitate donatus erat, § 51, 1, c; G. 348. — quâ multâ . . . utebatur, which Ariovistus spoke freely. — peccandi causa, ground of offence.

31. 48. a Cæsaris castris. This camp is placed by Napoleon III. at the southern foot of the Vosges mountains, a few miles N. W. of Mülhausen, just at the point where there is a break between the Vosges and the spurs of the Jura, opening from the valley of the Saône into that of the Rhine. The reversed march of Ariovistus placed him just in this passage, so as to cut off Caesar's
supplies. This pass is now commanded by the famous fortress of Belfort.

3. hoc, pointing to the description which follows.

4. singuli [equites] singulos [pedites], one apiece. — versa-
bantur, acted.

5. si quo ... prodeundum, if there was occasion, &c., (quo =
to any place). — exercitazione, through training. — sublevati, sup-
porting themselves. — cursum adaequarent, keep pace with them.

49. castris (loc. abl.), in camp. — acie tripli, see ch. 24.

2. castra munire, to fortify the camp. Whenever the Roman
halted, even for a single night, a regular camp was laid out,
measured with great precision by certain fixed rules (based on
the science of augury), and thoroughly fortified with earth-wall, ditch,
and palisades. The spade was as familiar to the Roman soldier as
the sword or javelin. The camp was regularly a quadrangle, its
size proportioned to the number of the troops. In this case, Cæsar
had one larger camp about two miles to the east of the Germans,
and a smaller one rather more than half a mile to the west of them.
Thus Ariovistus could not retreat either way, without passing the
Roman entrenchments.

32. 50. instituto suo, according to his plan. — potestatem,
opportunity.

3. inlatis et acceptis, after giving and receiving.

4. matres familias: according to Tacitus (Ger. 8), it was not
matrons only, but women as a class, to whom this prophetic power
was ascribed. — sortibus, lots of leaves or twigs marked with
certain signs; vaticinationibus, tokens interpreted from the noise
of waters, river-eddies, &c. — ex usu, expedient. — utrum . . .
necne, § 71, 2; G. 460. — non esse fas, it was not the divine
will. — novam lunam (cf. Tac. G. 11): so the Spartans refused to
advance to Marathon before the full moon.

51. alarios: the auxiliaries as distinguished from the legionary
(Roman) troops. — quod minus valebat, because he was weak in
comparison with the enemy. — ad speciem, to make a show, as if
the two legions were still there, while in fact they had joined the
other force at the greater camp. — acie, of legionsaries alone.

2. generatim, by tribes or clans. — Marcomannos, this term is
explained as “men of the Mark,” or military frontier.

3. eo, hither, i.e. among the carts and wagons. — profisciscen-
tes, [the men] as they advanced (obj. of implorabant).

33. 52. singulos legatos, a legatus in command of each
legion. This was the beginning of a very important reform in the
military organization. Cæsar felt so keenly the evil of the command
being divided among six tribunes, that he detailed one of his aids (legati) nominally to assist the tribunes. After this time, we find the legatus as the regular commander of a legion, with the six tribunes under him. On this occasion he appointed an adjutant (quaestor) to that one of the six legions which was intended to be under his own special command.

2. *ita . . . ut, so . . that.* — spatium, room, i.e. time. — rejectis, throwing aside.

3. in phalangas (acc. plur. § 11, iii. 6, f). against the phalanxes. These were compact bodies of 300 to 400 men each, with shields close locked in front. — reveellent, etc., i.e. instead of pushing from beneath, they grasped the enemies’ shields at the upper edge, and so struck down from above (desuper).

4. a sinistro cornu, on their left wing.

5. P. Crassus, son of Marcus Crassus the triumvirs. — expedition, more disengaged. — versabantur, were engaged.

53. restitutum est, contrasted with laborantibus, above. — Rhenum: the nearest point was a little below Basel, about fifty miles distant.

2. tranare contenderunt = by great effort swam across. — reliquos omnes, said to be 80,000.

3. duæ uxores: only chiefs among the Germans, says Tacitus (G. 18), had more than one wife; and this was for the sake of honor and alliances. — Sueva, see iv. 1. — utræque perierunt: for Caesar’s massacres of women and children, compare iv. 14, vii. 28. — in Cæsarem incidit, happened on Cæsar himself.

4. Procilius, see § 47, 3. — trinis catenis, three [sets of] manacles.

34. 5. neque . . . diminuerat, nor had Fortune, by any harm to him, &c.

6. as presenete, in his own presence. — ter: it was the regular usage of the Germans to consult the lot thrice (Tac. G. 10). This has come down to the present day in sundry games, &c.

54. Ubii (some older editions have ubi): these lived near the modern Cologne, and were deadly enemies of the Suevi (see iv. 3).

2. maturius, earlier, the decisive battle with Ariovistus was fought about the 10th of September. — in citerorem Galliam, south of the Alps. conventus: the proconsular Courts held for the administration of justice.
BOOK Second.

THE BELGIAN CONFEDERACY. — The people of Northern Gaul, including Flanders and the Netherlands, were far remote from any country hitherto occupied by the Roman arms. They lived amid forests and swamps hard to penetrate; they claimed kindred with the German tribes rather than the more fickle and effeminate Celts; and they had a fierce and resolute spirit of independence, like that which the Dutch exhibited long after in the same regions, against the armies of Spain. * The Belgian tribes, and particularly the Nervii, appear in this confederation to have offered to Cæsar a more formidable and desperate resistance than any he met elsewhere, until the great rising of B.C. 52; and when their spirit was once broken, the conquest of Gaul was simply a question of time.

PAGE

35. In hibernis: it is doubtful whether this expression can be used except of an army or a campaign. — crebri = thick-coming. — adferebantur, fœbat (observe the imperfect of repeated action) = kept coming in; was informed from time to time. — conjurare, uniting under oath: "any war against Rome is a 'conspiracy; ' a nation enslaved by Rome is 'pacified.'"

2. vererentur, subj. as following esse (§ 66, 2; G. 666). — Gallia, i.e. Celtic Gaul. — exercitus noster, i.e. in the way of regular garrisons on their frontier. — partim qui, etc., the three classes were, first, those jealous of the Roman power; second, the restless, who dreaded a strong settled rule; third, those who held a sort of despotic authority as chiefs.

ut ... ita, while ... at the same time. — inveterascere, get a foothold; lit. “grow old.” — moleste ferebant, were impatient.

3. novis imperiis (dat. § 51, 2, b; G. 345) studebant, wanted rotation in authority. — nonnullis, i.e. the chiefs of clans.

36. vulgo regna occupabantur, royal power was constantly usurped, by “coups d’état” on a small scale. — imperio nostro (loc. abl.), under our dominion.

2. duas legiones, making eight in all, amounting perhaps to 60,000 men, including auxiliaries. The proconsul seems to have had absolute authority to raise these levies.

2. pabuli copia, a supply of food, so that his army could move. — dat negotium, gives it in charge. — Senonibus: they were north of the Aedui, on the upper course of the Seine. Their name is preserved in the city of Sens. — uti cognoscant, to learn.

* A very striking account of the country and its inhabitants will be found in the introduction to Motley's Dutch Republic.
Belgian Confederacy.

3. constanter, consistently, i.e. their accounts all agreed. — cogi, were gathering; conduei, were massing.

4. non dubitandum quin, there should be no hesitation about. With dubitare in this meaning the infinitive is the ordinary construction.

3. de improviso, unexpectedly. — omni opinione (§ 54, 5, b; G. 399, r'), than any one could think. — Remi, north of the river Marne, the territory near Rheims, in Champagne. They were friendly to the Romans, whose victory over Ariovistus had made them the second power in Gaul (see vi. 12). — ex Belgis, of the Belgae (for Belgarum: § 50, 2, r; G. 371, r').

2. oppidis (loc. abl.) recipere, receive them (the Romans) in their fortified places.

3. Suessiones (obj. of deterrere), west of the Remi: the territory about the modern Soissons.

ut ne . . . potuerint (== possent, § 58, 10, c, r; G. 513), that they (the Remi) could not even dissuade, &c. — qui ut tantum, although enjoying the same rights and laws (§ 65, 2, c; G. 637, under which construction it would also be subj. in direct disc.).

unum imperium, i.e. a confederacy, which did not, however, prevent the secession of the Suessiones along with the other Belgae. — quin consentrent, from uniting with them.

4. reperiebat (imperf.), found, by repeated inquiry.

2. plerisque, a great many of: see the end of the chapter, and compare, with respect to the Nervii, Tac. G. 28. They were apparently, however, of Celtic blood; though they considered the German a more proud and heroic descent.

37. propter fertilitatem: construe with consedisse. — fieri, i.e. it was coming to be the case.

3. omnia explorata = full information. — propinquitatibus, blood-relationships; adfinitatibus, alliances by marriage.

4. Bellovasos, near Beauvais. — plurimum valere, have most power. — suos, i.e. of the Remi.

5. regam: showing that the overthrow of royal power (see i. 2) had not yet taken place among the Belgians. — cum . . . tum, not only . . . but also. — bellii summam = conduct of the war.

6. Nervios, to the north of the Suessiones; Atrebates, near Arras; Ambianos, near Amiens; Caletos, near Calais; Veromanduos, in Vermandois; Condruos, at Condros; Germani, considered here (by Zeuss) to be a Celtic name meaning "hill-people."

5. liberaliter prosecutis, making liberal promises. — diligentier, promptly.

38. 2. quanto operae (often written quantopere) . . . intersit, how greatly it concerns both the republic (Rome) and their common
interest (§ 50, 4, d; G. 381). — ne configendum sit, lest they should have to contend.

3. Bellovacorum, as lying farthest west, and most remote from Cæsar's field of operations, so as to divide the enemy (cf. ch. 10'). — introduxerint, perf. subj. (for fut. perf.), as following docet.

4. ad se venire, were coming straight towards him. — postquam ab iis . . . cognovit, when he learned from those whom, &c. — Axonam, the Aisne, here flowing nearly due west, and joining the Seine below Paris, through the Oise. — in extremis finibus, generally, in the remotest part; Bibrak, a town of the Remi, lying eight miles beyond. While here, Cæsar's camp was protected by this river in the rear, and in front by a small marshy stream. — castra, the traces of Cæsar's works at this place were discovered in 1862, on a low hill called Mauchamp.

6. duodevigit pedum, 18 feet (in width).

6. ægre sustentatum est = they hardly held their own.

2. oppugnatio, style of attack. — circumjecta . . . monibus (dat.), having thrown a multitude of men about the walls. — copti sunt, see § 38, 1, a; G. 424, R1.

testudine facta, making a tortoise: a military term for a formation in which the men, standing in a compact mass, held their shields above their heads, lapping over each other so as to form a continuous roof, the edges of the shields appearing like the scales of a tortoise-shell.

3. tum, in this instance.

4. finem . . . fecisset, had put an end to the assault.

7. isdem ducibus usus, employing the same men as guides.

39. Numidas (from Algiers), Cretas: both these, especially the Cretans, were famous bowmen. — Baleares, from the small islands east of Spain: they were celebrated slingers. — subsidio oppidanis (§ 51, 5; G. 350), dat. of service and of indir. object. — potiundi oppidi, § 73, 2, r; G. 428, R3.

2. morati, depopulati, having delayed, having laid waste: observe that Latin can employ a perfect active participle only (as here) of deponent verbs. The corresponding construction has to be continued in the abl. absolute, with incendo: vicis incensis, having set fire to, &c. — omnibus copulis (abl. of accompaniment, see § 54, 6, a; G. 391, R1), with all their troops. — ab . . . ducibus, less than two miles off: ab is used here adverbially (§ 56, 2, d; G. 416, R). — amplius: this may be acc. of extent (§ 55, 2; G. 335); or millibus may be abl. of distance, and amplius construed as in § 54, 5, c; G. 311, R4.

8. eximiam opinionem, the eminent reputation had of their valor. — proslio supersedere, to defer the engagement (lit. to sit
Belgian Confederacy.

above it, as in judgment). — periclitabatur, experimented: this gives the original meaning of periculum, risk.

2. loco, dat. after obduxit, along a place, &c. — loci (construct with tantum), spread over as much ground as, &c. — lateris dejectus — a lateral slope. — in frontem, etc., rising abruptly in front, slopes gently to the plain in the rear (re-).

3. transversam, at right angles to his front, probably running back to the river, as well as extending somewhat towards the enemy, at which end he placed the redoubts (castella). The remains of the works (note, ch. 5th) do not, however, agree fully with Cæsar's description: probably some parts of the works have been effaced.

tormenta, engines, worked with levers and pulleys, a sort of clumsy siege-artillery. They were of two classes: catapultae, which shot nearly level, generally arrows and darts; and ballista, which shot at a high angle, generally stones and beams.

4. si ... esset, if there should be need of any thing — any need.

9. palus, a wet meadow (before referred to), traversed by the little stream Miette. — si ... expectabant, waited [to see] whether. — si ... fieret, in case they should begin the passage.

40. 2. praelio equestri, a cavalry-skirmish, which proved more favorable to the Roman side (secundiores nostris). — post, behind.

3. castellum, the fortified camp ("tête de pont") held by Sabinus, ch. 5th. — interseciderent, cut away (between). — si minus potuissent, if they should not succeed.

10. Cæsar: words thus italicized are wanting or obliterated in the ms. — Numidias, etc.: these light-armed troops were trained runners, and so "got round by the bridge to the ford in time to stop the passage of the Belgians." Moberly thinks they must have been taken up en croupe behind the horsemen.

2. adgressi, at the stream below, probably, at the left of Cæsar's camp.

3. nostros, subj. of progressi depending on viderunt: and saw that our men were not [disposed to] advance to worse ground to fight them. — domum ... reverti: thus the confederacy dissolves suddenly into a mere defensive alliance, and the Nervii, &c., are cut to pieces in detail. — convenrent, etc.: understand ut after constituerunt (§ 70, 3, f; R: G. 546, r3). — eos, antecedent of quorum, above.

4. Divitiacum ... adpropinquare, see ch. 5th. — neque ... ferrent = and so fail to carry relief to their own people.

41. 11. nullo certo ordine, in no regular order of march.

"Imagine a débacle of 236,000 men, besides camp-followers, women, &c." — fecerunt ut: § 70, 4, e; G. 557.
2. nondum perspexerat — he could not yet see clearly, the object being qua ... discenderit.

4. cum ... consisterent, while those in the rear whom they overtook stood firm. — priores (understand et), and those in advance.

5. tantam . . . spatium — killed as many of them as the time allowed ("as the day was long").

12. Noviodunum, the modern Soissons, about 20 miles west of Bibraix. Its modern name is given from the tribe whose capital it was: civitas Suessionum.

2. ex itinere, i.e. without delaying his march. — paucis defendentibus (concessive), though there were few defenders.

3. vineas, sheds ("mantelets"), light galleries of timber which could be pushed up close to the enemy's works. They were named from the arbors or trellised galleries of vineyards.

4. aggrega, mound or embankment, sloping upward to the height of the wall to be attacked, for training the siege artillery (ch. 83). — torribus, light movable towers, to be occupied by archers, &c., to clear the walls of defenders.

42. 13. obsidibus acceptis, taking as hostages, &c. — Bellovacos: their territory lay about 40 or 50 miles due north of Paris.

2. Bratuspantium, Breteuil, at the head of the Somme valley. — circiter, etc., [only] about five miles, &c. — in ejus idem venire (dep. on significare), that they committed themselves to his good faith, i.e. "surrender at discretion."

3. cum accessisset, poneret, had arrived, was fixing.

14. facit verba, acts as spokesman.

2. perfecer, were suffering: its subj. is Hædusos. In fact, the Ædui "had paid for the regaining of their ancient power by the Roman alliance, by the loss of their civil liberty; and were nearly in the position of a protected sovereign state in India, with Labienus for a vigorous military resident" (Moberly). — deficiente, had withdrawn: its subj. is Bellovacos.

3. qui ... fuisse = all the movers of this policy.

4. sua clementia, his own [characteristic or well-known] clemency.

5. si fecerit, perf. subj. for fut. perf. of dir. disc., following the present facit. — quorum ... consuerint, by whose aid and resources they are accustomed to sustain whatever wars befall them.

15. quod, etc., giving the reason of poposcit. — magna auctoritate, of great influence: the genitive is more common. — praebat, was at the head.

43. 2. Ambianorum, about Amiens, near the coast of the Channel.
3. pati, they suffer (§ 67, 1, a; G. 527, R). — eorum: this word is doubtful here; probably a note written in the margin by some editor: better as a general truth, animos, temper. — remitti, relaxed.

4. projecissent, had abandoned. — confirmare, they declared positively that they would not, &c.

16. Sabim, the Sambre, which flows northeasterly into the Meuse (Mosa). The Nervii occupied the basin of this river and of the upper Scheldt.

2. Atrebatius, etc., small tribes to the south and west.

3. Aduatuorum, Germans, living farther to the east. — quique = eosque qui, following coniectisse. — in eum locum quo, into a place whither, &c.

17. ex . . . Gallis, for part. genitive (§ 50, 2, e, R; G. 371, R) following complures, many of the Belgians, &c. — una, along with him. — eorum dierum: observing our army's custom of march in these days (§ 50, 2, R).

2. demonstrantur, made known. — inter singulas legiones = between every two legions. — impedimentorum magnum numerum = a very long baggage-train. — intercedere, intervened. — neque . . . negotii, and there would be no difficulty. — hanc, i.e. the first legion. — consistere, make a stand.

3. adjuvabat: the subj. is quod Nervii . . . effecerant, etc., the advice of those who reported the matter was reinforced by the fact that, &c.

44. antiquitus, of old: the hedges, described below, were an immemorial custom, and are still, it is said, common in this region. Traces of such still exist in England, about 400 years old. — neque student, pay no attention. — quicquid possunt, etc. — all the strength they have is in infantry.

4. quo facillis impedient, in order to check more easily. — teneris arboribus, etc., having notched and bent down young trees, and allowed their boughs to grow out thick breadthwise, and by throwing in brambles and thorns, they had made these hedges to furnish defences like a wall, which not only could not be broken into, but could not even be seen through. — consilium, i.e. the plan of attacking the first legion.

18. æqualiter declivis, with uniform slope.

2. adversus hunc, in front of ours. — passus . . . apertus, open at the foot for about 200 paces.

3. secundum flumen, down stream. — stationes equitum, cavalry pickets.

2. *hostias,* acc. plur. (§ 11, i. 3, c; G. 60, 1): this form is constantly found in earlier writers, but is rare in most editions of Cæsar. — *expeditas,* unincumbered (i.e. without baggage). — *coniocarant,* had put in its place: this word is often confounded with *conlegere,* collect. — *proxime oonscriptae,* the last levies; while the veterans, as usual, must bear the brunt of the fight.

4. *neque .... auderent,* and our men did not venture to follow their retreat (cidentes) farther than the limit to which the level and open ground (correcta loca aperta) extended. — *opere dimenso,* having staked out the works.

45. 5. *convenerat,* had been agreed on (compare Eng. conventional). — *ut .... confirmaverant,* just as they had formed their line, &c., they dashed forward (provolaverunt): i.e. in the same order they held already. — *omnibus copiis,* in full force (abl. of accompaniment).

6. *in flumine:* the Sambre is nowhere more than three feet deep at this point. — *in manibus nostris,* i.e. within reach of our weapons. — *adverso coile contenderunt,* pushed straight up hill. — *occupati,* this participle is only used as an adjective, were still at work.

20. *vexillum,* flag. The signal for battle was first given by a flag, or pennon, displayed from the general’s tent; the sounding of the *tuba* then followed, as an order to form ranks; last came the *signum,* or order to engage.

The *vexillum,* in its ordinary use, was a small red cavalry-flag, hung from a cross-piece on the flagstaff; often used, also, by detached bodies of troops. The *signum,* or standard, was of metal, and belonged regularly to the legion and its divisions (214).

*Paulo longius,* to a considerable distance (§ 17, 5, a). — *aggeris,* i.e. earth for the entrenchments. — *cohortandis,* must be encouraged, see § 35, 1, b. — *successus,* close approach.

2. *usus,* experience. — *quid ... oporteret,* indir. quest., object of *præscribere.* — *legatos,* those whom he had assigned to the several legions (see note, i. 52).

3. *nihil expectabat,* could no longer wait: *nihil* (properly adv. acc.) is stronger than *non.* — *quæ videbantur* = what seemed best.

21. *quam in partem,* to whatever division (sc. in eam partem). — *decumam,* see i. 41.

2. *non longiore ... quam* = with only so many words as, &c. — *neu* = *neve:* the *ne* being correl. to *uti,* above. — *quod posset,* gives the reason for *signum dedit:* for the subj. in *posset,* see § 65, 2, c; G. 313.

46. 3. *pugnantibus occurrit,* finds them already fighting. — *insignia,* the ornaments of the helmet, &c. — *tegimenta,* leather
II. 21-24. [Belgian Confederacy.]

covers. — defuerit, notice the sequence of tenses (§ 58, 10, c, R; G. 513).

4. signa, either of the legion (an eagle) or of the maniple (a hand). What was the standard of the cohort is not known. — haec, antecedent to both quam and quae (§ 47, 2, a; G. 281, e').

constitit: the Roman soldier was so thoroughly drilled, that to whatever part of the legion he found his way, he knew perfectly well the duties belonging to it.

22. dejectus, the fall. — reli . . . ordo, the rule and method of the military art. — diversis legionibus (abl. abs.), the legions facing various ways, each fighting the enemy that was nearest. — certa subsidia, regular reserves. — quid . . . opus esset (§ 54, 1, d, R; G. 390; subj. of provideri, depending on poterat understood), it could not be seen at a distance what was wanting anywhere. — administrari, attended to. — tanta iniquitate, so unfavorable condition.

23. examinatos, out of breath, agreeing with Atrebates, obj. of compulerunt. — ex loco superiore = standing as they were on higher ground.

2. et . . . progressi, i. e. though they had advanced upon unfavorable ground.

3. diverse, i. e. which had advanced in different directions. — ex loco superiore = having gone down from the higher ground.

4. nudatis, exposed by the advance of these four legions. — quom (see note, i. 1') constitisset, subordinate to the preceding abl. absolute, nudatis castra.

47. aperto latere, on the uncovered flank. — castrorum, not a partitive but a possessive genitive: the height upon which the camp stood.

24. cum reciperant, while gathering back. — adversis hostibus, plump on the enemy, who had entered on the other side. — occurrerant . . . ferebantur: these imperfects belong to the side-action (§ 58, 3, a; G. 222) interrupting the main narrative, which is resumed in the perfects contenderunt, etc., at the end of the chapter.

2. decumana porta: the camp had four gates, the pratoria in front (towards the enemy), decumana in the rear, principalis dextra on the right and sinistra on the left (facing the pratoria).

4. Treveri, from the valley of the Moselle: their capital city was the present Treves. They claimed German origin. — opinio, reputation. — auxiliis causâ, as auxiliaries. — desperatis . . . contenderunt, losing hope in our fortunes, pushed for home. — Romanos, obj. of renuntiaverunt; castris, obj. of potitos, had got possession of.
25. Caesar, subj. of processit (p. 48): this sentence is a fine example of the force of a Latin period, holding the main act in suspense till all the circumstances bearing on it have been brought into a single view (see § 76, 4). — signisque conlatis (causative), and since, &c.

2. quartae cohortis: this stood on the left of the front line, and bore the brunt of the attack (see i. 24). Each cohort had three maniples. — primipilo: the primus pilus was the first centurion of the first cohort, and thus stood on the extreme right of the line.


48. in angusto, in a strait. — vidit, repeated from line 4 of this chapter, on account of the length of the sentence and the number of particulars.

4. ab novissimis, in the rear. — signa inferre, to charge. — laxare, open out. — militi, dative after detracto, the almost universal construction of persons from whom any thing is taken.

5. operam navare, to do his best.

26. urges, hard pushed. — conversa signa, etc. = then wheel about and charge.

2. neque timent, and no longer feared. — aversi, in the rear, i.e. while their backs were turned.

3. cursu incitato, setting out on a run.

4. nihil reliquit fecerunt, left nothing undone in the way of speed.

27. inermes armatis, unarmed threw themselves on the armed enemy. — quo (§ 64, 1, a.; G. 545, 2, with the implied comparative) praeferrent, that they might show themselves superior.

49. 3. ut... conicerent: the natural order of the sentence would be (following tantam virtutem), and that when these too were struck down, and corpses were piled in heaps, those who survived still hurled weapons, &c. — ut... debet, so that it must be judged that not without good hope of success (neiquam), &c. The subj. of debet is homines... ausos esse, etc. — animi, spirit.

28. prope ad intervaceonem: this destruction of a brave people was not so complete as their despair here represents. The Nervii were again in revolt three years later (v. 26), and two years after sent a force of 5000 men to Alesia (vii. 75). — aestuaria: the country lying to the north (the modern Zealand) is low and marshy, cut up with tidewater inlets and bays. — impedimentum, in the way (lit. hindered).

2. vix ad quingentos = ad vix quingentos, to barely 500.

3. misericordia, mercy (an abridged form of the same word). It
has been observed that Caesar's dealings with the Gauls were comparatively merciful at first: at least, after enormous massacre, the remnant had something to hope for. But after he was twice repulsed from Britain, when Gaul made another effort for independence, his "gentleness" was shown by such acts as cutting off the hands of all his prisoners who had borne arms (viii. 44), and in the treatment of Vercingetorix, kept for years in chains, and then killed in cold blood in his conqueror's triumph.

29. cum venirent, while on the way.—in unum oppidum: not far from Namur, at the confluence of the Meuse and Sambre. [Napoleon III. thinks it the same with the citadel of Namur, which lies opposite the town between the rivers; but this appears far too small (see ch. 39), and so striking a position would hardly have been left unnoticed (see Motley's Dutch Rep. iii. 224). Others place it at Falaise, opposite Huy, on the Meuse below Namur.]

3. Cimbris Teutonisque, see note, i. 77.

50. agere ac portare: the cattle would be driven; the rest carried: agere and ferre are the usual words for plunder.—sex milia: this German military colony was probably adopted into the tribe of Aduatuci (whose name is Celtic, meaning runners), giving rise to the story that the whole tribe were of German descent.

4. alias . . . alias, in one quarter . . . in another.—inferrent, the regular word for offensive war. —inlatum [sibi] defenderent, warded it off (de-fendo) when brought against them. —consensu eorum, by compact with them (i.e. the finitimi).

30. quindecim milium: fifteen miles would be preposterous for so small a hill as that at Namur: hence Napoleon III. understands pedum instead of passuum. But this would be nearly 3 miles, while the works on his plan measure hardly more than one.

2. vinae, sheds to protect the works under construction (ch. 127); aggere, the sloping mound, up which the tower was pushed and hauled on rollers; turrim, a movable tower, of several stories (tabulata), the upper part containing engines. Sometimes the towers were built in parts, and taken along as part of the regular siege-train. —ab tanto spatio, so far off (an adverbial phrase).

3. quibusnam: the enclitic nam (num) gives a sarcastic emphasis to the question: by what hands, pray, or what strength, &c. —preo, in comparison with. —contemptui, a curious example of the dat. of service (§ 51, 5, r; G. 350). —conlocare = conlocaturos esse: some editions have turrim moturos sese confiderent.

31. 2. existimare, sc. se: they thought that not without divine aid, &c. —se . . . permittere, they surrendered themselves, &c.
3. deprecari, besought (i.e. to be spared: de-precor). — pro, in accordance with. — quam audirent, which they constantly heard of.

4. inimicos, i.e. their neighbors regarded them as interlopers. — traditis armis, if their weapons should be given up.

5. praestare, it was better. — quamvis fortunam, any fortune whatever (quam vis, what you will).

51. 32. aries, battering-ram, a long beam with an iron head (like a ram's), suspended from a framework and swung with great force against a wall, crumbling the strongest masonry.

2. ne quam injuriam inferreint (§ 21, 2, d'), to inflict no harm. — ad suos: the message was carried to their people, not simply reported to them, which would require suis.

3. summam altitudinem, the full height.

33. ante inito, previously agreed on. — ant dimique, or at any rate.

2. pallibus induxerant, had covered with hide. (Apparently used like dono, etc., § 51, 1, c; G. 348: the regular construction would be with the dat., quibusuellesinducerant.) — qua [parte], where. — repentino, of a sudden.

3. ita . . . ut, they fought as fiercely as brave men must fight, &c. (observe the impersonal use of the passive, § 39, c; G. 344). — in extrema spe = for their last chance. — in una virtute, in mere bravery.

4. sectionem, auction-sale of confiscated property. The purchaser was called sector.

32. 34. Venetos, etc., the name of the Veneti is found in the modern Vannes, and of the Redones in Rennes. — maritumae civitates, the modern Brittany: they are spoken of at length in Book III.

35. 2. Ilyricum: this province, east of the Adriatic, made part of Cæsar's government.

3. Carnutes, between the Seine and the Loire, comprising Orleans: their name is found in the modern Chartres. — Anudes (Anjou), near the lower Loire; Turbones, the modern Tours. — propinquae, apparently meaning near the Veneti, &c.

4. supplicatio, a public ceremonial of thanksgiving. Ten days was the longest that had ever been granted before, excepting to Pompey who was honored with twelve days for his victory over Mithridates. It should be remembered, however, that Cæsar's party was now all-powerful at Rome.
BOOK THIRD.

ALPINE CAMPAIGN. — The higher valleys of the Alps were inhabited by tribes who got a scanty living by working in mines, and often waylaid and plundered expeditions on the march (see Strabo, iv. 6). The two legions sent by Caesar under Q. Pedius (ii. 2) had been attacked by these predatory people while passing into the valley of the Rhone above the Lake (Valais). Hence this expedition, which was intended to strike terror into the mountain tribes.

53. Nantuatis (acc.), etc. These tribes occupied the valley of the Upper Rhone, above the Lake of Geneva.

2. iter per Alpes: the pass of the Great St. Bernard, which reaches the Rhone valley at Martigny (the ancient Octodurus), at the great bend of the river. — magno cum periculo = but only with great danger. — magnis portoribus, heavy transit-duties.

54. 4. hic, ejus, both referring to the same subject.

2. montes: not the higher ranges, but the lower heights directly upon the valley.

3. id, his, in appos. with ut . . . caperent. — opprimenda, crushing, the usual meaning of this word. — neque eam plenissimam, etc., and that not a very full one, since two cohorts had been detached, &c. — singillatim, in small parties.

3. cum ipsi . . . decurrerent, since they could charge down from the hills upon the valley.

4. accedebat quod — and besides (it was added that). The subject of accedebat is the clause quod . . . dolebant, they were angry that their children were taken from them as hostages. — Romanos . . . adjungere, obj. of habebant, and in agreement with persuasum: they had persuaded themselves that the Romans were attempting, &c.

3. perfectae, referring both to opus and munitiones, but agreeing with the nearest. — satis esset provium, sufficient provision had been made.

55. concilio, a council of officers.

2. præter opinionem = unexpectedly. — subsidio veniri = that any one should come to their aid: veniri is impersonal, depending on posset implied in possent.

3. nonnullæ sententiae, several opinions (or votes) given by the officers in council.

4. majori . . . placuit, it was determined by the majority. — hoc . . . defendere, to reserve this course for the extremity, and meanwhile, &c.
4. *it is rebus . . . administrandis, for settling and putting into effect what they had resolved on.*

2. *integrae viribus, as long as their strength was whole.* — repugnare, mittere, occurrere, ferre, superari, historical infinitives, implying incessant action. — *ut . . . videbatur, as any part seemed,* &c.: a relative clause, of which the antecedent is *eo.* — *ali — while others.*

3. *non modo . . . sed ne . . . quidem, not only not, but not even, &c.*

5. *cum pugnaretur, when the fight had been [and was still] going on* (§ 58, 3, b; G. 225). — *languidioribus nostris* (dat. of reference), *while our men were failing.* — *deficerent, began to fail.* — *vallum completere, the rampart was made for the most part of earth thrown up in digging the ditch; so that to tear down the one was at the same time to fill up the other.*

56. *extremum auxilium — a desperate resource.*

3. *intermitterent, hort. subj. following oertiores faict in the sense of instructs.* — *tela . . . exciperent, gather up the spent weapons.*

6. *cognoscendi facultatem, opportunity of finding out.* — *sui colligendi:* observe that *sui* is plural in meaning, though agreeing with *colligendi* (§ 73, 3, a²; G. 429, R). It is, however, properly the gen. sing. of *suum* (§ 19, 3, c).

2. *circumventos interficiunt — they surround and kill.* — *ex milibus, for part. gen. after parte.*

3. *exuitis, stripped, agreeing with *copitis:* § 51, 1, c; G. 348.

4. *alio consilio . . . aliis rebus — saw that he had met a different state of things from what he had in mind when he came:* (lit. remembered that he had come with one design, and saw that he had met another state of things).

**Naval Campaign.** — The peninsula of Armorica (Bretagne, Brittany, or Little Britain, so called since the emigration from Great Britain to escape the Saxon invasion) has always been the home of the hardiest, most independent, and most strongly characterized of all the Gallic populations. Its scenery is wild and secluded, the character of its coast is clearly given in Caesar's narrative, and its language remains Celtic to this day. No one of Caesar's campaigns shows more strikingly his boldness and fertility of resource than this.

7. *inita hieme, in the beginning of winter* ("winter being entered on").

2. *mare following proximus as the superl. of *prope* (§ 56, 2, a; G. 356, R*²).

3. *praefectos, officers:* a general term for those assigned (*praeficio*) to any service or command.
Naval Campaign.

57. 8. hujus civitatis, i.e. the Veneti, on the southern coast of Brittany, the modern Morbihan. — longe amplissima, very great indeed. — consuerunt, are accustomed (§ 58, 5, R; G. 227, R²). — in magno . . . aperto, in the great and open violence of the sea — on a sea exposed to great and violent storms. — omnes habent vectigales, treat all as tributaries, i.e. levy tolls upon.

2. ab his fit initium, etc., they begin by detaining these.

3. ut sunt, etc., as in fact the resolutions of the Gauls are, &c. — eundem . . . laturos = they would bear in common the result of whatever fortune.

4. quam acceperant, indic. as a clause of fact (§ 67, 1, b; G. 630, R¹). — quam perferre, than to endure, following the comparative contained in mallent.

5. remittat (sc. ut), bort. subj. depending on the message implied in legationem mittunt.

9. aberat longius, was too far off to take command at once in person. — naves longas, galleys, propelled by a large number of oars. Ships of burden (onerarie) were built broad, with a view to capacity. — Ligere, the Loire, where Crassus was wintering. — institui, to be assigned to the several galleys.

2. in se admisissent, had taken on themselves: admitto alone is the ordinary phrase for commit. — legatos . . . conjectos (the specific act), in appos. with facinus.

58. 3. pedestria itinera, etc., travelling by land was cut off. — inscientiam, i.e. the Romans' lack of acquaintance. — neque . . . confidebant, and they trusted that our armies could not, &c.

4. ut . . . occiderent (concessive, § 57, 5; G. 610), granting that every thing should turn out contrary to their expectation. — plurimum posse, were strongest. — facultatem, supply. — longe aliam . . . atque, very different . . . from. — concluso, enclosed (like the Mediterranean).

5. Oasimos, etc., the coast tribes as far as Flanders. The name Lexovii remains in Lisieux; Namnetes in Nantes; Diablintres in Jablins.

10. injuriae retentorum equitum, the wrong done by detaining the knights (§ 72, 3, a; G. 667, R²). — rebellio, renewal of hostilities (not rebellion). — no . . . arbitrarentur: a new rising was threatened by the Belgians, while the maritime tribes, it is said, were already fearful of an attempt upon Britain. (Observe that this clause is under the same construction as the nominatives injuriae, defectio, etc.)

2. excitari: the present infin. here corresponds to the imperfect of description, excitabantur: while odisse answers to oderunt taken as a present, all men naturally hate.
11. mandat adeat gives it in charge (manu dare) to advance upon (§ 70, 3, f; G. 547, R³).
59. arcessit[ esse] dicebantur, were reported to have been summoned.

2. Aquitaniam, in S. W. Gaul (see i. 14). The people were of different race and language from the other Gauls, and took little interest in their affairs, not even joining in the great revolt of Book vii. But Cæsar may not have known this (Moberly).

3. Unellos, etc., in Normandy.

4. Decimum Brutum, afterwards one of the conspirators against Cæsar, under the more celebrated Marcus Brutus. — Piconibus, Santonis, south of the Loire (Poitou and Saintonge).

12. ejus modi . . . ut, of such sort that. — cum . . . incitavisset = at high tide. — seatur, tide: properly the surging movement of boiling water; hence applied both to extreme heat and to ocean-tides. — bis, apparently an error of most MSS. Some editors read xxiv. instead of xii.; others refer it to the general ignorance or carelessness of ancient writers. — minuente, at the ebb: intransitive, as if from the passive form used as a reflexive.

2. utraque re, in either case. — superati, agreeing with the subj. of opeperunt. — his (aggere ac molibus) . . . adaequatis, when these were brought level with the walls.

3. hæc faciebant, this they continued to do. — eo facilitatis . . . quod, the more easily, that, &c. — vasto mari, etc., in each of these points contrasted with the sheltered and tideless waters of the Mediterranean.

13. ipsorum, their own. — aliquanto planiores, considerably more flat-bottomed. — quo . . . possent, that they might more easily take the shallows and the ebb-tide.

2. admodum erectæ, quite elevated. — robore, oak timber.

60. contumeliam, buffeting. — transtra, etc., the decks of beams a foot in depth fastened with iron bolts the thickness of a [man's] thumb.

3. pelles, hides; alutæ, leather. — tanta onera navium, ships of so great burden. — non satis commode, not very well: Cæsar does not like to say that any thing is impossible.

4. nostræ classi, etc., the encounter of our fleet with, &c. — una, only. — praestaret, had the advantage (i.e. our fleet). — pro loci natura, considering the nature of the ground.

5. rostro, beak, a sharp projecting brazen point, to strike and disable the enemy's ship; copulis, grappling-irons, with which the ships were held so that they might be boarded. When this could be done, the superior skill of the Roman soldiers could always be depended on (see ch. 14²).
6. accedebat ut—and besides, followed by ferreunt, consisten
tant, and tinerent, which in English would be in the direct con-
struction. se vento dedissent, ran before the wind, a nautical
phrase: hence the noun is repeated. The clause cum ... dedis-
sent is parenthetical. consistentem, came to anchor; ab aestu
relictae, etc., if stranded by the ebb had nothing to fear, &c.—
causa, the chance of all these things.

14. neque ... posse, that the enemy's retreat could not be pre-
vented by capturing their towns, and that no damage could be done
them.

2. paratissimae, fully equipped; ornatissimae, thoroughly fur-
ished. The battle was fought in the bay of Quiberon, Cæsar look-
ing on from shore.—neque Bruto constabat, and it was not
clear to Brutus.

3. excitatis, built up.—ex barbaris navibus, on the part of
the enemy's ships (compare i. 2a note).

61. 4. magno usui, of great service, in fact turning disaster
to victory: but Cæsar will not use words that hint a possible
defeat. muralium falcium, wall-hooks, long poles with sickle-
shaped hooks attached (like those used by "hook-and-ladder"
companies) used to pull down walls: it limits formae (understood),
dat. after absimili.

5. praerumpabantur, they (the halyards) were torn away: ob-
serve the position of funes in the relative clause.

7. paulo fortius actum, one of Cæsar's mild expressions for
an act of remarkable daring.

15. singulas, etc., two or three ships about each.—contendeban
t, made repeated efforts: compare with contenderunt (2),
describing a single act.

2. expugnatis ... navibus, when a good many of their ships
had been boarded.

3. conversis ... navibus, i.e. steered so as to run before the
wind.—malacia, calm (a Greek word).

4. pervenerint, came to land: pervenirent would be equally
correct, and is found in some copies; but the perfect conveys more
distinctly the act of landing.—hora quarta, about 10 A.M.

16. cum ... tum, while ... at the same time: imitating a
very frequent Greek construction (μετά ... &c.).—convenirent,
coegerant, i.e. for this war.—quod ubique, all there was any-
where, followed by the partitive gen. navium.

2. quo, i.e. [any refuge] whither; quem ad modum (often
written as one word), how.

62. 3. eo ... quo, with the intention that.—vindicandum,
vengeance should be inflicted.—omni senatu necato, an instance
Notes: Cæsar. [B. G.

of Cæsar’s clementia.—sub corona vendidit, sold [as slaves] at public auction: lit. under the wreath, since the captives “were crowned like an animal for sacrifice.”

“This can hardly mean that Cæsar sold the whole nation by auction. The mention of the Senate makes it probable that the inhabitants of the capital Dariorigum [Vannae] are meant. Even so the rigor is terrible; and the more so, as regards the senate, from the grim alternative which the next chapter suggests [of being massacred by their own people, ch. 172] as the only one open to these unfortunate rulers” (Moberly).

“He has not said, as he does on another occasion (ii. 33), how many were sold, but we may infer that he depopulated the country of the Veneti at least; and it appears from a later book (vii. 75) that all the Armoric states must have been greatly reduced by this unfortunate war. The only naval power in Gallia that could be formidable to the Romans was totally destroyed, and neither the Veneti nor their allies gave the proconsul any more trouble” (Long).

17. Unellorum, along the Channel coast of Normandy. A more correct reading is said to be Venelli.—magnas copias, considerable forces (not supplies, as these fell short, see 184), most likely meaning here irregular troops (perditorum hominum, see next section) as opposed to exercitum.

2. his paucis diebus, i.e. about the same time. — perditorum, desperate: it was now the third year of constant war in Gaul.

3. carperetur, was carped at, his reputation “picked to pieces.”

4. opportunitate, a favorable chance (opportunus).

18. edoceat, instructs.

2. pro perfuga, in the character of a deserter.—neque longius esse quin = not later than: i.e. the time was not farther off.

63. 4. superiorum dierum, on the previous days.—confirmatio, positive assertion.—parum diligenter, i.e. (in Cæsar’s style) very negligently.—spes . . . bell = hope founded on, &c. —fere . . . credunt = most men are glad to believe, &c.

5. non prius, . . . quam, not . . . until.

6. ut . . . victoria (abl. abs.) = as if victory were already won.

—sarmintia, sprouts or young growth; virgultis, brushwood.

19. paulatim adclivis, gently rising.—magnus cursu, on a full run.

3. factum est, etc., it resulted from the advantage of ground, the enemy’s awkwardness and fatigue, the courage of the men and their practice in former fights.

4. quos: the antecedent is eorum. — reliquos paucos, few of the remainder (§ 50, 2, R²; G. 368, R²). — ac = but.

Southern Gaul.—The campaign in Aquitania was made merely for strategic reasons, was not provoked by any attack or threat of one, and
appears to have been quite unnecessary (see note, ch. 117) as well as difficult and dangerous. The Aquitani were not closely allied with the Gauls, took no share in their wars, and were at a secure distance. They had no strong military league or combination, but consisted of small isolated clans, and were besides of more industrial habit, being good miners and engineers. As a mere narrative, however, this is an interesting episode of the war.

64. 20. ex tertia parte (an idiomatic phrase) = as a third part, a greatly exaggerated reckoning. Many of Cæsær's geographical statements (e.g. the account of Britain, v. 13) are extremely ignorant or careless.

Preœconinus, Mallius: these defeats were 20 years before (B. C. 78), when the Aquitani united with the Marian leader Sertorius, who held Spain for six years against Rome.

2. Tolosa et Narbone (early editions add Carcassone): Tolosa was an old Gallic town; Narbo, a Roman colony established by the policy of Caius Gracchus, B. C. 118. It became the capital of the Roman province, to which it gave its name. — Sontiatum, south of the Garonne, S. E. of the modern Bordeaux: the name remains in the modern 505.

3. conlocaverunt: some editions have the pluperfect, which seems to be required. — ostenderunt, unmasked.

21. superioribus victoris, i.e. those just related. — sine imperatore adulcentulo duce: an imperator is the chief commander of an army, holding the imperium, or power of military command conferred on him by regular formalities; duæ is a general designation for any person holding a command, and might be given to a subordinate officer, like Crassus, who acted as an agent and under the imperium of his superiors.

perspici: the subj. is the indirect question quid ... possent. — vertère, histor. in fin. The perfect form in ëre is very rare in early prose.

3. cuniculis, mines, so called from their likeness to rabbits' burrows. — aerarum structuraeque (hendiadys), copper mines. [The dagger † indicates a corrupt or doubtful reading. Some editions omit the -que, and others have structurae, works.] — diligentia, through the watchfulness. — faciunt, they do [it].

65. 22. soldurios, knights, from the Basque soldi, horse. It is related that these soldurii "were dressed in royal garments like their chief."

2. condicio: the same condition was found among the Germans (vi. 23), and was the foundation of feudal vassalage.

3. cum his (repeated from cum devotis), with these (I say).
23. Vocatium, etc., further west. — quibus, within which. — quoque versum, in every direction (quoque the adverb of place formed from the distributive quisque; versum, the adverb of direction usually connected with propositions, as ad . . . versum). It is often written quoquo versum.

2. Hispa niae: these Iberian populations were allied to the Aquitani (i. 14). Spain had been subject to Rome for more than 150 years, but was always rather mutinous, and had made several attempts at independence, especially under Sertorius (see note, ch. 20). It was also the last stronghold of Pompey's party in the civil war, till finally subdued at Munda, B.C. 45.

3. omnes annos, i.e. B.C. 78-72. — loca capere, to occupy positions, &c., i.e. make systematic preparations for war.

4. quod, in appos. with the clause suas . . . auger; or (altering the punctuation) it may be taken as a conjunction, the clause being the direct object of animadvertit. — didici, be scattered in various directions. — minus commode = with great difficulty.

66. 24. duplici, i.e. two cohorts in depth (cf. i. 24). His numbers were too few to allow greater depth. — in mediam actem, to the centre of his line, where they would be kept in hand by his legionaries (see ch. 25). — exspectabat, waited [to see] what, &c.

2. obsessis vis . . . potiri, in English, to block the roads, cut off supplies, and win the victory without a wound. — sese recipere, to withdraw from Aquitania. — in agmine, on the march. — infirmiore animo = dispirited, an adjective phrase in the same construction with impeditos (§ 45, 4). — adoriri cogitabant, had in mind to attack. — ab ducibus, under the inferior officers.

3. sua, their own. — opinione timoris, the notion [they had given] of their own cowardice. — exspectari, depending on cohor tatus. — omnibus cupientibus = to the eager desire of them all.

25. opinionem pugnantium, i.e. an impression as if actually engaged.

2. ab decumana porta, i.e. in the rear (generally).

26. 2, intritae, unworn. [Observe that while in the compound verb the preposition in has an intensive force (intero, to crumble), in the compound adjective it has a negative force. Many participles have thus two exactly opposite meanings: as infractus, broken up or unbroken.]

67. prius quam: this phrase is often used with the indicative to show that one actual fact precedes another, just as succession is denoted by post quem. Here the subjunctive subordinates the temporal clause to the main idea, just as with cum (§ 62, 2, b and c).

5. a pertissimis campis, i.e. the broad treeless plains which abound in this part of the country. — consectatus (intensive from
sequor), overtaking in hot chase.—multa nocte, late at night (loc. abl.). —Cantabria, a very hardy people of the western Pyrenees.

27. Tarbelli, etc.: some of the names will be recognized in the modern Tarbes, Bigorre, Garonne. —ultimae, remotest.

28. omni . . . pacata, while all the rest of Gaul was subdued. —Morini, etc., on the islands and low coast-lands of Flanders and further north. The Celtic MOR signifies sea.—alia ac, different from.

4. longius, too far (farther than was safe).

68. 29. deinceps, i.e. in the days next following.—conversam, fronting, i.e. with the boughs turned towards the enemy.—pro vallo, as a palisade.

2. tenerentur, were just getting within reach.—ejusmodi uti . . intermitteretur, such that the work was constantly interrupted (broken off would have been intermissum sit).

3. Aulerca, etc., along the Seine, near Evreux and Lisieux.—proxime, last.
BOOK FOURTH.

Passage of the Rhine.—The year B. C. 55 appears to have been marked by a general movement in the migration of the German tribes. An advance, consisting of the two populations Usipetes and Tencteri, crowded forward by the more powerful Suevi, crossed the lower Rhine into northern Gaul. Cæsar assumed the defence of the country he had just conquered; drove them back across the Rhine; followed them up by an expedition into their own territories, and fully established the supremacy of the Roman arms. Another brief campaign in Germany, two years later, confirmed this success; and the Rhine became the military frontier, recognized for many centuries, between the Roman empire and the barbarian world. In the common opinion of France it is to this day the natural boundary, established (as it were) in perpetuity by the arms of Julius Cæsar.

69. Pompeio, Crasso: this was B. C. 55. The coalition between Cæsar, Pompey, and Crassus, sometimes called the First Triumvirate, had been formed five years before. In carrying out their scheme, he held the Government of Gaul, while the others took into their own hands this year the whole control of affairs at home (see Introd., “Life of Cæsar.”)

Usipetes, Tencteri, from beyond the Rhine, a little below Cologne.

2. Suevis: this people (the modern Swabians) occupied the greater part of central Germany, and was made up of several independent tribes. The name is held to mean wanderers. — premebantur, had been crowded (§ 58, 3, b; G. 225).

3. centum pagos (see i. 12): there is probably some confusion here with the ancient German institution of the Hundred, a division of the population giving its name to a district of territory. Each hundred seems to have sent 1000 men (singula milia) to the army. The term early lost its numerical value, and became a mere local designation.

4. anno post, the year after. — in vicoem (invioem), in turn.

70. 5. privati ... agrí, i. e. the land was held in tribal communities,—a state of things almost universal among primitive nations. (But some of the Germans appear to have been more advanced: see Introduction, near the end.) — longius anno: i. e. the Hundred had no fixed possessions, but was transferred yearly from one tract to another, its place being taken by another Hundred. This would prevent at once forming local attachments, and too rapid exhausting of the soil.
6. frumento, etc.: they were still in a half-nomadic state, though with some little advance in agriculture (compare vi. 22, and Tac. Germ. 26). — maximam partem (adv. acc.), for the most part. — quom (some copies read quod) ... faciant; this clause is a parenthesis: since from childhood they are trained to no service or discipline, and do nothing whatever against their will,—a lively contrast of barbarous manners with the severity of Roman family discipline. — alti, the subj. is quae res. — homines (pred.) efficit, makes [them] men, &c.

7. eam, correl. with ut.—loque frigidissimis — even in their extreme climate. — haberent, have; lavarentur, bathe (imperf. by sequence of tenses following adduxerunt).

2. eo, ut ... habeant, so that they may have [some one] to whom, &c. — quam quo ... desiderent, than that they want, &c. (For the use of quo with the implied negative, see § 66, I, R; G. 541, R).

2. impenso pretio, at high cost. — importatis non utuntur = do not import for use. — deformia, ill-shaped. — summi laboris, [capable] of great labor (gen. of quality).

3. eodem vestigio, on the same spot (foot-print). — cum usus est, when there is need. — ephippiis, saddles (a Greek word).

4. quamvis pauci, however few.

3. publice, i.e. to them as a community. — a suis finibus, on (back from) their boundaries. — una ... Suevis, extending from [the territory of] the Suevi in one direction. — agrī, the region (nom. plur.). The extent of waste lands "is here much exaggerated."

71. 2. Ubii, along the Rhine, between the Usipetes and the Suevi. — captus, capacity. — paulo ... humaniores (omit the words in brackets), somewhat more civilized than the others of that race (Germans).

3. gravitatem, importance. — humilliores (pred.), sc. so as to be.

4. in eadem causa, in the same case. — aed extremum. at length.

2. ad utramque ripam, along both banks.

3. vi contendere = to force a passage.

4. pluriusquam ... fieret, § 62, 2, c; G. 579. — eorum ooplis, on their supplies (cattle and corn).

5. infirmitate, weakness of purpose = fickleness. — nihil ... committendum, nothing should be left to their discretion.

72. 2. est ... consuetudinis, it is [a point] of Gallic custom (§ 50, 1, d; G. 365, R). — vulgus circumsistat ... cogant, a crowd surrounds the traders, and compels, &c. With the former verb, the crowd is taken as a whole; with the second, the inquisitive questioners are thought of.
3. rebus atque auditionibus, facts or hearsays. — in vestigio, on the spot, i.e. presently (sur-le-champ). — serviant = are ruled by. — plerique . . . respondeant, many give false answers to suit their whim.

6. graviori bello, too serious a war (i.e. unmanageable). — maturius, earlier in the season. — ad exercitum: the army was now in Normandy. (iii. 29)

2. uti . . . discenderent, to advance from the Rhine further into Gaul. The Belgae, it will be remembered, claimed kindred with the Germans, and were no doubt ready to retaliate their bloody defeat upon the Romans. — fore parata, should be got ready (the regular fut. infin. passive, depending on some such word as promiserunt).

4. quae cognoverant, the facts he had learned (the subj. cognavisset would make it an indir. question). — permulsa, calmed from their terror (lit. soothed by stroking, like a nervous horse).

7. equitibus delectis: the quota of cavalry was required of each of the allied states.

2. priores = as aggressors (compare the language of Ariovistus, i. 36). — neque recusaro quin, they do not decline. — quicumque: the antecedent is eis (dat.) implied with resistere. — neque deprecari, and ask no quarter.

3. haec tamen dicere, this however we say [said they]. — illi, to the Romans; eoa, sc. agros. — concedere, yield, as inferior.

73. 8. quae visum est, as it seemed good (see i. 14, 43). — verum, right.

2. Ubiores, see ch. 3. — quorum sint, etc., whose envoys (he informs them) are now with him to complain, &c.

9. post diem tertium = tertio die, i. e. the next day but one. (The first and last day are usually counted in the reckoning: so in French en huit jours = in a week.) — id, the two days' delay.

2. trans, i. e. westwardly. — exspectari, translate actively, they were waiting for.

10. Vosego, the Vosges: in fact, "from the plateau of Langres, the cradle of French rivers." — parte . . . recepta: the Rhine branches in these low marshy regions, one branch (Vacalas, the modern Waal), uniting with the Meuse near Bois-le-Duc (see note, ch. 15).

2. Nantuatium (compare iii. 1): the name is said to mean river-people. This list of names is incomplete. — citatus, with rapid course. — feris . . . nationibus: see the introduction to Motley's "Dutch Republic."

11. ut erat constitutum, as had been arranged (the return of the envoys).
Campaign against the Germans.

74. 2. eos (anteced. to qui), the cavalry who, &c. — potestatem faceret, would give authority. — condiciones...usuros, would keep the terms offered by Cæsar.

3. eodem illo pertinere, tended the same way with the other (see ch. 9). i.e. to gain time till the German cavalry should arrive. — aquationis causa: a small stream (the Niers) lay between him and the German encampment.

12. ubi primum...conspexerunt, as soon as they came in sight. — amplus ostantingentes, more than 800 (§ 45, 3, c.; G. 311, R'). — perturbaverunt, threw into disorder.

2. resistentibus, sc. nostra. — subfossis, stabbed in the belly.

—ita perterritos, so panic-stricken.

3. regnum obtinerat, had held royal power.

75. 13. neque jam, no longer: knowing how little his own cavalry (of Gauls) were to be trusted, and that the arrival of the main body of the Germans would put them at once to flight, Cæsar resolved to attack at the first opportunity, right or wrong. — ab his qui, from men who, &c.

2. quantum auctoritate, how great prestige the enemy had gained by one battle. — quibus, i.e. the enemy.

3. quaerere, see i. 52. — res in appos. with quod...venrunt. — eadem perfidia: their perfidy Cæsar takes for granted, as the best apology for his own; but the presence of the chiefs and old men looks more as if they came (as they said) to offer amends for the attack of the day before.

4. contra atque, contrary to what. — si quid...de indultis—whatever they could in the way of truce (de with the abl. is nearly the same with the part. gen.). — fallendo, i.e. by another trick.

5. quos, illos, both refer to the same subject. — quos oblatos gavisus, delighted that they were put in his power. By detaining their chief men, he would at once perplex and disable them. — subsequi, to follow in the rear; he could not trust them in the intended attack.

14. quid ageretur, what was going on.

2. ne...an...an (§ 71, 2; G. 460): the three infinitives all belong to praestaret, whether it were better.

4. quo loco—here on the ground (a military phrase), where they had some slight advantage.

76. reliqua multitudo: the presence of women and children shows that it was a migration for settlement, not a mere inroad for plunder. — ad quos connectantos (frequent. of sequor), to hunt them down, a fit business for the cowardly and treacherous Gallic horse. Referring to this massacre of helpless fugitives, Plutarch writes that, “when the Senate was voting public thanksgiving and
processions on account of the victory, Cato proposed that Cæsar should be given up to the barbarians to expiate that breach of faith, that the divine vengeance might fall upon its author rather than upon Rome” (Life of Cæsar).

15. confluenterm: the reasons are very strong against placing this action in the low lands at the confluence of the Rhine and Meuse (Mosa); among them the great distance, more than 120 miles, from the place where Cæsar actually crossed the Rhine. It will make the whole narrative much clearer, to regard this (with Goeler) as the confluence of the Rhine and Mosella (Moselle) at Coblenz, the ancient Confluenteres. In this view the text has been confused by the likeness of the names, while ch. 10 appears to be a note added perhaps by some geographer. — reliqua fuga, further flight.

2. ex . . . timore — relieved from [the apprehension of] so great a war.

3. disceudendi potestatem, permission to depart. Cæsar practically acquits them of the charge of treachery (compare his dealings with the Veneti, iii. 16). The attack and massacre were purely for “moral effect.” — supplicia — vengeance.

16. illa, the following. — justissima, most reasonable. — suis . . . intellegegerent, he wished them to fear for their own affairs also, since they would understand, &c. (cum intellegerent is here nearly equivalent to a participle).

2. accessit quod — and besides. — quam . . . transisse, which, as I mentioned above (the conjunction that of indirect discourse cannot be used in English to introduce a relative clause). Observe that Cæsar the writer uses the first person (commemoravi); Cæsar the actor is always in the third. — Sugambrorum, just north of the Ubii.

3. qui postularent . . . dederent, to require them to surrender those who, &c. — finire, was the limit of (see introd. note, Book iv.). — se invito, without his own consent. — sui imperii (pred. after esse), under his power.

4. occupationibus reipublicae, by the demands of state affairs.

5. opinionem, reputation. — navium, boats.

17. nequò . . . esse, it did not belong to his dignity, &c.

2. latitudinem, etc. Cæsar’s passage of the Rhine was most probably at Bonn, where the high and rocky banks begin; or at Neuwied, 20 or 25 miles further south, where there is a break in the chain of hills (but here, it is said, the bottom is rock, and not fit for driving piles). The width of the river at either place is about 1400 feet; its depth is very variable. It is now crossed in these parts by floating bridges of boats.
3.  rationem, plan. The brief description which Cæsar gives of his rough and ready but very serviceable engineering may be made clearer by giving its different points as follows: —

1. A pair of unhewn logs, a foot and a half thick (tigna bina sesquipedalis), braced two feet apart, and sharpened at the end, is driven with rammers (fusticis) into the bottom, sloping a little with the stream (4).

2. A similar pair is driven in opposite, 40 feet below, sloping a little against the stream (4): the upper ends of the two pairs would thus be some 25 or 30 feet apart, the width of the roadway.

3. A beam of square timber, two feet thick (trabs bipedalis), and about 30 feet long, is made fast at the end by ties (fibulis) between the logs of each pair, — which are thus kept at a proper distance apart, while they are strongly braced against the current (5).

4. A suitable number (probably about 60) of these trestles, or timber-arches, having been built and connected by cross-ties, — this part of the structure must be taken for granted, — planks are then laid lengthwise of the bridge (directa materia), resting on the heavy floor-timbers; and upon these, again, saplings and twigs (longurii, crater) are spread, to prevent the jar and wear of the carts upon the flooring (6).

5. Piles (sublicæ) are then driven in below, resting obliquely against the logs, to which they serve as shores or butts (pro ariete), and other heavier piles a little way above, to break the force of floating logs or boats sent down to destroy the bridge (7).

tigna, probably unhewn logs. — bina, two and two, i. e. in pairs.
— pedum duorum, i. e. between the timbers of each pair.

4. machinationibus immissa, driven in with engines (a sort of pile-drivers). — sublicæ modo, like a pile. — fastigate, sloping (like the rafters of a house). — ut ... procumberent, so as to fall forward with the current. — ab inferiore parte, down stream.

5. hæc utraque ... distinebantur, these two sets (or pairs) were held apart by two-foot timbers laid on above, — [in thickness] equal to the interval left by the fastening of the beams (quantum ... distabat), with a pair of ties at each end. — quibus [tignis] ... revinctis, which being held apart, and made fast again at the opposite end, i. e. the ties held them apart, while the main beams kept them from falling asunder.

78. artius (= arotius), more closely.

6. hæc ... contexebantur, these (the framework of timber) were covered with boards lengthwise. — sublicæ ... agebantur, piles (or shores) were driven slanting on the lower side, so as to prop the bridge against the current. — pro ariete, as a buttress (abutting).

7. aliae item, other piles a little way above, to serve as a breakwater or stockade. — deliciendi operis, sc. gratiā (§ 73, 3,
Notes: Caesar.

18. diebus decem, within ten days. — traducitur, the histor. present, resumed from 16th.

3. hortantibus ilis, etc., the few who had escaped the massacre of ch. 15, and had taken refuge across the Rhine.

19. suocisis, cut down to the ground.

2. uti . . . convenient, clause of result (§ 70, 3, a; G. 546, 81) following the verbal phrase nuntios . . . dimississe. — omnes, sc. ut. — hunc, etc., this (the place of meeting) had been selected in the midst, &c.; medium, agreeing directly with hunc (§ 47, 6; G. 324, 85), in preference to the adverbial phrase in medio.

3. ut . . . liberaret, these clauses are in appos. with rebus ilis.

79. ulisciceretur, chastise. — rescidit, broke up.

The Landing in Britain. — What is called the First Invasion of Britain, though it marks an interesting date in history, and gave fresh stimulus to Roman curiosity and ambition, was in itself an affair of small account. It was, in fact, only meant for a reconnaissance, or, perhaps, as opening the way to further schemes. Towards the end of summer, Cæsar sailed across to the white cliffs of Dover, coasted a few miles towards the west, and established a camp on the British coast. His cavalry, meanwhile, had been weatherbound in their transports, and then, after crossing, were driven back by rough winds without even coming to land. After holding an uneasy and perilous position for about three weeks, he returned to Gaul, without accomplishing anything beyond a barren display of hardihood.

20. exiguia . . . reliquæ, when but little of the summer was left: ablative absolute (or it might be construed as simple loc. abl., in the brief remainder of the summer; illustrating the development of the one from the other construction). — et si . . . tamen . . . contendit, though the winters are early, yet he made haste to advance, &c.

2. omnibus bellis (loc. abl.), in almost all, &c. — hostibus, dat. after summistrata, furnished to the enemy. — si . . . tamen, even if time should fail, still, &c. — magno usu, dat. of service. — fore: the subj. is the clause si . . . cognovisset, he thought it would be of great advantage if; &c.; the pluperfect adissent, etc., representing the future perf. aderit, following arbitrabatur. [Observe, in this sentence, that while Cæsar's action is given in the perfect (contendit), his reasons are in the imperfect (intellegebat, arbitrabatur); while the conditional clauses si deficeret, si adissent, are strictly future conditions carried into the past by the
sequence of tenses, § 59, 4, f; G. 598, R.1] — quae omnia, all of which (§ 50, 2, R.3; G. 368, R.5). — Gallias incognita, i.e. except to the secluded and jealous Veneti (iii. 8).

3. neque enim (neg. of etenim, § 43, 3, d; G. 500, R.3), to be rendered with quisquam, for no one. — temere, without good reason. — neque quicquam — and nothing. — ils, dat. after notum (§ 51, 4, b; G. 352). — Gallias, i.e. Celtic and Belgic Gaul.

4. vocatis mercatoribus, etc. — he called the traders, but could not, &c. — quem usum — what degree of skill. — quanta . . . portus, these indir. questions follow reperire poterat.

21. periculum faceret, making the trial (or risk). — idoneum, a fit person. — navi longa, see iii. 91. — quam primum, as soon as possible.

2. Morίnos, occupying the nearest point to Britain: in clear weather the British coast is in sight from these shores. — quam classem, the fleet which (§ 48, 3, d; G. 618). — qui pollio centur, to promise (§ 64, r; G. 544), followed by dare as complem. infin. (§ 70, 2, d; G. 527, R.1), a rare use, for se daturus [esse].

89. 4. ut permanerent, to remain, object-clause after hortatus. — Atrebatis superatis (see ii. 23): the same people, it is said, occupied Berkshire in England, whence the supposed influence of Commius. — ibi, i.e. among the Atrebates (§ 48, 5; G. 613, R.3). — magni, gen. of value (§ 50, 1, i; G. 399), of great account.

5. hunc, indir. obj. of imperat; the direct obj. is the whole clause, down to nuntiet. — fide sequatur, i.e. accept the protection of, or submit to. — seque . . . nuntiet, and tell them that he is coming.

6. quantum (sc. tantum) . . . audeiet, so far as opportunity could be given to one who did not venture, &c. — perspexisset, had investigated: for sequence of tenses, see § 58, 10, e; G. 511, R.1.

22. superioris temporis, of the season before (see iii. 28). — homines barbari = being (as they were) barbarians.

2. sat opportune, quite seasonably. — has . . . antependoras, that occupation about such little matters should be put before [the invasion of] Britain.

3. coactis, gathered from various quarters; contractis, brought together into port (at Boulogne). — quod . . . habebat, all the galleys he had besides. — ex eo loco, etc., eight miles from there, at the port of Ambleteuse. — tenebantur quo minus, were detained from. — equitibus, cavalry, of whom there were 450.

§ 23. idoneam tempestatem, favorable weather. — tertia vigilia, at midnight. The date was August 26, high water being about half past seven, p.m.; the ships, therefore, would go out at
about half-tide. — *solvit*, loosed or cast-off the ships: used like our phrase *weighed anchor*. — *equites*: these were to embark at *Ambletense*, as above.

2. *paolo tardius*: they sailed after a delay of three days (ch. 28). — *hora quarta*, about half-past eight a.m., about an hour after high-tide. The landing was near Dover, where he lay at anchor till half past three.

3. *montibus augustis*, i.e. cliffs coming close to the shore.

4. *dum... convenirent*, until the other ships should come up (*§ 62, 2, d; G. 574*).

5. *ut... postularent*, as military science and especially seamen-ship require; relat. clause following *monuit... ad mini stramentur*, enjoined that every thing should be done promptly. — *ut qua... haberent* (*§ 65, 2, e; G. 637*), since they have, &c.

6. *his dimissis*, when they were sent to their posts (observe the *dispersive* effect of *di*). — *aestum secundum*, the tide in this place would run west till about half past six. — *aperto... litore*: “at Lymne in Romney marsh, where the cliffs are far back from the beach, and there is a fine shingle.”

24. *essedariis*: the *essedum* was a two-wheeled war-chariot. — *quo genere*, i.e. both horses and chariots, making a sort of flying artillery. — *coptis*, abl. of accompaniment (*§ 54, 6, a; G. 391*). — *egredi*, infin. for *ne* or *quominus* with subj.

2. * nisi in alto, except in deep water*. — *militibus*, dat. after *desiliendum*, the men had to leap down. — *oppressis* (taken with *militibus*), weighted as they were. — *cum... coniicent, while* they (the Britons), &c. — *arido*, dry ground. — *insuefactos, trained to it*, i.e. to charge to the water’s edge.

3. *generis* (gen. after *imperiti*; *§ 50, 3, b; G. 373*): wholly unskilled in this sort of fighting.

82. *pedestribus*, on land, where the main strength lay with infantry. — uti, employ or exhibit.

25. *naves* (obj. of *jussit*, and subj. of *removerit*), ordered the vessels to be set back. — *species*, appearance. — *insititator, quite strange*. — *latus apertum, the exposed flank*, i.e. the right, unprotected by their shields. — *tormentis, engines*, for hurling stones, darts, &c. (ii. 8). — *qua res, this manœuvre*.

2. *permoti*, thrown into confusion. — *constiterunt*. — *ac atque, and besides*. — *paulum modo, just a little*.

3. *qui ferebat, the one who carried*: the antecedent of *qui* is *is*, the understood subj. of *inquit*. — *contestatus, appealing to*. — *aquilam*: the standard of the legion was a silver or bronze eagle, borne on a spear-shaft by the chief centurion (*primipilus*). — *legioni*, dat. of reference (*§ 51, 7; G. 343*).
4. ego certe . . . præstitero, I at any rate shall have done, &c. (see § 58, 7, R.; G. 236).
5. inter se, one another (§ 19, 3, d.; G. 212).—universal, all at once.—ex proximis [primis] navibus, from the nearest ships (those in the front line).—adpropinquarunt: the subject is, [those] from, &c.

26. pugnatum est—they fought.—ab utriusque, strictly, by those on both sides.—poterant . . . submittebat: notice the numerous imperfects of this description, implying repeated or continuous action.—alius aliæ ex navi— from different ships (§ 47, 9; G. 306).—quibuscumque signis, dat. after occurrebat; the antecedent noun and pronoun (dis signis), if expressed, would be dat. after adgregabat. The clause from quod to adgregabat is a parenthesis.

2. singulare, in scattered groups.—adoriebantur, would attack.—ab latere aperto (see ch. 15'), on the exposed flank of the Romans.— in universis, upon the mass.
3. spectatoria navigia, swift light boats for reconnoissance.
4. simul [atque], as soon as.

83. quod equites, etc., they were windbound at Ambleteuse (ch. 22').—hoc unum . . . defect: "in fact, a tide of disasters was now setting in to continue several years."

27. quae imperasset, what he should require (quae imperaveris).—quem præmissum, ch. 21'.
2. oratoris modo, in the character of envoy (or spokesman). — ut [sibi] ignoscetur, that [this thing] might be pardoned (ignoscere takes a direct object of the thing, with an indirect object of the person).
3. bellum . . . intulissent: these barbarous people might be pardoned for mistakes of Caesar's expedition as an invasion!—ignoscere: for the omission of the subject, see § 67, 1, a²; G. 527, r'.—arcessitam = when they should be fetched.
4. remigrare, to move back.

28. post diem quartum, i.e. three days after.—naves, etc., see ch. 22'.
2. alii . . . alii, some . . . others.—sui (obj. gen. with periculo), to themselves.—occasum, west.—cum . . . complerentur, since they were filling as they lay at anchor.—adversa noote, in the face of the night.

29. eadem noote: this was the night of August 30; the moon was full at 3 A.M.

84. aestus maximos, spring tides. The ocean tides, rising here between 20 and 30 feet, were a strange phenomenon to those who had known only the tideless waters of the Mediterranean
(compare iii. 8'). — naves, obj. of compleverat: — additabat (intensive), dashed about. — facultas, opportunity (to do a thing).

2. id quod, see § 48, 3, e; G. 612, r¹.

3. quod constabat, because it was settled: the subj. is oper- tere, of which the subj. is Memari, that to winter in Gaul was needful. — his in locis: for the order of words see § 76, 3, a.

30. principes, subj. of duxerunt. — hoc angustiora, so much the smaller: hoc is abl. of means (§ 54, 6, e; G. 400). — optimum, in pred. agreement with frumento ... producere. — duxerunt, thought. — frumento, commensu, corn and other supplies. — rem, the business of the invasion. — his ... interclusis, abl. abs. of condition: if these should be overcome, &c. — deducere, bring down towards the coast.

31. ex eventu navium, from what had fallen the ships. — ex eo quod, from the fact that. — suspicabatur, began to suspect. — subsidia comparabat, made provision.

2. que ... naves, earum, etc., the timber and copper of those ships which, &c. (§ 48, 3, b; G. 618). — que ... usus, whatever was of use: the antecedent of que is ea, subj. of comportari.

85. reliquis ... effectit, he managed so that they could sail (navigari, imper.) tolerably with the rest.

32. geruntur, § 58, 2, e; G. 220, r¹. — frumentatum, to get corn (supine). — pars hominum, some of the people. — vestitare, returned from time to time (frequent., § 36, b). — pro, in front of. — quam ... ferret = than usual.

2. id quod erat = what was the fact. — aliquid ... consili, that some new design was undertaken. — ex reliquis duae, two of the others. — armari, to arm; in verbs, thus used reflexively, English prefers the active and Latin the passive form.

3. paulo longius, some little distance. — premi ... sustinere, were getting pushed, and hardly held their ground. — conferta legiones (loc. abl. for in confrontam legionem) = the legion was formed in solid square, while weapons were hurled, &c. Observe the force of Latin, in conveying a description, as here, by a participial phrase.

4. suspicati, supposing (§ 72, 1, b; G. 278, r¹). — dispersos, occupatos, while scattered, &c., agreeing with milites, governed by adorti. — incertis ordinibus (abl. abs.), because the ranks were unsteady.

33. ex essedis: these chariots are often represented with scythes at the axle, of which Caesar makes no mention. They held six men each, and were drawn by two horses. — cum se insinuaverunt, when they have wound in.

2. paulatim, little by little (§ 41, 1, h). — illi, i.e. the fighting men spoken of above. — expeditum receptum, a ready retreat.
3. prestant, exhibit. Caesar was much struck with the efficiency of the German and British horse (see ch. 13), and made it the basis of important changes in the Roman army.—uti . . . cessation, clause of result following efiicunt.—declivi ac precipitii loco = a steep downward slope.—incitatios equos sustinere, to check their horses in full gallop (infin. after consue-runt).—brevi, within a short space.

86. 34. quibus rebus, under these circumstances (loc. abl.).—nostris, dat. following tuit auxiliwm.

2. alienum . . . arbitratus, judging it an unfavorable time.

3. quae . . . continentem, so as to keep (§ 65, 2; G. 633).

4. prædicaverunt, bragged about.—quanta . . . facultas daretur, what opportunity was offered (indir. question following demonstraverunt).—ad castra, towards the camp.

35. ut effugerent (in appos. with idem, the subj. of fore), namely, that if; &c.—effugerent, would escape: the future signification is from the effect of fore.—equites triginta: these few cavalry would be of no service in an engagement, but only in pursuit. To chase and cut down the beaten army was considered an essential part of the battle.

3. tanto spatio, over as much ground (§ 55, 2, b; G. 387).

36. die æquinociti, the stormy season (Sept. 24). “Caesar had therefore been nearly a month in Britain, without being able to advance a mile from the shore.”—hieml, etc., thought the voyage ought not to be exposed to foul weather.

87. 2. eosdem . . . portus, the same parts with the others: reliqui is masc. (by synestis) as referring to milites; some editions have relique [naves].

paulo infra: “the west current sets in on the French coast, while that to the east is still running in mid-channel.”

37. expositi, landed.—not ita magno, not very large.

3. horis, abl. of comparison with amplius: a more common construction would be horas.

4. postea quam = as soon as.

38. superiore anno, see iii. 28*: the tempestatas of ch. 34 were apparently merely gusty weather without rain.

3. supplicatio, compare end of Book ii.

The crossing of the Rhine had strongly impressed the mind of the Romans, and so too the passage into Britain, though in fact a failure. This unprecedented thanksgiving of 20 days we must remember, however, was voted by Caesar’s own party, who now held all the offices; and who would wish to cover up the impression of any ill success. In fact, though he had added nothing to Roman power, he had opened a new world to Roman ambition.
GAI SALVSTI CRISPI

DE CATILINAEE CONIVRATIONE

THE

CONSPIRACY OF CATILINE

AS RELATED BY

SALLUST

EDITED BY J. H. AND W. F. ALLEN AND J. B. GREENOUGH

BOSTON
PUBLISHED BY GINN BROTHERS
4 BEACON STREET
1875
Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1873, by
J. H. AND W. F. ALLEN AND J. B. GREENOUGH,
in the office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

Cambridge:
Press of John Wilson and Son.
NOTE.

This edition follows strictly the text of the fourth edition of Dietsch, with a few slight changes to secure a consistent orthography. It is one of a series of classics prepared under the same joint editorship with the select Orations of Cicero, published in June, 1873.

Cambridge, January 1, 1874.
INTRODUCTION.

Lucius Sergius Catilina was an old soldier and partisan of Sulla, a man of profligate character, broken fortunes, and headstrong ambition. About twelve years after Sulla's death, he formed a scheme to better his estate by political adventure. His confederates were, some of them, men of good family and high official standing; the larger number, probably, needy and reckless fortune-hunters. His plan was to get himself into power in the ordinary way of popular elections; then, by the spoils and chances of office, to secure his own predominance, and reward the service of his adherents. Probably his plans did not differ much from those of most political soldiers of fortune. They seem to have been ripened as early as B. C. 66. Two years later, he was defeated in a close race for the consulship by Cicero and Caius Antonius. Renewing his attempt at the next elections, he was again defeated, and, when driven from the city by the invective of Cicero, he raised the standard of open insurrection. His confederates in the city were seized and put to death, and in the following January, a month later, he was beaten in battle, and his armed force completely annihilated.

The Conspiracy of Catiline, so called, was the principal political event in Rome from the dictatorship of Sulla down to that of Julius Cæsar; and, in point of time, was almost exactly half way between the two. It was not — what the name generally means — a conspiracy to overthrow the existing government. It was a scheme, on the part of a few needy and desperate politicians, to get themselves elected
in regular form, and then to carry on the government to their own advantage. Apart from the character of the men who engaged in it, it does not seem to have been any more criminal in its origin or plans than any "ring" or cabal by which a personal interest seeks its ends through the forms of constitutional election. Only when, after three years' attempt, it was finally defeated at the polls, and appealed to armed insurrection, did it take the shape of treason. And even then it kept the formalities of civil and military authority, and rejected the help of slaves; claiming that its real object was to rid the state of an oppressive and selfish oligarchy. That its real aim was to destroy the state—which Cicero asserts—was, at any rate, so well disguised, that the party which succeeded in overcoming it fell into odium as enemies of the people, and found their own ruin in its defeat.

These circumstances have made the true character and aims of the conspiracy one of the riddles of Roman politics. Cicero, in a well-known passage (Cat. II.), ranges the conspirators in five "dangerous classes," of which the most respectable were men of large estates heavily mortgaged, whose debts made them ready to welcome any sort of change. But they, as he shows, could have no real interest in a revolution. And it may be safe, perhaps, along with many critics, to dismiss the stories of bloody rites, criminal oaths, and desperate designs of massacre and conflagration, as the tales of frightened fancy and political hate. But of the reckless and criminal character of its leaders, and the mischief they would have done if they had got into office, there seems no reason for doubt. As candidate, Cicero had beaten them fairly in a hard-fought battle at the polls. As consul, he had worked, actively and effectually, to block their further political game. When they were finally defeated, in the fall elections of his consular year, and lost heart to try again, he was vigilant, shrewd, intrepid, and successful, in tracking their schemes of open violence, and forcing the development of their plot beyond the walls.
His colleague Antonius — whom, half by bribery and half by flattery or threats, he had turned against them — was compelled, with whatever reluctance, to take the field to fight them; and, though conveniently lame on the day of battle, had forced upon him the military glory of their defeat. The conspiracy proper was quite annihilated by this blow. No avowed leader or accomplice in it seems to have been left in Rome. And it was not till the coalition of Cæsar, Pompey, and Crassus, three years later, gave new hope to the enemies of the Senate, and Clodius succeeded Catiline as the leader of what was most ferocious and desperate in Rome, that Cicero met the penalty of his great political error, the illegal death of the conspirators.

In the logic of events, this conspiracy was a sequel to the revolution of Sulla, and a prelude to the overthrow of the republic by Cæsar. While nominally a conservative, Sulla had been, in reality, an innovator of the most dangerous type. He had set himself in armed opposition to a reform, which, though disfigured from the times of the Gracchi by many acts of violence, might yet have saved for many generations the free political life of Rome. The great political crime of Sulla was that he deliberately destroyed the existing constitution, to restore by force that which had been outgrown a hundred years before. A still more fatal policy was to subvert the popular life of the Italian communities, and to destroy, as far as he could, the remains of that free yeomanry which — though in arms against Rome in the "Social War" — made now the best hope of the Republic. The dictator must provide landed estates for his veterans, whatever came of it; and the wide-spread ruin and despair that rose from this made the chief reliance of the conspiracy. The horrible civil war, with its massacres on one side and its proscriptions on the other, had fatally corrupted the very springs of political morality. It had even destroyed (so to speak) the political sense. Politics had been bad enough before. Party controversies had often resulted in assassination, massacre, and exile. Now, it was
Introduction.

deliberately resolved to settle all such questions by the sword. When Sulla (b.c. 88), on being directed by the authority of the State to surrender his command to Marius, refused to obey, but marched instead upon the city, and put his antagonists to the sword, the Republic was at an end. Though nominally restored, it was after this an empty form. It opened the field for the swift victories of Pompey, the eloquent career of Cicero, the brilliant exploits of Cæsar. But its political life was a series of violences, conspiracies, and cabals. The real power was only waiting for the man who had the capacity and the will to take it. When the forces of faction were at length exhausted, the wary craft of Octavianus easily gathered the ripe spoils of empire.

The conspiracy of Catiline was, at most, a futile attempt to do what Sulla had done once, and what Cæsar did afterwards. It failed, partly because it was undertaken by an incompetent chief; but mainly because it was an impatient effort to hasten the natural course of events. The revolutions of Sulla and of Cæsar grew out of a long series of transactions; they were seen coming, and prepared for long beforehand. It was otherwise in Catiline’s case. There was no great convulsion which his success might seem to heal, no war of parties to which he might offer the bribe of peace. There was discontent enough to appeal to, and misgovernment enough to assail. And it may be that he was used by wiliest and abler plotters, to feel whether the time was ripe. But the success of such a movement could have been nothing but a pure tyranny, without even the plea of necessity, which Cæsar and perhaps Sulla might urge. It is, therefore, not a great event of history, but only an episode, or at most a significant incident. It grew out of the disorder of the times; it also reacted upon them, did much immediate mischief, and probably hastened the final catastrophe. Still, if we knew nothing of it except the fact that it took place, the real loss to history would be slight and indirect. We could not afford, it is true, to lose Sallust’s narrative of the conspiracy, or Cicero’s orations against its chief. But we
could very well afford to exchange them for other things which we have lost,—works of the same authors, and no greater in extent.

Of Sallust—Caïus Salustius Crispus—we know little that is worth knowing, except the bare outlines of his life, and the fact that he was a constant partisan of Cæsar. He was born B. C. 86, just twenty years later than Cicero. He was never very prominent in the politics of Rome, though he says that in his youth he had strong inducements to enter public life. His private life was charged as scandalous; he was once, it is said, soundly thrashed by Milo for attentions to his wife, and was afterwards expelled from the Senate by the partisans of Pompey. He served Cæsar rather inefficiently in the Civil War; and was made by him governor (proprætor) of the provinces of Africa and Numidia. Here he gathered the usual spoils of great wealth, and the rarer treasure of historic material which he used in his romantic and striking narrative of the career of Jugurtha, the great Numidian chieftain. His gardens in Rome were proverbial for luxury and splendor; and he lived in retired indulgence, apart from the later struggles of the Commonwealth, till his death in B. C. 35.

As historian, it was the plan of Sallust to write out the history of his own times, beginning with the death of Sulla. He seems also to have touched upon earlier events, especially the Social or Marsic War; and his history of Jugurtha may be regarded as a sort of introduction to the civil wars of Marius, whose earlier political career is told in it. His practice was to write in episodes, or fragments; and of his more general scheme only the narrative of Catiline’s conspiracy remains, with a few speeches and letters, which are little else than pieces of rhetorical composition.

The ancients ranked Sallust very high as a writer, and did not scruple to compare him to Thucydides. Modern

* Sed non historia cesserit Græcis, nec opponere Thucydidis Salustium verear. Quint. x. 1, 101.
Introduction.

criticism does not support this view. His merits as a writer are doubtless very great. He is master of a terse, sententious, manly style,—oris probi, animo inverecundo,—and tells his story with considerable narrative power. But, compared with Thucydides or with Tacitus, his writings show no real earnestness or dignity; the elaborate political disquisitions and moral reflections seem forced; his descriptions, though vigorous and compact, lack that wonderful vividness which we find in those great historians. He gives the impression of a rhetorician, saying—finely—what he thinks it is proper for him to say, rather than expressing genuine feelings and opinions. He has been called a pessimist, cynical, and blasé; and has been accused of unfairness, particularly of hostility to Cicero. But this last charge is certainly not made out: the "Catiline," at least, is remarkably free from partisan feeling, except as it may perhaps echo the scandals or the temper of the period. And the debaucheries, of which Sallust's earlier career is accused, were greatly atoned by the honest attempt he seems to have made, later in his life, to leave a fit and instructive record of a remarkable time.
CHRONOLOGY OF CATILINE'S CONSPIRACY.

B.C.
68. Coss. L. Cæcilius Metellus. Q. Marcius Rex. **Catiline praefect.**
65. " L. Aurelius Cotta. L. Manlius Torquatus. **Catiline prosecuted on a charge of repetundae.**
64. " L. Julius Cæsar. Q. Marcius Figulus. **Catiline is defeated as candidate for consul.**
   " 27. Manlius takes up arms at Fæsulae.
   " 28. Consular election.
   Catiline prosecuted under the **Lex Plautia de vi.**
Nov. 6. Meeting of Conspirators at the house of M. Læca.
   Intrigues with the ambassadors of the Allobroges.
   " 5. Cicero's Fourth Oration.
   The Conspirators put to death in prison.
   Battle of Pistoria. Catiline defeated and killed.
THE CONSPIRACY OF CATILINE.

B.C. 63.

OMNIS homines, qui sese student praestare ceteris animalibus, summa ope niti decet, ne vitam silentio transeant veluti pecora, quae natura prona atque ventri oboedientia finxit. Sed nostra omnis vis in animo et corpore sita est: animi imperio, corporis servitio magis utimur; alterum nobis cum deis, alterum cum beluis commune est. Quo mihi rectius videtur ingeni quam virium opibus gloriam quaeque; et, quoniam vita ipsa qua fruimur brevis est, memoriam nostri quam maxume longam efficere. Nam divitiam et formae gloria fluxa atque fragilis est, virtus clara aeternaque habetur.

Sed diu magnum inter mortalis certamen fuit, vine corporis an virtute animi res militaris magis procederet. Nam et prius quam incipias consulto, et ubi consulueris mature facto opus est. Ita utrumque per se indigens alterum alterius auxilio eget. 2. Igitur initio reges — nam in terris nomen imperi id primum fuit — divorsi pars ingenium, alii corpus exercebant: etiam tum vita hominum sine cupiditate agitabatur, sua cuique satis placebant. Postea vero quam in Asia Cyrus, in Graecia Lacedaemonii et Athenienses coepero urbibus atque nationes subigere, lubidinem dominandi causam belli habere, maximum gloria in maxumo imperio putare, tum demum periculo atque negotiis compertum est in bello plurumum ingenium posse. Quod si regum atque imperatorum animi virtus in pace ita ut in bello valeret, aequabilius atque constantius sese res humanae haberent, neque aliud alio ferri neque mutari ac misceri omnia cerneris.
Nam imperium facile eis artibus retinetur, quibus initio partum est; verum ubi pro labore desidia, pro continentia et aequitate lubido atque superbia invasere, fortuna simul cum moribus immutatur. Ita imperium semper ad optumum quemque a minus bono transfertur.

Quae homines arant, navigant, aedificant, virtuti omnia parent. Sed multi mortales, dediti ventri atque somno, indocti incultique vitam sicuti peregrinantes transiere: quibus prosecto contra naturam corpus voluptati, anima oneri suit. Eorum ego vitam mortemque juxta aestumo, quoniam de utraque siletur. Verum enimvero is demum mihi vivere atque frui anima videtur, qui aliquo negotio intentus praeclari facinoris aut artis bonae famam quaerit. Sed in magna copia rerum aliud alii natura iter ostendit.

3. Pulcrum est bene facere rei publicae, etiam bene dicere haud absurdum est: vel pace vel bello clarum fieri licet; et qui fecere et qui facta aliorum scripsere multi laudantur. Ac mihi quidem, tametsi haudquaquam par gloria sequitur scriptorem et actorem rerum, tamen in primis arduum videtur res gestas scribere: primum quod facta dictis exaequanda sunt, dehinc quia plerique quae delicta reprehenderis malvolentia et invidia dicta putant, ubi de magna virtute atque gloria bonorum memoros, quae sibi quisque facilia factu putat aequo animo accipit, supra ea veluti ficta pro falsis ducit.

Sed ego adulescentulus initio sicuti plerique studio ad rem publicam latus sum, ibique mihi multa adversa fuere. Nam pro pudore, pro abstinentia, pro virtute, audacia, largitio, avaritia vigebant. Quae tametsi animus aspernabatur, insolens malarum artium, tamen inter tanta vitia imbecilla aetas ambitione corrupta tenebatur: ac me, cum ab reliquorum malis moribus dissentirem, nihilo minus honoris cupido eadem eadem-
que quae ceteros fama atque invidia vexabat. 4. Igitur ubi animus ex multis miseriis atque periculis requievit, et mihi reliquam aetatem a re publica procul habendam decrevi, non fuit consilium socordiae atque desidia bonum otium conterere, neque vero agrum colundo aut venando (servilibus officiis) intentum aetatem agere; sed a quo incepto studioque me ambitio mala detinuerat, eodem regressus, statui res gestas populi Romani carptim, ut quaeque memoria digna videbantur, per-
scribere,— eo magis, quod mihi a spe, metu, partibus rei publicae animus liber erat.

Igitur de Catilinae conjuratione, quam verissume potero, paucis absolvam: nam id facinus in primis ego memorabile existumo sceleris atque periculi novitate. De cujus hominis moribus pauca prius explananda sunt quam initium narrandi faciam.


Res ipsa hortari videtur, quoniam de moribus civi-
tatis tempus admonuit, supra repetere ac paucis insti-
tuta majorum domi militiaeque, quo modo rem publicam
habuerint quantamque reliquerint, ut paulatim immu-
tata ex pulcherruma *atque optuma* pessuma ac flagitio-
sissuma facta sit, disserere.

6. Urbem Romam, sicuti ego accepi, condidere atque
habuere initio Trojani, qui Aenea duce profugi sedi-
bus incertis vagabuntur, cumque eis Aborigines, genus
hominum agreste, sine legibus, sine imperio, liberum
atque solutum. Hi postquam in una moenia con-
venere, dispari genere, dissimili lingua, aliis alio more
viventes, incredibile memoratu est quam facile coa-
luerint. Sed postquam res eorum, civibus moribus
agris aucta, satis prospera satisque pollens videbatur,
sicuti pleraque mortalium habentur, invidia ex opu-
lentia orta est. Igitur reges populique finitumi bello
temptare, pauci ex amicos auxilio esse; nam ceteri
metu perculsi a periculis aberant. At Romani domi
militiaeque intenti festinare, parare, alius alium hortari,
hostibus obviam ire, libertatem patriam parentisque
armis tegere. Post, ubi pericula virtute propulerant,
sociis atque amicos auxilia portabant, magisque dandis
quam accipiundis benificiis amicitias parabant.

Imperium legitumum, nomen imperi regium habe-
bant: delecti quibus corpus annis infirmum, ingenium
sapientia validum erat, rei publicae consultabant: ei
vel aetate vel curae similitudine patres appellabantur.
Post, ubi regium imperium, quod initio conservandae
libertatis atque augendae rei publicae fuerat, in super-
biam dominationemque se convertit, immutato more
annua imperia binosque imperatores sibi fecere: eo
modo minume posse putabat per licentiam insolescere
animum humanum. 7. Sed ea tempestate coepere se
quisque magis extollere magisque ingenium in promptu
habere. Nam regibus boni quam mali suspectiores
sunt, semperque eis aliena virtus formidulosa est. Sed
civitas incredibile memoratu est adepta libertate quantum brevi creverit: tanta cupido gloriae inesserat. Jam primum juventus, simul ac belli patiens erat, in castris per laborem usu militiam discerbat, magisque in decoris armis et militaribus equis quam in scortis atque conviviis lubidinem hабебant. Igitur talibus viris non labor insüitus, non locus ullus asper aut arduus erat, non armatus hostis formidulosus: virtus omnia domuerat. Sed gloriae maxumum certamen inter ipsos erat: se quisque hostem ferire, murum adscendere, conspicui dum tale facinus faceret, properabat: eas divitias, eam bonam famam magnamque nobilitatem putabant: laudis avidi, pecuniae liberales erant: gloriam ingentem, divitias honestas volebant. Memorable possem quibus in locis maxumas hostium copias populus Romanus parva manu fuderit, quas urbis natura munitas pugnando ceperit, ni ea res longius nos ab incepto traheret.


9. Igitur domi militiaeque boni mores celebrantur: concordia maxima, minima avaritia erat: jus bonumque apud eos non legibus magis quam natura valebat. Jurgia discordias simultates cum hostibus...
exercebant, cives cum civibus de virtute certabant: in suppliciis deorum magnifici, domi parci, in amicos fideles erant. Duabus his artibus, audacia in bello, ubi pax evenerat aequitate, seque remque publicam curabant. Quorum rerum ego maxima documenta haec habeo, quod in bello saepius vindicatum est in eos qui contra imperium in hostem pugnaverant, quique tardius revocati proelio exscesserant, quam qui signa relinquere aut pulsi loco cedere auxi erant; in pace vero, quod benificiis magis quam metu imperium agitabant, et accepta injuria ignoscere quam sequi malebant.


Haec primo paulatim crescere, interdum vindicari: post, ubi contagio quasi pestilentia invasit, civitas immutata, imperium ex justississimo atque optumo crudele intolerandumque factum. 11. Sed primo magis ambitio quam avaritia animos hominum exercebat, quod tamen vitium propius virtutem erat. Nam gloriam honorem imperium bonus et ignavos aeque sibi expectant; sed ille vera via nititur, huic quia bonae artes

12. Postquam divitiae honoris esse coepere, et eas gloria imperium potestia sequebatur, hebescere virtus, paupertas probro haberis, innocentia pro malvolentia duci coepit. Igitur ex divitiis juventutem luxuria atque avaritia cum superbia invasere: rapere, consumere; sua parvi pendere, aliena cupere; pudorem, pudicitiam, divina atque humana promiscua, nihil pensi neque moderati habere. Operae pretium est, cum domos atque villas cognoveris in urbum modum exaedificatas, visere templia deorum, quae nostri majores, religiosissumi mortales, fecere. Verum illi delubra deorum pietate, domos suas gloria decorabant, neque victis quicquam praeter injuriae licentiam eripiebant. At hi contra, ignavissumi homines, per summum scelus omnia ea socisi adimere, quae fortissumi viri victores
reliquarant: proinde quasi injuriam facere id demum esset imperio uti. 13. Nam quid ea memorem, quae nisi eis qui videre nemini credibilia sunt, a privatis compluribus subvorsos montis, maria constrata esse? Quibus mihi videntur ludibrio suisses divitiae: quippe quas honeste habere licebat, abuti per turpitudinem properabant. Sed lubido stupri, ganeae ceterique cultus non minor inesserat: viri muliebria pati, mulieres pudicitiam in protapulo habere; vescendi causa terra marique omnia exquirere; dormire prius quam somni cupido esset; non famem aut sitim, neque frigus neque lassitudinem opperiri, sed ea omnia luxu antecapere. Haec juventutem, ubi familiares opes defecerant, ad facinora incendebant: animus imbutus malis artibus haud facile lubidinibus carebat: eo profusius omnibus modis quaestui atque sumptui deditus erat.

14. In tanta tamque corrupta civitate Catilina, id quod factu facillum erat, omnium flagitiorum atque facinorum circum se tamquam stipatorum catervas habebat. Nam quicumque impudicus adulter ganeo manu ventre bona patria laceraverat, quique alienum aedem grande conflaverat quo flagitium aut facinus redimeret, praeterea omnes undique parricidae, sacrilegi, convicti judiciis aut pro factis judicium timentes, ad hoc quos manus atque lingua perjuro aut sanguine civili alebat, postremo omnes quos flagitium, egestas, conscius animus exagitabant, ei Catilinae proxumi familiaresque erant. Quod si quis etiam a culpa vacuus in amicitiam ejus inciderat, cotidiano usu atque inlecebris facile par similisque ceteris efficiebatur. Sed maxume adulescentium familiaritates appetebat: eorum animi molles [aetate] et fluxi dolis haud difficulter capiebantur. Nam ut cu jusque studium ex aetate flagrabi, aliis scorta praebere, aliis canis atque equos mercari, postremo neque sumptui neque modestiae suae parere, dum
illos obnoxios fidosque sibi faceret. Scio fuisse non-nulloque qui ita existumarent, juventutem, quae domum Catilinae frequentabat, parum honeste pudicitiam habuisse, sed ex aliis rebus magis, quam quod cui-quam id compertum foret, haec fama valebat.


20. Catilina, ubi eos quos paulo ante memoravi convenisse videt, tametsi cum singulis multa saepe egerat, tamen in rem fore credens univorsos appellare et cohortari, in abditam partem aedium secedit, atque ibi omnibus arbitris procul amotis orationem hujusce modi habuit:

"Ni virtus fidesque vostra spectata mihi forent, nequiquam opportuna res cecidisset; spes magna, dominatio in manibus frustra fuissent; neque ego per ignaviam aut vana ingenia
incerta pro certis captarem. Sed quia multis et magnis tempestatibus vos cognovi fortis fidosque mihi, eo animus ausus est maximum atque pulcerrumum facinus incipere, simul quia vobis eadem quae mihi bona malaque esse intellexi. Nam idem velle atque idem nolle, ea demum firma amicitia est.

"Sed ego quae mente agitavi, omnes jam antea diversi audistis. Ceterum mihi in dies magis animus ascendit, cum considero quae conditio vitae futura sit, nisi nosmet ipsi vindicamus in libertatem. Nam postquam res publica in paucorum potentiam jus atque dicionem concessit, semper illis reges tetrarchae vectigales esse, populi nationes stipendia pendere; ceteri omnes, strenui, boni, nobiles atque ignobiles, volgus fuimus sine gratia, sine auctoritate, eis obnoxii, quibus, si res publica valeret, formidini essemus. Itaque omnis gratia, potentia, honos, divitiae apud illos sunt aut ubi illi volunt; nobis reliquere pericula, repulsas, judicia, egestatem. Quae quo usque tandem patiemini, fortissumi viri? Nonne emori per virtutem praestat, quam vitam miseram atque inhonestam, ubi alienae superbiae ludibrio fueris, per dedecus amittere?

"Verum enimvero, pro deum atque hominum fidel, victoria in manu nobis est; viget aetas, animus valet: contra illis, annis atque divitiis, omnia consenuerunt. Tantum modo incepto opus est, cetera res expediet. Etenim quis mortalium, cui virile ingenium est, tolerare potest illis divitiis superare, quas profundant in extrudendo mari et montibus coaequandis, nobis rem familiarem etiam ad necessaria deesse? illos binas aut amplius domos continuare, nobis larem familiarem nusquam ullum esse? Cum tabulas, signa, toreumata emunt, nova diruunt, alia aedificant, postremo omnibus modis pecuniam trahunt, vexant, tamen summa lubidine divitiis suas vincere nequeunt. At nobis est domi inopia, foris aed alienum; mala res, spes multo asperior: denique, quid reliqui habemus praeter miseram animam?

"Quin igitur expergiscimini! En illa, illa, quam saepe optastis, libertas, praeterea divitiae, decus, gloria in oculis sita sunt: fortuna omnia ea victoribus praemia posuit. Res, tempus, pericula, egestas, belli spolia magnifica, magis
quam oratio mea vos hortantur. Vel imperatore vel milite me utemini: neque animus, neque corpus a vobis aberit. Haec ipsa, ut spero, vobiscum una consul agam, nisi forte me animus fallit, et vos servire magis quam imperare parati estis.”

21. Postquam accepere ea homines, quibus mala abunde omnia erant, sed neque res neque spes bona ulla, tametsi illis quieta movere magna merces videbatur, tamen postulavere plerique, ut proponeret quae condicio belli foret, quae praemia armis peterent, quid ubique opis aut spei haberent. Tum Catilina polliceri tabulas novas, proscriptionem locupletium, magistratus, sacerdotia, rapinas, alia omnia quae bellum atque lubido victorium fert. Praeterea esse in Hispania citeriore Pisonem, in Mauretania cum exercitu P. Sittium Nucerinum, consili sui particeps; petere consulatum C. Antonium, quem sibi conlegam fore speraret, hominem et familiarem et omnibus necessitudinibus circumventum; cum eo se consulem initium agundi facturum. Ad hoc male dictis increpabat omnis bonos, suorum unumquemque nominans laudare: admonebat alium egestatis, alium cupiditatis suae, compluris periculii aut ignominiae, multis victoriae Sullanae, quibus ea praedae fuerat. Postquam omnium animos alacris videt, cohortatus ut petitionem suam curae haberent, conventum dimisit. 22. Fuere ea tempestate, qui dicerent Catilinam, oratone habita, cum ad jusjurandum popularis sceleris sui adigeret, humani corporis sanguinem vino permixtum in pateris circumtulisse: inde cum post exsecrationem omnes degustavissent, sicuti in sollemnibus sacris fieri consortvit, aperuisse consilium suum, [atque eo dictitare fecisse,] quo inter se fidi magis forent, alius alii tanti facinoris consci. Nonnulli facta et haec et multa praeterea existumabat ab eis, qui Ciceronis invidiam, quae postea orta est, leniri credebant atrocitate sceleris
eorum, qui poenas dederant. Nobis ea res pro magnitudine parum comperta est.


24. Igitur comitiis habitis consules declarantur M. Tullius et C. Antonius. Quod factum primo popularis conjurationis concusserat: neque tamen Catilinae furor minuebatur, sed in dies plura agitare; arma per Italianam locis opportunis parare, pecuniam sua aut amicorum fide sumptam mutuam Faesulas ad Manlium quendam portare, qui postea princeps fuit belli faciundi. Ea tempestate plurumos cujusque generis homines adscivisse sibi dicitur, mulieres etiam aliquot, quae primo ingenti sumptus stupro corporis toleraverant, post ubi aetas tantum modo quaestui neque luxuriae modum fecerat, aes alienum grande conflaverant. Per eas se Catilina credebat posse servitia
urbana sollicitare, urbem incendere, viros earum vel adjungere sibi vel interficere.


26. His rebus comparatis, Catilina nihilo minus in proxumum annum consulatum petebat, sperans, si designatus foret, facile se ex voluntate Antonio usuum. Neque interea quietus erat, sed omnibus modis insidias parabat Ciceroni. Neque illi tamen ad cavidum dolus aut astutiae deerrant. Namque a principio consulatus sui multa pollicendo per Fulviam effecerat, ut Q. Curius, de quo paulo ante memoravi, consilia Catilinae sibi proder et; ad hoc conlegam suum Antonium pactione provinciae perpulerat, ne contra rem publicam sentiret; circun se praevidia amicorum atque clientium occulte habebat. Postquam dies comitiorum venit, et Catilinae neque petitio neque insidiae quas [consulibus] in campo fecerat prospere cessere, constitut bellum facere et extrema omnia experiri, quoniam quae occulte temptaverat aspera foedaque evenerant.

27. Igitur C. Manlium Faesulas atque in eam partem Etruriae, Septimium quendam Camerem in agrum
Picenum, C. Julium in Apuliam dimisit, praeterea alium alio, quem ubique opportunum sibi fore credebat. Interea Romae multa simul moliri: [consulibus] insidias tendere, parare incendia, opportuna loca arma-tis hominibus obsidere; ipse cum telo esse, item alios jubere, hortari uti semper intenti paratique essent; dies noctisque festinare, vigilare, neque insomniis neque labore fatigari. Postremo ubi multa agitanti nihil procedit, rursus intempesta nocte conjurationis principes convocat penes M. Porciun Laecam, ibique, multa de ignavia eorum questus, docet se Manlium praemisisse ad eam multitudinem quam ad capiunda arma paraverat, item alios in alia loca opportuna, qui initium belli facerent, seque ad exercitum proficiisci cupere, si prius Ciceronem oppressisset: eum suis consiliis multum obficere. 28. Igitur, per territis ac dubitantibus ceteris, C. Cornelius eques Romanus operam suam pollicitus, et cum eo L. Vargunteius senator constituere ea nocte paulo post cum armatis hominibus sicuti salutatum introire ad Ciceronem, ac de improviso domui suae imparatum confodere. Curius ubi intellegit quantum periculi consuli impendeat, propere per Fulviam Ciceroni dolum qui parabatur enuntiat. Ita illi, janua prohibiti, tantum facinus frustra susceperant.

Interea Manlius in Etruria plebem sollicitare, egesta simul ac dolore injuriae novarum rerum cupidam, quod Sullae dominatione agros bonaque omnia amiserat; praeterea latrones cujusque generis, quorum in ea regione magna copia erat, nonnullus ex Sullanis coloniis, quibus lubido atque luxuria ex magnis rapinis nihil reliquii fecerat.

29. Ea cum Ciceroni nuntiarentur, ancipiti malo permotus, quod neque urbem ab insidiiis privato consilio longius tueri poterat, neque exercitus Manli quantus aut quo consilio foret satis compertum habe-
bat, rem ad senatum referet, jam antea volgi rumori bus exagitatum. Itaque, quod plerumque in atroci negotio solet, senatus decrevit, Darent operam consules, ne quid res publica detrimenti caperet. Ea potestas per senatum more Romano magistratui maxuma per mittitur, exercitum parare, bellum gerere, coērcere omnibus modis socios atque civis, domi militiaeque imperium atque judicium summum habere: aliter sine populi jussu nullius earum rerum consuli jus est.

30. Post paucos dies, L. Saenius senator in senatu litteras recitavit, quas Faesulis adlatas sibi dicebat, in quibus scriptum erat, C. Manlium arma cepisse cum magna multitudine ante diem vi. Kalendas Novembris. Simul, id quod in tali re solet, alii portenta atque prodigia nuntiabant, alii conventus fieri, arma portari, Capuae atque in Apulia servile bellum moveri. Igitur senati decreto Q. Marcius Rex Faesulas, Q. Metellus Creticus in Apuliam circumque ea loca missi — ei utrique ad urbem imperatores erant, impediti ne triumpharent calumnia paucorum, quibus omnia honesta atque inhonestata vendere mos erat; — sed praetores Q. Pompeius Rufus Capuam, Q. Metellus Celer in agrum Picenum, eisque permissum, uti pro tempore atque periculo exercitum compararent. Ad hoc, si quis indicavisset de conjuratione quae contra rem publicam facta erat, praemium servo libertatem et sestertia centum, libero impunitatem ejus rei et sestertia ducenta; itemque decrevere, uti gladiatoriae familiae Capuam et in cetera municipia distribuerentur pro cujuque opibus, Romae per totam urbem vigiliae haberentur, eisque minores magistratus praēssent.

31. Quibus rebus permota civitas atque immutata urbis facies erat. Ex summa laetitia atque lascivia, quae diurna quies pepererat, repente omnis tristitia invasit: festinare, trepidare, neque loco neque homini cuiquam satis credere, neque bellum gerere neque
pacem habere, suo quisque metu pericula metfri. Ad hoc mulieres, quibus rei publicae magnitudine belli timor insolitus incesserat, adfictare sese, manus sup-
licis ad caelum tendere, miserari parvos liberos, rogitare, omnia paverne, superbia atque deliciis omissis sibi patriaeque diffidere.

At Catilinae crudelis animus eadem illa movebat, tametsi praeidia parabantur, et ipse lege Plautia in-
terrogatus erat ab L. Paulo. Postremo dissimulandi causa vel sui expurgandi, sicubi jurgio lacesitus foret, in senatum venit. Tum M. Tullius consul, sive praesentiam ejus timens sive ira commotus, orationem habuit luculentam atque utilem rei publicae, quam postea scriptam edidit. Sed ubi ille adsedit, Catilina, ut erat paratus ad dissimulanda omnia, demisso voltu voce supplici postulare a patribus coepit, ne quid de se temere crederent: ea familia ortum, ita se ab adul-
escentia vitam instituisse, ut omnia bona in spe haberet; ne existumarent, sibi, patricio homini, cujus ipsius atque majorum pluruma beneficia in populum Rom-
um essent, perdita re publica opus esse, cum eam servaret M. Tullius, inquillinus civis urbis Romae. Ad hoc male dicta alia cum adderet, obstrepere omnes, hostem atque parricidam vocare. Tum ille furibundus, 
\textit{Quoniam quidem circumventus inuit ab inimicis praeceps agor, incendium mecum ruina restinguam.}

32. Deinde se ex curia domum proripuit. Ibi multa ipse secum volvens, quod neque insidiae consuli pro-
cedebant, et ab incendio intellegebat urbem vigiliis munitam, optumum factu credens exercitum augere, ac prius quam legiones scriberentur multa antecapere quae bello usui forent, nocte intempesta cum paucis in Manliana castra prosectus est. Sed Cethego atque Lentulo, ceterisque quorum cognovertat promptam audaciam, mandat quibus rebus possint opes factionis confirment, insidias consuli maturent, caedem, incendia
aliaque belli facinora parent; sese propediem cum magnio exercitu ad urbem adcessurum.

33. Dum haec Romae geruntur, C. Manlius ex suo numero legatos ad Marcium Regem mittit cum mandatis hujusce modi: 'Deos hominesque testamur, imperator, nos arma neque contra patriam cepisse, neque quo periculum aliis faceremus, sed uti corpora nostra ab injuria tuta forent; qui, miseri, egentes, violentia atque crudelitate feneratorum, plerique patriae, sed omnes fama atque fortunis expertes sumus: neque cuiquam nostrum licuit more majorum lege uti, neque amissa patrimonio liberum corpus habere,— tanta saevitia feneratorum atque praetoris fuit. Saepe majores vostrum, miserit plebis Romanae, decretis suis inopiae ejus opitulati sunt, ac novissume memoria nostra propter magnitudinem aeris alieni volentibus omnibus bonis argentum aere solutum est: saepe ipsa plebes, aut dominandi studio permota aut superbia magistratum, armata a patribus secessit. At nos non imperium neque divitas petimus, quorum rerum causa bella atque certamina omnia inter mortalis sunt, sed libertatem, quam nemo bonus nisi cum anima simul amittit. Te atque senatum obtestamur, consulatis miseris civibus, legis praesidium, quod iniquitas praetoris eripuit, restituatis, neve nobis eam necessitudinem imponatis, ut quaeamus quonam modo maxumeulti sanguinem nostrum pereamus.'

34. Ad haec Q. Marcius respondet: Si quid ab senatu petere velint, ab armis discendant, Romam supplices profferiscantur; ea mansuetudine atque misericordia senatum populi Romani semper fuisse, ut nemo umquam ab eo frustra auxilium petiverit.

At Catilina ex itinere plerisque consularibus, praeterea optumo cuique, litteras mittit: Se, falsis criminibus circumventum, quoniam factioni inimicorum resistere nequiverit, fortunae cedere; Massiliam in

39. Sed postquam Cn. Pompeius ad bellum maritumum atque Mithridaticum missus est, plebis opes imminutae, paucorum potentia crevit. Ei magistratus, provincias aliaque omnia tenere; ipsi innoxii florentes sine metu aetatem agere, ceteros, qui plebem in magistratu placidius tractarent, judiciis terrere. Sed ubi primum dubiiis rebus novandi spes oblata est, vetus certamen animos eorum adrexit. Quod si primo proelio Catilina superior aut aequa manu discessisset, profecto magna clades atque calamitas rem publicam oppressisset; neque illis, si victoriam adepti forent, diutius ea uti licuisset, quin defessis et exsanguibus qui plus posset imperium atque libertatem extorqueret.

Fuere tamen extra conjurationem complures, qui ad Catilinam initio profecti sunt. In eis erat A. Fulvius, senatoris filius, quem retractum ex itinere parens necari jussit. Eisdem temporibus Romae Lentulus, sicuti Catilina praeciperat, quoscumque moribus aut fortuna novis rebus idoneos credebat, aut ipse aut per
alios sollicitabat, neque solum civis, sed cujusque
modi genus hominum, quod modo bello usui foret.
40. Igitur P. Umbreno cuidam negotium dat, uti
legatos Allobrogum requirat, eoque, si possit, impellat
ad societatem belli, existumans publice privatimque
aere alieno oppressos, praeterea quod natura gens
Gallica bellicosa esset, facile eos ad tale consilium
adduci posse. Umbrenus, quod in Gallia negotiatu-
erat, plerisque principibus civitatium notus erat atque
eos noverat. Itaque sine mora, ubi primum legatos in
foro conspexit, percontatus pausca de statu civitatis, et
quasi dolens ejus casum, requirere coepit quem exitum
tantis malis sperarent. Postquam illos videt queri de
avaria magistratu, accusare senatum quod in eo
auxili nihil esset, miseriis suis remedium mortem
expectare, 'At ego' inquit 'vobis, si modo vir esse
voltis, rationem ostendam, qua tanta ista mala effugia-
tis.' Haec ubi dixit, Allobroges in maxumum spem
adducti Umbrenum orare, ut sui misereretur; nihil
tam asperum neque tam difficile esse, quod non cupi-
dissume facturi essent, dum ea res civitatem aere
alieno liberaret. Ille eos in domum D. Bruti perducit,
quod foro propinqua erat, neque aliena consili propter
Semproniam; nam tum Brutus ab Roma aberat.
Praeterea Gabinium accersit, quo major auctoritas
sermoni inesset. Eo praesente conjurationem aperit,
nominat socios, praeterea multos cujusque generis
innoxios, quo legatis animus amplior esset; deinde
eos pollicitos operam suam domum dimittit. 41. Sed
Allobroges diu in incerto habuere, quidnam consili
caperent. In altera parte erat aed alienum, studium
belli, magna merces in spe victoriae; at in altera
maiores opes, tuta consilia, pro incerta spe certa
praemia. Haec illis volventibus tandem vicit fortuna
rei publicae. Itaque Q. Fabio Sangae, cujus patro-
cinio civitas plurumum utebatur, rem omnem, uti
cognoverant, aperiunt. Cicero, per Sangam consilio cognito, legatis praecepit ut studium conjurationis vehementer simulent, ceteros adeant, bene polliceantur, dentsque operam uti eos quam maxume manufestos habeant.

42. Eisdem fere temporibus in Gallia citeriore atque ulteriore, item in agro Piceno, Bruttio, Apulia, motus erat. Namque illi, quos ante Catilina dimiserat, inconsulter ac veluti per dementiam cuncta simul agebant: nocturnis consiliis, armorum atque telorum portionibus, festinando, agitando omnia, plus timoris quam periculi effecerant. Ex eo numero compluris Q. Metellus Celer praetor ex senatus consulto causa cognita in vincula conjecerat, item in ulteriore Gallia C. Murrena, qui ei provinciae legatus praerat.

43. At Romae Lentulus cum ceteris, qui principes conjurationis erant, paratis ut videbantur magnis copiis, constituerant uti, cum Catilina in agrum Faesulanum cum exercitu venisset, L. Bestia tribunus plebei, contentione habita, quereretur de actionibus Ciceronis, bellique gravissumi invidiam optumo consuli imponeret: eo signo, proxuma nocte cetera multitudo conjurationis suum quisque negotium exsequeretur. Sed ea divisa hoc modo dicebantur: Statilius et Gabinius uti cum magna manu duodecim simul opportuna loca urbis incenderent, quo tumultu facilior aditus ad consulem ceterosque quibus insidia parabantur fieret; Cethegus Ciceronis januam obsideret, eumque vi adgrederetur, alius autem alium; sed filii familiarum, quorum ex nobilitate maxuma pars erat, parentis interficerent; simul, caede et incendio perculsis omnibus, ad Catilinam erumpenter. Inter haec parata atque decreta, Cethegus semper querebatur de ignavia sociorum: illos dubitando et dies prolatando magnas opportunitates corrupere; facto, non consulto in tali periculo opus esse; seque, si pauci adjuvarent, languentibus
aliis, impetum in curiam facturum. Natura ferox, vehemens, manu promptus erat: maxunnum bonum in celeritate putabat.


45. His rebus ita actis, constituta nocte qua profiscerentur, Cicero per legatos cuncta edoctus, L. Valerio Flacco et C. Pompitino praetoribus imperat, ut in ponte Mulvio per insidias Allobrogum comitatus apprehendant; rem omnem aperit, cujus gratia mittebantur; cetera, uti facto opus sit, ita agant permittit. Illi, homines militares, sine tumultu praesidiis collocauit siciuti praeceptum erat, occulte pontem obsidunt. Postquam ad id loci legati cum Volturciun venere, simul utrimque clamor exortus est, Galli cito, cognito consilio, sine mora praetoribus se tradunt. Volturcius, primo cohortatus ceteros, gladio se a multitudine defendit; deinde ubi a legatis desertus est, multa prius de salute sua Pompitunum obtestatus, quod ei notus
erat, postremo timidus ac vitae diffidens velut hostibus
sese praetoribus dedit.

46. Quibus rebus confectis, omnia propere per nun-
tios consulii declarantur. At illum ingens cura atque
laetitia simul occupavere: nam laetabatur intellegens
conjugatione patefacta civitatem periculos ereptam esse,
porro autem anxius erat, dubitans in maximo scelere,
tantis civibus deprehensis, quid facto opus esset; poe-
nam illorum sibi oneri, impunitatem perdundae rei
publicae fore credebat. Igitur confirmato animo, vo-
cari ad sese jubeat Lentulum, Cethegum, Statilium,
Gabinium, itemque [quendam] Caeparium Tarraci-
nensem, qui in Apuliam ad concitanda servitia pro-
faciscì parabat.

Ceteri sine mora veniunt; Caeparius, paulo ante
domo egressus, cognito indicio ex urbe profugerat.
Consul Lentulum quod praetor erat ipse manu tenens
perducit, reliquis cum custodibus in aedem Concordiae
venire jubeat. Eo senatum advocat, magnaque fre-
quentia ejus ordinis Volturciun cum legatis introductus,
Flaccum praetorem scrinium, cum litteris quas a
legatis acceperat, eodem adserre jubeat. 47. Voltur-
cius interrogatus de itinere, de litteris, postremo quid
aut qua de causa consili habuisse, primo fingere alia,
dissimulare de conjuratione; post, ubi fide publica
dicere jussus est, omnia uti gesta erant aperit, docet-
que se, paucis ante diebus a Gabinio et Caepario
socium adscitum, nihil amplius scire quam legatos;
tantum modo audire solitum ex Gabinio P. Autronium,
Servium Sullam, L. Vargunteium, multos praeterea
in ea conjuratione esse. Eadem Galli fatentur, ac
Lentulum dissimulantem coarguunt praeter litteras
sermonibus, quos ille habere solitus erat: ex libris
Sibyllinis regnum Romae tribus Corneliis portendi;
Cinnam atque Sullam antea, se tertium esse, cui fatum
foret urbis potiri; praeterea ab incenso Capitolio illum
esse vigesum annum, quem saepe ex prodigiis
aruspices respondissent bello civilis cruentum fore.
Igitur perlectis litteris, cum prius omnes signa sua
cognovissent, senatus decernit, uti abdicato magistratu
Lentulus, itemque ceteri, in liberis custodii habitat-
tur. Itaque Lentulus P. Lentulo Spintheri, qui tum
aedilis erat, Cethegus Q. Cornificio, Statilius C.
Caesari, Gabinius M. Crasso, Caeparius (nam is paulo
ante ex fuga retractus erat) Cn. Terentio senatori
traduntur.

48. Interea plebes, conjuratione patefacta, quae
primo, cupida rerum novarum, nimirum bello favebat,
mutata mente Catilinae consilia exsecrari, Ciceronem
ad caelum tollere; veluti ex servitute erepta gaudium
atque laetitiam agitabant: namque alia belii facinora
praedae magis quam detrimento fore, incendium vero
 crudele, immoderatum, ac sibi maxum calamitosum
putabant, quippe cui omnes copiae in usu cotidiano et
cultu corporis erant.

Post eum diem quidam L. Tarquinius ad senatum
adductus erat, quem ad Catilinam proficiscentem ex
itinere retractum aiebant. Is cum se diceret indica-
turum de conjuratione si fides publica data esset,
jussus a consule quae sciret edicere, eadem fere quae
Volturcius, de paratis incendiis, de caede bonorum, de
itinere hostium, senatum docet; praeterea se missum
a M. Crasso, qui Catilinae nutiaret, ne eum Lentulus
et Cethegus alique ex conjuratione deprehensi terrea-
rent, eoque magis properaret ad urbem adcedere, quo
et ceterorum animos reficeret, et illi facilius e periculo
eriperentur. Sed ubi Tarquinius Crassum nominavit,
hominem nobilem, maxumis divitiis, summa potentia,
alii rem incredibilem rati, pars tametsi verum existu-
mabant, tamen quia in tali tempore tanta vis hominis
magis leniunda quam exagitanda videbatur, plerique
Crasso ex negotiis privatis obnoxii, conclamant in-
dicem falsum esse, deque ea re postulant uti referatur. Itaque consulente Cicerone frequens senatus decernit: Tarquini indicium falsum videri, eumque in vinculis retinendum, neque amplius potestatem faciundam, nisi de eo indicaret, cujus consilio tantam rem esset mentitus. Erant eo tempore qui existumarent indicium illud a P. Autronio machinatum, quo facilius adpellato Crasso per societatem periculi reliquos illius potentia tegeret; aliis Tarquinium a Cicerone immissum aiebant, ne Crassus more suo, suscepto malorum patrocinio, rem publicam conturbaret. Ipsum Crassum ego postea praedicantem audivi, tantam illam contumeliam sibi ab Cicerone impositam.

49. Sed eisdem temporibus Q. Catulus et C. Piso neque pretio neque gratia Ciceronem impellere qui- vere, uti per Allobroges aut alium indicem C. Caesar falso nominaretur. Nam uterque cum illo gravis inimicitias exercebant: Piso oppugnatus in judicio pecuniarum repetundarum propter cujusdam Trans- padani supplicium injustum; Catulus ex petitione pontificatus odio incensus, quod extrema aetate, maxumis honoribus usus, ab adolescetulo Caesarem victus discesserat. Res autem opportuna videbatur, quod is privatim egregia liberalitate, publice maxumis muneribus, grandem pecuniam debebat. Sed ubi consulem ad tantum facinus impellere nequeunt, ipsi singulatim circumvenundo atque ementiundo, quae se ex Volturcio aut Allobrogibus audisse dicerent, magnam illi invidiam conflaverant, usque eo, ut nonnulli equites Romani, qui praesidi causa cum telis erant circum aedem Concordiae, seu periculi magnitudine seu animi mobilitate impulsi, quo studium suum in rem publicam clarius esset, egredienti ex senatu Caesari gladio minintarentur.

50. Dum haec in senatu aguntur, et dum legatis Allobrogum et Tito Volturcio, comprobato eorum in-
dicio, praemia decernuntur, liberti et pauci ex clientibus Lentuli divorsís itineribus opíces atque servitia in vicis ad eum eripiundum sollicitabánt, partim exquirebánt duces multitúdinum, qui pretió rem publicam vexare solití erant; Cethégus autem per nuntios familiarí atque libertos suos, lectos et exercitátos [in audacíam], orábát ut gerege facto cum telí ad sese irumperent. Consul ubi ea parári cognovit, dispositís praesidíis ut res atque tempus monebat, convocató senátu, refért quíd de eis fieri placeát, qui in custodiis traditi erant. Sed eos paulo ante frequens senátus judicaverat contra rem publicam fecísse. Tum D. Juníus Silánus, primus sententíam rogáts, quod eo tempore consul designáts erat, de eis qui in custodiis tenabantur, et praeterea de L. Cassió, P. Furió, P. Umbrenó, Q. Annio si deprehénsi forent, supplicíum sumundum decreverat; isque postea, permotus oratione C. Casáris, pedibus in sententíam Tíberí Neronís iturum se dixerat, qui de ea re praesidíis addítis referundum censuerát. Sed Casáris, ubi ad eum ventum est, rogáts sententíam a consule, hujusce modi verba locútus est:

51. "Omnis homines, patres conscripti, qui de rebus dubiis consultánt, ab odio, amicitia, ira atque misericordia vacuos esse decet. Haud facile animus verum providet, ubi illa obfcíunt, neque quí quam omníum lubidíni simul et usuí paruit. Ubi intenderís ingenium, valet: si lubído possídet, ea dominatur, animus nihil valet. Magna mihi copia est memorándi, patres conscriptí, quae réges atque populi, ira aut misericordia impulsi, male consuluerint; sed ea malo dicere, quae máiores nostri contra lubidínum animí sui recte atque ordíne fecere. Bello Macedónico, quod cum rege Perse gessímus, Rhodiórum civítas magna atque magnífica, quae populi Románi opíbus creverat, infída et adversa nobís fuit; sed postquam bello confecto deRhodiis consultum est, máiores nostri, ne quis divitíarum magís quam injuriæ causa bellum inceptum diceret, impúntos eos dimíserë. Item
bellis Punicis omnibus, cum saepe Carthaginienses [et] in pace et per inducas multa nefaria facinora fecissent, numquam ipsi per occasionem talia fecere; magis quid se dignum foret, quam quid in illos jure fieri posset, quaeribant.

"Hoc item vobis providendum est, patres conscripti, ne plus apud vos valeat P. Lentuli et ceterorum scelus quam vostra dignitas, nee magis irae vostrae quam famae consulatis. Nam si digna poena pro factis eorum reperitur, novum consilium approbo; sin magnitudo sceleris omnium ingenia exsperat, eis utendum censeo, quae legibus comparata sunt.

"Plerique eorum qui ante me sententias dixerunt, composite atque magnifice casum rei publicae miserati sunt: quae bellis saevitiae esset, quae victis acciderent, enumera- vere; rapi virgines, pueros; divelli liberos a parentum complexu; matres familiarem pati quae victoribus conlubuis- sent; fana atque domos spoliari; caedem, incendia fieri; postremo armis, cadaveribus; cruore atque luctu omnia compleri. Sed, per deos immortalis, quo illa oratio pertinent? An, uti vos infestos conjugationi faceret? scilicet quem res tanta et tam atroxa non permovit, eum oratio accendet. Non ita est, neque cuiquam mortalium injuriae suae parvae videntur: multi eas gravius acque habuere.

"Sed alia aliis licentia est, patres conscripti. Qui demissi in obscuro vitam habent, si quid iracundia deliquere, pauci sciunt, fama atque fortuna eorum paries sunt; qui magno imperio praediti in excelso actatem agunt, eorum facta cuncti mortales novere. Ita in maxima fortuna minuma licentia est; neque studere, neque odisse, sed minume irasci decet; quae apud alios iracundia dicitur, ea in imperio superbia atque crudelitas appellatur. Equidem ego sic existumo, patres conscripti, omnis cruciatus minores quam facinora illorum esse: sed plerique mortales postrema memi- nere; et in hominibus impiis, sceleris eorum oblitii, de poena disserunt si ea paulo severior fuit.

"D. Silanum, virum fortem atque strenuum, certo scio quae dixerit studio rei publicae dixisse, neque illum in tanta re gratiam aut inimicitias exercere: eos mores eamque modestiam viri cognovi. Verum sententia ejus mihi non
crudelis — quid enim in talis homines crudele fieri potest? — sed aliena a re publica nostra videtur. Nam profecto aut metus aut injuria te subegit, Silane, consulem designatum, genus poenae novom decernere. De timore supervacaneum est disserere, cum praesertim, diligentia clarissumi viri consulis, tanta praesidia sint in armis. De poena possum equidem dicere — id quod res habet — in luctu atque miseris mortem aerumnarum requiem, non cruciatum esse; eam cuncta mortalium mala dissolvere; ultra neque curae neque gaudio locum esse. Sed, per deos immortalis, quamobrem in sententia non addidisti, uti prior verberibus in eos animadvertetur? An quia lex Porcia vetat? At aliae leges item condemnatis civibus non animam eripi, sed exsilium permittit jurent. An quia gravius est verberari quam necari? Quid autem acerbum aut nimis grave est in homines tanti facinoris convictos? Sin quia levis est, qui convenit in minore negotio legem timere, cum eam in majore negleg-geris?

"At enim quis reprehendet, quod in parricidas rei publicae decretum erit? Tempus, dies, fortuna, cujus lubido gentibus moderatur. Illis merito accidet, quicquid evenerit; ceterum vos, patres conscripti, quid in alios statuatis considerate. Omnia mala exempla ex rebus bonis orta sunt. Scilicet ubi imperium ad ignaros aut minus bonos pervenit, novum illud exemplum ab dignis et idoneis ad indignos et non idoneos transfertur. Lacedaemonii devictis Atheniensesibus triginta viros imposuere, qui rem publicam eorum tractarent. Ei primo coepere pessum quemque et omnibus invisum indemnatum necare; ea populus laetari et merito dicere fieri: post, ubi paulatim licentia crevit, juxta bonos et malos lubidinose interficere, ceteros metu terrere; ita civitas, servitute oppressa, stultae laetitiae gravis poenas dedit. Nostra memoria victor Sulla, cum Damasippum et alios ejus modi, qui malo rei publicae creverant, jugulari jussit, quis non factum ejus laudabat? homines scelestos et factiosos, qui seditionibus rem publicam exagitaverant, merito necatos aiebant. Sed ea res magnae initium clados fuit. Nam uti quisque domum aut villam, postremo vas aut vestimentum alicujus concupiverat, dabat operam, ut is in proscriptorum numero esset. Ita illi, quibus Damasippi
mors laetitiae fuerat, paulo post ipsi trahebantur; neque
prius finis jugulandi fuit quam Sulla omnis suos divitis ex-
plevit. Atque ego haec non in M. Tullio neque his tem-
poribus vereor; sed in magna civitate multa et varia ingenia
sunt. Potest alio tempore, alio consule, cui item exercitus
in manu sit, falsum aliquid pro vero credi: ubi hoc exemplo
per senati decretum consul gladium eduxerit, quis illi finem
statuet, aut quis moderabitur?

"Majores nostri, patres conscripti, neque consili neque
audaciae unquam eguere, neque illis superbia obstabat, quo
minus aliena instituta, si modo proba erant, imitarentur.
Arma atque tela militaria ab Samnitibus, insignia magistra-
tuum ab Tuscis pleraque sumpserunt; postremo quod ubi-
que apud socios aut hostis idoneum videbatur, cum summo
studio domi exsequebantur: imitari quam invidere bonis
malebant. Sed eodem illo tempore [Graeciae morem imi-
tati] verberibus animadvorbant in civis, de condemnatis
summum supplicium sumebant. Postquam res publica
adolevit, et multitudine civium factiones valueré, circum-
veniri innocentes, alia hujusce modi fieri coepere, tum lex
Porcia aliaeque leges paratae sunt, quibus legibus exsilium
damnatis permisson est. Hanc ego causam, patres con-
scripti, quo minus novom consilium capiamus, in primis
magnam puto. Profecto virtus atque sapientia major in
illis fuit, qui ex parvis opibus tantum imperium fecere,
quam in nobis, qui ea bene parta vix retinemus.

"Placet igitur eos dimitti et augeri exercitum Catilinae?
Minume. Sed ita censeo: publicandas eorum pecunias;
ipsos in vinculis habendos per municipia, quae maxume
opibus valent; neu quis de eis postea ad senatum referat,
neve cum populo agat; qui aliter fecerit, senatum existu-
mare eum contra rem publicam et salutem omnium fac-
turum."

52. Postquam Caesar dicundi finem fecit, ceteri verbo
alius alii varie adsentiebantur. At M. Porcius Cato,
rogatus sententiam, hujusce modi orationem habuit:

"Longe mihi alia mens est, patres conscripti, cum res
atque pericula nostra considero, et cum sententias nonnul-
lorum ipse mecum repute. Illi mihi disseruisse videntur
de poena eorum, qui patriae, parentibus, aris atque focis suis bellum paravere. Res autem monet cavere ab illis magis quam quid in illos statuamus consultare. Nam cetera malitia tum persequare, ubi facta sunt; hoc, nisi provideras ne accidat, ubi evenit, frustra judicia implores: capta urbe, nihil fit reliqui victis. Sed, per deos immortalis, vos ego appello, qui semper domos, villas, signa, tabulas vostras pluris quam rem publicam fecistis: si ista, cujuscumque modi sunt quae amplexamini, retinere, si voluptatibus vostris otium praebere voltis, expurgiscimini aliquando, et capessite rem publicam. Non agitur de vectigalibus neque de sociorum injuriis: libertas et anima nostra in dubio est.

"Saepenumbero, patres conscripti, multa verba in hoc ordine feci, saepe de luxuria atque avaritia nostrorum civium questus sum, multosque mortalis ea causa adversos habeo: qui mihi atque animo meo nullius umquam delicti gratiam fecissem, haud facile alterius lubidini male facta condonabam. Sed ea tametsi vos parvi pendebatis, tamen res publica firma erat: opulentia neglegentiam tolerabat. Nunc vero non id agitur, bonisne an malis moribus vivanis, neque quantum aut quam magnificum imperium populi Romani sit; sed haec cujuscumque modi videntur, nostra an nobiscum una hostium futura sint. Hic mihi quisquam mansuetudinem et misericordiam nominat? Jam pridem equidem nos vera vocula rerum amisimus: quia bona aliena largiri liberalitas, malarum rerum audacia fortitudo vocatur, eo res publica in extremo sita est. Sint sane, quoniam ita se mores habent, liberales ex sociorum fortunis, sint misericordes in furibus aerari; ne illi sanguinem nostrum largiantur, et dum paucis sceleratis parcunt, bonos omnis perditum eant.

"Bene et composite C. Caesar paulo ante in hoc ordine de vita et morte disseruit, credo falsa existumans ea quae de inferis memorantur, divisor itinere malos a bonis loca taetra, inculta, foeda atque formidulosa habere. Itaque censuit pecunias eorum publicandas, ipsos per municipia in custodiis habendos; videlicet timens ne, si Romae sint, aut a popularibus conjurationis aut a multitudine conducta per vim eripiantur. Quasi vero mali atque scelesti tantum modo in urbe et non per totam Italiam sint; aut non ibi plus
possit audacia, ubi ad defendendum opes minores sunt. Quare vanum equidem hoc consilium est, si periculum ex illis metuit; sin in tanto omnium metu solus non timet, eo magis refert me mihi atque vobis timere. Quare cum de P. Lentulo ceterisque statuetis, pro certo habetote, vos simul de exercitu Catilinae et de omnibus conjugatis decernere. Quanto vos attentius ea agetis, tanto illis animus infirmior erit: si paululum modo vos languere viderint, jam omnes feroce aderunt.

"Nolite existumare maiores nostros armis rem publicam ex parva magnam fecisse. Si ita res esset, multo pulcherrumam eam nos haberemus; quippe sociorum atque civium, praeterea armorum atque equorum major copia nobis quam illis est. Sed alia fuere, quae illos magnos fecere, quae nobis nulla sunt: domi industria, foris justum imperium; animus in consulundo liber, neque delicto neque lubidini obnoxius. Pro his nos habemus luxuriam atque avaritiam; publice egestatem, privatim opulentiam; laudamus divitias, sequimur inertiam; inter bonos et malos discrimen nullum; omnia virtutis praemia ambitio possidet. Neque mirum: ubi vos separatim sibi quisque consilium capitis, ubi domi voluptatibus, hic pecuniae aut gratiae servitis, eo fit, ut impetus fiat in vacuo rem publicam.


"Qua re ego ita censeo: cum nefario consilio sceleratorum civium res publica in maxumam periculam venerit, eique indicio T. Volfurci et legatorum Allobrogum convicti confessique sint, caedem incendia aliaque se foeda atque crudeliam facinora in civis patriarchaque paravisse, de confessis, sicuti de manufestis rerum capitalium, more majorum supplicium sumendum."

53. Postquam Cato adsedit, consulares omnes itemque senatus magna pars sententiam ejus laudant, virtutem animi ad caelum ferunt: aliis alios increpantes timidos vocant, Cato clarus atque magnus habetur: senati decretum fit sicut ille censuerat.

Sed mihi multa legenti, multa audienti, quae populus Romanus domi militiaeque, mari atque terra praeclara facinora fecit, forte lubuit attendere, quae res maxume tanta negotia sustinuisset. Sciebam saepenumero parva manu cum magnis legionibus hostium contendisse; cognoveram parvis copios bella gesta cum opulentis regibus; ad hoc saepe fortunae violentiam toleravisse; facundia Graecos, gloria belli Gallos ante Romanosuisse. Ac mihi multa agitanti constabat paucorum civium egregiam virtutem cuncta patra-

54. Igitur eis genus, aetas, eloquentia, prope aequalia fuere, magnitudo animi par, item gloria, sed alia alii. Caesar beneficia ac munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vitae Cato. Ille mansuetudine et misericordia clarus factus, huic severitas dignitatem addiderat. Caesar dando, sublevando, ignoscando, Cato nihil largiundo gloriari adeptus est. In altero miseris perfugium erat, in altero malis pernicies: illius facilitas, hujus constantia laudabatur. Postremo Caesar in animum induxerat laborare, vigilare, negotiis amicorum intentus sua negligere, nihil denegare quod dono dignum esset; sibi magnum imperium, exercitum, bellum novum exoptabant, ubi virtus enitescere posset. At Catoni studium modestiae, decoris, sed maxume severitatis erat: non divitiis cum divite neque factione cum factioso, sed cum strenuo virtute, cum innocente abstinentia certabat; esse quam videri bonus malebat; ita, quo minus petebat gloriarn, eo magis illa sequabatur.

55. Postquam, ut dixi, senatus in Catonis sententiam discessit, consul, optumum factum ratus noctem quae instabat antecapere, ne quid eo spatio novaretur, tresviros quae ad supplicium postulabat parare jubet: ipse, praesidiis dispositis, Lentulum in carcerem deduct; idem fit ceteris per praetores. Est in carcere
locus quod Tullianum appellatur, ubi paululum as-
scenderis ad laevam, circiter duodecim pedes humi
depressus. Eum muniunt undique parietes atque in-
super camera lapideis fornici bus juncta, sed incultu,
tenebris, odore, foeda atque terribilis ejus facies est.
In eum locum postquam demissus est Lentulus, vin-
dices rerum capitalium quibus praeceptum erat laqueo
gulam fregere. Ita ille patricius ex gente clarissuma
Corneliorum, qui consulare imperium Romae habue-
rat, dignum moribus factisque suis exitium vitae in-
venit. De Cethego, Statilio, Gabinio, Caepario, eodem
modo supplicium sumptum est.

56. Dum ea Romae geruntur, Catilina ex omni
copia quam et ipse adduxerat et Manlius habuerat,
duas legiones instituit, cohortis pro numero militum
complet: deinde, ut quies voluntarius aut ex sociis
in castra venerat, aequaliter distribuerat, ac brevi
spatio legiones numero hominum expleverat, cum
initio non amplius duobus milibus habuisse. Sed ex
omni copia circiter pars quarta erat militaribus armis
instructa; ceteri, ut quemque casus armaverat, sparos
aut lanceas, alii praeacutas sudis portabant. Sed
postquam Antonius cum exercitu adventabat, Catilina
per montis iter facere, modo ad urbem, modo in Gal-
liam versus castra movere, hostibus occasionem pug-
nandi non dare: sperabat prope diem magnas copias
sexe habiturum, si Romae socii incepta patravissent.
Interea servitia repudiabat, cujus initio ad eum mag-
nae copiae concurrebant, opibus conjurationis fretus;
simul alienum suis rationibus existumans, videri cau-
sam civium cum servis fugitivis communicavisse. 57.
Sed postquam in castra nuntius pervenit Romae con-
jurationem patefactam, de Lentulo et Cethego cete-
risque quos supra memoravi supplicium sumptum,
plerique, quos ad bellum spes rapinarum aut novarum
rerum studium inlexerat, dilabuntur; reliquos Catilinu

Digitized by Google
The Conspiracy of Catiline.

per montis asperos magnis itineribus in agrum Pistoriensem abducit, eo consilio, uti per tramites occulte perfugeret in Galliam [Transalpinam].

At Q. Metellus Celer cum tribus legionibus in agro Piceno praesidebat, ex difficiitate rerum eadem illa existumans quae supra diximus, Catilinam agitare. Igitur ubi iter ejus ex perfugis cognovit, castra propere movit, ac sub ipsis radicibus montium consedit, qua illi descensus erat in Galliam properanti. Neque tamen Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui magno exercitu locis aequioribus expedito . . . . in fuga sequeretur. Sed Catilina, postquam videt montibus atque copiis hostium sese clausum, in urbe res adverbias, neque fugae neque praesidi um spem, optumum factu ratus in tali re fortunam belli temptare, statuit cum Antonio quam primum conflagere. Itaque, contione advocata, hujusce modi orationem habuit:


"Scitis equidem, milites, socordia atque ignavia Lentuli quantam ipsi nobisque cladem adulerit, quoque modo, dum ex urbe praesidia opperior, in Galliam proficisci nequiverim. Nunc vero quo [in] loco res nostrae sint, juxta mecum omnes intellegitis. Exercitus hostium duo, unus ab urbe, alter a Gallia obstant: diutius in his locis esse, si maxume animus ferat, frumenti atque aliarum rerum egestas prohibet: quocumque ire placet, ferro iter aperiendum est. Qua propter vos moneo, uti forti atque parato animo sitis, et cum proelium inibitis memineritis vos divitas, decus, gloriarn, praeterea libertatem atque patriam in dextris vostris portare. Si vincimus, omnia nobis tuta erunt, commatus abunde, municipia atque coloniae patebunt: sin metu cesserimus, eadem illa adversa sient; neque locus, neque amicus quis-
quam teget, quem arma non texerint. Praeterea, milites, non eadem nobis et illis necessitudo impendet: nos pro patria, pro libertate, pro vita certamus; illis supervacancem est pro potentia paucorum pugnare.

"Quo audacius adgredimini, memores pristinae virtutis. Licuit vobis cum summa turpitudine in exsilio aetatem agere, potuistis nonnulli Romae amissis bonis alienas opes exspectare: quia illa foeda atque intoleranda viris videbantur, haec sequi decrevistis. Si haec relinquere volitis, audacia opus est: nemo nisi victor pace bellum mutavit. Nam in fuga salutem sperare, cum arma, quibus corpus tegitur, ab hostibus avorteris, ea vero dementia est. Semper in proelio eis maximum est periculum qui maxime timent, audacia pro muro habetur.

"Cum vos considero, milites, et cum facta vostra aestumo, magna me spes victoriae tenet. Animus, aetas, virtus vosstra mehortantur, praeterea necessitudo, quae etiam timidos fortis facit. Nam multitudo hostium ne circumvenire queat, prohibent angustiae loci. Quod si virtuti vostrae fortuna invidet, cave et animam amittatis; ne capti potius sicuti pecora trucidemini, quam virorum more pugnantes cruentam atque luctuosam victoriam hostibus reliquatis."

59. Haec ubi dixit, paululum commoratus, signa canere jubet, atque instructos ordines in locum aequum deducit. Dein, remotis omnium equis, quo militibus exaequato periculo animus amplior esset, ipse pedes exercitum pro loco atque copiis instruit. Nam, uti planitiae erat inter sinistros montis, et ab dextra rupe aspera, octo cohortis in fronte constituit, reliquarum signa in subsidio artius conlocat: ab eis centuriones omnis lectos et evocatos, praeterea ex gregariis militibus optumum quemque armatum in primam aciem subducit. C. Manlius in dextra, Faesulanum quendam in sinistra parte curare jubet: ipse cum libertis et calonibus propter aquilam adsistit, quam bello Cimbrico C. Marius in exercitu habuisse dicebatur.

At ex altera parte C. Antonius, pedibus aeger, quod proelio adesse nequibat, M. Petreio legato exercitum
permittit. Ille cohortis veteranas, quas tumulti causa conscripserat, in fronte, post eas ceterum exercitum in subsidiis locat; ipse equo circumiens, unumquemque nominans, appellat, hortatur, rogat, ut meminerint se contra latrones inermis, pro patria, pro liberis, pro aris atque facis suis certare. Homo military, quod amplius annos triginta tribunus aut praefectus aut legatus aut praefor cum magna gloria in exercitu fuerat, plerosque ipsos factaque eorum fortia noverat: ea commemorando, militum animos accedebat.


61. Sed confecto proelio, tum vero cerneret quanta audacia quantaque animi vis fuisset in exercitu Catilinae. Nam fere quem quisque vivos pugnando locum ceperat, eum amissa anima corpore tegebatur. Pauci autem; quos medios cohors praetoria disjecerat, paulo
divorsius *alii alibi stantes*, sed omnes tamen advorsis
volneribus conciderant. Catilina vero longe a suis
inter hostium cadavera repertus est, paululum etiam
spirans, ferociamque animi, quam habuerat vivos, in
voltu retinens. Postremo ex omni copia neque in
proelio neque in fuga quisquam civis ingenuus captus
est: ita cuncti suae hostiumque vitae juxta pepercera

Neque tamen exercitus populi Romani laetam aut
incruentam victoriam adeptus erat: nam strenuissumus
quisque aut occiderat in proelio, aut graviter volner-
atus discesserat. Multi autem, qui e castris visundi
aut spoliandi gratia processerant, volventes hostilia
cadavera, amicum alii, pars hospitem aut cognatum re-
periebant; fuere item qui inimicos suos cognoscerent.
Ita varie per omnem exercitum laetitia, maeror, luctus
atque gaudia agitabantur.
NOTES.

Argument.


PAGE

1. omnis homines... decet, it is fitting for all men to strive, etc. (for the acc. form in is, see §§ 11, i. 3, e; 16, 2, b: a still earlier form is found in eis). In this sentence, the accusative omnis homines is the subject of niti (§ 52, 4, b), and the clause omnis... niti is the subject of decet (§ 57, 8, a).

see praestare, § 57, 8, d: the subj. accus. is rarely expressed with this verb: it may be rendered as object, set themselvess at the head.

student, aim to, are bent upon.—summa ope, with all effort.—ne... transeant (§ 70, 3, e), not to spend their life in silence.

silentio, § 54, 7, b.—pecora, brutes, as devoid of reason: animal includes man (as implied in ceteris, above); belua is a monster, or the like.—prona, grovelling, i. e. with faces towards the earth.—obcedientia, subservient, lit. hearkening (ob-audire), as to a despotic master.—finxit, has fashioned.
The Conspiracy of Catiline.

animo, the soul, including both intellect, affections, and will. — magia, rather than the other way.

alterum . . . alterum, the one (soul) . . . the other (body).

ingeni, gen. (§ 10, 4, b). — opibus, resources. — quam maxume, as much as possible (elliptic, for as much as the most).

fluxa, fleeting (passing away of itself); fragilis, frail (exposed to accident).

certamen, controversy. — vi-ne . . . procederet, whether war advances more by force of body, etc. Here an indirect question is introduced by the interrog. particles ne and an (§ 71, 2); the verb procederet is in the subj. by § 67, 2, and in the imperfect (following fuit) by the sequence of tenses (§ 58, 10, d).

incipias, consuleris, subjunctive of general condition (§ 59, 5, a). — consulto, facto, § 54, 1, d: consulto refers to animi, and facto to corporis (chiastic order, § 76, 2, f). — mature facto, speedy action. — indigens, helpless.

§ 2. initio, at the beginning. — nam, i. e. I say kings, because, etc. — divorsi, variously (§ 47, 6); it is in appos. with both pars and alii, which are here correlative. — ingeniun, intellect. — exercerebant, trained by exercise.

etiam tum, i. e. even after kingdoms were established, and men no longer lived in the early simplicity. — agitabatur (more commonly agebatur), was passed. — sua ouique, etc. (the regular order), each man was well satisfied with his own.

Cyrus: Cyrus the Great (or the Elder), founder of the Persian Empire, b.c. 559. During his lifetime he brought all western Asia under his rule, and his successors conquered Egypt and parts of Europe.

Lacedæmonii. The Spartans were at the head of the Grecian States in the sixth century b.c., having conquered the Messenians and other neighboring communities. The leadership passed from Sparta to Athens after the Persian wars (b.c. 490-479), but was recovered by Sparta at the close of the Peloponnesian war (b.c. 404).

urbis, acc. plur. (§ 11, i. 4, n.). — lubidinem (root lub = love) . . . habere, to make the lust of dominion a motive of war. — negotiis (nec otium), difficulties. — plurimum posse, has chief power.

animi virtus, i. e. both mental and moral excellence. Strictly, mens is the intellect, and animus the soul (moral powers); but — especially from the Socratic doctrine that virtue and knowledge are the same — animus oftener means all the higher faculties as opposed to the bodily functions.

ita valeret, were as potent. — æquabilius, more uniformly; constantius, more steadily.
see haberent, would keep themselves (i.e. move, or simply be).—aliqua aliquo ferri, this thing driven one way, and that another.

2. artibus, qualities.—superbia, arrogance, opposed to equitatem, equal justice.—fortuna, etc., i.e. they became unlucky.

optimum quemque, i.e. in every case, every time a better man appears.

quia (cognate acc.) . . . parent, whatever ploughing, &c., men do, all is subject.—virtuti, sc. animi.

dediti venti, given up to gluttony.—indocti, without knowledge; inoulti, without breeding.

sicuti peregrinantes, i.e. as if in a strange country, and ignorant of its laws.—transiere, § 58, 5, c.

profecto, etc., clearly against nature.—corpus . . . fuit, the body has been [the source of] pleasure, and the mind a burden (dat. of service, § 51, 5).

eorum ego, both emphatic.—juxta, alike.—quoniam . . .

siletur (impersonal), since both are lost in silence (oblivion); lit. silence-is-kept about both.

verum enim vero, but really.—is demum (superl. of de), he alone (lit. at last; having gone through all the others).—anima, breath of life.

facinoris, in its rarer sense of noble deed.—artis, profession (as literature and the like).—copia, variety.

§ 3. bene dicere, to speak well (as an orator), a kind of play on the words dicere and facere.—haud absurdum, not unbecoming (a "litotes"), corresponding to pulorum, noble (beautiful).

pace, bello, loc. abl. (§ 54, 10).—clarum (acc.) agrees with the subj. of fieri, which is not expressed.—qui multi, many [of those] who (§ 50, 2, R.3).

mini quidem, to me at least.—scribere, describe.—facta, etc., the deeds must be matched by the words.—deinde = deinde, in the second place.

qua . . . reprehenderis (gen. cond.), whatever faults you blame = all your censure of faults.—dicta: spoken through ill-will and jealousy, agreeing with antecedent of quae.

qua . . . ducit, i.e. every man accepts what he thinks easy for himself to do. The distributive (quisque) is in Latin generally put in the relative clause; in English, in the demonstrative.

adulescentulus, when very young.—studio, by party feeling: Sallust early allied himself with the popular party, headed by Julius Caesar.—ad rem publicam, into public life.

pro pudore, etc., observe the parallelism.—largitio, lavish gifts to the multitude.

animus, my better nature.—insolens, etc., a stranger to evil arts.
imbécilla etas, age of weakness (lit. without staff), i.e. youth. — tenebatur, was possessed.

oum, while. — moribus, practices. — honoris . . . eadem, the same eagerness for public honors. — eademque, etc., and the same fame or jealousy troubled me as [did] the others.

3. § 4. a republica procul, aloof from politics. — consilium, my design. — secordia, indolence (of mind); desidia, sloth. — bonum otium, my happy leisure.

colundo, the regular spelling of the gerund in Sallust’s time. — intentum, agreeing with the subj. (me) of agere.

sed . . . regressus, i.e. but going back to the same undertaking and pursuit from which, etc. (§ 48, 3, b; for the use of the perf. part. see § 72, 1, b). — eadem, to the same point, i.e. the same purpose and zeal: antecedent of quo (§ 48, 3, b).

carpitim (§ 41, 1, k), piecemeal, lit. picking out here and there. — partibus = partisanship.

paucis absolvam, I will acquit myself in a few words; lit. pay off, as a debt. — de eujus hominis, etc., a man of whose character, &c. — pritus . . . quäm = first . . . before.

§ 5. Catillina: His full name was Lucius Sergius Catilina. The Sergian gens, although of no distinction in history, was patrician, and therefore belonged to the oldest aristocracy. Virgil (Æn. v. 121) derives it from Sergestus, a companion of Æneas.

nobili, well known, from the same root (GNO) as nosco, meaning of high rank. — ingenio, etc., of a bad and perverse (wrong-headed) nature.

grata (§ 47, 2, b), agreeing with bella, cœdes, etc. — ibi (= in ea) . . . exercuit, in these he trained his youth.

œorum (sc. ei erat), etc., in body he was able to endure fasting, &c. (inedia, negative of edo, eat). — supra quäm, beyond what: supra, with the other adverbs in ra, is a comparative form.

audax, reckless; substolas, tricky; varius, versatile. — eujus rei lubet (= eujuslibet rei), of any thing you like (whatsoever).

simulator, feigning what is not; dissimulator, concealing what is (§ 16, 3, e).

alieni appetens, craving [what was] other men’s (§ 50, 3, b). — sapientiae, discretion. — vastus animus, insatiate temper.

dominacionem, autocracy (regularly used of unlawful power).

Luci Sullæ: the dictatorship of Sulla was B.C. 82. Catiline was one of his most unscrupulous tools, and a number of bloody deeds are ascribed to him, as the murder of his own brother and brother-in-law, and especially of M. Marius Gratidianus, a kinsman both of Cicero, and of the famous general Marius.

invaserat, had possessed. — rei publicae captandae, of getting
control of state affairs.—neque . . . habebat, nor had he any regard (§ 50, 2, c) in what way he should gain it, provided he won himself royal power.

in dies, from day to day.—quae utraque, both of which (generally singular, as here).—artibus, practices.

incitabant, etc., he was further impelled by, etc., changing to passive to keep the emphasis.—divorsa inter se, different from each other (§ 19, 3, d).

res ipsa, etc., the occasion (subject) itself seems to suggest.

4. admonuit, has reminded.—supra repeterere, to trace further back.—paucis (abl. of manner), briefly.

domi militiae, at home or in the field (§ 55, 3, d). In this familiar phrase, militiae (also belli) does not at all imply actual warfare, but is used by way of contrast with the regular order of things within the city walls, to describe the field over which the war power and the laws of war have authority. Within the city (domi) the imperium, or power of the magistrate to command, is limited by certain provisions which are designed to protect the liberty of the individual, and this is so even in war: outside of the city (militiae) these limitations do not exist, but the magistrate, even in peace, possesses full war powers. Within the city, the limitations might be suspended by the Senate in cases of great urgency, by ordering Videant [darent operam] consules, etc. (§ 29). This was equivalent to declaring martial law.

habuerint, maintained.—flagitiosissima, most scandalous (same root as flagro, blaze: used of a burning shame).

§ 6. urbem . . . condidere, the city was founded and occupied by, etc. (see note to incitabant, § 5).

Trojani: it is interesting to notice how completely Sallust’s account of the origin of Rome differs from that generally received, which we find in Livy and Virgil. Sallust says nothing of Romulus and Alba Longa, but speaks of Rome as founded immediately by Aeneas.

profugi . . . vagabantur, roamed as exiles, with no fixed homes (abl. of qualification), i.e. driven from one place to another.

Aborigines — indigenous, i.e. natives. The Roman antiquarians made much confusion by supposing that this epithet of the native Latins was the name of an independent earlier race, which formed the Latins by uniting with the foreign Trojans.

agrate, uncouth.—sine imperio, i.e. with no master, or ruler.—solutum, unrestrained (by law).

una, plural (§ 18, 1, a).—alii allo more, in various ways (§ 47, 9).—quam . . . oaluerint, interrog. clause, subj. of est.

res eorum, their state (commonwealth).—civibus moribus
agris aucta, increased in population, institutions, and territory. 
(When three or more words succeed one another in this way, a
conjunction is either joined with all of them except the first, or
more commonly with neither of them, as here.)

pleraque mortalium, most human things. (The style of Sallust
is distinguished by the frequent use of the partitive genitive in
preference to the simpler construction of agreement.)

habentur (—se habent, § 23, 3, N.), are.

temptare, would attack: histor. infin. (§ 57, 8, h), extremely
common in Sallust. — pauli, only a few (always with this negative
force). — aberant, kept aloof.

intenti, earnestly (bent upon their aim). — dandis, etc., abl. of
means (§ 73, 3, d).

imperium, supreme power. — legitumum, not legitimate, but
controlled by law. This famous passage, describing “a govern-
ment of laws under the name of kingdom” may be very well
applied to modern constitutional monarchies, like England.

regium, that of king (a kind of predicate: a possessive adjective
is generally used in preference to the possessive genitive, § 46, 2, c).

delecti, chosen men (§ 47, 3, N.), agreeing with the antecedent of
quibus, and subj. of consultabant.

corpus annis infirmum, in accordance with the etymology of
Senate, as a body of old men; see Cicero, Cat. Maj. § 19.

patres, the term regularly applied to the senators; in this sense
it could only be used in the plural. Strictly speaking, it applied
only to the patrician senators.

regium imperium, the rule of kings. — conservandae libertas,
I. e. a means of preserving, etc. (§ 73, 3, a). — el, nominative.

superbiam, arrogance; dominationem, tyranny. — immutato
more, changing the method.

annua imperia: the date assigned to this revolution is B.C. 509.
The change consisted not in materially lessening the power which
had been exercised by the kings, but in limiting it to a year and
dividing it between two elected magistrates, called at first prætors,
afterwards consuls. — insolescere, l. e. acquire a lordly habit.

§ 7. se extollere, to aspire. — in promptu, ready for service. —
regibus, emphatic, as opposed to consuls. — aliena virtus, other
men’s merit.

5. adepta libertate, when freedom was won (§ 35, 1, g).

quantum brevi creverit: in point of fact it took the republic a
long time to regain the height of prosperity enjoyed under the
Kings. The entire first century of the republic was occupied with
petty wars with neighboring states: after this the conquests went
rapidly on. — incesserat, had inspired (lit. come upon them).

jam primum, in the first place: the contrast is in sed ubi, § 10.
simul aequa (§ 43, 3, a), etc., i.e. at the age of 17.—per laborem usu (§ 54, 4, b), laboriously by practice.—decoris, handsome.—dominum, overmastered.

certamen, etc., the chief rivalry of glory was among themselves: it was not the foe’s rivalry they feared.—se quisque . . . ferre . . . properabat, each was eager that he should be the one to strike, etc. (se, subj. of ferre).—dum faceret, while performing (subjunctive of intermed. clause, § 66, 2).

eas, eam, this (referring to ferre, etc., but agreeing with the predicate, § 47, 2, c).—honestas (opposed to ingentem), i.e. not great, as now, but honorable.

§ 8. ex ludente, according to her fancy; ex vero, according to justice.—celebrat, makes famous.

satis amplae, quite grand.—verum tamen, in truth, however.

provenere, sprang up (an agricultural term).—scriptorum magna ingenia, i.e. writers of great genius (Herodotus, Thucydides, and Xenophon).

eorum qui fecerect, of the actors. —sua bene facta, his own worthy deeds: ab aliis is placed next to sua for the contrast; ipse agreeing with the subject of malebat, because none is expressed to narrare. —prudentissimus, ablest.

6. § 9. certabant de, vied in.—supplicia, prayers.

artibus, qualities.—audacia . . . sequitae: observe the chiasitic arrangement (§ 76, 2, f).—vindicatum est in, chastisement was inflicted on (see the case of T. Manlius Torquatus, told in § 52).

vero, on the other hand. This exaggerated and rhetorical sketch of the “good old times” is drawn to point a moral for the age of the historian, and will not bear too critical inspection.

§ 10. nationes ferae, barbarous tribes; populi ingentes, mighty nations.

ab stirpe interiit, perished root and branch. This was B.C. 146, which date may be fixed on for the acknowledged supremacy of Rome throughout the Mediterranean. It was just at this time, too, that the internal convulsions began which destroyed the republic in the century that followed. The war of classes first came to open violence in the tribunate of Tiberius Gracchus, B.C. 133.

qui . . . toleraverunt, those who had lightly borne toils, perils, circumstances of doubt and hardship.—eis, antecedent of qui.

optanda alias, desirable under other circumstances.

mater nie, source: lit. stuff (the mother-substance) out of which any thing is made. Hence its usual meaning of timber.

artes (acc. plur.), qualities.—deos nelegere (same constr. with superbiam as obj. of edociuit, § 57, 8, a) = neglect of the gods.

venale habere, to keep on sale.—edociuit, the subj. is avaritia.
The Conspiracy of Catiline.

subegit, drove on. — *ex re*, according to fact, truly.

*interdum vindicari* (histr. infin.), were now and then chastised, as for example in Hannibal’s campaigns. — *contagio*, etc., *infection as of a plague*. — *ex justissimo*, from [being] the most just (a regular use of *ex*).

§ 11. *exercebat*, influenced. — *quod . . . vitium*, a fault which.
— *ignavés*, worthless (nom. sing. § 1, 2, b). — *ilio*, sc. *bonus*; *huic*, *ignavo*.

*vera via nititur* (§ 54, 10, a), struggles up by the path of truth.

7. *dolls . . . contendit*, works his way by tricks and cheats. — *habet, has in it*. — *imbuta*, infected. — *effeminat*, unnans.

L. Sulla, see note, § 5. For the manner in which he abused his victory, see Cicero’s oration for Roscius of Ameria. Sulla’s policy — afterwards imitated by Cæsar — was to distribute his soldiers throughout Italy, attaching them to him by grants of land. The soldiers thus colonized still remained soldiers, so that “these colonies formed, as it were, the standing army of the Senate.”

*bonis . . . habuit*, *from a good beginning* (a loose abl. of manner) *made an evil end*.

*neque . . . habere*, and in victory owned neither bound (outward restraint) nor *moderation* (self-control).

*huc accedebat quod, and besides* (“to this was added that”).

*quo*, § 64, 1, a. — *liberaliter*, i. e. by giving them plunder.
— *habuerat*, had treated.

*amœna*, charming (only in reference to the senses). — *in otio*, in idleness.

*primum insuevit*, in fact, these excesses were common in the Roman armies, long before the time of Sulla. — *amare, to intrigue*.

*signa, statues; tabulas pictas, pictures* (painted panels); *vasa celata, chased plate*. — *privatim, from individuals; publice, from cities*.

*nihil reliqui fecere, left no remnant*.

*quippe . . . temperarent*, for prosperity overmasters the soul, [even] of the wise; *much less* (ne, § 64, 1, b, R.) did they [the veterans of Sulla] *with their corrupt morals* (descriptive abl.) *put any check on victory* (dat.).

§ 12. *honori, § 51, 5*. — *eas* (emphatic) in opposition to *virtus*. — *imperium*, sovereign power, or right to command; *potentia* (the most general word), *power* in its abstract sense. — *sequebatur*, began to follow. — *hebescere*, to lose its edge, or keenness.

*innocentia pro malivolentia*: i. e. those who refrained from wanton mischief were thought to do it only for the chance of attacking the others; as Macaulay says the Puritans abhorred bear-baiting, “not because it gave pain to the bear, but because it gave pleasure to the spectators.”
juventutem invasere, came upon the youth. — rapere, etc.,
histor. infin. — consumere, waste (in riotous living). — promiscua,
without distinction. — nihil . . . habere, held nothing by weight or
measure.

opus est premium, it is worth while. — domos atque villas,
such as the country-house of Gabinius described by Cicero in his
oration for Sestius, and the superb estate of Lucullus near Naples.

verum, etc., the true reason is that they, etc. — victis, dat.
§ 51, 2, e). — injuria licentiam, power to harm.
victores, implying victis hostibus, and so loosely opposed to
sociis.

proinde quasi, just as if! — id demum, etc., that alone was.
to enjoy empire.

§ 13. subvorsos montis: this alludes in particular to the great
engineering works about Baiae (see Hor. Od. iii. 24); but the stock
expression goes back to the works of Xerxes about Mount Athos
and the Hellespont. — constrata, filled up, lit. strewn with earth
spread over the bottom, in vast dikes and causeways.

ludibrio, mockery (object of jesting). — lubido, etc., the passion
de debauchery, gluttony, and other refinements of vice (cultus). —
non minor, i. e. no less than avarice.

in propatulo, in the market. — vescendi, i. e. of luxuries for
the table. — luxu antecapere, forestall by luxurious indulgence.
familiares opes, i. e. their inherited wealth. — imbutus, tainted.
haud facile carebat, did not easily dispense with. — eo pro-
fusius, all the more lavishly. — questui, money-getting; sumptui,
extravagance.

§ 14. id quod (§ 48, 3, e), as; (lit. a thing which). — stipatorum,
satellites, who crowd about (stipare).

patria laceraverat, had destroyed his patrimony. — quo redi-
meret, so as to hire (by contract or bribe). — manus . . . sanguine,
chastic. — postremo, in a word. — conscius animus, conscience. —
usu, intercourse. — fluxi, plastic. — studium, passion.

9. obnoxios, dependent. — cuiquam (§ 21, 2, h), used on
account of the negative implied in the comparison. — foret (§ 66, 1, R.),
after quam quod — non quod. — compertum, brought home.

§ 15. jam primum adulescens, in his very earliest youth (em-
phatic: otherwise it would be Catilina, etc.). — nefanda, abomin-
able: lit. not to be spoken of (ne fari).

sacredote Vestae: the six Vestal Virgins were maidsens of noble
family, consecrated to chastity and the service of Vesta, goddess of
the Hearth. The one here mentioned was Fabia, sister-in-law of
Cicero. “But Sallust should have added that Fabia was tried on
the charge of incestum, and acquitted” (Long).
captus, captivated. — cujus, in whom. — pro certo creditur: no evidence, however, is found of this charge.

quae quidem res, and this very thing. — vastabat, desolated. — exsanguis, pale. — fastid, i.e. dull and bloodshot. — prorsus, throughout. — vecordia, madness (ve, negative; oor, intellect).

§ 16. vilia habere, held cheap. — imperabat, imposed on them. — minus suppettebat, was not at hand. — scilicet (sarcastic), no doubt. — potius, i.e. rather than be idle. These gratuitous crimes are probably an invention of malice; as were no doubt some others which Sallust does not report, for example that of his marriage with his own illegitimate daughter, said to have been made against him by Cicero. Sallust was now a young man of about twenty, and doubtless kept a lively recollection of the scandals of the time.

aes alienum, debt ("other men's money"). — Sullani milites, see note, § 11. — largius . . . usi, having spent their wealth too profusely.

Cn. Pompeius: Pompey (whose military genius had been seen and encouraged by Sulla) was appointed by the Gabinian law, B.C. 67, to the command of the formidable war against the pirates, whose head-quarters were in Cilicia. This command gave him authority over all the fleets of the Mediterranean. In the following year the Manilian law, advocated by Cicero, gave him the further command of the war against Mithridates, in Asia Minor. It was in this year (B.C. 66) that Catiline's first "conspiracy" was formed, the intention being to get control of the government as consul on the approaching new year.

nihil sane intentus, not at all in earnest (in opposition). — tutae, undisturbed (by war).

10. § 17. Kal. Jun. The consular election generally took place in July, so that this was a suitable time to begin electioneering.

L. [Julio] Cæsare, C. [Marcio] Figulo: L. Cæsar was a distant relative of the dictator, son of the consul of B.C. 90 (see oration for Archias), and uncle of the triumvir Mark Antony. This was B.C. 64, the year preceding Cicero's consulship.

singulos appellare, to address individuals. — opes, resources. — imparatam, i.e. the unprepared condition of. — doocere, to exhibit.

eo, to this meeting. — ordinis, rank (see notes to Cicero's Select Orations, p. 19, on "The Roman Aristocracy").

P. [Cornelius] Lentulus had been consul B.C. 71, but was expelled from the Senate the next year on account of his immorality. He was elected to the praetorship for 63. Of the conspirators of high rank, Lentulus, says Mommsen, was "an ordinary aristocrat of big words and great pretensions, but slow in conception and irresolute in
action; Autronius distinguished for nothing but his powerful screaming voice; while as to Lucius Cassius, no one could comprehend how a man so corpulent and so simple had fallen among the conspirators. But Catiline could not venture to place his abler partisans, such as the young senator Caius Cethegus and the equites Lucius Statilius and Publius Gabinius Capito at the head of the movement; for even among the conspirators the traditional hierarchy of rank held its ground, and the very anarchists thought that they should be unable to carry the day unless a consular or at least a praetorian were at their head."

Cassius was, with Catiline and Cicero, a candidate for the consulship for B.C. 63. The two Sullas were nephews of the dictator. L. Vargunteius is called by Cicero (Cat. I. 9) eques Romanus; it was he and C. Cornelius that undertook to assassinate Cicero in his bed. Of the other conspirators nothing special need be said.

colonitas, municipia; colonies were established by the Roman government to serve as permanent military posts; municipia were Italian towns which had lost their original independence, been absorbed in the Roman State, and received Roman citizenship. At this time there was no longer any material difference between the two except in name. (See notes to Cicero, p. 5).

domi nobles, of rank at home: however insignificant at the capital, they were leading men in their own communities.

occultius (adv.) limits participes, more secretly sharing in.

nobles, nobiles: the Roman nobility consisted of those whose ancestors had held high offices of State. Thus Cicero, being a "new man" (novus homo), was not strictly a member of the nobility.

ceterum, further. — quibus copia erat, who had means (followed by vivere). — quam, rather than (following magis, contained in malebant, § 37, 3).

M. Lácinium Crassum: a nobleman of high rank and enormous wealth, which he had got by speculating in real estate at the time of the terrorism of Sulla's proscriptions. He was possessed by an uneasy military and political ambition, and had won some credit as commander against the revolted slaves under Spartacus, B.C. 71. He managed to get into office by the influence of his money, and by allying himself with more competent men, as Pompey (B.C. 71 & 60) and Caesar (B.C. 60). His inordinate ambition carried him at last into an enterprise too large for his powers, against the Parthian Empire, in which he lost his life, B.C. 53. His connection, as well as Caesar's, with the reckless schemes of Catiline (see §§ 48, 49) is very doubtful, though believed by many scholars. It is not unlikely in itself, as both were ambitious and unscrupulous men, and knew, as Sallust says (§ 39), that the ablest and boldest man would in the end reap the fruits of the conspiracy; and that was Caesar.
invitis : although Pompey and Crassus had joined hands and held the consulship together in B.C. 70, yet this was only a temporary suspension of their rivalry, and indeed the year was distracted by their discussions.

ductabat = dux erat. — cujusvis, anybody's. — voluisse, sc. eum, i.e. Crassus. — illius, Pompey's.

§ 18. Catilina, i.e. in B.C. 66. — Tullio : L. Volcatius Tullus and M. Emilius Lepidus were consuls, B.C. 66.

P. Sulla, not to be confounded with the conspirator of the same name, mentioned in the last chapter. This man too was a kinsman of the dictator, and a man of worthless character; but his participation in the conspiracy was at any rate doubtful, and he was defended on the charge by Cicero, and acquitted.

designati consules, consuls elect, i.e. for B.C. 65. — ambitus, bribery in elections (the technical term), from going about among the electors : hence the word ambition. — legibus, under the laws relating to ambitus. — interrogati, impeached; a technical expression.

posnas : this was a final and perpetual exclusion from office and from the Senate. After their conviction, their competitors, L. Aurelius Cotta and L. Manlius Torquatus, were elected in their stead.

pecuniarum repetundarum, lit. of demanding back the moneys, i.e. for extortion : the process by which the governors of provinces could be called to account by their oppressed subjects. The most notorious case is that of Catiline's friend Verres, B.C. 70. Catiline's extortions were as pro-praetor of Africa. — reus, brought to trial.

intræ legittmusos dies : notice of candidacy must be given within a trinundinum (17 days) of the election. This Catiline did; but the consul Tullus refused to receive his name, on the ground of the impending charges, though no formal accusation had yet been brought. The expression is therefore not quite exact: he had offered himself at the proper time, but the act was not allowed as valid.

Cu. Piso, of the Calpurnian gens. — cum hoc, with him.

II. nonas Decembris : when Piso entered on the quaestorship (see next chapter). The Nones of every month, except March, May, July, and October, were the 5th, on these months the 7th. On the Nones of December the new quaestors entered on office, so that the interval between this day and the Kalends of January when the consuls, etc., took their seat, belonged in a sense to both political years.

in Capitolio : the inauguration of the new consuls took place on the Capitol, in the midst of a great concourse, with solemn formalities and the sacrifice of a white ox. Afterwards a meeting of
the Senate was held in the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus, also on the Capitoline; this was the formal opening of the new administration. 

fasces, the fasces, bundles of rods enclosing an axe; the regular instruments of punishment for Roman citizens, and hence the symbol of the chief power of State.

duas Hispanias: i.e. Citerior and Ulterior, separated by the Iberus, the old boundary between the Roman and Carthaginian territory. This was an important portion of the empire, and its possession was vigorously disputed between the parties of Marius and Sulla. The Marian commander, Sertorius, held Spain long after the rest of the empire had succumbed to Sulla.

nonas februarias, the 5th of February; really two or three months later, on account of the confusion of the calendar.

jam tum machinabantur, by this time they began to plot.—maturasset, had been in too great haste.—frequentes, in any numbers.

pro curia: the Curia Hostilia, on the north of the Forum, was the regular place of meeting for the Senate.

§ 19. quaesitor pro praetore, quaestor with the powers of praetor. The praetors were judicial magistrates—at this time eight in number—who ranked next to the consuls, and could in case of need act in their stead. Like them, too, their power (imperium) was extended (prorogatum) a second year with executive functions in the provinces (pro praetore, propraetor). Occasionally, as in this case, inferior magistrates were invested by the Senate with the imperium, and sent pro praetore to govern provinces. The quaestors were officers of the lowest grade, who had charge of the treasury in the city, and the military chest abroad.

infestum, troublesome, actively hostile.

provinoiam dedeant: the Senate assigned the several provinces to the praetors.—fodiunt, i.e. regarding him as a nuisance at home.

boni (emphatic), the usual term to describe the optimates, or members of the aristocratic party. Pompey was at this time identified with the populares, or democratic faction.

in eo, i.e. Piso.—jam tum erat, was now getting to be.—iter faciebat, while on a march.

veteres clientes: Pompey had great influence in Spain, from having commanded there, and brought the war against Sertorius to an end, B.C. 72. In Rome, clients were men of inferior rank, who voluntarily became the dependants and followers of some noble. But men of rank in a province or municipal town might stand in the relation of client to a powerful nobleman at Rome. This charge against Pompey would naturally come from a partisan of Cæsar, like Sallust; but it is without foundation.
imperia sēva: there were many examples of cruelty and perfidy on the part of the Roman rulers in Spain. On one occasion, at least, the Spaniards had in requital murdered a governor who was far less obnoxious than this Piso.

in medio relinquimus, I will leave undetermined. — satis di-tum: and not much at that.

§ 20. in rem fore, would be to the purpose. — universos, all to-gether. — orationem: the speech, of course, is fictitious, as usual in ancient historians.

¶ 1. spectata, proved. — per ignaviam, through cowardice (opposed to virtus); vana ingenia, false hearts (opposed to fidem).

12. captarem, grasp at. — tempestatibus, occasions. — eo, from this. — vobis . . . esse, i.e. the peril and the hope are yours as much as mine. — ea demum, this alone.

¶ 2. divorsi, separately. — nos met vindicamus in libertatem, assert our own freedom: an idiomatic expression, derived from the legal mode of freeing slaves by bargain and sale.

postquam, ever since. — in paucorium . . . dicionem, to the jurisdiction and sway of a few strong men. The republic had of late years come completely under the control of a few wealthy families (nobles), so that men of low birth were almost excluded from a political career. Catiline, Lentulus, Cethegus, and Cassius, however, had no reason to complain of this, since they were all members of the oligarchy, and all of these but Cassius were patricians.

tetrarches, originally governors of the fourth part of a country, as of Thessaly and Galatia. The title came to be applied in general to petty princes, of not sufficient importance to be called kings.

vectigales, tributary: the provincial governorships were all in the hands of nobles, and they made use of them to squeeze out money from the provincials. There is also no doubt a reference to the bribes received by the governors.

esse, histor. infin. — ceteri omnes, all the rest of us. — gratia, personal favor; auctoritas, official (or political) influence. — res publica, the principles of the republic.

judicia, lawsuits. — in honestam, dishonored. — alienae . . . ludibrio, the sport of other men's insolence.

¶ 3. verum enim quo, but in truth. — cetera res expediet, the event shall provide the rest. — cui, etc., who has the spirit of a man. superare, remain. — extrudendo mari, see note, § 12. — con-tinuare, build in a row.

larem: originally a deified ancestor, lar familiaris, the first ancestor, the founder of the house and its tutelar spirit. So cities had their lares, in their mythical founders: and the lares compitales
(of the *compita*, cross-roads) were the guardian spirits of the districts. To have no *lar familiaris* is therefore to have no home.

*summa lubidine, with all their wantonness* ("lust of the flesh, lust of the eyes, and pride of life"). — *vincere, outstrip*.

¶ 4. *quin*, interrog. in form, but really an emphatic appeal. — *en illa, so then there is.* — *praeterea, and besides.* — *posuit, has set up* (as a prize: the regular word). — *belli spolia*, i. e. those that should be obtained by war.

13. *neque . . . aberit*, i. e. *I will be with you, body and soul.* — *consul*: Catiline intended to be again this year a candidate for the consulship. — *agnam, I will discuss*.

§ 21. *rea, property.* — *quaeta movere, disturb the peace.* — *magna merces, a great prize.* — *condicio, terms.* — *opus, resources*.

*tabulas novas, new settlements*, that is, a general abolition of debts: the technical term for an arbitrary law, reducing or destroying debts by ordering a new account (*tabula*).

*proscriptionem*, strictly, *advertising* this property for sale; but since Sulla’s time placarding their names for slaughter.

*magistratus*: i. e. the consulship, *praetorship*, curule *aedileship*, and *quaestorship*: these were called the patrician magistracies, and were almost exclusively held by members of the aristocracy. The tribunate is probably not included, as that was open to men of low rank at any rate.

*sacerdotia*: the chief priesthoods were the offices of *pontifex* and *augur*; but besides these, the *epulones*, seven in number, had the direction of the sacred feasts, and the *quindecimviri sacris faciundis* were in charge of the Sibylline books, and had a dignity and influence which would be eagerly sought by greedy and ambitious men. The other priesthoods, which could be held only by patricians those of *rex sacrificulus, flamen*, etc., cannot be meant here. — *fert, brings with it*.

*Pisonem*: it would appear from this passage that he held command in Spain for some time before his assassination (see § 19).

*Nuerinum, of Nuceria*, in Campania, the regular way to express residence in Latin. Cicero (pro Sulla, § 58) defends him of the charge of complicity in the conspiracy, calling him *amicus vetus alique hospes*. “He was one of the *Condottieri* of those days, such a man as we read of in the Italian history of the fourteenth and fifteenth century” (Long). He fought on Caesar’s side in the civil war.

*C. Antonium*, the colleague of Cicero: son of the great orator, and uncle of the triumvir. He was a worthless character.

*esse*, infin. depending on the verb of *saying* implied in *polliceri*. 
potebat, was a candidate for (the regular term). — circumven-
tum, hard pressed.
incratum, assailed. — nominans landare, extorted by name.
sum, referring to alium. — compluris, acc. — ea . . . fuerat, that
[victory] had been [a source of] plunder (dat.).
postquam, as soon as. — petitionem, candidacy. — curse, dat.
§ 22. popularis (acc.), accomplices.
exsecrationem, an oath (containing a curse). — dictare (his-
torical infinitive), they say. — quo . . . magis, § 64, 1, a. — alius
alii (dat.), to one another.
invitidiam, unpopularity, arising from his severity, especially in
putting to death the leading conspirators without trial (see § 55).
14. ponnas dederant, i. e. had been put to death. Punish-
ment is regarded as of the nature of a fine or forfeit: hence dare, to
suffer, and sumere, to inflict.
nobis (emphatic), § 51, 4, b. — pro magnitudine, etc., is not
sufficiently authenticated, considering its importance.
§ 23. hand obscuro loco: the Curii were an eminent plebeian
gens. — flagitiis opertus (= coöpertus), buried in infamy.
oenosores: magistrates elected two at a time, theoretically once
in five years, but in fact at quite irregular intervals. They held
office for eighteen months, during which time they regulated the
customs-duities and other finances of the State, and made out the
list of the Senators, which regulations were to continue in operation
until the next censors. The censors here referred to were probably
Cn. Lentulus and L. Gellius (B.C. 70), those by whom P. Len-
tulus had been expelled from the Senate (see note, § 17). — probri
gratia, on the ground of scandal.
vaxitias, folly (empty-headedness). — jorruus, and absolutely.
neque quicumque pensi habebat, "made no bones."
Fulvia: the Fulvii were an eminent plebeian gens.
ou . . . esset, and being less favored by her. — inopia, through
poverty. — maria montisque, as we say "oceans of money" and
"mountains of gold." — obnoxia, submissive. — foret, for eris of
dir. disc.
sublato auctore, saying nothing of her authority. — estuabat,
chafed. — pollui = pollutum iri. — stupri, etc., an old intrigue.
homo novus; as distinguished from nobilis, one none of whose
ancestors had held high magistracies. He who in any family first
attained office was called princeps nobilitatis, and his descendants
were nobiles.
invitidia, jealousy. — post, in the background.
§ 24. comis habitis, when the elections were held. The chief
magistrates were elected in the comitia centuriata (centurate
comitia), in which the people voted by centuries, each century having one vote. The number of centuries is not certainly known, but was probably 373; and they were organized partly by wealth, partly by birth or residence, and partly by age. At this election the principal competitors of Cicero and Antonius were the conspirators Catiline and Cassius.

locis opportunis, § 55, 3, f. — sìde, on credit. — sumptam mutuam, procured as a loan.

Fæsulas, an old town in the extreme north of Etruria. Its ruins are still seen at Fiesole, on a very high and steep hill near Florence. This Manlius acted as Catiline’s lieutenant until the arrival of his chief. He was an old soldier of Sulla, “as brave and as free from scruples of conscience as was ever any soldier of fortune.”

stupro, by prostitution. — toleraverant, i. e. had been able to bear. — tantum . . . fecerat, had put a limit only to their gains, but not to their [passion for] luxury. — servitia, troops of slaves.

15. § 25. Sempronia, wife of Decimus Junius Brutus, and mother of D. Brutus Albinus, who was one of the conspirators against Caesar.

genere, family: The Sempronii were a plebeian gens of great distinction; the Gracchi, among others, belonged to it. It may be noticed that this whole description of Sempronia seems out of place here,—foisted in, one might suspect, to gratify Sallust’s grudge against the assassin of Caesar.

psallere, etc., dependent on docta. — probæ, an honest woman. Perhaps the Roman dances were worse than ours; at any rate they were looked on with extreme disfavor by respectable people.

minus parceret, was less careful of. — haud discernereas, you could not have told (§ 60, 2, R.).

creditum abjuraverat, had denied a trust on oath. — haud absurdum, by no means contemptible. — molli, procaci, i. e. the affected “soft” or “fast” talk of gallants.

§ 26. in proximum annum, for the new year, i. e. B.C. 62.

designatus, elected: the consul elect enjoyed much of the dignity and influence of an actual magistrate. — ex voluntate, at his will.

—illi, Cicero.

pactione provinciæ: the procedure in the assignment of provinces (established by a law of Caius Gracchus) was that the Senate first selected two for the consuls to govern after their term of office as proconsuls (pro consulibus): the consuls then drew lots for these, and the praetors for those remaining. On this occasion, Cicero drew Macedonia, one of the wealthiest and most desirable of the provinces, and Antonius Cisalpine Gaul. By making an exchange, Cicero gained over his colleague to coöperate against Cati-
line: he himself then declined to take his province, preferring to remain in Rome.

perpulerat, had prevailed on (with difficulty); ne sentiret, not to side with (a common word, for political views; so sententia, vote).

dies comitiorum: this was Oct. 28; the consuls elect were D. Junius Silanus and L. Licinius Murena. — foeda, ill-starred (of evil omen), like obscenum.

§ 27. Cameretem, the adjective (irregular) of Camerinum, a town of Umbria: it was close to the Picene territory, which lay on the Adriatic.

16. præterea . . . credebat, and such persons, besides, to one place and another, as he thought would be of service to him.

tendere, fig. from spreading nets. — cum telo esse, went armed (a technical phrase). — item, i.e. to do the same.

intempesta nocte, at the dead of night: it was Nov. 6 (this year about the middle of January). This occurrence is given here out of its place; it should not come in until after the events narrated in the first half of chap. 51.

oppressisset: in dir. disc. oppressero (§ 59, 4, c).

§ 28. Senator: Cicero (Cat. I. § 9) calls Vargunteius an eques, perhaps because he had been elevated by Sulla among his creatures, compare note to § 17. — sicuti, just as if:

salutatum: it was the custom for Roman noblemen to hold receptions early in the morning, for the purpose of attending to various business and receiving the greetings of their clients.

dolore injuriæ, resentment at wrong. The people of Etruria had been largely dispossessed of their lands by Sulla, to enable him to provide for his veterans.

novarum rerum, change, i.e. revolution, compare movandii, § 50.


— neque satis compertum habebat, and had not fully ascertained (§ 72, 3, b).

17. rem . . . referat, the technical expression for bringing business before the Senate.

in atroci negotio, i.e. when some act of extreme severity is to be done.

decrevit, ordered: the formula that follows is that regularly used for intrusting the consuls with dictatorial power. It was equivalent to declaring martial law. (See note, § 5. The words of the decree are directly copied, with change of tense: hence the conj. ut is not used.)

ea potentia, etc., thus a power, &c.; maxuma being strictly a kind of predicate.
judicium summum, the final appeal in question of right.

nullius earum rerum: this is not exact. It was only domi, "within the city," that the power of the consul was thus limited; "abroad" (militia), he regularly possessed all that power by virtue of his office (jussu populi). The decree only gave the same power at home that he already had abroad. All the real force therefore of the description here given is summed up in coercere civis, domi imperium, etc., habere.

§ 30. ante diem vii, i. e. Oct. 27. — id quod, as.

portenta: the Romans were excessively superstitious in such matters. In fact, their whole polity rested on the auspices; and the portents interpreted by these were often the most insignificant accidents.

conventus, meetings of any kind: here, secret meetings of conspirators, probably in the country districts of Italy, where there was an old jealousy of Rome. In Capua, especially, the second town in Italy, and the old rival of Rome, constantly deprived of all effective self-government by the jealousy of Rome (see Cicero’s Second Oration on the Agrarian law), there would be a readiness to throw off Roman rule. Apulia was a grazing country, consisting in the main of public land, which was rented to capitalists, and left in charge of gangs (familiae) of slaves.

moveri, was stirred up. — senati, old gen. (§ 12, 3, a).

Q. Marcius Rex, cos. 68; Q. Metellus Creticus, cos. 69: he was the fast friend of Verres at the time of his trial the year before.

cirrum (here equivalent to an adjective), the places around.

ad urbem, near the city: not in it, because as imperatores they could not enter the city without losing their right to a triumph. They had, as proconsuls, governed provinces after the expiration of their consulship (Rex had Cilicia and Metellus Crete), and had returned home with sufficient military success to warrant the honor of a triumph. This was hindered, however, calumnia paucorum (especially of Pompey, who regarded them as his lieutenants in virtue of the Gabinian and Manilian Laws), and they were waiting for the matter to be decided. If they entered the pomerium, or city enclosure, their prorogued imperium, or military command, would expire by that very act. They remained therefore in the neighborhood (ad urbem) with their armies, and attended to necessary public business by summoning the Senate to meet them in some temple outside the walls.

prætores, sc. missi sunt.

Pompeius, an unimportant character; Celer, a prominent member of the aristocracy, cos. b.c. 60: he died the year following.

utl earlier form of ut (probably an old locative). — pro ... pecúlculo = considering the peril of the time.
The Conspiracy of Catiline.

ad hoc, besides: supply decrevere, from below.—indicavisset, for indicaverit of direct disc. — facta erat, § 67, i, b. — præmium, as a reward, belonging to both servo and libero.

sestertia: a sestertium = 1000 sestertii, about $50: the sum is therefore about $10,000.

gladiatoriae familieæ, bands of gladiators. The gladiators were slaves, who were trained in schools to the profession of prize-fighters. They were owned by persons who furnished them for pay. Capua was a head-quarters of this business.

pro cujasque opibus: i. e. they were billeted on the towns in proportion to their wealth.

minores magistratus: this term is sometimes applied to all magistrates below the prætors, i. e. the ædiles, tribunes, and quaætors. Here, however, it probably means a lower grade still, especially the tres viri capitales or nocturni, who had charge of the police.

§ 31. civitas, i. e. the citizens; urbis, i. e. the city itself.

diuturna quies: i. e. since the great civil war of Marius and Sulla, the last outbreak of which was b.c. 78, fifteen years before.

omnis, acc. plur.

festinare, etc. (histor. infin.), § 49, 2, b.

18. addictare sese, would beat their breasts. — miserari, bewail (the fate of).

lege Plautia, sc. de vi; a law passed b.c. 89, which formed the basis of all later legislation upon the punishment of public disturbances. Such cases were tried in one of the special courts (quæstiones).

L. Paulo: L. Æmilius Paulus, son of the democratic consul, M. Lepidus (b.c. 78), and brother of the triumvir. He was himself a strong aristocrat. This trial de vi never came off.

siquid . . . foret, in case he should be attacked (slandered) in a personal quarrel (he wished to make an explanation).

M. Tullius, sc. Cicero. — orationem: this was the first oration against Catiline: the date was Nov. 8, b.c. 63. — quam . . . eddidit, which he afterwards wrote out and published (as was the custom). ut erat paratus, ready as he was. — demisso volueto, with face downcast.

patribus, a general expression for the senators, strictly belonging only to those of patrician birth.

temere, hastily. — ea, ita, both correlative to ut. — ortum, sc. se esse. — in spe, in expectancy. — cujus ipsius, on whose own part, etc. (gen. limiting beneficia).

perdita republica opus esse, there was need of destroying the republic (§ 72, 3, a).

inquilinus appears to be the adjective of incola (qu = o), an imp.
migrant, one who had his domiciliun in some other than his native city. (Kuhn, *Verf. des Römischen Reichs*, i. p. 5.) Cicero was born in Arpinum, and had gone to Rome to live. Still he was in no true sense an incola, because Arpinum had possessed Roman citizenship since B.C. 188.

obstreperus, drowned his voice.

parriciadam: this word (derived from pater caedo) was precisely equivalent in meaning to our parricide. In familiar speech, however, the term was extended to all crimes which were tried by the same court as parricide. Crimes of violence were in early times punished by money fines, and it would appear that the horrible crime of murder of a parent was for some time the only one which received a heavier punishment. The process against parricide proper was by degrees extended to common murder, and even other crimes of a religious nature. "The most important point [in the development] was without doubt that in which an end was put to all vengeance by blood, by introducing the process of parricide against every one charged with homicide" (Rubino, *Untersuchungen über Römische Verfassung und Geschichte*, p. 464).

incendium...restinguam, i. e. I will stop my own house from burning by tearing down my neighbors' houses.

§ 32. curia: the Senate met regularly in the Curia Hostilia, on the north side of the Forum.

neque (correl. to et), on the one hand, not.—insidiæ consulii, plots against the consul (§ 51, 6, e).—procedebant, made any headway.

legiones scriberentur: of course the regular legions of the year had been levied long before; this refers to the new levies to be raised by Pompeius and Metellus Celer (§ 30).

promptam (pro emo), ready: i. e. taken out of the store and ready for distribution by the steward (promus).

19. prope diem, at an early day.—seae adossurum, dependant on the verb of saying implied in mandat.

§ 33. mandatis, message.—feneratorum, usurers. Extravagant young men of good family were then, as now, the prey of money-lenders.

patriæ expertes, probably a loss of citizenship by reason of insolvency. It may also refer to voluntary exile.

neque ouiquam, etc. The laws of debt in Rome, as well as in Greece, were very harsh: the delinquent debtor was adjudged (addictus) to his creditor, to be treated by him as a slave. This severity was mitigated by the Lex Paelilia, B.C. 326 or thereabout, but was not entirely removed until a bankrupt act, Lex Julia, of a period later than Sulla. In all such cases a good deal was left to the discretion of the magistrate, the prætor: the complaint here is
that the strictness (severitas) of the praetor — i.e. the praetor urbanus, the judge in cases between citizens in administering the laws — did not allow the debtor to take all the advantages (lege uti) permitted by custom (more majorum): so that they were left to the rigor (severitas) of the creditors. These not only took their estate (amissum patrimonio), but their personal freedom (liberum corpus habere).

opitulati sunt (ope tul in tollo, tuli), came to the relief: this appears to refer to the laws of C. Gracchus and others, by which corn was sold to the poor at a rate below cost.

novissume, very lately: a law passed by L. Valerius Flaccus, successor of Marius in the consulship, B.C. 86, provided that debts should be cancelled by the payment of a fourth of their value; that is, the silver sestertius should be paid with a copper as (argentum are); the sestertius being equal to four asses. To say that this was done volentibus omnibus bonis, seems like a huge joke.

saepe . . . secessit, the plebs many times withdrew in arms, etc. This was done three times. The first time (B.C. 494) their demands were satisfied by the institution of their special magistrates, the tribunes; the last time (B.C. 287) by the Hortensian Law, which gave to votes of the plebs (plebi scita) the force of laws.

consulatia, following obtestamur, § 70, 3, f; R. — maxume ulti, etc., i.e. having sold our lives most dearly.

§ 34. ea, correl. with ut: of such gentleness and mercy. — petiverit, § 58, 10, c.

consularibus, ex-consuls. An ex-magistrate always retained the rank of the office which he had held, as consularis, praetorius, adilicius, etc. These constituted a body of men of influence, apart from the rest of the Senate.

ex itinere, on the road. — litteras, a letter, i.e. a circular. — optimo quiue, to all the best men (in position).

Massilium, Marseilles, a very ancient Greek colony in Gaul, always in the closest and friendliest relations with Rome. It was a favorite place of exile for those who were banished from Rome or left it voluntarily to escape severer punishment. Catiline, however, had no notion of going thither.

20. proficiisci, was setting out. — non quo (§ 66, 1, R.), not that he was conscious, &c., nor (neve) that, etc.

Catulus: Q. Lutatius Catulus was the acknowledged leader of the senatorial or aristocratic faction, and second to none in purity and uprightness of character. He was consul B.C. 78, with M. Lepidus (see note, § 31), whose democratic schemes he successfully resisted. His father, of the same name and similar reputation, was consul with Marius, B.C. 102, and gained with him the great victory over the Cimbri the next year: he was afterwards assassinated by command of Marius in the civil war, B.C. 87.
longe diversas litteras, a very different letter.—redditas, delivered: the regular word for the delivery of a letter, the bearer having first received it.—earum exemplum, a copy of this.

§ 35. Catulo: the regular way of addressing a letter, usually with S. (Salutem), S. D. (Salutem dicit), or the like.

egregia . . . tribuit, your singular fidelity, known [to me] by experience [re]—a grateful thing to me in my great perils—gives confidence to my appeal.

in novo consilio, before a strange tribunal, i. e. the Senate: an adroit stroke, and good law too; for the Senate had no judicial power, while Cicero had really made it the judge.

non statui, I have not made up my mind.

satisfactionem, explanation (not a formal defence).

conscientia de culpa, consciousness of guilt.—proponere, put forward.

me dius fidius, sc. juvet, by my faith. Dius (deus) Fidius, the spirit of faith, perhaps a Latin translation of the Sabine Semo Sancus, had a temple on the Quirinal hill, and was commonly appealed to by the Romans in oaths.

statum . . . obtinebam, I could not maintain the position due to my rank,—a somewhat loose reference to the consulship, which his position entitled him to, and which might be considered his political status, by losing which he became degraded.

miserorum, i. e. insolvent debtors: always a numerous class, and a very important one in revolutionary politics.

meis nominibus, my own debts, i. e. in my own name. The plural is explained by the name being on the books of the several creditors.

alienis nominibus, others' debts, i. e. for which he had been security, and which Orestilla seems to have paid from her own and her daughter's means.

non dignos (stronger than indignos), i. e. such men as Cicero.

honore honestatos, honored with honors (of office). This alliteration affects the antique style.—alienatum, set aside.

hoc nomine, etc., on this ground I have attained hopes lofty enough for my circumstances.

plura: these words show that the letter was written, or at any rate was to be understood as being written, in Rome.

cum vellem, while wishing.

trado, I recommend.—defendas: this form (2 pers. pres. subj.) is rarely used, as here, of a definite subject: perhaps it is archaic or colloquial.

per . . . rogatus, i. e. I appeal to you in the name of your own children.—haveto, § 38, 2, f.

§ 36. ipse, i. e. in person, opposed to the letter.
Arretino, of Arretium, Arezzo, an old Etruscan town in northeastern Etruria, the birth-place of Mæcenas. Like many other Etruscan towns, it was severely treated by Sulla, and the Flaminius here mentioned is likely to have been one of Sulla's colonists. The ager was a district of land, usually around and belonging to a city.

sollicitatam, i.e. canvassed for soldiers.—armis exornat, furnished with arms.

fascibus: these were the symbol of the full military imperium (see note, § 18). Taking the fasces with him was, therefore, the assumption of the signs of authority, like a proconsul or proprætor, and hence open rebellion.

hostis judicat, declares public enemies, the technical outlawing of rebels and traitors.

quam refers to diem, which is often feminine in this sense (§ 13, 2, n.).

sine fraude, without harm (the original sense of the word: compare frustum, frustra).—ab armis discedere (techn.), to lay down their arms.

imperium, state: here so called because of its great extent and supremacy.—cui cum... parerent, ... adfluerent, for though all things submitted to it, and ease and wealth abounded, &c.

21. quæ, things which.—fuere tamen (emph.), still there were, &c.

perditum i rent, went to ruin (a frequent old use of the supine with ire, surviving chiefly in the future infin. passive).

namque (poetic) = etenim.—duobus decretis, in consequence of two decrees (a loose abl. of cause, or possibly locative).

inductus, supply quisquam, from below.—vis morbi = violent disease.

§ 37. illis, i.e. those mentioned before.—aliena, hostile.—omnino.

cuncta plebes, the entire lower class generally.—adeo, in fact. invidens: the subj. is the antecedent of quibus.—suarum rerum, of their own condition.

turba... aluntur, make their living by disturbance and riot, without anxiety (risk).—ege tas... damno, beggary sits light on them, since it brings no loss.

urbana plebs, the mob of the streets, opposed to the plebs generally, as a political body.—vero, simply emphasizes ea, that.—præceps, reckless.

præstabant, were foremost.
patrimonii amissis = qui patrimonium amiserant. To part with the family estate was looked upon as a great disgrace.

flagitium, facinus, crime of scandal (lust) or violence.

sicut in sentinam, as into a sink (of iniquity). The figure is of a cesspool, into which all gutters lead.

gregariis, of the herd, i.e. common. This refers to Sulla’s veterans. Sulla had filled up the number of the Senate — sadly reduced by the massacres and losses of the civil war—with persons of lower rank, among them some of his own officers. This will perhaps explain the senatorial rank of such ruffians as Vargunteius (see note, § 17), and also the fact that he is called by Cicero simply eques.

regio . . . cultu, in regal style and splendor.—si . . . foret (§ 66, 2), subj. following the implied infinitive (fore) after spe-rabat.

manuum mercede, with the wages of (manual) toil.

largitionibus, i.e. the sales of corn at reduced rates (see note, § 33), the public games, feasts, etc. A familiar example of what a countryman might expect by migrating to Rome is found in the will of Julius Cæsar, who bequeathed to the Roman people his gardens beyond the Tiber, and to each citizen the sum of three hundred sesterces (about fifteen dollars).

eos . . . alebat, these were fed by, etc.

mirandum est: the subj. is the clause homines . . . consu-luisse.—rei publicae, etc., i.e. were as reckless about the affairs of the public as their own.

quorum parentes, etc., those whose parents had been proscribed, whose goods plundered, etc.

proscripti: when Sulla was master of Rome, b.c. 82, he was in the habit of proscribing (posting up) the names of those of the opposite faction whom he wished to have put to death: whoever then should kill them was entitled to a reward amounting to about $2000. The property of the proscribed was confiscated (bona erēpta), and themselves and their children deprived of political privileges (jus libertatis imminutum).

hand sane alio animo, with no very different feeling.

aliarum atque senatus (§ 43, 3, a), i.e. opposed to the Senate.

22. id adeo . . . reverterat, thus that evil (the crushing of the popular party by Sulla) had after many years returned to plague the state.

§ 38. Pompeio, Crasso, coss. b.c. 70. One of the chief acts of their consulship was the restoration of the exorbitant power of the tribunes (tribunicia potestas), which had been curtailed by Sulla about ten years before (see note to Cic. Verr. I. § 44). The tribunes, ten in number, must be of plebeian birth, and were elected in the
plebeian assembly of the tribes. They had the power of forbidding almost any public proceeding, and of holding assemblies of the plebeians, which passed laws for the whole people (see note, § 33), and imposed fines.

**summam potestatem**, not *imperium*. The tribunes had no *imperium*, or supreme authority to command; their *potestas*, or political power, was, however, in some respects even greater than that of the consuls. They could seize and imprison any person even a magistrate, while they themselves were *sacrosancti*, and therefore their persons could not be touched. It may be noticed that this restoration of the tribunician power was only four years before the first conspiracy of Catiline.

**quibus annis**, etc., i. e. in the flush of youth and spirit (*henidianus*).

**senatus specie**, under a show of devotion to the Senate. — *pro*:

i. e. but in fact for their own advancement.

**honestis nominibus**, honorable pretences. — *alii sicuti*, etc.;

**pars quo**, etc. ; the two parties, *optimates* and *populares*.

§ 39. Pompeius, see § 16. — *bellum maritum*, i. e. against the pirates, under the Gabinian Law, B.C. 67. During his absence there was a revival of political excitement, with excesses on both sides; Sallust, as an adherent of the *populares* party, mentions only the arrogance of the aristocracy (*et*, etc.).

**ipsi innoxii**, themselves unmolested: a less common but apparently the original meaning of the word (§ 44, i, 6. The termination *ius*, original *ya*, seems to have regularly a passive force: thus *noxious*, liable to a penalty, hence guilty, and so harmful).

**oeteros . . . terrere**, while they overawed by [threats of] prosecutions those of the other party (the *populares*), so as to deal more at their ease with the people while in office. Prosecutions could be brought by any person, and they were constantly used as engines of political or personal hostility.

**dubii rebus** (loc. abl.), in dangerous circumstances. — *novandi*, sc. *res*, making a revolution.

**vetus certamen**, etc., the old quarrel roused their passions, i. e. of the leaders of the opposite or popular party (*oeteros*). The object of the *optimates* (*pauorum*) seems to have been to overawe their opponents, or wear them out with incessant prosecutions, — the same course which the party in power has so often followed towards the opposition newspapers in Paris. But as soon as the crisis came (*dubii rebus*), and there seemed a chance for making a stir (*novandi*), the popular leaders eagerly took up the old quarrel.

**quod si . . . discussisset**, now if Catiline had come off the better in his first battle. — *profecto*, no doubt.
neque . . . extorqueret, nor could they (the populares), if they had gained the victory, have enjoyed it long, but that, worn out and bled to death, the strongest man would wrest away at once their power and their freedom,—the natural history of seditious insurrection in all ages. "The strongest man" in this case proved, twenty years later, to be Julius Cæsar.

tamen, notwithstanding the evil effects that would follow from his victory.

necari: a most extraordinary example of the patria potestas, or father's authority. The Roman paterfamilias possessed remarkable authority over his family: he "has over his children the jus vitae necisque, the power of life and death, and a fortiori of uncontrolled corporal chastisement; he can modify their personal condition at pleasure; he can give a wife to his son; he can give his daughter in marriage; he can divorce his children of either sex; he can transfer them to another family by adoption; and he can sell them" (Maine, Anc. Law, p. 133). This enormous power extended to all sons with their families, and to unmarried daughters. The married daughters were transferred to a like sovereign jurisdiction held by their husbands. Of course, the progress of manners made the actual exercise of this theoretical power extremely rare. In fact it was practically abolished long before it ceased to exist in theory.

23. alios, antecedent of quoscumque. — quod modo foret, provided only it were, etc. (§ 65, 2, d).

§ 40. Umbreno cuidam, one Umbrenus (contemptuously), a freedman.

Allobrogum, a tribe of Gauls between the Rhone and the Alps (see Cæsar's Gallic War). Their territory was conquered, B.C. 121, and formed a part of the Province of Gallia Transalpina or Narbonensis. They were embarrassed with debt, and their ambassadors were now in Rome trying to get relief from the misgovernment of the Roman officials.

societatem, alliance in.

negotiatius erat, had been in business: chiefly that of money-lending. The negotiatores were money-brokers in the provinces, corresponding to feneratores and argentarii in Rome. — noverat, knew (had became acquainted with).

civitatis, of their state; ejus casum, its evil case.

magistratum, the provincial magistrates, prætor, quæstor, etc. Provincial governors were notorious for their exactions and oppressions. — senatum, sc. Romanum.

rationem, a plan. — qua effugiatis (§ 64, 1), subj. of purpose.

ista mala, those ills you speak of.
quod . . . essent (§ 65, 1), subj. of result.—facturi, ready to
do; dum, provided.

D. Bruti, see note, § 21. — aliena consili, unfavorable to the
plan.—propter Semproniam, i. e. through her influence (see § 25).

sermoni, in his words.
innoxios, innocent (cf. note above). — quo . . . esset, that the
deputies' courage might be increased (§ 64, 1, a). — pollicitos
operam suam, after they had promised their efforts (§ 72, 3).

§ 41. quidnam . . . caperent: the question is emphasized by
nam, as by an emphatic should in English: direct disc., what plan
shall we adopt?
in altera parte, on one side. — merces, prize.
majores opes, more money, which they would get as reward for
information, as compared with the cancelling of their debts by revo-
lution; tuta consilia, opposed to studium belli.

haec illis volventibus (abl. abs.), while they balanced thus.
patrocinio, see notes to Cicero's Orations, p. 73. The patronate
over a conquered nation was usually held by the conquering com-
mander, and often remained in his family. This Fabius Sanga, of
whom nothing is known, was of the same gens with Q. Fabius Allo-
brogicus, the conqueror of the Allobroges.

24. studium, zeal for the conspiracy. — bene polliceantur,
should promise fair. — dent operam, exert themselves. — quam . . .
habeant, have their guilt as clear as possible (manu fendo, hit with
the hand; hence put the hand on anything, catch in the overt act:
a word referring to direct as opposed to circumstantial evidence).

§ 42. Bruttio, sc. agro; the extreme south-west of Italy. —
motus, outbreak.
dimiserat (dis mitto), had distributed, sent armed to different
places. — simul, at once. — consiliiis, abl. of means. — timore,
alarm.

causa cognita, having examined the case (the technical word for
official investigation). — vincula, chains, i. e. prison.

in ulterior Gallia, i. e. Narbonensis. The legati were aids of
the commander, or members of his staff; and might hold command
in his absence, by delegation of his authority.

C. [Licinius] Murena, brother of L. Murena, consul elect, in
behalf of whom Cicero afterwards delivered one of his most famous
orations.

§ 43. videbantur, § 70, 2, a1.

L. [Calpurnius] Bestia, called a Senator, § 17. As he did not
enter upon his tribunate until Dec. 10, there seems some mistake
here. It must have been known long before there that Catiline
arrived at Faesulae.

contione, a contio was a public assembly for the purpose of dis-
cussion only, voting being done in the comitia. It was called and
presided over by a magistrate, and none could speak without his
permission.

eo signo, at that signal (abl. of means). — conjurationis =
conjuratorum.

suum quisque negotium, each his own part, as defined below.

quo tumultu = that by the disturbance thus caused. — alius
alterum, sc. adgrederetur.

filii familiarum, as long as the father lived, the sons and un-
married daughters were under his patria potestas (see note, § 39),
unless emancipated by a peculiar and complicated process. These
filii familiarum may therefore have been themselves married men
and "fathers of a family" in our sense of the term.

perculsis, paralyzed.

decreta, not decrees, but decisions.

dies prolatando, by deferring the day of executing the plot: it
was put off until the day of the Saturnalia, Dec. 19. The occurrence
of §§ 42 and 43 appears to have been in November, while the nego-
tiations with the Allobroges were going on.

corrumpere, were spoiling. — facto, action (§ 54, 1, d). — ad-
juvarent: dic. disc. adjuvetis (§ 59, 4, f).

25. § 44. per Gabinum, § 54, 4, b. — conveniunt, meet
(have interviews with).

jus jurandum, that is, an agreement signed on oath. — signa-
tum, with their seals, the regular way of authenticating documents.

eos = civis, subj. of posse.

dant, sc. jusjurandum. — semet, in person. — eo, i. e. to Gaul,
and vouch personally for his participation.

Crotoniensem: Crotona was a Greek city on the southern coast
of Italy, which had received a Roman Colony. — pergerent, go
directly. — fide, pledge.

fac oogites, do reflect, emphatic and colloquial. — rationes, i. e.
the success of your plans.

ab infinis, i. e. the slaves. The Romans had had several awful
experiences of servile insurrections, and nothing would bring the
conspiracy into such bad odor as any suspicion of this sort.
(Compare the letter as given by Cicero, Cat. III. § 12.)

ad hoc, in addition. — verbis, in words (abl. of manner).

§ 45. constituta noote, Dec. 2 by the calendar; in fact, about
the middle of February.

L. Flacco, son of the consul of B.C. 86 (see note, § 33); he
governed the province of Asia, as prætor, and was successfully
defended by Cicero on a charge of repetundae (extortion, see
note, § 49).
ponte Mulvius, over the Tiber about three miles north of Rome: it is by this bridge that the Via Flaminia crosses the river.

Allobrogum limits comitatus.

cetera, i. e. the details.

militares, i. e. they knew their business.

praesidiis; as Cicero says, Cat. III. 5, in two bodies, ita ut Tiberis intcr eos et pons interesset.

id loci, § 50, 2, c.

cito cognito consilio, quickly seeing how things lay. This is consistent with Cicero’s statement, that the plan was concealed from all but the prae tors. Long, however, who never loses an opportunity to disparage Cicero’s testimony, would omit cito, because “if Sallust’s narrative is true, they [the ambassadors] knew they were going to be stopped.” But, although the ambassadors were playing the conspirators false, and knew that in some way the letters were to be got from them, it does not follow that they would be trusted with the details of the plan. Further, cognito does not seem the right word to use for a previous knowledge.

26. § 46. at illum, but he was overwhelmed at once, &c. — conjuratione patefacta, by the disclosure of the conspiracy.

porro autem, but again. — tantis, of so high rank.

sibi oneri, a load for him to carry. — perdundae, etc. (dat.), the ruin of the state (§ 73, 3, b).

vocari, to be summoned: the technical word for a magistrate’s summons.

paulo ante, i. e. a little before the summons, so that he could hear the news.

Tarracinense, of Tarracina, a town on the coast, about fifty miles south-east of Rome. It was an ancient Volscian town, and its name was originally Anxur.

in ædem concordiae, between the Forum and the Capitoline: it was a not infrequent place for meetings of the Senate.

magna frequentia, before a full house.

§ 47. fingere alia, began to make up a different story.

fide publica, under public pledge of safety; he turned State’s evidence.

paucis, only a few. — socium adscitum, invited to join. — legatos, § 67, 1, b. r.

dissimulantem, when he tried to conceal. — coarguunt, convict.

praeter, in addition to. — sermonibus, conversation.

ex libris Sibyllinis: the books bought of the Cumæan Sibyl by Tarquin the Proud, kept in charge of a special college of priests of high rank, the quindecimviri sacris faciundis, and consulted on occasions of great public emergency.

Cinnam atque Sullan. L. Cornelius Cinna succeeded to the
leadership of the democracy and the rule of Rome on the death of Marius; he was consul B.C. 87–84. L. Cornelius Sulla got control of the city two years later (B.C. 82).

incenso Capitolio: the Capitolium, or Temple of Jupiter Capitolinus, was burned in the Civil War, B.C. 83.

27. aruspices, not augurs, but Etruscan soothsayers, who prognosticated chiefly by consulting the entrails of the animals sacrificed.

signa sua; letters were tied with a thread (linum) and sealed.

abdicato magistratu: during his term of office a magistrate was practically exempt from judicial control. Lentulus was therefore compelled to abdicate his praetorship in order that he might be dealt with.

in libris custodiis: no provision was made at Rome for imprisonment, except for malefactors in the horrible Marmertine prison (§ 55). Prisoners of rank were therefore confined in the houses of their acquaintances.

P. Spintheri, cos. B.C. 57, in which year he brought about Cicero's recall from exile.

aedilis: the aediles — four in number, two curule and two plebeian — had charge of the police of the city, and especially of the public buildings and the superintendence of the games.

§ 48. exsecrari, histor. infin. — gaudium . . . agitabant, expressed their satisfaction and delight.

omnes copiae, etc., all their wealth consisted in [what served for] daily use and providing for their bodily wants: the class which, in great cities, is the first victim of revolution, and the greatest sufferer by it.

proficiacentem, just setting out.

bonorum, the better classes; hostium, i. e. Catiline's force.

Lentulus, etc., deprehensi, the arrest of Lentulus and the others. — reificeret, revive.

potentia: not official power, but influence — perhaps illegal.

tanta vis hominis = a man of so great power.

Crasso obnoxii, under obligations to Crassus, i. e. in debt to him.

28. referatur, sc. ad senatum.

frequens senatus: a full Senate at this time must have counted over four hundred members, as the holding of any regular magistracy entitled to a seat in it for life.

decernit, decides: the common translation decree does not fully convey the meaning of this word, because the decretum of the Senate regularly included facts or resolves, as well as executive orders; while the English "decree" is usually of something to be done.
(Compare the resolution — decretum — at the close of Cicero’s last Philippic, “Orations,” p. 249).

potestatem, sc. indicandi, opportunity of testifying.

machinatum, contrived. — quo ... tegerat, that if Crassus were implicated in the charge (adpellato, summoned), his influence might more easily shield the others, through [his] sharing in [their] danger.

immissum, put up to it. — moro suo: Crassus was of a jealous and suspicious temper.

prædicantem, making a loud talk.

tantam contumeliam, such an outrage: this suspicion perhaps had something to do with Cicero’s being left to the mercy of his enemies in the time of Crassus’s political power, four years later.

§ 49. C. [Calpurnius] Piso, cos. b c. 67: he was pro-consul of Narbonese Gaul, and was successfully defended by Cicero this same year on a charge of repetundæ. This story, implicating not only Piso, but Catulus, who is regarded as a man of the highest honor, in so mean a trick, can hardly rest upon any but hearsay evidence, and is likely to be a piece of Sallust’s partisanship.

nam, etc.: their assumed motive for making the charge.

in iudicio, at the time of the trial. Cæsar made this attack upon him as patronus of those beyond the Po (Transpadani).

ex petitione pontificatus. The office of pontifex maximus had fallen vacant this year, and Catulus, as the leading member of the aristocracy, seemed to have an unquestioned claim to succession. But Cæsar, although a young man (of 37), only known for his dissolute manners and prominence as a popular leader, offered himself as candidate, and was elected. Catulus never got over this defeat.

The pontifices, a collegium of fifteen members, had the chief superintendence of the religious institutions of the State. The board filled its own vacancies, but the office of chief pontifex was determined by a popular vote fixing upon the one who was then to be formally elected by the board itself, like the election of English bishops by the chapter, where the government indicates the person to be elected. In reference to these elections, and the later deification of the emperors, Gibbon remarks that in the Roman state religion the same man might be “a priest, an atheist, and a god.”

autem, moreover. — publice ... muneribus, i. e. as ædile, the officer having charge of the public games and shows, the splendor of which he often increased at his own expense. This, in fact, came to be an unavoidable and enormous tax on popularity.

singulatim, to individuals. — quæ ... dicerent, which, as they said. — usque eo, to such a degree.

equites Romani, young men of noble family, who served in the eighteen centuries of equites, receiving a horse from the state: it was at this time essentially a parade corps.
Notes.

29. § 50. liberti, freedmen. A freed slave was libertus as regarded his former master (who now became his patronus), and libertinus as regarded others. LENTULI must therefore limit liberti as well as clientibus: the clients were his free-born followers.

in vicis, in the streets; or, more correctly, the wards or districts centring about the several principal streets.

duces multitutinum, mob-leaders: petty politicians, leaders of the populace in the several localities.

per nuntios orabat: it would seem from this that the libera custodia was "free" enough to allow a prisoner correspondence with his friend with a view to a rescue. It was, however, rigid enough to keep him in durance, under the immediate peril of execution.

familiam, household of slaves.

monebat, suggested. — convocato senatu; this was Dec. 5.

contra rem publicam, "against the peace and dignity of the commonwealth."

primus sententiam rogatus: the consuls elect were called upon first, if there were any; if not, the princeps senatus, or one who was recognized as holding the first rank: then, in succession, the consular, praetorian and other senators.

decreverat: the pluperfect is a common device to subordinate the necessary details to the main point,—here, Caesar's speech.

pedibus iturum (sc. in sententiam), would vote, i.e. on a division. The vote was taken by going on one side or the other of the hall (discessio). A class of Senators, who had a vote, but no right to speak, were called pedarii.

TI. [Claudii] Neronis, grandfather of the emperor Tiberius. Nero's proposition was to put off the decision until further measures for security should have been taken (prisidis additis). This is not inconsistent with Cicero's referring only to the propositions of Silanus and Caesar (Cat. IV. 7); for Nero's notion had nothing to do with the merits of the question, but only with the time of action, so that Silanus agreed to it.

Caesar: as prator designatus, he spoke after the consuls and before the praetorians. It is a misfortune that Sallust's vanity led him to compose—in the fashion of ancient historians—this artificial speech, instead of preserving some of the notices which were probably extant, of what was really said. Caesar could hardly have uttered the stale commonplaces—exactly in the style of Sallust, who is nothing if not general—with which this rhetorical exercise begins. But the sentiments and the temper are doubtless Caesar's own, and the argument is substantially as Cicero reports it.

§ 51. § 1. patres conscripti: the patres, as has been said (see note, § 6) were the patrician senators; the conscripti were
plebeians who were "enrolled" in the Senate on the establishment of the republic, to fill vacancies. Consistently with the Latin practice of omitting the *et* in such combinations, *patres et conscripti* became in practice the "conscript fathers" of literature.

**lubidint, passion; usul, advantage. — paruit, § 58, 5, c.**

**intenderis** (§ 58, 7), *keep on the stretch.*

**magna, etc., I have a great deal to tell (§ 60, 2, c) — I could tell, &c, but. — male consuluerint, have taken bad counsel.*

*bello Macedonico, i.e. the Third, in which the independence of Macedonia was overthrown.* The Rhodians, who had given Rome effective aid in earlier wars, and been rewarded by liberal grants of territory (*populi Romani opibus creverat*), held themselves aloof from this (*infida atque adversa fuit*). For this no direct punishment was inflicted, although the grants of territory were taken back. — *magna atque magnifica.* Rhodes was at this time the first maritime power in the world.

**30. bellis Punicis:** the three wars with Carthage, the third of which resulted in the destruction of Carthage (B.C. 146). The Romans always indulged in a complacent sense of honor and fairness in respect to their dealings with Carthage, which contrasts oddly with the facts.

**cum, though. — per occasionem, taking advantage of opportunity.**

| 2. neu, and that . . . not. — irae consulatis, seek to gratify your wrath rather than take care of your reputation (strictly, take counsel for the advantage of). |

**novom consilium:** the punishment of death was new in the sense that the laws forbade its infliction upon a citizen except by a vote of the people: it was therefore strictly out of the province of the Senate.

**omnium ingenia, any man's power (to devise a fitting punishment). — utendum (§ 73, 1, r.), impersonal, governing eis. (The gerundive is a very common construction with censeo in the sense of advise or vote: compare end of § 51.)**

| 3. composite, in good set terms. — magnifice, and in lofty style. — miserati sunt, have depleted. |

**rapi . . . compleri:** these infinitives are in apposition with *quae . . . acciderent,* "the things which happen to the defeated," depending on *enumeravere.*

**quo, to what purpose. — siccoet, to be sure (ironical). — quo . . . pertinuit, what did that argument mean?**

| 4. aliqua aliqua licentia, different degrees of allowance to different persons. |

**si quid (adv. acc.), if in any respect. — pauci scitunt, hardly anybody knows of it. — fama, etc., i.e. their fame is no greater than their fortune.**
minuma, least of all. — minores quam, too small for.
postrema meminere, keep in mind only the last things that
happened. — in, in the case of.

¶ 5. certo scio, I am well assured. — illum, subj. of exsercere:
to practise (a passion), therefore act under its influence.
eso . . . cognovi (§ 47, 2, c), I know this to be the character
and moderation of the man.

verum opposes the whole, including aliena, to the preceding.

sed, opposed to the concession in non crudelis.

31. aliena a re publica, against the public interest.

aut metus aut injuria, i. e. fear of future wrong, or desire of
punishing the present wrong.

decernere, simply, to give your voice for.

tanta praesidia: see Cicero’s orations against Catiline, especially
the beginning of the first, for the measures of precaution that he
took. — in armis, under arms.

possunt, I could; equidem, to be sure; id quod, etc., what is
the fact.

mortem aeternarum requiem, that death is rest from sorrows:
said here in accordance with Cæsar’s Epicurean creed.

lex Porci, about B.C. 200: “virga ab omnium civium Roman-
orum corpore amovit; libertatem civium lictori eripuit” (Cic.
pro Rabir. ch. 4).

at alie leges, etc.: i. e. if scourging is forbidden (by the Porcian
law), much more is it forbidden, by several laws, to put them to
death. The whole subject is very obscure, and the precise import
of these laws is not known. To all intents and purposes, in the later
republic, the punishment of death for Roman citizens was out of use,
since, as is here stated, the condemned criminal was allowed to go
away and become an alien from his country. But exile from
Rome was even worse to a Roman than exile from Paris is to a
Frenchman.

in homines, i. e. inflicted on.
qui (adv.) convenit, what consistency is there?
at enim, but, you say.

¶ 6. tempus, dies, etc.: occasion, time, fortune, whose pleasure
controls [the affairs of] nations (will take vengeance on us, if we
violate right in this matter).

vos (emph.), i. e. for your own sakes.

omnia male exempla, etc. Certainly, whether Cæsar was in
sympathy with the conspirators or not, he could not have said a
truer thing than these ominous words, let them be his own clear
foresight, or Sallust’s cheap moralizing after the fact. The most
dangerous violations of law are by those who give their act the
sanction of a high example.
deviotis Atheniensiibus; by the battle of Ægospotami, B.C. 404, which ended the Peloponnesian War, and transferred the hegemony, or political leadership, of Greece, from Athens to Sparta. The Spartans now established at Athens a committee of thirty, to administer the government: who, from their unjust and oppressive rule, are known as the Thirty Tyrants.

ludidinosus, at their pleasure (see the defence of Thearmenes, Xenophon, Hellen. ii. 3).

pœnas dedit, see note, § 22.

Damasippum: a name belonging to the Licinian gens, but given (apparently) to L. Junius Brutus, one of the leaders of the popular or Marian party in the Civil War. Damasippus was praetor, B.C. 82, and when Sulla gained the victory which practically decided the contest, it was he who, before evacuating the city, ordered the massacre of the leaders of the opposition. He was shortly afterwards captured by Sulla and executed, in company with three or four thousand others.—creverant, had flourished.

magnæ cladiæ, the horrible proscriptions of Sulla.

32. trahebantur, were dragged off (for slaughter).
allo console, under another consul, (§ 54, 10 and 11).

exercitus in manu, an army ready for use: pointing insidiously at the forces Cicero had armed to keep the peace. Nothing would more rouse jealousy than the hint of an army within the walls.

illii, i.e. that other: Pompey, or Cæsar?

¶ 7. quo minus imitarentur, to prevent their imitating (§ 65, 1, a).

ab Samnitibus . . . ab Tuscis: how much this amounted to, cannot be determined. Probably the Romans borrowed at least some of the externals of state from Etruria, but it is not certain that much of importance was taken from this source.

Graeciae morem imitati: this cannot be true, for our very earliest accounts of Rome recognize the punishment of death and scourging; while Grecian law and custom were mild by comparison.

eæ bene parta, that well-earned greatness.

¶ 8. ita censeo: compare Cicero's statement of Cæsar's views, Cat. IV. ch. 4.

contra, etc., against the peace and safety of the commonwealth.

cum populo agat: the regular expression for the transaction of business in an assembly of the people.

§ 52. verbo adsentiebantur: the expression used for the delivery of the sententia by the several senators as called upon—a formal vote.

alius aliæ (dat.), 1. e. some to one point and some to another.

varie: indicating that the decision was for a long time doubtful,
as senators changed their votes. Cicero’s fourth oration appears to have been delivered in this interval of suspense, and afterwards Cato’s speech decided the question.

§ 52. M. Porcius Cato: he was great-grandson of Cato the censor, a vehement partisan of the Senate, a thoroughly honest man, but narrow-minded, obstinate, and impracticable. He was a leader in the Civil War, and killed himself at Utica—hence his name Uticensis—after Caesar’s crowning victory of Thapsus (B.C. 46).

**habit**, delivered (the regular word).

¶ 1. **disseruiisse**, to have been discussing—calmly, as in a philosophical discourse.

patræ, dat. of indir. obj.—cavere, § 57, 8, d; 70, 3, a.

33. **frustra**, etc., in vain will you then seek a remedy in justice.

**persequare**, one may prosecute (§ 57, 3, a).

vos ... **fecistis**: an appeal to the better classes who neglected their duties to the state, such as might not be out of place at the present day.—**pluris**, at a higher rate (§ 54, 8, a).

**cujscumque modi** (==cuicui modi, § 21, 1, b), of whatever sort.

**aliquando**, at length (with impatience).

de **veotgalibus**, etc., an allusion to the war against Mithridates, which Pompey had just concluded: see Cicero’s oration for the Manilian Law.

**anima**, breath of life.—in** dubio**, in jeopardy.

se**penumero**, oftentimes.

¶ 2. in hoo ordine, in this body. An ordo was a class having distinct interests of its own; especially the Senate.

**qui** ... **condonabam**, an assertion of Cato’s well-known Stoic principle, in contrast with the easy Epicureanism of Caesar: I [a man] who never, in act (mihi) or in thought (animo) had given myself indulgence for any fault, did not easily pardon evil deeds to another man’s self-will.

**opulentia**, etc., i. e. the strength of the state was like a rich man’s fortune, which will endure careless spending.

**non id agitur**, this is not the question.—**nostra**, ours (pred.).

**nobiscum una hostium**, along with ourselves, the property of the enemy.

**hic mihi nominat**, in such a case is there a man who talks to me about.—eo, by this means.

**jampridem**, etc., but in fact we have long, &c.

sae, if you will.

in **furibus ærari**, i. e. to the “treasury ring.”—ne, by all means (bitter irony).

**perditum**, to ruin.
3. de inferis, about the lower world. There was, as here expressed, a vague belief among the Romans in a future life with rewards and punishments in a kind of vast cavern underground (see Virgil's Aeneid, book vi., partly imitated from Homer, Odyssey, book xi.).

a multitudo conducta, by a hired mob.

quasi vero, just as if! a very strong and effective argument.

34. plus possit, has the greater power.

jam, at once.

4. pulcherrimum, in its greatest glory: i. e. while in fact it is degenerate, and in evil case.

nos habere mus, i. e. our generation, which has every advantage over theirs.

quae nobis nulla sunt, of which we have none.—obnoxius, enslaved to.

publice egestatem: not that the state had not resources enough, but the public interests were neglected and plundered, while individuals made a great display of wealth (privatim opulentiam).

impetus, a raid, i. e. for plunder.

5. incendere, § 57, 8, d. — supra caput, above our heads, like a rock ready to fall. — hostibus, abl. (§ 54, 2, d).

quid faciatis, what you shall do (§ 67, 2, b).

ne, you may be sure.

solicet, no doubt; immo, on the contrary; videlicet, I suppose.

non votis, etc.: “the gods help those who help themselves.”

bello Gallico: according to other authorities, it was in the Latin war, B.C. 340. Sallust has confused it with the Gallic war, twenty one years before, in which Manlius received his surname Tor- quatus.

35. videlicet (ironical), forsooth. — verum, in truth.

iterum, now for the second time: an intimation that Cæthesus was implicated in the first conspiracy.

quibus si ... pensi fuisse, if they had even had any regard for any thing.

si peccato locus esset, if there were room for error: but the ground we stand on is too narrow.

faucibus: Cicero (Cat. II. § 2) represents Catiline, by the same phrase, under the figure of a wild beast kept at bay.

6. cum ... paravissee, the preamble; de ... sumundum, the resolution.

more majorum, by ancient precedent.

§ 53. forte ... attendere, i. e. I happen to have been interested in observing.

legionibus hostium: a general but incorrect military expression, as the legion was a purely Roman institution, like the turma of cavalry.
gloria belli: this refers not to any special achievements of the Gauls, but to the constant terror they inspired among the more civilized nations of the south.

constabat, it became clear.

36. paupertas, paucitas, i. e. a people poor in resources and feeble in numbers.

res publica, politics or public business.

vitia sustentabat, fed the faults.—obtulerat, threw in my way.

§ 54. nihil largiundo, by never bribing.

bellum novum, a new style of war, as in Gaul, Britain and Germany.

constantia, firmness.

esse quam videri bonus malebat, a celebrated and formal maxim of Greek morality, as old at least as Æschylus (Seven against Thebes).

§ 55. dicessit, i. e. in a division. — eo spatio, in the interval.

nequid novaretur, that no new attempt should be made.

tres viros, sc. capitales, the executioners.

in carcerem, the Carcer Mamertinus, ascribed to King Ancus Marcius (Liv. i. 33), was between the Forum and the Capitoline, east of the Temple of Concord. The subterranean dungeon, Tullianum, ascribed to Servius Tullius, was probably originally a well-room (tullius was an old word for rivus). These chambers are now exhibited in Rome. The Tullianum, where there is still a spring of cold clear water, slightly brackish, was formerly entered only by a narrow round aperture in the stone vault which covers it (camera lapideis fornicens juncta).

37. Tullianum: it is said that even in the Provinces, the vilest cell of the dungeon, built for the punishment of traitors, was called by this name of horror.

humi (loc.), underground. — camera, the low arched roof, or vault, rising not much more than a foot (in a span of perhaps twenty feet) to a height of not quite seven feet.

demissus, thrust down through the opening above.

laqueo gulam fregere, broke the windpipe with a noose, i. e. strangled him.

§ 56. duas legiones: this was the regular force of a consul, and Catiline evidently wished to give a show of legitimacy to his enterprise.

pro, in proportion to.

cohortis, etc., i. e. the legions were only skeleton ones, with the full numbers of ten cohorts each, but the cohorts were incomplete, so that the legions did not reach the regular number of six thousand men.
The Conspiracy of Catiline.

voluntarius, volunteer, enlisting from the neighborhood; ex sociis, from his accomplices in Rome.

militaribus armis, arms of regular soldiers: these were a brass helmet (cassis), a shield (scutum), cuirass (lorica), and greaves (ocrea), the short two-edged Spanish sword (gladius), and short heavy javelin, (pilum).

ad urbem, towards the city. — in Galliam vorsus, in the direction of Gaul: vorsus is generally used thus adverbially, with a preposition.

prope diem, at no distant day.

cujus, sc. generis: his rejection of these was another evidence of his desire to appear as the champion of the Roman people.

§ 57. conjurationem . . . sumptum: these accusatives depend on the verb of telling contained in nuntius pervenit.

38. in agrum Pistoriensem: Pistoria, a small town of Etruria, lay about fifteen miles north west of Fæsulae, by an easy road: here is one of the best passes over the Apennines into northern Italy. The expression per montis, here and in the last chapter, shows that Catiline had moved to some distance from the original camp of Manlius.

præsidebat, held command.

ex difficultate, to be construed with existumans: he formed his judgment from a knowledge of the straits in which Catiline must be.

radicibus, foot. — illi, etc., he must descend. — utpote qui

§ 65, 2, c.

§ 58. | 1. compertum habeo, § 72, 3, b. — ex ignavo, from being cowardly. — patere, appear. — hortere, you would exhort (§ 59, 4, b): the condition is contained in quem . . . excitant.

quo, to the end that.

| 2. oładem, disaster. — juxta mecum, as well as I do. — maxume, ever so much. — si vincimus, § 58, 2, c.

39. supervacaneum, a thing of no interest.

| 3. adgredimini (imperat.), advance the more boldly. — licuit (§ 60, 2, c), you might have, &c.; potuistis nonnulli, etc., some of you, having lost your fortunes at Rome, might have waited for other men's wealth. — haec, i. e. my standard.

cum . . . avorteris, a roundabout way of saying, if you turn your back.

| 4. necessitudo, necessity; perhaps including also the idea, that their fortunes were bound up together. — cavete amittatis,

§ 57, 7, a.

§ 59. signa canere: signa is subject. The signal was given with the tuba, a long straight horn with a harsh sound:

Tuba terribilem sonitum procul ære canoro Increpuit. — Virg.
Æn. ix. 503.
instructos ordines: the acies, or army in line of battle, of this period consisted of either two or three lines of cohorts, each cohort counting sixty men in front, and ten deep. This was the Roman system, equally removed from the unyielding phalanx of the Greeks, and the extreme thinness of the English line.

remotis equis, compare Cæsar, B.G. i. 25. — pedes (§ 16, 3, c), on foot. — sinistrors, on his left.

reliquarum signa, twelve in number. The cohort was formed of three maniples, and each maniple had its signum (a staff with some figure or badge at the end) or vexillum (a flag, attached by its upper edge to a cross-piece at the end of the staff). The cohort appears to have had no standard, probably because it existed as a regular organization only after the time of Marius, before whom the maniple was the sole division of the legion. The standard of the legion, established by Marius, was a silver eagle.

centuriones: two centurions commanded each maniple. — omnis lectos, all picked men.

evocatos: these were veterans, who had served out their time, but were induced to volunteer by the offer of special privileges and emoluments.

bello Cimbrico (B.C. 101), when Marius and Catulus defeated the Cimbri near Vercellæ.

40. latrones, bandits: insurrection, among the Romans, was ordinarily spoken of as latrocinium, “brigandage.”

cernere, were contending.

amplus, § 54, 5, c.

tribunus: six tribunes (two at a time) commanded the legion with equal and undivided power; after the time of Julius Cæsar a legatus was placed over these.

praefectus, a general term for one appointed to a special command; particularly of the auxiliaries or the fleet.

legatus, staff-officer or aid. All these held subordinate commands, under the imperium of the commander in chief; the prætor had the imperium in virtue of his office, and was therefore the commander in chief of the army.

§ 60. ferentaria, skirmishers, armed with sword and spear, and light defensive armor. — omittunt, drop.

pilia ... geritur. The Roman mode of attack was, first to hurl the pilum (eminus pugnare), and then rush upon the enemy with the sword (cominus pugnare); precisely analogous to a modern volley of musketry followed by a bayonet charge.

ili, the others. — pro, in place of.

contra ac ratus erat, contrary to his expectation.

cohortem praetoriam, praetorian cohort, a picked body of men,
partly *evocati* (see note, § 59), partly young men of noble family, which served as body guard to the commander.

*alis alibi, in various places*: *alis* is an old form for *alius* (§ 16, 1, b, n.); for the plural verb see § 49, 1, c.

§ 61. *cerneres, § 60, 2, a.—quem . . locum . . eum* (§ 48, 3, r.), *each man covered with his body, when his breath was spent, the same spot which he had taken fighting when alive* (*vivos*, nom.).

44. *advorsis volneribus, with wounds in front.*

*etiam* (et jam), *still.*

*civis ingenuus, free born citizen of Rome.* — *juxta, alike, i. e. not at all.*

*hostem, a guest-friend; hospitium* was a close relation of friendship and mutual aid between citizens of different states.

*laetitia, etc.*: the first pair denote outward expression, the second (in chiastic order) inward feeling, *rejoicing and mourning, joy and sadness.*
CICERO:

SELECT ORATIONS.
CICERO'S SELECT ORATIONS.

DEFENCE OF ROSCIUS.

B.C. 80.

Sextus Roscius was a rich and respected citizen of Ameria, a town (municipium) of Umbria, about fifty miles north of Rome. He had a taste for city life, and spent most of his time at Rome, where he was on intimate terms with some of the highest families, especially the Metelli and Scipios. Meantime his son Sextus, who certainly lacked his father's cultivated tastes, and was accused by his enemies of rudeness and clownishness, had the care of the extensive family estates at Ameria.

Sometime during the dictatorship of Sulla,—probably in the autumn of 81 B.C.,—the elder Roscius was murdered one evening as he was returning from a dinner party. The murder was no doubt procured, or at least connived at, by one Titus Roscius Magnus, his fellow-townsmen and enemy. However that may be, the name of the murdered man was put upon the proscription-list by Chrysogonus, a freedman and favorite of Sulla, who bought his confiscated estates at auction at a nominal price. Three of these estates (there were thirteen in all) he transferred to a certain Titus Roscius Capito, another townsman and enemy of the deceased, and a leading man at Ameria; the remainder he put in charge of Magnus as his agent. The younger Sextus, a man of forty, thus robbed of his patrimony, had recourse to his father's friends in Rome for protection and help; when the three conspirators, fearing that they might be compelled to disgorge, resolved to secure themselves by accusing him of his father's murder. This they did through a professional prosecutor (accusator) named Erucius, who undertook the legal formalities of the prosecution.

The aristocratic friends of Roscius, not daring to brave the creature of the dictator, but not wishing to leave their guest-friend
(hostes) undefended, prevailed upon Cicero, then young and ambitious, to defend him. Even for so young and obscure a man, this was an act that called for disinterested courage; and nothing in Cicero's career is more to his credit. By the successful conduct of this case, he obtained the well-merited rank of a leader among the rising advocates of Rome. The defence of Roscius is the first of Cicero's public orations or pleas; and it is criticised by himself in the Orator, chap. 30.

CREDO ego vos, Judices, mirari quid sit quod, cum toti summi oratores hominesque nobilissimi sedeant, ego potissimum surrexerim, qui neque aetate neque ingenio neque auctoritate sim cum his, qui sedeant, comparandus. Omnes hi, quos videtis adesse, in hac causa injuriam novo stellarere confatatam putant oportere defendi, defendere ipsi propter iniquitatem temporum non audent; ita fit ut adsint propterea quod officium sequuntur, taceant autem idcirco quia periculum vitant.

2. Quid ergo? Audacissimus ego ex omnibus? Minime. At tanto officiosior quam ceteri? Ne istius quidem laudis ita sim cupidus, ut alius eam praeruptam velim. Quae me igitur res praeter ceteros impulsit, ut causam Sex. Rosci recuperem? Quia, si quis horum dixisset, quos videtis adesse, in quibus summa auctoritas est atque ampludo, si verbum de re publica fecisset, — id quod in hac causa fieri necesses est, — multo plura dixisse quam dixisset putaretur:

3. ego etiam si omnia quae dicenda sunt libere dixer, nequaquam tamen similiter oratio mea exire atque in volgus emaniare poterit. Deinde, quod ceterorum neque dictum obscurum potest esse, propter nobilitatem et amplitudinem, neque temere dico concedi, propter aetatem et prudentiam: ego si quid liberius dixer, vel occultum esse, propterea quod nondum ad rem publicam accessi, vel ignosci adolescentiae poterit, — tametsi non modo ignoscendi
Who was the elder Roscius?

ratio, verum etiam cognoscendi consuetudo jam de
civitate sublata est.

4. Accedit illa quoque causa, quod a ceteris forsi-
tan ita petitum sit ut dicerent, ut utrumvis salvo officio
facere se posse arbitrarentur: a me autem ei con-
tenderunt, qui apud me et amicitia et beneficiis et
dignitate plurimum possunt, quorum ego nec bene-
volentiam erga me ignorare, nec auctoritatem as-
pernari, nec voluntatem neglectere debeam. His
de causis ego huic causae patronus exstiti, non elec-
tus unus qui maximo ingenio, sed relictus ex omnibus
qui minimo periculo possem dicere; neque uti satis
firma praesidio defensus Sex. Roscius, verum uti ne
omnino desertus esset.

vi. 5. Sex. Roscius, pater hujusce, municeps Am-
erinus fuit, cum genere et nobilitate et pecunia non
modo sui municipi verum etiam ejus vicinitatis facile
primus tum gratia atque hospitiis florens hominum
nobilissimorum. Nam cum Metellis, Serviliis,Sci-
pionibus erat ei non modo hospitium, verum etiam
domesticus usus et consuetudo, quas (ut aequum est)
familias honestatis amplitudinisque gratia nomino.
Itaque ex omnibus suis commodis hoc solum filio
reliquit: nam patrimonium domestici praedones vi
eruptum possident, fama et vita innocentis ab hospiti-
bus amicisque paternis defenditur. 6. Is cum omni
tempore nobilitatis fator, fuisse, tum hoc tumultu
proximo, cum omnium nobilium dignitas et salus in
discrimen veniret, praeter ceteros in ea vicinitate eam
partem causamque opera, studio, auctoritate defendit:
etenim rectum putabat pro eorum honestate se pug-
nare, propter quos ipse honestissimus inter suos nu-
merabatur. Posteaquam victoria constituta est, ab
armisque recessimus,—cum proscriberentur homi-
nes, atque ex omni regione caperentur ei qui adver-
sarii fuisse putabantur,—erat ille Romae frequens;
in foro et in ore omnium cotidie versabatur, magis ut exsultare victoria nobilitatis videretur, quam timere ne quid ex ea calamitatis sibi accideret.


9. Occiso Sex. Roscio, primus Ameriam nuntiat Mallius Glaucia quidam, homo tequis, libertinus, clientis et familiaris istius T. Rosci, et nuntiat domum non filii, sed T. Capitonis inimici; et cum post horam primam noctis occasus esset, primo diluculo nuntius hic Ameriam venit. Decem horis nocturnis sex et quinquaginta milia passuum cisiis pervolavit, non modo ut exoptatum inimico nuntium primus adferret, sed etiam cruorem inimici quam recentissimum telumque paulo ante e corpore extractum ostenderet.

10. Quadriduo quo haec gesta sunt, res ad Chrysonometon in castra L. Sullae Volaterras defertur. Mag-
nitudo pecuniae demonstratur; bonitas praediorum, (nam fundos decem et tris reliquit, qui Tiberim fere omnès tangunt), hujus inopia et solitudo com-
memoratur. Demonstrant, cum pater hujusce Sex.
Roscius, homo tam splendidus et gratiosus, nullo 
negotio sit occisus, perfacile hunc hominem incautum 
et rusticum, et Romae ignotum, de medio tolli posse. 
Ad eam rem operam suam pollicentur. Ne diutius 
teneam, judices, societas coitūr. viii. ii. Cum nullà 
proscriptionis mentio fieret, cum etiam qui antea 
metuerant redirent, ac jam defunctos sese periculis 
arbitrarent, nomen refertur in tabulas Sex. Rosci, 
studiosissimi nobilitatis. Manceps fit Chrysogonus. 
Tria praedia vel nobilissima Capitoni propria tradun-
tur, quae hodie possidet; in reliquis omnès fortunas 
iste T. Roscius, nomine Chrysogoni, quemadmodum 
ipse dicit, impetum facit. [Haec bona emuntur duo-
bus milibus nummum.] 

12. Haec omnia, judices, imprudente L. Sulla facta 
esse certo scio; neque enim mirum,—cum eodem 
tempore et ea quae praeterita sunt et ea quae videntur 
instare praeparet, cum et pacis constituen
dae rationem
et belli geréndi potestatem solus habeat, cum omnès 
in unum spectent, unus omnia gubernet, cum tot tan-
tisque negotiis distentus sit ut respirare lībere non 
possit —si aliquid non animadvertat, cum praesertim 
tam multi occupationem ejus observent tempusque 
aucupentur, ut, simul atque ille despexerit, aliquid 
hujusce modi moliantur. Huc accedit, quod quamvis 
ille felix sit, sicut est, tamen [in] tanta felicitate nemo 
potest esse, in magna familia qui neminem neque 
servum neque libertum improbūm habeat.

13. Interea iste T. Roscius, vir optimus, procurator 
Chrysogoni, Ameriám venit; in praedia hujus inva-
dit; hunc miserum, luctu perditum, qui nondum etiam 
omnia paterno funeri justa solvisset, nudum eicit;
domo atque foci patriis disque penatibus praecipitem, judices, exturbat; ipse amplissimae pecuniae fit dominus. Qui in sua re fuisset gentissimus, erat, ut fit, insolens in aliena. Multa palam domum suam auferebat, plura clam de medio removebat; non paucar suis adjutoribus large effusaeque donabat; reliqua constituta auctione vendebat: quod Amerinis usque eo visum est indignum, ut urbe tota fletus gemitusque fieret. ix. 14. Etenim multa simul ante oculos versabantur: mors hominis florentissimi Sex. Rosci crudelissima, filii autem ejus egestas indignissima, cui de tanto patrimonio praedo iste nefarius ne iter quidem ad sepulcrum patrium reliquisset, bonorum emptio flagitosas, possessio, furta, rapinae, donationes. Nemo erat qui non ardere illa omnia mallet, quam videre in Sex. Rosci viri optimi atque honestissimi bonis jactantem se ac dominantem T. Roscium. 15. Itaque decurionum decretem statim fit, ut decem primi profisciscantur ad L. Sullam, doceantque eum qui vir Sex. Roscius fuerit; conquerantur de iustorum scelere et injuriis; orent ut et illius mortui fatam et filii innocentis fortunas conservatas velit. Atque ipsum decreatum, quaeso, cognoscite.

[Decretum Decurionum.]

Legati in castra veniunt. Intellegitur, judices, id quod jam ante dixi, imprudente L. Sulla scelera haec et flagitia fieri. Nam statim Chrysogonus et ipse ad eos accedit et homines nobilis adlegat, ab eis qui peterent ne ad Sullam adirent, et omnia Chrysogonom quae vellent esse facturum pollicerentur. 16. Usque adeo autem ille pertimuerat, ut morti mallet quam de his rebus Sullam doceri. Homines antiqui, qui ex sua natura ceteros fingèrent, cum ille confirmaret sese nomen Sex. Rosci de tabulis exempturum praedia vacua filio traditurum, cumque id ita futurum T. Roscius Capito, qui in decem legatis erat, appromitteret,

x. 17. Quod hic simul atque sensit, de amicorum cognatorumque sententia Romam confugit, et sese ad Caeciliam [Nepotis filiam], quam honoris causa nomino, contulit, qua pater usus erat plurimum; in qua mulierè, judices, etiam nunc (id quod omnes semper existimaverunt) quasi exempli causa vestigia antiqui offici remanent. Ea Sex. Roscium inopem, ejectum domo atque expulsam ex suis bonis, fugièntem latronum tela et minas, recept domum, hospitique oppresso jam desperatoque ab omnibus opulenta est. Ejus virtute, fide, diligentia factum est, ut hic potius vivus in reos quam occisis in proscriptos referretur.

18. Nam postquam isti intelleixerunt summa diligentia vitam Sex. Rosci custodiri, neque sibi ullam caedis faciundae potestatem dari, consilium ceperunt plenum sceleris et audaciae, ut nomen hujus de parricidio deferrent, ut ad eam rem aliquem accusatorem veterem compararent, qui de ea re posset dicere aliquid, in qua re nulla subesset suspicio; denique ut, quoniam crimen non poterant, tempore ipso pugnarent. Ita loqui homines: quod judicia tam diu facta non essent, condemnari eum oportere, qui primus in judicium adductus esset; huic autem patronos propter Chrysogoni gratiam defuturos; de bonorum venditione et de ista societate verbum esse facturum neminem; ipso nomine parricidi et atrocitate criminis, fore ut hic nullo negotio tolleretur, cum ab nullo defensus esset. Hoc consilio atque adeo hac amentia impulsi, quem ipsi cum cuperent non potuerunt occidere, eum jugu- landum vobis tradiderunt.
Defence of Roscius.

xi. 19. Quid primum querat? aut unde potissimum, judices, orsiar? aut quod aut a quibus auxilium petam? Deorum né immortalium, populine Romani, vestramne, qui summam potestatem habetis, hoc tempore fidem implorem? Pater occisus nefarie, domus obsessa ab inimicis, bona adempta, possessa, direpta, fili vita infesta, saepe ferro atque insidiis appetita,—quid ab his tot malesciis sceleris absesse videtur? Tamen haec aliis nefariis cumulant atque ad-augent: crimen incredibile contingunt, testis in hunc et accusatores hujusce pecunia comparant. Hanc condicionem misero ferunt, ut optet, utrum malit cervices Roscio dare, an, ingutus in culeum, per summum de decus vitam amittere. Patronos huic futuros putaverunt: desunt: qui libere dicat, qui cum fide defendat,—id quod in hac causa est satís,—quoniam quidem suscepi, non deest profecto, judices.


21. Occidisse patrem Sex. Roscius arguitur. Scelestum, di immortales! ac nefarium facinus, atque ejus modi, quo uno malescicio scelera omnia complexa esse videantur. Etenim si, id quod praeclare a sapientibus dicitur, volvi saepe laeditur pietas, quod supplicium


23. Quae res igitur tantum istum furorem Sex. Rosciio objectit? 'Patri' inquit 'non placet.' Quam ob causam? Necesse est enim eam quoque justam et magnam et perspicuamuisse: nam, ut illud incredibile est, mortem oblatam esse patri a filio sine plurimis et maxime causis, sic hoc veri simile non est, odiouisse parenti filium, sine causis multis et magnis et necessariis. Rursus igitur eodem revertamur, et quaeramus quae tanta vitia fuerint in uno filio, quare is patri displiceret. At perspicuam est nullumuisse. Pater igitur
amens, qui odisset eum sine causa quem procrearat. At is quidem fuit omnium constantissimus. Ergo illud jam perspicuum profecto est, si neque amens pater neque perditus filius fuerit, neque odi causam patri neque sceleris filiouisse.

xxii. 24. De parricidio causa dicitur: ratio ab accusatore redita non est, quam ob causam patrem filius occiderit. Quod in minimis noxis, et in his levioribus peccatis quae magis crebra et jam prope cotidiana sunt, maxime et primum quaeritur,—quae causa malefici fuerit,—id Eruccius in parricidio quaeri non putat oportere. In quo scelere, judices, etiam cum multae causae convenisset unum in locum atque inter se congruere videntur, tamen non temere creditur, neque levi conjectura res penditur, neque testis incertus auditur, neque accusatoris ingenio res judicatur: cum multa antea commissa maleficia, cum vita hominis perditissima, tum singularis audacia ostendatur necesse est, neque audacia solum, sed summus furor atque amentia. 25. Haec cum sint omnia, tamen existent oportet expressa sceleris vestigia,—ubi, qua ratione, per quos, quo tempore maleficium sit admissum; quae nisi multa et manifesta sunt, profecto res tam scelest, tam atrox, tam nefaria credi non potest. Magna est enim vis humanitatis; multum valet communio sanguinis; reclamitat istius modi suspicionibus ipsa natura; portentum atque monstrum certissimum est, esse aliquem humana specie et figura, qui tantum immanitate bestias vicerit, ut propter quos hanc suavissimam luce aspexerit, eos indignissime luce privavit, cum etiam feras inter sese partus atque educatio et natura ipsa conciliet.

xxiii. 26. Non ita multis ante annis, aiunt T. Caelium quendam Tarracinensem, hominem non obscurum, cum cenatus cubitum in idem consilve cum duobus adolescentibus filiis isset, inventum esse mane...
jugulatum. Cum neque servus quisquam reperiretur, neque liber, ad quem ea suspicio pertineret, id aetatis autem duo filii propter cubantes ne sensisse quidem se dicerent, nomina filiorum de parricidio delata sunt. Quid poterat tam esse suspitiosum? Neutrumne sensisse? Asum autem esse quemquam se in id conclave committere, eo potissimum tempore, cum ibidem essent duo adolescentes filii, qui et sentire et defendere facile possent? 27. Erat porro nemo in quem ea suspicio conveniret. Tamen cum planum judicibus esset factum, aperto oratorio dormentis eos repertos esse, judicio absoluti adolescentes et suspitione omni liberati sunt. Nemo enim putabat quemquam esse, qui, cum omnia divina atque humana jura scelere nefario polluisset, somnum statim capere potuisse; propterque quod, qui tantum facinus commiserunt, non modo sine cura quiescere, sed ne spirare quidem sine metu possunt.

28. Quare hoc quo minus est credibile nisi ostenditur, eo magis est, si convincitur, vindicandum. Itaque cum multis ex rebus intellegi potest maiores nostros non modo armis plus quam ceteras nationes, verum etiam consilio sapientiaque potuisse, tum ex hac re vel maxime, quod in impios singularè supplicium invenerunt: insui voluerunt in culeum vivos, atque in flumen deici. O singularem sapientiam, judices! Nonne videntur hunc hominem ex rerum natura sustulisse et eripuisse, cui repente caelum, solem, aquam terramque ademerint: ut qui eum necasset, unde ipse natus esset, careret eis rebus omnibus, ex quibus omnia nata esse dicuntur? 29. Noluerunt feris corpus obicere, ne bestiis quoque, quae tantum scelus attigissent, immanioribus uteremur. Non sic nudos in flumen deiceræ, ne, cum delati essent in mare, ipsum polluerent, quo cetera, quae violata sunt, expiari putantur. Denique nihil tam vile neque tam volgare est cujus partem ullam reliquerint. Etenim quid est
tam commune quam spiritus vivis, terra mortuis, mare fluctuautibus, litus ejecitus? Ita vivunt, dum possunt, ut ducere animam de caelo non quaeant. Ita moriuntur, ut eorum ossa terra non tangat. Ita jactantur fluctibus, ut numquam adluantur. Ita postremo eiciuntur, ut ne ad saxa quidem mortui conquiescant.

30. Tanti malefici crimine, cui maleficio tam insigne supplicium est constitutum, probare te, Eruci, censes posse talibus viris, si ne causam quidem malefici protuleris? Si hunc apud bonorum emptores ipsos accusares, eique judicio Chrysogonus praeesset, tamen diligentius paratusque venisses. Tuum quid agatur non vides, an apud quos agatur? Agitur de parricidio, quod sine multis causis suscipi non potest; apud homines autem prudentissimos agitur, qui intellegunt neminem ne minimum quidem maleficium sine causa admittere.


tum dedit? Nonne his vestigiis ad caput maleficīi per-
veniri solet? Et simul tibi in mentem veniat facito,
quem ad modum vitam hujusce depinxeris: hunc
hominem serum atque agrestem fuisse; numquam
cum homine quocum conlocutum esse; numquam
in oppido constitisse.

33. Qua in re praeterēo illud, quod mihi maximo
argumento ad hujus innocentiam poterat esse, in rust-
cis moribus, in victu arido, in hac norrida incultaque
vita istius modi maleficia gigni non solere. Ut non
omnem frugem neque arborem in omni agro reperie
possis, sic non omne facinus in omni vita nascitur.
In urbe luxuries creatur; ex luxuria exsistat avaritia
nécesse est, ex avaritia erumpat audacia; inde omnia
scelera ac maleficia gignuntur. Vita autem haec
rustica, quam tu agrestem vocas, parsimoniae, dili-
gentiae, justitiae magistra est.

34. Verum haec missa facio. Illud quaero,—is
homo, qui, ut tute dicis, numquam inter homines
ferit, per quos homines hoc tantum facinus tam oc-
culte, absens praesertim, conficere potuerit. Multa
sunt falsa, judices, quae tamen arbitrīi suspitiose pos-
sunt; in his rebus si suspicio reperta erit, culpam
inessse concedam. Romae Sex. Roscio occiditur,
cum in agro Amerino esset filius. Litteras, credo,
misit aliqui sicario, qui Romae noverat neminem.
'Arcessivit aliquem.' Quem aut quando? 'Nuntium
misit. Quem aut ad quem? 'Pretio, gratia, spe,
promissis induxit aliquem.' Nihil horum ne confingo
quidem potest, et tamen causa de parricidio dicitur!

35. Reliquum est ut per servos id admiserit. O di
immortales! rem miseram et calamitosam, quod in
tali crimine quod innocentīi saluti solet esse, ut servos
in quaeestionem policeatur, id Sex. Roscio facere non
licet. Vos, qui hunc accusatis, omnis ejus servos
habetis. Unus puer, victus cotidiani minister, ex tanta

XLIII. 36. Venio nunc ad illud nomen aureum [Chrysogoni], sub quo nomine tota societas latuit: de quo, judices, neque quo modo dicam neque quo modo taceam reperire possum. Si enim taceo, vel maximam partem relinquo; sin autem dico, vereor ne non ille solus, id quod ad me nihil attinet, sed alii quoque plures laesos se esse putent. Tametsi ita se res habet, ut mihi in communem causam sectorum dicendum nihil magno opere videatur; haec enim causa nova prosecto et singularis est.

37. Bonorum Sex. Rosci emptor est Chrysogonus. Primum hoc videamus: ejus hominis bona qua ratione veperiunt, aut quo modo venire potuerunt? Atque hoc non ita quaeam, judices, ut id dicam esse indignum, hominis innocentis bona venisse; si enim haec auditentur ac libere dicentur, non fuit tanta homo Sex. Roscius in civitate, ut de eo prouissimum conqueramur. Verum [ego] hoc quaero: qui potuerunt ista ipsa lege, quae de proscriptione est,—sive Valeria est, sive Cornelia, non enim novi nec scio,—verum ista ipsa lege bona Sex. Rosci venire qui potuerunt? Scriptum enim ita dicunt esse, ut eorum bona veneant, qui pro-
scripti sunt — quo in numero Sex. Roscius non est — aut eorum qui in adversariorum præsidiis occisi sunt. Dum præsidia ulla fuerunt, in Sullæ præsidiis fuit; postea quam ab armis recessum est, in summo otio rediens a cena Romæ occisus est. Si lege, bona quoque legë venisse fateor; sin autem constat, contra omnis non modo veteres leges verum etiam novas occisum esse, bona quo jure aut quo more aut qua lege venierint quaero.

xliv. 38. In quem hoc dicam quaeris, Eruci? Non in eum quem vis et putas; nam Sullam et oratio mea ab initio et ipsius eximia virtus omni tempore purgavit. Ego haec omnia Chrysogonum fecisse dico, ut ementiretur, ut malum civem Rosciun fuisse fingēret, ut eum apud adversarios occisum esse diceret, ut his de rebus a legatis Amerinorumdoceri L. Sullam passus non sit. Denique etiam illud suspicor, omnino haec bona non venisse: id quod postea, si per vos, judices, licentur erit, aperietur.


40. Verum quaeo a vobis, judices, ut haec paucu quae restant ita audiatis, ut partim me dicere pro me ipso putetis, partim pro Sex. Rōscio. Quae enim
mihi indigna et intolerabilia videntur, quaeque ad omnis, nisi providemus, arbitror pertinere, ea pro me ipso ex animi mei sensu ac dolore pronuntio; quae ad hujus vitae [casum] causam [que] pertineant, et quid hic pro se dici velit, et qua condicione contentus sit, jam in extrema oratione nostra, judices, audietis.

XLV. 41. Ego haec a Chrysogono, mea sponte, remoto Sex. Roscio, quaero: primum, qua re civis optimi bona venierint; deinde, qua re hominis ejus, qui neque proscriptus neque apud adversarios occidus est, bona venierint, cum in eos solos lex scripta sit; deinde, quare aliquanto post eam diem venierint, quae dies in lege praefinita est; deinde, cur tantulo venierint. Quae omnia si, quem ad modum solent liberti nequam et improbi facere, in patronum suum voluerit conferre, nihil egerit: nemo est enim qui nesciat propter magnitudinem rerum multa multos furtim imprudente L. Sulla commissae.

42. Placet igitur in his rebus aliquid imprudentia praeteriri? Non placet, judices, sed necesse est. Etenim si Juppiter optimus maximus, cujus nētu et arbitrio caelum terra mariaque reguntur, saepe ventis vehementioribus aut immoderatis tempestatibus aut nimio calore aut intolerabili frigore hominibus nocuit, urbis delevit, fruges perditit, quorum nihil pernici causa divino consilio, sed vi ipsa et magnitudine rerum factum putamus; at contra, conmoda quibus utimur lucemque qua fruimur spiritumque quem ducimus ab eo nobis dari atque imperiri videmus,—quid miramur L. Sullam, cum solus rem publicam regeret, orbemque terrarum gubernaret, imperique majestatem quam armis receperat legibus confirmaret, aliqua animadvertere non potuisse? Nisi hoc mirum est, quod vis divina adsequi non pòssit, si id mens humana adepta non sit.

43. Vereor, judices, ne quis imperitior existimet me
causam nobilitatis victoriamque voluisse laedere: tam-etsi meo jure possum, si quid in hac parte mihi non placeat, vituperare; non enim vereor ne quis alienum me animum habuisse a causa nobilitatis existimet.

Sciunt ei qui me norunt, me pro mea tenui infirmaque parte,—postea quam id quod maxime volui fieri non potuit, ut componeretur,—id maxime defendisse, ut ei vincerent qui vicerunt. Quis enim erat, qui nonvideret humilitatem cum [dignitate de] amplitudine contendere? Quo in certamine perdit civis erat non se ad eos jungere, quibus incolamibus, et domi dignitas et foris auctoritas retineretur. Quae perfecta esse et suum cuique honorem et gradum red-ditum gaudeo, judices, vehementerque laetor; eaque omnia deorum voluntate, studio populi Romani, consilio et imperio et felicitate L. Sullae, gesta esse intellego.

44. Quod animadversum est in eos qui contra omni ratione pugnarunt, non debeo reprehendere; quod virginis fortibus, quorum opera eximia in rebus gerendis exstítit, honos habitus est, laudo. Quae ut fierent, idcirco pugnatum esse arbitror, meque in eo studio partium luisse confiteor. Sin autem id actum est, et idcirco arma sumpta sunt, ut homines postremi pecu-niiis alienis locupletarentur, et in fortunas uniuscujus-que impetum facerent, et id non modo re prohibere non licet, sed ne verbis quidem vituperare, tum vero in isto bello non recreatus neque restitutus, sed sub-actus oppressusque populus Romanus est. Verum longe aliter est; nihil horum est, judices: non modo non laedetur causa nobilitatis, si istis hominibus res-sistetis, verum etiam ornabitur.

XLVIII. 45. Quapropert desinant aliquando dicere male aliquem locutum esse, si qui vere ac libere locu-tus sit; desinant suam causam cum Chrysogono com-municare; desinant, si ille laesus sit, de se aliquid
Defence of Roscius.

Quae quidem dominatio, judices, in alijis rebus antea versabatur; nunc vero quam viam munitor, quod iter adfectet videtis,—ad fidem, ad jusjurandum, ad judicia vestra, ad id, quod solum prope in civitate sincerum sanctumque restat. Hicne etiam sese putat aliquid posse Chrysogonus? Hic etiam potens esse volt? O rem miseram atque acerbam! Neque, meherculis, hoc indigna fero, quod verear ne quid possit; verum quod ausus est, quod speravit sese apud talis viros aliquid posse ad perlincem innocentis, id ipsum queror.

XLIX. 46. Idcircone expectata nobilitas armis atque ferro rem publicam recuperavit ut ad libidinem suam liberti servolique nobilium bona, fortunas possessioneque nostras vexare possent? Si id actum est, fateor me errasse qui hoc maluerim; fateor insanisse qui cum illis senserim. Tametsi inermis, judices, sensi. Sin autem victoria nobilium ornamento atque emolumento seipsum populoque Romano debet esse, tum vero optimo et nobilissimo cuique meam orationem gratissimam esse oportet. Quod si quis est qui et se et causam laedi putet cum Chrysogonus vituperetur, is causam ignorant; se ipsum probe novit. Causa enim splendidiior fiet, si nequissimo cuique resistetur. Ille improbissimus Chrysogoni fautor, qui sibi cum illo rationem communicatam putat, laeditur, cum ab hoc splendore causae separatur.

47. Verum haec omnis oratio, ut jam ante dixi, mea est, qua me uti res publica et dolor meus et istorum injuria coegit. Sex. Roscius horum nihil indignum putat, neminem accusat, nihil de suo patrimonio queritur. Putat homo imperitus morum, agricola et rusticus, ista omnia, quae vos per Sullam gesta esse dicitis, more, lege, jure gentium facta. Culpa liberatus et crimine
nefario solutus, cupit a vobis discedere. Si hac indigna suspitione carēat, animo aequo se carere suis omnibus commodis dicit. Rogat oratque te, Chrysogone, si nihil de patris fortunis amplissimis in suam rem convertit, si nulla in re te fraudavit, si tibi optima fide sua omnia concessit, adnumeravit, appendit, si vestitum quo ipse tectus erat, anulumque de digito suum tibi tradidit, si ex omnibus rebus se ipsum nudum neque praeterea quicquam exceptit, ut sibi per te liceat inno- centi amicorum opibus vitam in egestate degere. *L. 48.* 'Praedias mea tu possides, ego aliena misericordia vivo: concedo, et quod animus aequus est, et quia necesse est. Mea domus tibi patet, mihi clausa est: fero. Familia mea maxima tu uteris, ego servum habeo nullum: patior et serendum puto. Quid vis amplius? Quid insequeris? Quid oppugnas? Qua in re tuam voluntatem laedi a me putas? Ubi tuis commodis officio? Quid tibi obsto?' Si spoliorum causa vis hominem occidere, quid quaeris amplius? Si inimicitiarum, quae sunt tibi inimicitiae cum eo, cujus ante praedia possedisti quam ipsum cognovisti? Si metus, ab eone aliquid metuis, quem vides ipsum ab se tam atrocem injuriam propulsare non posse? Sin quod bona quae Rosci fuerunt tua facta sunt, idcirco hunc illius filium studes perdere, nonne ostendis id te vereri, quod praeter ceteros tu metuere non debeas, ne quando liberis proscriptorum bona patria reddantur?

Facis injuriam, Chrysogone, si majorem spem emptionis tuae in hujus exitio ponis, quam in eis rebus quas L. Sulla gessit. Quod si tibi causa nulla est cur hunc miserum tanta calamitate adfici velis, si tibi omnia sua praeter animam tradidit, nec sibi quicquam paternum ne monumenti quidem causa clam reservavit, per deos immortalis, quae ista tanta crudelitas est? Quae tam fera immanisque natura? Quis umquam praedo fuit tam nefarius, quis pirata tam barbarus, ut,
cum integram praedam sine sanguine habere posset, cruenta spolia detrahere mallet? 50. Scis hunc nihil habere, nihil audere, nihil posse, nihil umquam contra rem tuam cogitasse; et tamen oppugnas eum quem neque metuere potes, neque odisse debes, nec quicquam jam habere reliqui vides quod ei detrahere possis. Nisi hoc indignum putas, quod vestitum sedere in judicio vides, quem tu e patrimonio tangoam e naufragio nudum expulisti; quasi vero nescias hunc et ali et vestiri a Caecilia, [Baliarici filia, Nepotis sorore,] spectatissima femina, quae cum clarissimum patrem, amplissimos patruos, ornatissimum fratrem habet, tamen, cum esset mulier, virtute perfect ut; quanto honore ipsa ex illorum dignitate adficeretur, non minora illis ornamenta ex sua laude redderet.

LI. 51. An quod diligenter defenditur, id tibi indignum facinüs videtur? Mihi crede, si pro patris hujus hospitiis et gratia vellent omnes hujus hospites adesse, et auderent libere defendere, satis copiose defendetur; sin autem pro magnetudine injuriae, proque eo quod summa res publica in hujus periculo temptatur, haec omnes vindicarent, consistere mehercule vobis isto in loco non liceret. Nunc ita defenditur, non sane ut moleste ferre adversarii debeant, neque ut se potentia superari putent. 52. Quae domi gerenda sunt, ea per Caeciliam transiguntur; fœri judicique rationem M. Messala, ut videtis, judices, suscipit. Qui, si jam satis aetatis atque roboris haberet, ipse pro Sex. Roscio diceret: quoniam ad dicendum impedimento est aetas et pudor qui ornat aetatem, causam mihi tradidit, quem sua causa cupidere ac debere intellegebat; ipse adsiduiitate, consilio, auctoritate, diligentia perfecit, ut Sex. Rosci vita, erepta de manibus sectorum, sententiis judicum permenteretur. Nimirum, judices, pro hac nobilitate pars maxima civitatis in armis fuit; haec acta res est, ut ei nobiles restituerentur in civitatem,
qui hoc facerent quod facere Messalam videtis,—qui caput innocentis defenderent, qui injuriae resisterent, qui quantum possent in salute alterius quam in exitio mallent ostendere; quod si omnes qui eodem loco nati sunt facerent, et res publica ex illis et ipsi ex invidia minus laborarent.

LII. 53. Verum si a Chrysogono, judices, non imperamus, ut pecunia nostra contentus sit, vitam ne petat, —si ille adduci non potest, ut, cum ademerit nobis omnia quae nostra erant propria, ne lucem quoque hanc, quae communis est, eripere cupiat,—si non satis habet avaritiam suam pecunia explere, nisi etiam crudelitati sanguis praebitus sit,—unum petugium, judices, una spes reliqua est Sex. Roscio, eadem quae rei publicae, vestra pristina bonitas et misericordia. Quae si manet, salvi etiam nunc esse possimus; sin ea crudelitas, quae hoc tempore in re publica versata est, vestros quoque animos — id quod fieri profecto non potest — duriores acerbioresque reddidit, actum est, judices: inter feras satius est aetatem degere, quam in hac tanta immanitate versari. 54. Ad eamne rem vos reservati estis, ad eamne rem delecti, ut eos condemnaretis, quos sectores ac sicarii jugulare non potuissent? Solent hoc boni imperatores facere, cum proelium committunt, ut in eo loco quo fugam hostium fore arbitrentur milites conlocent, in quos, si qui ex acie fugerint, de improviso incidant. Nimirum simili- ter arbitrantur isti bonorum emptores,—vos hic, talis viros, sedere, qui excipiatis eos qui de suis manibus effugerint. Di prohibeant, judices, ut hoc, quod ma- jores consilium publicum vocari voluerunt, praesidium sectorum existimetur.

55. An vero, judices, vos non intellegitis nihil aliud agi nisi ut proscriptorum liberi quavis ratione tollantur, et ejus rei initium in vestro jurejurando atque in Sex. Rosci periculo quaeri? Dubiumne est ad quem
maleficium pertineat, cum videatis ex altera parte sectorem, inimicum, sicarium eundemque accusatorem hoc tempore; ex altera parte egentem, probatum suis filium, in quo non modo culpa nulla, sed ne suspicio quidem potuit consistere? LIII. 56. Numquid huic aliud videtis obstare [Roscio], nisi quod patris bona venierunt? Quodsi id vos suscipitis, et eam ad rem operam vestram profitemini, si idcirco sedetis, ut ad vos adducantur eorum liberi quorum bona venierunt, cavete, per deos immortalis, judices, ne nova et multo crudelior per vos proscriptio instaurata esse videatur. Illam priorem, quae facta est in eos qui arma capere potuerunt, tamen senatus suscipere noluit, ne quid acrius quam more majorum comparatum esset publico consilio factum videretur. Hanc vero, quae ad eorum liberos atque ad infantium puerorum incusabula pertinet, nisi hoc judicio a vobis reicitis et aspernamini, videte, per deos immortalis, quem in locum rem publicam perventuram putetis.

IMPEACHMENT OF VERRES.

B.C. 70.

Caius Verres, a man of noble birth, but notorious for his crimes and exactions in the civil war and in the offices he had held since, was city prætor (prætor urbanus) B.C. 74. At the close of his term of office, he went, in accordance with the law, as pro-prætor, to govern the province of Sicily. By reason of the disturbed condition of Italy, from the revolt of Spartacus, he was not relieved at the end of a year, as the law required, but continued two years longer in the government of the province, when he was succeeded by Lucius Cæcilius Metellus. During these three years he was guilty of the most abominable oppressions and exactions; and, as soon as they were relieved of his presence, the Sicilians brought a prosecution against him in the court of Repetundæ (for the trial of cases of Extortion), presided over by the prætor Marcus Acilius Glabrio. To conduct the prosecution, they had recourse to Cicero, who already stood high among Roman advocates, and who was personally known and trusted by them on account of his honorable administration of the quæstorship in their island. Cicero willingly took charge of the case, the more so as the counsel for Verres was Hortensius, the leading lawyer of his time, against whom he was eager to measure his strength.

Although the cruelty and rapacity of Verres were notorious, yet his relations to the Roman nobility gained him the same support at home which recently, under somewhat similar circumstances, was afforded to Governor Eyre in England, on his return from Jamaica. Not only Hortensius, but Curio, a man of excellent reputation, with members of the eminent families of Scipio and Metellus, stood firmly by him. The only hope of Verres was in preventing a fair and speedy trial. First he tried to obtain a prosecutor who should be in collusion with him, and would not push him too hard. For this purpose one Cæcilius was put forward, an insignificant person, but a native of Sicily. Cicero's first speech in the case was therefore before the prætor Glabrio in person, to show that he, rather than Cæcilius, should be allowed to conduct the case. This it was not hard to do, and he set out at once for Sicily to collect evidence, for which purpose he was allowed one hundred
and ten days. He was, however, so industrious and skilful in this, that he returned in fifty days, thus completely foiling the next plan of the opposition, which was to bring on a trumped-up action before the court, which should have precedence of that against Verres, merely to consume time. Cicero returned, with ample evidence, even before his rival had left Italy. The trial was now fixed for Aug. 5, B.C. 70, in the consulship of Pompey and Crassus.

Meantime (in the latter part of July) the elections were held for the next year,—as was the custom in Rome, several months before the newly-elected magistrates entered upon their offices; the successful candidate, under the title of designatus, enjoyed a dignity almost equal to that of an actual magistrate, although with no real power (see ch. ix.). In these elections Cicero was designated ædile; but his rival Hortensius was chosen consul, with Quintus Metellus Creticus, Verres’ fast friend, as his colleague. More than this, Marcus Metellus, brother of Quintus, was chosen prætor, and the lot fell to him to preside the next year in the court of Repetundae. If now the trial could be put over till the next year, when Hortensius and the two Metelli would be in the three most influential positions in the State, Verres felt quite sure of getting clear. Neither did it seem as if this would be very hard to bring about; for the last six months of the Roman year were so full of festivals and other days in which the courts could not sit, that the case would be liable to constant interruptions and delays. This would have been a sore disappointment to Cicero, for, by good luck in drawing the names, and sagacity in challenging, he had a jury that he could trust, and he was not willing to run the risk of a change.

Under these circumstances Cicero made the second speech of the Verrine group—that which is known as the Actio Prima. In this he proved so conclusively the guilt of the defendant and his hope to escape by bribery, and at the same time showed himself so determined to urge the case through before the New Year, that he hardly had any need to produce his witnesses. Hortensius soon threw up his case, and Verres went into exile, with a name for ever associated with extortion and misgovernment. Full restitution of the plunder was, however, not obtained: a compromise was made, by which a less sum was paid in satisfaction of the claims. The five speeches known as the “Accusation” (Actio Secunda) were never delivered, but were written out and published in order to put on record the facts which the orator had gathered with so much pains.
QUOD erat optandum maxime, judices, et quod unum ad invidiam vestri ordinis infamiamque judiciorum sedandum maxime pertinebat, id non humano consilio, sed prope divinitus datum atque oblatum vobis summo rei publicae tempore videtur. Inveteravit enim jam opinio perniciosa rei publicae, vobisque periculosa, quae non modo apud populum Romanum, sed etiam apud exterar nationes, omnium sermone percrebuit: his judiciis quae nunc sunt, pecuniosum hominem, quamvis sit nocens, neminem posse damnari. 2. Nunc, in ipso discrimine ordinis judiciorumque vestrorum, cum sint parati qui contionibus et legibus hanc invidiam senatus inflammare contentur, [reus] in judicium adductus est [C. Verres], homo vita atque factis omnium jam opiniione damnatus, pecuniae magnitudine sua spe et praelectione absolutus.

Huic ego causae, judices, cum summa voluntate et exspectatione populi Romani, actor accessi, non ut augerem invidiam ordinis, sed ut infamiae communi succurrerem. Adduxi enim hominem, in quo reconciliare existimationem judiciorum amissam, redire in gratiam cum populo Romano, satis facere exteris nationibus, possetis; depeculatorem aerari, vexatorem Asiae atque Pamphyliae, praedonem juris urbani, labem atque perniciem provinciae Siciliae. 3. De quo si vos vere ac religiose judicaveritis, auctoritas ea, quae in vobis remanere debet, haeredit; sin istius ingentes divitiae judiciorum religionem veritatemque perfregerrint, ego hoc tamen adsequar, ut judicium potius rei publicae, quam aut reus judicibus, aut accusator reo, defuisse videatur.

11. Equidem, ut de me confitear, judices, cum multae mihi a C. Verre insidiaex terra marique factae sint, quas partim mea diligentia devitarim, partim amicorum studio officioque repulerim; numquam tamen
neque tantum pericum mihi adire visus sum, neque tanto opere pertimui, ut nunc in ipso judicio. 4. Neque tantum me exspectatio accusationis meae, concursusque tantae multitudinis, quibus ego rebus vehementissime perturbor, commovet, quantum istius insidiae nefariae, quas uno tempore mihi, vobis, M. Glabrioni, populo Romano, sociis, exteris nationibus, ordini, nominini denique senatorio, facere conatur qui ita dictitat, eis esse metuendum, qui quod ipsis solis satis esset surripuissent; se tantum eripuisse, ut id multis satis esse possit; nihil esse tam sanctum quod non violari, nihil tam munitum quod non expugnari pecunia possit.

5. Quod si quam audax est ad conandum, tam esset obscurus in agendo, fortasse aliqua in re nos aliquando fessillset. Verum hoc adhuc percommode cadit, quod cum incredibili ejus audacia singularis stultitia conjuncta est. Nam, ut apertus in corripiens dis pecuniis fuit, sic in spe corrumpendi judici, perspicua sua consilia conatusque omnibus fecit. Semel ait, se in vita pertimuisse, tum cum primum a me reus factus sit; quod, cum e provincia recens esset, invidiaque et infamia non recenti, sed vetere ac diurna flagraret, tum, ad judicium corrumpendum, tempus alienum offenderet. 6. Itaque, cum ego diem in Siciliam inquirendi perexiguam postulavissem, venit iste, qui sibi in Achaiam biduo breviorem diem postularet,—non ut is idem conficeret diligentia et industria sua quod ego meo labore et vigiliis consecutus sum, etenim ille Achaicus inquisitor ne Brundisium quidem pervenit ego Siciliam totam quinquaginta diebus sic obii, ut omnium populum privatorumque literas injuriasque cognoscerem; ut perspicuum cuvis esse posset, hominem ab isto quaesitum esse, non qui reum suum adduceret, sed qui meum tempus obsideret.

III. 7. Nunc homo audacissimus atque amentissimus hoc cogitat. Intellegit me ita paratum atque in-
structum in judicium venire, ut non modo in auribus vestris, sed in oculis omnium, sua furta atque flagitia defixurus sim. Vide senatores multos esse testis audaciae suae; videt multos equites Romanos frequentis praeterea civis atque socios, quibus ipse insignis injustias fecerit. Vide etiam tot tam gravis ab amisimis civitatis legationes, cum publicis auctoritatis convenisse. Quae cum ita sint, usque eo de omnibus bonis male existimat; usque eo senatoria judicia perdita profugataque esse arbitratur, ut hoc palam dictitet, non sine causa se cupidum pecuniae fuisse, quoniam in pecunia tantum praesidium experietur esse: sese (id quod difficilimum fuerit) tempus ipsum emisse judici sui, quo cetera facilius emere postea posset; ut, quoniam criminum vim subterfugere nullo modo poterat, procellam temporis devitaret. Quod si non modo in causa, verum in aliquo honesto praesidio, aut in alicujus eloquentia aut gratia, spem aliquam conlocasset, profecto non haec omnia conligeret atque auctuparetur; non usque eo despiceret contemneretque ordinem senatorium, ut arbitratu ejus deligeretur ex senatu, qui reus fieret; qui, dum quae opus essent compararet, causam interea ante eum diceret. Quibus ego rebus quid iste speret, et quo animum intendat, facile perspicio. Quam ob rem vero se confidat aliquid perficere posse, hoc praeore, et hoc consilio, intellegere non possim. Unum illud intellego (quod populus Romanus in refectione judicum judicavit), ea spe istum fuisse praeditum ut omnem rationem salutis in pecunia constitueret; hoc erepto praesidio, ut nullam sibi rem adjumento fore arbitraretur.

Etenim quod est ingenium tantum, quae tanta facultas dicendi aut copia, quae istius vitam, tot vitiiis flagitiisque convictam, jampridem omnium voluntate judicioque damnatam, aliqua ex parte possit defen-
dere? \( ^{11} \) Cujus ut adolescentiae maculas ignominiasque praeteream; quaestura [primus gradus honoris] quid aliud habet in se, nisi [Cn. Carbonem spoliatum] a quaestore suo pecunia publica nudatum et proditum consulem? desertum exercitum? relictam provinciam? sortis necessitudinem religionemque violatam? Cujus legatio exitium fuit Asiae totius et Pamphyliae: quibus in provinciis multas domos, plurimas urbis, omnia fana depopulatus est, tum cum [in Cn. Dolabellam] suum scelus, illud pristinum renovavit et instauravit quaestorium\( ^{x} \) cum eum, cui et legatus et pro quaestore fuisset, et in invidiam suis maleficiis adduxit, et in ipsis periculis non solum deseruit, sed etiam oppugnavit ac prodidit? \( ^{12} \) Cujus praetura urbanaaedium sacrarum fuit publicorumque operum depopulatio; simul in jure dicundo, bonorum possessionumque, contra omnium instituta, addictio et condonatio. Jam vero omnium vitiorum suorum plurima et maxima constituit monumenta et indicia in provincia Sicilia; quam iste per triennium ita vexavit ac perdidit, ut ea restitui in antiquum statum nullo modo possit\( ^{x} \) vix autem per multis annos, innocentisque praetores, aliqua ex parte recreari aliquando posse videatur. \( ^{13} \) Hoc praetore, Siculi neque suas leges, neque nostra senatus-consulta, neque communia jura tuerunt. Tantum quisque habet in Sicilia, quantum hominis avarissimi et libidinosissimi aut imprudentiam subterfugit, aut satietati superfuit.

v. Nulla res per triennium, nisi ad nutum istius, judicata est: nulla res cujusquam tam patria atque avita fuit, quae non ab eo, imperio istius, abjudicaretur. \( ^{x} \) Innumerabiles pecuniae ex aratorum bonis novo nefarioque instituto coactae; socii fidelissimi in hostium numero existimati; cives Romani servilem in modum cruciati et necati; homines nocentissimi propter pecunias judicio liberati; honestissimi atque
integerrimi, absentes rei facti, indicta causa damnati et ejecti; portus munitissimi, maximeae tutissimaeque urbes piratis praedonibusque patefactae; nautae militescque Siculorum, socii nostri atque amici, name ne-cati; classes optima atque opportunissimae, cum magna ignominia populi Romani, amissae et perditae.


15. At enim haec ita commissa sunt ab isto, ut non cognita sint ab hominibus? Hominem arbitror esse neminem, qui nomen istius audierit, quin facta quoque ejus nefaria commemorare possit; ut mihi magis timendum sit, ne multa crimina praetermittere, quam ne qua in istum fingere, existimer. Neque enim mihi videtur haec multitudo, quae ad audiendum convenit, cognoscere ex me causam voluisse, sed ea, quae scit, mecum recognoscere.

vi. Quae cum ita sint, iste homo amens ac perditus alia mecum ratione pugnat. Non id agit, ut alicujus eloquentiam mihi opponat; non gratia, non auctoritate cujusquam, non potentia nititur. Simulat his se rebus confidere, sed video quid agat (neque enim agit occultissime): proponit inania mihi nobilitatis, hoc est, hominum adrogantium, nomina; qui non tam me
impediunt quod nobiles sunt, quam adjuvant quod noti sunt. Simulat se eorum praesidio confidere, cum interea aliud quiddam jam diu machinetur.


17. Praeclare se res habebat. Libelli nominum vestrorum, consilique hujus, in manibus erant omnium. Nulla nota, nullus color, nullae sordes videbantur his sententiis adlini posse: cum iste repente, ex alacri atque laeto, sic erat humiliis atque demissus, ut non modo populo Romano, sed etiam sibi ipse, condennatus videretur. Ecce autem repente, his diebus paucis comitiis consularibus factis, eadem illa vetera consilia pecunia majore repetuntur; eaedemque vestrae famae fortunisque omnium insidia per eodem homines comparantur. Quae res primo, judices, pertenui nobis argumento indicioque patefacta est: post, aperto suspitionis introitu, ad omnia intima istorum consilia sine ullo errore pervenimus.

vii. 18. Nam, ut Hortensius, consul designatus, domum reducebatur et Campo, cum maxima frequentia ac multitudine, fit obviam casu ei multitudini C. Curio; quem ego hominem honoris [potius quam contumeliae] causa nominatum volo. Etenim ea dicam, quae ille, si commemorari noluisset, non tanto in conventu, tam aperte palamque dixisset, quae tamen a me pedetentim cauteque dicentur; ut et amicitiae nostrae, et dignitatis illius, habita ratio esse intellegatur.

diebus, cum praetores designati sortirentur, et M. Metello obtigisset, ut is de pecuniis repetundis quaereret; nuntiatur mihi, tantam isti gratulationem esse factam, ut is domum quoque pueros mitteret, qui uxori suae nuntiarent. Sane ne haec quidem mihi res placebat: neque tamen, tanto opere quid in hac sorte metuendum mihi esset, intellegebam. Unum illud ex hominibus certis, ex quibus omnia comperi, reperiebam: fiscos compluris cum pecunia Siciliensi, a quodam senatore ad equitem Romanum esse translatos: ex his quae decem fiscos ad senatorem illum relictos esse, comitiorum meorum nomine: omnesores omnium tribuum noctu ad istum vocatos. Ex quibus quidem, qui se omnia mea causa debere arbitrabatur, eadem illa nocte ad me venit demonstrat, qua iste oratione usus esset: commemorasse istum, quam liberaliter eos tractasset [etiam] antea, cum ipse praeturam petisset, et proximis consularibus praetoriisque comitiis: deinde continuo esse pollicitum, quantam vellent pecuniam, si me aedilitate dejecissent. Hic alios negasse audere; alios respondisse, non putare id perfici posse: inventum tamen esse fortum amicum, ex eadem familia, Q. Verrem, Romilia, ex optima divisorum disciplina, patris istius discipulum atque amicum, qui, HS quingentis milibus depositis, id se perfecturum polliceretur: et fuisse tum non nullos, qui se una facturos esse dicerent. Quae cum ita essent, sane benevolo animo me, ut magno opere cave-rem praemonebat.

ix. 24. Sollicitabar rebus maximis uno atque eo per-exiguo tempore. Urgebant comitia; et in his ipsis oppugnabar grandi pecunia Instabat judicium: ei quoque negotio fisci Sicilienses minabantur. Agere quae ad judicium pertinebant libere, comitiorum metu deterrebar: petitioni toto animo servire, propter judici-rium non licebat. Minari denique divisoribus ratio
non erat, propterea quod eos intellegere videbam me hoc judicio districtum atque obligatum futurum. 25. Atque hoc ipso tempore Siculis denuntiatum esse audio, primum ab Hortensio, domum ad illum ut venirent: Siculos in eo sane liberos fuisset; qui quam ob rem arcesserentur cum intellexerent, non venisse. Interea comitia nostra, quorum iste se, ut ceterorum hoc anno comitiorum, dominum esse arbitrabatur, haberi coepit sunt. Cursare iste homo potens, cum filio blando et gratioso, circum tribus: paternos amicos, hoc est divisares, appellare omnes et convenire. Quod cum esset intellectum et animadversum, fecit animo libentissimo populus Romanus, ut cujus divitiae me de fide deducere non potissent, ne ejusdem pecunia de honore deiceret.

26. Postea quam illa petitionis magna cura liberatus sum, animo coepi multo magis vacuo ac soluto, nihil aliud nisi de judicio agere et cogitare. Reperio, judices, haec ab istis consilia inita et constituta, ut, quacumque posset ratione, res ista duceretur, ut apud M. Metellum praetorem causa diceretur. In eo esse haec commodax primum M. Metellum amicissimam; deinde Hortensium consulem non [solum, sed] etiam Q. Metellum, qui quam isti sit amicus attendite: dedit enim praerogativam suae voluntatis ejus modi, ut isti pro praerogativis eam reddidisse videatur.

27. An me taciturum tantis de rebus existimavistis? et me, in tanto rei publicae existimationisque meae periculo, cuiquam consulturum potius quam officio et dignitati meae? Arcessit alter consul designatus Siculios: veniunt non nulli, propterea quod L. Metellus esset praetor in Sicilia. Cum iis ita loquitur: se consulsem esse; fratrem suum alterum Siciliam provinciam obtinere, alterum esse quaesitum de pecuniis repetundis; Verri ne noceri possit multis rationibus esse provisum.
x. 28. Quid est, quaeo, Metelle, judicium corrumpere, si hoc non est? testis, praesertim [Siculos], timidos homines et adflectos, non solum auctoritate deterrire, sed etiam consulari metu, et duorum praetorum potestate? Quid faceres pro innocentem homine et propinquo, cum propter hominem perditissimum atque alienissimum de officio ac dignitate decedis, et committis ut, quod ille dicitat, alicui, qui te ignoret, verum esse videatur? 29. Nam hoc Verrem dicere aiebant, te non fato, ut ceteros ex vestra familia, sed opera sua consulem factum. Quo igitur consules et quaesitor erunt ex illius voluntate. 'Non solum effugiemus' inquit 'hominem in quaerendo nimium diligentem, nimium servientem populi existimationi, M. Glabrionem: accedet etiam nobis illud. Judex est M. Caesonius, conlega nostri accusatoris, homo in rebus judicandis spectatus et cognitus, quem minime expediat esse in eo consilio quod conemur aliqua ratione corrumpere: propterea quod jam antea, cum judex in Juniano consilio fuisset, turpissimum illud facinus non solum graviter tuit, sed etiam in medium protulit. Hunc judicem ex Kal. Januariis non habebitur.

X 30. Q. Manlium, et Q. Cornificium, duos severissimos atque integerrimos judices, quod tribuni plebis tum erunt, judices non habeberimus. P. Sulpicius, judex tristis et integer, magistratum ineat oportet Nonis Decembribus. M. Crepereius, ex acerrima illa equestri familia et disciplina; L. Cassius ex familia cum ad ceteras res tum ad judicandum severissima; Cn. Tremellius, homo summa religione et diligentia, tres hi, homines veteres, tribuni militares sunt designati: ex Kal. Januariis non judicabunt. X Subsortiemur etiam in M. Metelli locum, quoniam is huic ipsi quaestioni praefuturus est. Ita secundum Kalendas Januarias, et praetore et prope toto consilio commutato, magnas accusatoris minas, magnamque exspecta-
tionem judici, ad nostrum arbitrium libidinemque eludemus.


atque in explicandis criminibus operam consumerem; nunc, quoniam pugnare contra me instituisti, non tam ex tua natura quam ex istius tempore et causa [mali-tiose], necesse est istius modi rationi aliquo consilio obsistere. 34. Tua ratio est, ut secundum binos ludos mihi respondere incipias; mea, ut ante primos ludos comperendinem. Ita fit ut tua ista ratio existimetur astuta, meum hoc consilium necessarium.

xii. Verum illud quod institueram dicere, mihi rem tecum esse, hujus modi est. Ego cum hanc causam Siculorum rogatu recepissem, idque mihi amplum et praeclarum existimassem, eos velle meae fidei diligenti-aeque periculum facere, qui innocentiae abstinentiae-que fecissent; tum suscepto negotio, majus quidam mihi proposui, in quo meam in rem publicam vo-luntatem populi Romanus perspicere posset. 35. Nam illud mihi nequaquam dignum industria conatuque meo videbatur, istum a me in judicium, jam omnium judicio condemnatum, vocari, nisi ista tua intolerabili potentia, et ea cupiditas qua per hosce annos in quibusdam judiciis usus es, etiam in istius hominis desperati causa interponeretur. Nunc vero, quoniam haec te omnis dominatio regnumque judiciorum tanto opere delectat, et sunt homines quos libidoinis infamiaeque suae neque pudeat neque taedeat,—qui, quasi de industria, in odium offensionemque populi Romani inruere videantur,—hoc me profiteor suscipisse, magnum fortasse onus et mihi periculosissimum, verum tamen dignum in quo omnis nervos aetatis industriaeque meae contenderem.

36. Quoniam totus ordo paucorum improbitate et audacia premitur et urgetur infamia judiciorum, profiteor huic generi hominum me inimicum accusatorem, odiosum, adsiduum, acerbum adversarium. Hoc mihi sumo, hoc mihi deposco, quod agam in magistratu, quod agam ex eo loco ex quo me populus Romanus
ex Kal. Januariis secum agere de re publica ac de hominibus improbis voluit: hoc munus aeditatis meae populo Romano amplissimum pulcherrimumque pollicor. Moneo, praedico, ante denuntio; qui aut depone, aut accipere, aut recipere, aut polliceri, aut sequestres aut interpretes corrumpendi judici solent esse, quique ad hanc rem aut potentiam aut impudentiam suam professi sunt, abistineant in hoc judicio manus animosque ab hoc scelere nefario. 

xiii. 37. Erit tum consul Hortensius cum summo imperio et potestate; ego autem aedilis, hoc est, paulo amplius quam privatus. Tamen hujus modi haec res est, quam me acturum esse pollicor, ita populo Romano grata atque jucunda, ut ipse consul in hac causa prae me minus etiam (si fieri possit) quam privatus esse videatur. Omnia non modo commemorabuntur, sed etiam, expositis certis rebus, agentur, quae inter decem annos, posteaquam judicia ad senatum translata sunt, in rebus judicandis nefarie flagitioseque facta sunt. 38. Cognoscet ex me populus Romanus quid sit, quam ob rem, cum equester ordo judicaret, annos prope quinquaginta continuos, in nullo judice [equite Romano judicante] ne tenuissima quidem suspicio acceptae pecuniae ob rem judicandam constituta sit: quid sit quod, judiciis ad senatorium ordinem translatis, sublataque populi Romani in unum quemque vestrum potestate, Q. Calidius damnatus dixerit, minoris HS triciens praetorium hominem honeste non posse damnari: quid sit quod, P. Septimio senatore dannato, Q. Hortensio praetore, de pecuniis repetundis lis aestimata sit eo nomine, quod ille ob rem judicandam pecuniam accepisset; 39. quod in C. Herennio, quod in C. Popilio, senatoribus, qui ambo peculatus damnati sunt; quod in M. Atilio, qui de majestate damnatus est, hoc planum factum sit, eos pecuniam ob rem judicandam accepisse; quod inventi sint sena-
Impeachment of Verres.

iores, qui, C. Verre praetore urbano sortiente, exirent in eum reum, quem incognita causa condemnaverant; quod inventus sit senator, qui, cum judex esset, in eodem judicio et ab reo pecuniam acciperet quam judicibus diveseret, et ab accusatore, ut reum condemnaret? 40. Jam vero quomodo illam labem, ignominiam, calamitatemque totius ordinis conquerar? hoc factum esse in hac civitate, cum senatorius ordo judicaret, ut discoloribus signis juratorum hominum sententiae notarentur? Haec omnia me diligenter severeque acturum esse, polliceor.

xiv. Quo me tandem animo fore putatis, si quid in hoc ipso judicio intellexero simili aliqua ratione esse violatum atque commissum? cum planum facere multis testibus possim, C. Verrem in Sicilia, multis audientibus, saepe dixisse, 'se habere hominem potentem, cujus fiducia provinciam spoliaret: neque sibi soli pecuniam quaeerere, sed ita triennium illud praeturae Siciliensis distributum habere, ut secum praeclace agi diceret, si unius anni quaestum in rem suam converteret; alterum patronis et defensoribus traderet; tertium illum uberrimum quaestuosissimumque annum totum judicibus reservaret.'

41. Ex quo mihi venit in mentem illud dicere (quod apud M'. Glabrionem nuper cum id reiciundis judicibus commemorassem, intellexi vehementer populum Romanum commoveri), me arbitari, fore uti nationes exteræ legatos ad populum Romanum mitterent, ut lex de pecuniiis repetundis judiciumque tolleretur. Si enim judicia nulla sint, tantum unum quemque ablaturum putant, quantum sibi ac liberis suis satis esse arbitretur: nunc, quod ejus modi judicia sint, tantum unum quemque auferre, quantum sibi, patronis, advocatis, praetori, judicibus, satis futurum sit: hoc profecto infinitum esse: se avarissimi hominis cupiditati satisfacere posse, necentissimi victoriae non posse.
42. O commemoranda judicia, praeclaramque existimationem nostri ordinis! cum socii populi Romani judicia de pecuniis repetundis fieri nolunt, quae a majoribus nostris sociorum causa comparata sunt. An iste umquam de se bonam spem habuisset, nisi de vobis malam opinionem animo imbibisset? Quo majore etiam (si fieri potest) apud vos odio esse debet, quam est apud populum Romanum, cum in avaritia, scelere, perjurio, vos sui similis esse arbitetur.

xv. 43. Cui loco (per Deos immortalis!), judices, consulite ac providete. Moneo praedicoque—id quod intellego—tempus hoc vobis divinitus datum esse, ut odio, invidia, infamia, turpitudine, totum ordinem liberetis. Nulla in judiciis severitas, nulla religio, nulla denique jam existimantur esse judicia. Itaque a populo Romano contemnimur, despicimur: gravi diuturnaque jam flagramus infamia. 44. Neque enim  ullam aliam ob causam populus Romanus tribuniciam potestatem tanto studio requisivit; quam cum poscebat, verbo illam poscere videbatur, re vera judicia poscebat. Neque hoc Q. Catulum, hominem sapientissimum atque amplissimum, fugit, qui (Cn. Pompeio, viro fortissimo et clarissimo, de tribunicia potestate referente), cum esset sententiam rogatus, hoc initio est summa cum auctoritate usus: 'Patres conscriptos judicia male et flagitiose tueri: quod si in rebus judicandis, populi Romani existimatio satis facere voluissent, non tanto opere homines suisse tribuniciam potestatem desideraturus.' 45. Ipse denique Cn. Pompeius, cum primum contionem ad Urbem consul designatus habuit, ubi (id quod maxime exspectari videbatur) ostendit se tribuniciam potestatem restituturum, factus est in eo strepitus, et grata contionis admurmuratio. Idem in eadem contione cum dixisset 'populas vexatasque esse provincias; judicia autem turpia ac flagitiosa fieri; ei rei se providere ac consu-
lere velle; tum vero non strepitu, sed maximo clamore, suam populus Romanus significavit voluntatem.

xvi. 46. Nunc autem homines in speculis sunt: observant quem ad modum sese unus quisque nostrum gerat in retinenda religione, conservandisque legibus. Vident adhuc, post legem tribuniciam, unum senatorem hominem vel tenuissimum esse damnatum: quod tam-etsi non reprehendunt, tamen magno opere quod laudent non habent. Nulla est enim laus, ibi esse integrum, ubi nemo est qui aut possit aut conetur corrumpere.

47. Hoc est judicium, in quo vos de reo, populus Romanus de vobis judicabit. In hoc homine statuetur, possitne, senatoribus judicantibus, homo necentissimus pecuniosissimusque damnari. Deinde est ejus modi reus, in quo homine nihil sit, praeter summa peccata maximamque pecuniam; ut, si liberatus sit, nulla alia suspicio, nisi ea quae turpissima est, resideri possit. Non gratia, non cognitione, non aliis recte factis, non denique aliquo mediocri vitio, tot tantaque ejus vitia sublevata esse videbuntur.


49. Vos aliquot jam per annos conceptam huic ordini turpitudinem atque infamiam delere ac tollere potestis. Constat inter omnis, post haec constituta judicia, quibus nunc utimur, nullum hoc splendore atque hac dignitate consilium fuisset. Hic si quid erit offensum, omnes homines non jam ex eodem ordine alios magis idoneos (quod fieri non potest), sed alium omnino ordinem ad res judicandas quaerendum arbitrabuntur.
xvii. 50. Quapropter, primum ab Dis immortali-
bus, quod sperare mihi videor, hoc idem, judices,
opto, ut in hoc judicio nemo improbus praeter eum qui
jampridem inventus est reperiatur: deinde si plures
improbii fuerint, hoc vobis, hoc populo Romano, judi-
ces, confirmo, vitam (mehercule) mihi prius, quam
vim perseverantiamque ad illorum improbitatem per-
sequendum defuturam.

51. Verum, quod ego laboribus, periculis, inimici-
tisque meis, tum cum admissum erit dedecus severe
me persecuturum esse polliceor, id ne accidat, tu tua
auctoritate, sapientia, diligentia, M'. Glabrio, potes
providere. Suscipe causam judiciorum: suscipe cau-
sam severitatis, integritatis, fidei, religionis: suscipe
causam senatus, ut is, hoc judicio probatus, cum po-
pulo Romano et in laude et in gratia esse possit.
Cogita qui sis, quo loco sis, quid dare populo Ro-
mano, quid reddere majoribus tuis, debeas: fac tibi
paternae legis [Aciliae] veniat in mentem, qua lege
populus Romanus de pecuniis repetundis optimis ju-
diciis severissimisque judicibus usus est. 52. Circum-
stant te summae auctoritates, quae te oblivisci laudis
domesticae non sinant; quae te noctis diesque com-
maneant, fortissimum tibi patrem, sapientissimum
avum, gravissimum socerum fuisse. Qua re si [Gla-
brionis] patris vim et acrimoniam ceperis ad resistendum
hominibus audacissimis; si avi [Scaevolae] prudentiam
ad prosuciendas insidias, quae tuae atque horum famae
comparantur; si socii [Scauri] constantiam, ut ne quis
t de vera et certa possit sententia demovere; intelle-
get populus Romanus, integerrimo atque honestissimo
praetore, deflectoque consilio, nocenti reo magnitudi-
nem pecuniae plus habuisse momenti ad suspitionem
criminis, quam ad rationem salutis.

xviii. 52. Mihi certum est, non committere ut in
hac causa praetor nobis consiliumque mutetur. Non
patriar rem in id tempus adduci, ut [Siculi], quos ad-
huc servi designatorum consulum non moverunt, cum
eos novo exemplo universos arcesserent, eos tum lictores
consulum vocent; ut homines miserí, antea socii atque
amici populi Romani, nunc servi ac supplices, non
modo jus suum fortunasque omnis eorum imperio
amittant, verum etiam depolando juris sui potestatem
non habeant. 54. Non sinam profecto, causa a me
perorata, [quadraginta diebus interpositis,] tum nobis
denique responderi, cum accusatio nostra in oblivionem
diurnitate adducta sit: non committam, ut tum haec
res judicetur, cum haec frequentia totius Italiae Roma
dissererit; quae convenit uno tempore undique, comi-
tiorum, ludorum, censendique causa. Hujus judici
et laudis fructum, et offensionis periculum, vestrum;
laborem sollicitudinemque, nostram; scientiam quid
agatur, memoriamque quid a quoque dictum sit,
omnium puto esse oportere.

55. Faciam hoc non novum, sed ab eis qui nunc
principes nostrae civitatis sunt ante factum, ut testibus
utar statim: illud a me novum, judices, cognoscetis,
quod ita testis constituam, ut crimen totum explicem;
ut, ubi id [interrogando] argumentis atque oratione fir-
mavero, tum testis ad crimen ad commodo: ut nihil
inter illam usitatum accusationem atque hanc novam
intersit, nisi quod in illa tunc, cum omnia dicta sunt,
testes dantur; hic in singulas res dabuntur; ut illis
quoque eadem interrogandi facultas, argumentandi
dicendique sit. Si quis erit, qui perpetuam orationem
accusationemque desideret, altera actione audiet: nunc
id, quod facimus — ea ratione facimus, ut malitiae illo-
rum consilio nostro occurramus — necessario fieri intel-
legat. Haec primae actionis erit accusatio. 56. Dici-
mus C. Verrem, cum multa libidinose, multa crude-
liter, in civis Romanos atque in socios, multa in deos
hominisque nefarie fecerit tum praeterea quadringen-
tiens sestertium ex Sicilia contra leges abstulisse. Hoc testibus, hoc tabulis privatis publicisque auctoritatibus ita vobis planum faciemus, ut hoc statuatis, etiam si spatium ad dicendum nostro commodo, vacuosque dies habuissemus, tamen oratione longa nihil opus fuisse.

Dixi.

---

**The Plunder of Syracuse.**

[Actio Secunda, Lib. IV. ch. 52-60.]

LII. **Unius** etiam urbis omnium pulcherrimae atque ornatissimae, Syracusarum, direptionem commemorabo et in medium proferam, judices, ut aliquando totam hujus generis orationem concludam atque definam. Nemo fere vestrum est quin quem ad modum captae sint a M. Marcellum Syracusae saepe audierit, non numquam etiam in annalibus legerit. Conserte hanc pacem cum illo bello, hujus praetoris adventum cum illius imperatoris victoria, hujus cohortem impuram cum illius exercitu invicto, hujus libidines cum illius continentia: ab illo, qui cepit, conditas, ab hoc qui constitutas accept, captas dicetis Syracusas.

2. Ac jam illa omitto, quae disperse a me multas in locis dicitur ac dicta sunt: forum Syracusanorum, quod introitu Marcelli purum caede servatum esset, id adventu Verris Siculorum innocentium sanguine redundasse: portum Syracusanorum, qui tum et nostris classibus et Karthaginiensium clausus fuisset, eum isto praetore Cilicum myoparoni praedonibusque patuisse: mitto adhibitam vim ingenuis, matres familias violatas, quae tum in urbe capta commissa non sunt neque odio hostili neque licentia militari neque more bellii neque jure victoriae: mitto, inquam, haec omnia, quae ab isto per triennium perfecta sunt: ea, quae conjuncta cum illis rebus sunt, de quibus antea dixi, cognoscite.

LIII. 4. Ea tanta est urbs, ut ex quattuor urbibus maximis constare dicatur: quarum una est ea quam dixi Insula, quae duobus portibus cincta, in utriusque portus ostium aditumque projecta est, in qua domus est, quae Hieronis regis fuit, qua praetores uti solent. In ea sunt aedae sacrae complures, sed duae quae longe ceteris antecellant: Dianae, et altera, quae fuit ante istius adventum ornatissima, Minervae. In hac insula extrema est fons aquae dulcis, cui nomen Arethusa est, incredibili magnitudine, plenissimus piscium, qui fluctu totus operiretur, nisi munitione ac mole lapidum dijunctus esset a mari. 5. Altera autem est urbs Syracusis, cui nomen Achradina est: in qua forum maximum, pulcherrimae porticus, ornatissimum prytania, amplissima est curia templumque egregium Jovis Olympii ceteraeque urbis partes, quae una via lata perpetua multisque transversis divisae privatis aedificiis continentur. Tertia est urbs, quae, quod in ea parte Fortunae fanum antiquum fuit, Tycha nominata est, in qua gymnasiaum amplissimum est et complures aedae sacrae: coliturque ea pars et habitatur frequentissime. Quarta autem est, quae quia postrema coaeificata est, Neapolis nominatur: quam ad summam theatrum maximum: praeterea duo templi sunt egregia, Ceres unum, alterum Liberae signumque Apollinis, qui Temenites vocatur, pulcherrimum et maximum: quod iste si portare potuisset, non dubitasset auferre.

LV. 8. Aedis Minervae est in Insula, de qua ante dixi: quam Marcellus non attigit, quam plenam atque ornatum reliquit: quae ab isto sic spoliata atque disrepta est, non ut ab hoste aliquo, qui tamen in bello religionem et consuetudinis jura retineret, sed ut a barbaris praedonibus vexata esse videatur. Pugna erat equestris Agathocli regis in tabulis picta: his autem tabulis interiores templi parietes vestiebantur. Nihil erat ea pictura nobilius, nihil Syracusis quod magis visendum putaretur. Has tabulas M. Marcel-
lus cum omnia victoria illa sua profana fecisset, tamen religione impeditus non attigit iste, cum illa jam propter diuturnam pacem fidelitatemque populi Syracusani sacra religiosaque accepisset, omnes eas tabulas abstulit: parietes, quorum ornatus tot saecula manserant, tot bella effugerant, nudos ac deformatos reliquit. 9. Et Marcellus, qui, si Syracusas cepisset, duo templa se Romae dedicaturum voverat, is id, quod erat aedificaturus, iis rebus ornare, quas ceperat, noluit: Verres, qui non Honori neque Virtuti, quem ad modum ille, sed Veneri et Cupidini vota deberet, is Minervae templum spoliare conatus est. Ille deos deorum spoliis ornari noluit: hic ornamenta Minervae virginis in meretriciam domum transtulit. Viginti et septem praeterea tabulas pulcherrime pictas ex eadem aede sustulit: in quibus erant imagines Siciliae regum ac tyrannorum, quae non solum pictorum artificio delectabant, sed etiam commemoratione hominum et cognitione formarum. Ac videte quanto taerior hic tyrannus Syracusanus fuerit quam quisquam superiorem: cum illi tamen ornarint templo deorum immortalium, hic etiam illorum monumenta atque ornamenta sustulerit.

LVI. 10. Jam vero quid ego de valvis illius templi commemorem? Vereor ne, haec qui non viderint, omnia me nimis augere atque ornare arbitrentur: quod tamen nemo suspicari debet, tam esse me cupidum, ut tot viros primarios velim, praesertim ex judicium numero, qui Syracusis fuerint, qui haec viderint, esse temeritati et mendacio meo conscios. Confirmare hoc liquido, judices, possum, valvas magnificentiores, ex auro atque ebore perfectiores, nullas umquam ullo in templo fuisse. Incrèdibile dictu est quam multi Graeci de harum valvarum pulchritudine scriptum reliquerint. Nimium forsitam haec illi mirentur atque efferant. Esto: verum tamen honestius est rei publicae nostrae,
judices, ea quae illis pulchra esse videantur imperator-rem nostrum in bello reliquisse, quam praetorem in pace abstulisse. Ex e bore diligentissime perfecta argumenta erant in valvis: ea detrahenda curavit omnia. II. Gorgonis os pulcherrimum, cinctum anguibus, revellit atque abstulit: et tamen indicavit se non solum artificio, sed etiam pretio quaestuque duci. Nam bullas aureas omnes ex iis valvis, quae erant multae et graves, non dubitavit auferre: quarum iste non opere delectabatur, sed pondere. Itaque ejus modi valvas reliquit, ut quae olim ad ornandum templum erant maxime, nunc tantum ad clundendum factae esse videantur. Etiamne gramineas hastas — vidi enim vos in hoc nomine, cum testis diceret, commoveri, quod erat ejus modi, ut semel visisse satis esset; in quibus neque manu factum quicquam neque pulchrietudo erat ulla, sed tantum magnitudo incredibilis, de qua vel audire satis esset, nimium videre plus quam semel — etiam id concupisti?

LVII. 12. Nam Sappho, quae sublata de prytanio est, dat tibi justam excusationem, prope ut concedendum atque ignoscendum esse videatur. Silanionis opus tam perfectum, tam elegans, tam elaboratum quisquam non modo privatus, sed populus potius habe-ret quam homo elegantissimus atque eruditissimus, Verres? Nimirum contra dici nihil potest. Nostrum enim unus quisque—qui tam beati quam iste est non sumus, tam delicati esse non possimus—si quando aliquid istius modi videre volet, eat ad aedem Felicitatis, ad monumentum Catuli, in porticum Metelli; det operam ut admittatur in alicujus istorum Tusculanum; spectet forum ornatum, si quid iste suorum aedilibus commodarit: Verres haec habeat domi, Verres ornamento fanorum atque oppidorum habeat plenam domum, villas refertas? Etiamne hujus operari studia ac delicias, judices, perferetis? qui ita natus, ita educa-
tus est, ita factus et animo et corpore, ut multo appositor ad ferenda quam ad auferenda signa esse videatur. 13. Atque haec Sappho sublata quantum desiderium sui reliquerit dici vix potest. Nam cum ipsa fuit egergie facta, tum epigramma Graecum pernobile incisum est in basi: quod iste eruditus homo et Graeculus, qui haec subtiliter judicat, qui solus intellegit, si unam litteram Graecam scisset, certe non tulisset. Nunc enim, quod scriptum est inani in basi, declarat quid fuerit, et id ablatum indicat.


LVIII. 15. Jovem autem Imperatorem quanto honore in suo templo fuisse arbitramini? Conicere potestis, si recordari volueritis quanta religione fuerit eadem specie ac forma signum illud, quod ex Macedonia captum in Capitolio posuerat Flamininus. Etenim tria ferebantur in orbe terrarum signa Jovis Imperatoris uno in genere pulcherrime facta: unum illud Macedonicum, quod in Capitolio vidimus; alterum in Ponti ore et angustiis; tertium, quod Syracusis ante Verrem praetorem fuit. Illud Flamininus ita ex aede sua sustulit, ut in Capitolio, hoc est, in terrestri domicilio Jovis poneret. Quod autem est ad introitum Ponti,
id, cum tam multa ex illo mari bella emerserint, tam multa porro in Pontum invecta sint, usque ad hanc diem integrum inviolatumque servatum est. Hoc tertium, quod erat Syracusis, quod M. Marcellus armatus et victor viderat, quod religioni concesserat, quod cives atque incolae Syracusani colere, advenae non solum visere, verum etiam venerari solebant, id Verres ex templo Jovis sustulit.

16. Ut saepius ad Marcellum revertar, judices, sic habetote: plures esse a Syracusanis istius adventu deos, quam victoria Marcelli homines desideratos. Etenim ille requisisse etiam dicitur Archimedes illum, summo ingenio hominem ac disciplina, quem cum audisset interfectum, permoeleste tulisse: iste omnia, quae requisivit, non ut conservaret, verum ut asportaret requisivit.

LIX. 17. Jam illa quae leviora videbuntur ideo praeteribo,—quod mensas Delphicas e marmore, crateras ex aere pulcherrimas, vim maximam vasorum Corinthiorum ex omnibus aedibus sacris abstulit Syracusis. Itaque, judices, ei qui hospites ad ea quae visenda sunt solent ducere, et unum quidque ostendere, quos illi mystagogos vocant, conversam jam habent demonstrationem suam. Nam, ut ante demonstrabat quid ubique esset, item nunc quid undique ablatum sit ostendunt.

18. Quid tum? mediocrine tandem dolore eos affectos esse arbitramini? Non ita est, judices: primum, quod omnes religione moventur, et deos patrios, quos a majoribus acceperunt, colendos sibi diligenter et retinendos esse arbitrantur: deinde hic ornatus, haec opera atque artificia, signa, tabulae pictae, Graecos homines nimio opere delectant. Itaque ex illorum querimoniiis intellegere possumus, haec illis acerbissima videri, quae forsitan nobis levia et contemnenda esse videantur. Mihi credite, judices.—tametsi vos-
met ipsos haec eadem audire certo scio,—cum multas acceperint per hosce annos socii atque exterae nationes calamitates et injuriar, nullas Graeci homines gravius ferunt ac tulerunt, quam hujusce modi spolia- tiones fanorum atque oppidorum.

19. Licet iste dicat emisse se, sicuti solet dicere, credite hoc mihi, judices: nulla umquam civitas tota Asia et Graecia signum ullam, tabulum pictam, ullam denique ornamentum orbis, sua voluntate cuiquam vendidi, nisi forte existimatis, postea quem judicia severa Romae fieri desierunt, Graecos homines haec venditare coepisse, quae tum non modo non venditabant, cum judicia fiebant, verum etiam coëmebant; aut nisi arbitramini L. Crasso, Q. Scaevolae, C. Claudio, potentissimis hominibus, quorum aedilitates ornatissimas vidimus, commercium istorum rerum cum Graecis hominibus nonuisse, eis qui post judicatorum dissolutionemaediles facti suntuisse.

LX. 20. Acerbiorem etiam scitote esse civitatibus falsam istam et simulatam emptionem, quam si qui clam surripiat aut eripiat palam atque auferat. Nam turpitudinem summam esse arbitrantur referri in tabulas publicas, pretio adductam civitatem (et pretio parvo) ea quae accepisset a majoribus vendidisse atque abalienasse. Etenim mirandum in modum Graeci rebus istis, quas nos contemnimus, delectantur. Itaque maiores nostri facile patiebantur, haec esse apud illos quam plurima: apud socios, ut imperio nostro quam ornatissimi florentissimique essent; apud eos autem, quos vectigalis aut stipendiarios fecerant, tamen haec relinquebant, ut illi quibus haec jucunda sunt, quae nobis levia videntur, haberent haec oblectamenta et solacia servitutis.

21. Quid arbitramini Reginos, qui jam cives Romani sunt, merere velle, ut ab eis marmorea Venus illa auferatur? quid Tarentinos, ut Europam in taurō

Crucifixion of a Roman Citizen.

[Actio Secunda, Lib. V., ch. 61-66.]

Quid nunc agam? Cum jam tot horas de uno genere ac de istius nefaria crudelitate dicam, — cum prope omnem vim verborum ejus modi, quae scelere istius digna sint, aliis in rebus consupserim, neque hoc providerim, ut varietate criminum vos attentos tene-rem, — quem ad modum de tanta re dicam? Opinor, unus modus atque una ratio est. Rem in medio ponam, quae tantum habet ipsa gravitatis, ut neque mea (quae nulla est) neque cujusquam, ad inflamman- dos vestros animos, eloquentia requiratur.

2. Gavius hic, quem dico, Consanus, cum in illo numero civium Romanorum ab isto in vincula conjectus esset, et nescio qua ratione clam e lautumiis profugisset, Messanamque venisset, — qui tam prope jam Italiam et moenia Reginorum civium Romanorum videret, et ex illo metu mortis ac tenebris, quasi luce libertatis et odore aliquo legum recreatus, revixisset, — loqui
Messanae et queri coepit, se civem Romanum in
vincla esse conjectum; sibi recta iter esse Romam;
Verri se praesto advenienti futurum.

3. Non intellegebat miser nihil interesse, utrum haec
Messanae, an apud istum in praetorio loqueretur.
Nam (ut ante vos docui) hanc sibi iste urbem delegerat,
quam haberet adjutricem scelerum, furtorum re-
ceptricem, flagitiorum omnium consciam. Itaque ad
magistratum Mamertinum statim deductur Gavius:
eoque ipso die casu Messanam Verres venit. Res ad
eum defertur: esse civem Romanum, qui se Syracusis
in lautumii suisse queretur: quem, jam ingredientem
in navem, et Verri nimiris atrociter minitantem, ab se
retractum esse et asservatum, ut ipse in eum statueret
quod videretur.

4. Agit hominibus gratias, et eorum benevolentiam
erga se diligentiamque conlaudat. Ipse, inflammatus
scelere et furore, in forum venit. Ardebant oculi:
toto ex ore crudelitas eminebat. Exspectabant omnes,
quo tandem progressurus aut quidnam acturus esset;
cum repente hominem proripi, atque in foro medio
 nudari ac deligari, et virgas expediri jabet. Clama-
bat ille miser, se civem esse Romanum, municipem
Consanum; meruisse cum L. Raecio, splendidissimo
equite Romano, qui Panhormi negotiaretur, ex quo
haec Verres scire posset. Tum iste, se comperisse
eum speculandi causa in Siciliam a ducibus fugitivo-
rum esse missum; cujus rei neque index, neque ves-
tigium aliquod, neque suspicio cuiquam esset ulla.
Deinde jabet undique hominem vehementissime
verberari.

5. Caedebatur virgis in medio foro Messanae civis
Romanus, judices; cum interea nullus gemitus, nulla
vox alia illius miser inter dolorem crepitumque pla-
garum audiebatur, nisi haec, Civis Romanus sum!
Hac se commemoracione civitatis omnia verbera de-
pulsurum, cruciatumque a corpore dejecturum, arbitrabatur. Is non modo hoc non perfecit, ut virgarum vim deprecaretur; sed, cum imploraret saepius, usurparetque nomen civitatis, crux—crux, inquam—inflexi et aerumnoso, qui numquam istam pestem videbat, comparabatur.


8. Nunc, quoniam exploratum est omnibus quo loco causa tua sit, et quid de te futurum sit, sic tecum agam: Gavium istum, quem repentinum spectulatorem fuisses dicis, ostendam in lautumias Syracusis abs te esse conjectum. Neque id solum ex litteris ostendam Syracusanorum, ne possis dicere me, quia sit aliquis in
litteris Gavius, hoc fingere et eligere nomen, ut hunc illum esse possim dicere; sed ad arbitrium tuum testis dabo, qui istum ipsum Syracusis abs te in Iautumias conjectum esse dicant. Producam etiam Consanos, municipes illius ac necessarios, qui te nunc sero doceant, judices non sero, illum P. Gavium, quem tu in crucem egisti, civem Romanum et municipem Consanum, non speculatorem fugitivorumuisse.

LXIV. 9. Cum haec omnia, quae polliceor, cumulate tuis patronis plana fecero, tum istuc ipsum tenebo, quod abs te mihi datur: eo contentum me esse dicam. Quid enim nuper tu ipse, cum populi Romani clamore atque impetu perturbatus exsiliuisti, quid, inquam, locutus es? Illum, quod moram supplicio quareret, ideo clamitasse se esse civem Romanum, sed speculatoremuisse. Jam mei testes veri sunt. Quid enim dicit aliud C. Numitorius? quid M. et P. Cottii, nobilissimi homines, ex agro Tauromenitano? quid Q. Lucceius, qui argentariam Regii maximam fecit? quid ceteri? Adhuc enim testes ex eo generae a me sunt dati, non qui novisse Gavium, sed se vidisse dicerent, cum is, qui se civem Romanum esse clamaret, in crucem age-retur. Hoc tu, Verres, idem dicis; hoc tu conisteris illum clamitasse, se civem esse Romanum; apud te nomen civitatis ne tantum quidem valuisse, ut dubitationem aliquam crucis, ut crudelissimi taeterrimique supplici aliquam parvam moram saltem posset adferre.

homines in extremis atque ultimis gentibus positos, nobile et inlustre apud omnis nomen civitatis tuae pro-
fiisset, — ille, quisquis erat, quem tu in crucem rapie-
bas, qui tibi esset ignotus, cum civem se Romanum
esse diceret, apud te praetorem, si non effugium, ne
moram quidem mortis, mentione atque usurpatione
civitatis, adsequi potuit?

LXV. 11. Homines tenues, obscolo loco nati, navi-
gant; adeunt ad ea loca quae numquam antea vide-
runt; ubi neque noti esse eis quo venerunt, neque
semper cum cognitoribus esse possunt. Hac una ta-
men fiducia civitatis, non modo apud nostros magistra-
tus, qui et legum et existimationis periculo continentur,
neque apud civis solum Romanos, qui et sermonis et
juris et multarum rerum societate juncti sunt, fore se
tutos arbitrantur; sed, quocumque venerint, hanc sibi
rem praesidio sperant futuram. 12. Tolle hanc spem,
tolle hoc praesidium civibus Romanis; constitue nihil
esse opis in hac voce, Civis Romanus sum; posse im-
pune praetorem, aut alium quemlibet, supplicium quod
velit in eum constituere qui se civem Romanum esse
dicat, quod eum quis ignoret; jam omnis provincias,
jam omnia regna, jam omnis liberas civitates, jam
omnem orbem terrarum, qui semper nostris hominibus
maxime patuit, civibus Romanis ista defensione prae-
cluseris. Quid si L. Raecium, equitem Romanum,
qui tum in Sicilia erat, nominabat? etiamne id mag-
num fuit, Panhormum litteras mittere? Adservasses
hominem; custodiis Mamertinorum tuorum vinctum,
clausum habuiisses, dum Panhormo Raecius veniret;
cognosceret hominem, aliquid de summo supplicio re-
mitteres. Si ignoraret, tum, si ita tibi videretur, hoc
juris in omnis constitueres, ut, qui neque tibi notus
esset, neque cognitorem locupletem daret, quamvis
civis Romanus esset, in crucem tolleretur.

LXVI. 13. Sed quid ego plura de Gavio? quasi tu
Gavio tum fueris infestus, ac non nomini, generi, juri civium hostis. Non illi (inquam) homini, sed causae communi libertatis, inimicus fuisti. Quid enim attinuit, cum Mamertini, more atque instituto suo, crucem fixissent post urbem, in via Pompeia, te jubere in ea parte figere, quae ad fretum spectaret; et hoc addere — quod negare nullo modo potes, quod omnibus audientibus Dixisti palam — te idcirco illum locum deligere, ut ille, quoniam se civem Romanum esse diceret, ex cruce Italiam cernere ac domum suam prospiceret possit? Itaque illa crux sola, judices, post conditam Messanam, illo in loco fixa est. Italiae conspectus ad eam rem ab isto delectus est, ut ille, in dolore cruciatuque mortiens, perangusto fretu divisa servitutis ac libertatis jura cognosceret; Italia autem alium suum servitutis extremo summoque supplicio adfixum videret.

POMPEY'S MILITARY COMMAND.

(For the Manilian Law.)

B.C. 66.

The last serious resistance made to the Roman power in the East was by Mithridates VI., king of Pontus, whose dominions embraced the whole eastern coast of the Black Sea (Pontus Euxinus), including the kingdom of Bosphorus (Crimea) on the one hand, and Paphlagonia on the other; while the king of Armenia was closely allied to him by marriage. He was the most formidable enemy encountered by Rome after Hannibal, and there were three several wars between them. The first was conducted by Sulla (B.C. 88–84), who gained great successes, and obliged Mithridates to pay a large sum of money; the second (83–82) was a short and unimportant affair, in which Murena was worsted. The third broke out B.C. 74, and was conducted successfully by Lucius Licinius Lucullus, the ablest general of the aristocracy, who was distinguished for the severe justice of his administration in Asia Minor, and was an amiable and cultivated man, but of very luxurious habits.

When the war had continued for several years, the democratic faction (populares) took advantage of some temporary reverses sustained by Lucullus, and the unpopularity of his administration, to revoke his command, and give to the consul of B.C. 67, M'. Acilius Glabrio,—the same who presided at the trial of Verres,—the eastern war as his province. The law was proposed by the tribune A. Gabinius, one of the most active demagogues of the time. Another law, proposed by the same politician, required the Senate to appoint a commander of consular rank, with extraordinary powers for three years, by land and sea, to suppress the piracy which infested every part of the Mediterranean, having its chief seat in Cilicia. It was understood as a matter of course that Gnaeus (or Cneius) Pompey, who had been living in retirement since his consulship, B.C. 70, would receive this appointment. Pompey accomplished his task with the most brilliant success, and in three months had the seas completely cleared. (See below, chap. xii.)

Meantime Glabrio had shown himself wholly incompetent to conduct the war against Mithridates, and early in B.C. 66, the Tribune Caius Manilius, "an utterly incompetent and worthless man," pro-
posed a law extending Pompey's command over the entire East. Power like this was quite inconsistent with the republican institutions of Rome, and with the established authority of the Senate; the law was of course opposed by the leaders of the aristocracy (optimates), led by Hortensius and Catulus. Cicero was now praetor. He was no democrat of the school of Gabinius and Caesar; on the other hand he had no hereditary sympathies with the Senate, and he probably failed to recognize the revolutionary character of the proposition, but considered merely its practical advantages: he therefore supported it with ardor. This was his first political speech. Before this time he had been a public-spirited lawyer; from this time on he was essentially a politician, and it is not hard to see how unfavorably his character was influenced by contact with the corrupt politics of that day.

The Manilian Law was passed, and Pompey fulfilled the most sanguine expectations of his friends. He brought the Mithridatic War to an end, organized the Roman power throughout the East, and returned home B.C. 61, with greater prestige and glory than had ever been reached by any Roman before him.

QUAMQUAM mihi semper frequens conspectus vester multo jucundissimus, hic autem locus ad agendum amplissimus, ad dicendum ornatissimus est visus, Quirites, tamen hoc aditu laudis, qui semper optimo cuique maxime patuit, non mea me voluntas adhuc, sed vitae meae rationes ab ineunte aetate susceptae prohibuerunt. Nam cum antea per aetatem nondum hujus auctoritatem loci attingere auderem, statueremque nihil huc nisi perfectum ingenio, elaboratum industria adferri oportere, omne meum tempus amicorum temporibus transmittendum putavi. Ita neque hic locus vacuos umquam fuit ab eis qui vestram causam defenderent, et meus labor, in privatorum periculis caste integreque versatus, ex vestro judicio fructum est amplissimum consecutus. Nam cum propter dilationem comitiorum ter praetor primus centuriis cunctis renuntiatus sum, facile intellexi, Quirites, et quid de me judicaretis, et quid aliis praescri-
beretis. Nunc cum et auctoritatis in me tantum sit, quantum vos honoribus mandandis esse voluistis, et ad agendum facultatis tantum, quantum homini vigilanti ex forensi usu prope cotidiana dicendi exercitatio potuit adferre, certe et si quid auctoritatis in me est, apud eos utar qui eam mihi dederunt, et si quid in dicendo consequi possum, eis ostendam potissimum, qui ei quoque rei fructum suo judicio tribuendum esse duxerunt. 3. Atque illud in primis mihi laetandum jure esse video, quod in hac insolita mihi ex hoc loco ratione dicendi causa talis oblata est, in qua oratio deesse nemini possit. Dicendum est enim de Cn. Pompei singulari eximiaeque virtute: hujus autem orationis difficilior est exitum quam principium invenire. Ita mihi non tam copia quam modus in dicendo quaerendus est.

II. 4. Atque,—ut inde oratio mea proficiscatur, unde haec omnis causa ducitur,—bellum grave et periculum vestris vectigalibus ac sociis a duobus potentissimis regibus infertur, Mithridate et Tigrane, quorum alter relictus, alter lacesitus, occasionem sibi ad occupandam Asiam oblatam esse arbitrantur. Equitibus Romanis, honestissimis viris, adferuntur ex Asia cotidie litterae, quorum magnae res aguntur in vestris vectigalibus exercendis occupatae: qui ad me, pro necessitidine quae mihi est cum illo ordine, causam rei publicae periculaque rerum suarum detulerunt: 5. Bithyniae, quae nunc vestra provincia est, vicos exustos esse compluris; regnum Ariobarzanis, quod finitimum est vestris vectigalibus, totum esse in hostium potestate; L. Lucullum, magnis rebus gestis, ab eo bello discedere; huic qui successerit non satis esse paratum ad tantum bellum administrandum; unum ab omnibus sociis et civibus ad id bellum imperatorem deposci atque expeti, eundem hunc unum ab hostibus metui, praeterea neminem.
6. Causa quae sit videtis: nunc quid agendum sit considerate. Primum mihi videtur de genere belli, deinde de magnitudine, tum de imperatore deligendo esse dicendum. Genus est belli ejus modi, quod maxime vestros animos excitare atque inflammare ad persequendi studium debeat: in quo agitur populi Romani gloria, quae vobis a majoribus cum magna in omnibus rebus tum summa in re militari tradita est; agitur salus sociorum atque amicorum, pro qua multa majores vestri magna et gravia bella gesserunt; aguntur certissima populi Romani vectigalia et maxima, quibus amissis et pacis ornamenta et subsidia belli requiritis; aguntur bona multorum civium, quibus est a vobis et ipsorum et rei publicae causa consulendum. III. 7. Et quoniam semper appetentes gloriae praeter ceteras gentis atque avidi laudis fuistis, delenda est vobis illa macula [Mithridatico] bello superiore concepta, quae penitus jam insedit ac nimirum inveteravit in populi Romani nomine, — quod is, qui uno die, tota in Asia, tot in civitatibus, uno nuntio atque una significatione [litterarum] civis Romanos necandos trucidandosque denotavit, non modo adhuc poenam nullo suo dignam scelere susceptit, sed ab illo tempore annum jam tertium et vicesimum regnat, et ita regnat, ut se non Ponti neque Cappadociae latebris occultare velit, sed emergere ex patrio regno atque in vestris vectigalibus, hoc est, in Asiae luce versari. 8. Etenim adhuc ita nostri cum illo rege contenderunt imperatores, ut ab illo insignia victoriae, non victoriam reportarent. Triumphavit L. Sulla, triumphavit L. Murena de Mithridate, duo fortissimi viri et summi imperatores; sed ita triumpharunt, ut ille pulsus superatusque regnaret. Verum tamen illis imperatoribus laus est tribuenda quod egerunt, venia danda quod reliquerunt, propterea quod ab eo bello Sullam in Italian res publica, Murenam Sulla revocavit.
iv. 9. Mithridates autem omne reliquum tempus non ad oblivionem veteris belli, sed ad comparationem novi contulit: qui [postea] cum maximas aedificasset ornas-setque classis exercitusque permagnos quibuscumque ex gentibus potuisset comparasset, et se Bosporanis finitimis suis bellum inferre simularet, usque in Hispaniam legatos ac litteras misit ad eos duces quibuscum tum bellum gerebamus, ut, cum duobus in locis di-junctissimis maximeque diversis uno consilio a binis hostium copiis bellum terra marique gereretur, vos ancipiti contentione districti de imperio dimicaretis. 

10. Sed tamen alterius partis periculum, Sertorianae atque Hispaniensis, quae multo plus firmamenti ac ro-boris habebat, Cn. Pompei divino consilio ac singu-lari virtute depulsum est; in altera parte ita res a L. Lucullo summo viro est administrata, ut initia illa rerum gestarum magna atque praecallra non felicitati ejus, sed virtuti, haec autem extrema, quae nuper acciderunt, non culpae, sed fortunae tribuenda esse videantur. Sed de Lucullo dicam alio loco, et ita dicam, Quirites, ut neque vera laus ei detracta oratione mea neque falsa adicta esse videatur: n. de vestri imperi dignitate atque gloria—quoniam is est exorsus orationis meae—videte quem vobis animum susciendum putetis.

persecuti sunt: vos legatum omni supplicio interfecerunt relicketis? 12. Videte ne, ut illis pulcherrimum fuit tantam vobis imperi gloriarm tradere, sic vobis turpissimum sit, id quod accepistis tueri et conservare non posse.

* * *

Quid? quod salus sociorum summum in periculum accidere vocatur, quo tandem animo ferre debeatis? Regno est expulsus Ariobarzanes rex, socius populi Romani atque amicus; imminent duo reges toti Asiae non solum vobis inimicissimi, sed etiam vestris sociis atque amicis; civitates autem omnes cuncta Asia atque Graecia vestrum auxilium exspectare propter periculi magnitudinem coguntur; imperatorem a vobis certum deprecere, cum praesertim vos alium miseritis, neque audent, neque se id facere sine summo periculo posse arbitrantur. 13. Vident et sentiunt hoc idem quod vos, — unum virum esse, in quo summa sint omnia, et eum propter esse, quo etiam carent aegrius; cujus adventu ipso atque nomine, tametsi ille ad maritimum bellum venerit, tamen impetus hostium repressos esse intellegunt ac retardatos. 14. Hi vos, quoniam libere loqui non licet, tacite rogant, ut se quoque, sicut ceterarum provinciarum socios, dignos existimetis, quorum salutem tali viro commendetis; atque hoc etiam magis, quod ceteros in provinciam ejusmodi homines cum imperio mittimus, ut etiam si ab hoste defendant, tamen ipsum adventus in urbis sociorum non multum ab hostili expugnatione differant. Hunc audiebat antea, nunc praesentem vident, tanta temperantia, tanta manuenta, tanta humanitate, ut ei beatissimi esse videantur, apud quos ille diutissime commoratur.

* * *

vi. 14. Qua re si propter socios, nulla ipsi injuria laccesit, majores nostri cum Antiocho, cum Philippo, cum Aetolis, cum Poenis bella gesserunt, quanto vos studio convenit injuriis provocatos sociorum salutem una cum imperi vestri dignitate defendere, praesertim
cum de maximis vestris vectigalibus agatur? Nam ceterarum provinciarum vectigalia, Quirites, tanta sunt, ut eis ad ipsas provincias tutandas vix contenti esse possimus: Asia vero tam opima est ac fertilis, ut et ubertate agrorum et varietate fructuum et magnitudine passionis et multitudine earum rerum quae exportantur, facile omnibus terris antecellat. Itaque haec vobis provincia, Quirites, si et bellii utilitatem et pacis dignitatem retinere voltis, non modo a calamitate, sed etiam a metu calamitatis est defendenda. 15. Nam in ceteris rebus cum venit calamitas, tum detrimentum accipitur; at in vectigalibus non solum adventus mali, sed etiam metus ipse adefert calamitatem. Nam cum hostium copiae non longe absunt, etiam si inruptio nulla facta est, tamen peculìria relinquitur, agri cultura desertur, mercatorum navigatio conquiescit. Itaque neque ex portu neque ex decumis neque ex scriptura vectigal conservari potest: qua re saepe totius anni fructus uno rumore periculi atque uno belli terrore amittitur. 16. Quo tandem igitur animo esse existimatis aut eos qui vectigalia nobis pensant, aut eos qui exercent atque exigunt, cum duo reges cum maximis copiis propter adsint? cum una excursio equitatus perbrevi tempore totius anni vectigal auferre possit? cum publicani familias maximas, quas in saltibus habent, quas in agris, quas in portubus atque custodiis, magno periculo se habere arbitrentur? Putatisne vos illis rebus frui posse, nisi eos qui vobis fructui sunt conservatis non solum (ut ante dixi) calamitate, sed etiam calamitatis formidine liberatos.

vii. 17. Ac ne illud quidem vobis neglegendum est, quod mihi ego extremum propusueram, cum essem de bellii genere dicturus, quod ad multorum bona civium Romanorum pertinet, quorum vobis pro vestra sapientia, Quirites, habenda est ratio diligenter. Nam et publicani, homines honestissimi atque ornatissimi, suas
rationes et copias in illam provinciam contulerunt, quo-
rum ipsorum per se res et fortuna venerat curae esse
deberet. * Etenim si vectigalia nervos esse rei publicae
semper duximus, eum certe ordinem, qui exercet illa,
firmamentum ceterorum ordinum recte esse dicemus.
18. Deinde ex ceteris ordines homines gnavi atque
industria partim ipsi in Asia negotiantur, quibus vos
absentibus consulere debetis, partim eorum in ea pro-
vincia pecunias magnas conlocatas habent. * Est igitur
humanitatis vestrae magnum numerum eorum civium
calamitate prohibere, sapientiae videre multorum civi-
um calamitatem a re publica sejunctam esse non posse.
Etenim primum illud parvi refert, nos publica his amiss-
sis [vectigalia] postea victoria recuperare. Neque enim
isdem redimendae facultas erit propter calamitatem, ne-
que aliis voluntas propter timorem. 19. Deinde quod
nos eadem Asia atque idem iste Mithridates initio belli
Asiatici docuit, id quidem certe calamitate docti memo-
rria retinere debemus. Nam tum, cum in Asia res
magnas permulti amiserant, scimus Romae, solutione
impedita, fidem concidisse. Non enim possunt una in
civitate multi rem ac fortunas amittere, ut non plures
secum in eandem trahant calamitatem. A quo peri-
culo prohibete rem publicam, et mihi credite id quod
ipsi videtis: haec fides atque haec ratio pecuniarum,
quae Romae, quae in foro versatur, implicata est cum
illis pecuniis Asiaticis et cohaeret. Ruere illa non
possunt, ut haec non eodem labefacta motu concidant.
Qua re videte num dubitandum vobis sit omni studio
ad id bellum incumbere, in quo gloria nominis vestri,
salus sociorum, vectigalia maxima, fortuna plurimo-
rum civium conjunctae cum re publica defendantur.

viii. 20. Quoniam de genere belli dixi, nunc de
magnitudine paucis dicam. Potest hoc enim dici, belli
genus esse ita necessarium ut sit gerendum, non esse
ita magnum ut sit pertimescendum. In quo maxime
elaborandum est, ne forte ea vobis quae diligentissime providenda sunt, contemnenda esse videantur. Atque ut omnes intellegant me L. Lucullo tantum impetrire laudis, quantum forti viro et sapienti homini et magno imperatori debeatur, dico ejus adventu maximas Mithridati copias omnibus rebus ornatas atque instructasuisse, urbemque Asiae clarissimam nobisque amicissimam, Cyzicenorum, obsessam esse ab ipso rege maxima multitudine et oppugnatam vehementissime, quam L. Lucullus virtute, adsiduitate, consilio, summis obsidionis periculis liberavit. ab eodem imperatore classem magnam et ornatam, quae ducibus Sertorianis ad Italian studio atque odio inflammata raperetur, superatam esse atque depressam; magnas hostium praeterea copias multis proeliis esse deletas, patefactumque nostris legionibus esse Pontum, qui antea populo Romano ex omni aditu clausus fuisse; Sinopen atque Amisum, quibus in oppidis erant domicilia regis, omnibus rebus ornatas ac refertas, ceteraque urbis Ponti et Cappadociae permultas, uno aditu adventuque esse captas; regem, spoliatum regno patrio atque avito, ad alios se reges atque ad alias gentis supplicem contulisse; atque haec omnia salvis populi Romani sociis atque integris vectigalibus esse gesta. Satis opinor haec esse laudis, atque ita, Quirites, ut hoc vos intellegatis, a nullo istorum, qui huic obtrectant legi atque causae, L. Lucullum similiter ex hoc loco esse laudatum. 

IX. 22. Requiretur fortasse nunc quem ad modum, cum haec ita sint, reliquum possit magnum esse bellum. Cognoscite, Quirites. Non enim hoc sine causa quae-ri videtur. Primum ex suo regno sic Mithridates profugit, ut ex eodem Ponto Medea illa quondam profugisse dicitur, quam praedicant in fuga fratris sui membra in eis locis, qua se parens perseveretur, dissipavisse, ut eorum collectio dispersa, maerorque

24. Hic jam plura non dicam. Fuit enim illud extreimum, ut ex eis locis a militibus nostris reditus magis maturus quam processio longior quaereretur. Mithridates autem et suam manum jam confirmarat, [et eorum] qui se ex ipsius regno conlegerant, et magnis adventiciis auxiliis multorum regum et nationum juvabantur. Jam hoc fere sic fieri solere accepimus, ut regum adfictae fortunae facile multorum opes adliciant ad misericordiam, maximeque eorum qui aut reges sunt aut vivunt in regno, ut eis nomen regale magnum et sanctum esse videatur. 25. Itaque tantum victus efficere potuit, quantum incolumis numquam est ausus
optare. Nam cum se in regnum suum recepisset, non fuit eo contentus, quod ei praeter spem acciderat,—ut illam, postea quam pulsus erat, terram umquam attingeret,—sed in exercitum nostrum clarum atque victorem impetum fecit. Sinite hoc loco, Quirites, sicut poëtae solent, qui res Romanas scribunt, praeterire me nostram calamitatem, quae tanta fuit, ut eam ad auris [Luculli] imperatoris non ex proelio nuntius, sed ex sermone rumor adferret. 26. Hic in illo ipso malo gravissimaque belli offensione, L. Lucullus, qui tamen aliqua ex parte eis incommodis mederi fortasse potuisset, vestro jussu coactus,—qui imperi diuturnitati modum statuendum vetere exemplo putavistis,—partem militum, qui jam stipendiis confecti erant, dimisit, partem M'. Glabrioni tradidit. ☄ Multa praetereo consulto, sed ea vos conjectura perspicite, quantum illud bellum factum putetis, quod conjungant reges potentissimi, renovent agitatae nationes, suscipiant integrae gentes, novus imperator noster accipiat, vetere exercitu pulso.

x. 27. Satis mihi multa verba fecisse videor, quae esset hoc bellum genere ipso necessarium, magnitudine periculosum. Restat ut de imperatore ad id bellum deligendo ac tantis rebus praeficiendo dicendum esse videatur. ☄

Utinam, Quirites, virorum fortium atque innocentiunm tandem tantam haberetis, ut haec vobis deliberatio difficilis esset, quemnam potissimum tantis rebus ac tanto bello praeficiendum putaretis ☥ Nunc vero—cum sit unus Cn. Pompeius, qui non modo eorum hominem qui nunc sunt gloriae, sed etiam antiquitatis memoriam virtute superarit—quae res est quae cujusquam animum in hac causa dubium facere possit? 28. Ego enim sic existimo, in summo imperatore quattuor has res inesse oportere,—scientiam rei militaris, virtutem, auctoritatem, felicitatem. Quis igitur hoc homine scientior umquam aut fuit aut esse debuit? qui e ludo
atque e pueritia disciplinis bello maximo atque acer-
rimis hostibus ad patris exercitum atque in militiae
disciplinam prosectus est; qui extrema pueritia miles
in exercitu fuit summi imperatoris, ineunte adulscen-
tia maximi ipse exercitus imperator; qui saepius cum
hoste conflxit quam quisquam cum inimico concerta-
vit, plura bella gessit quam ceteri legerunt, plures pro-
vincias confecit quam alii concupiverunt; cujus adulscen-
tia ad scientiam rei militaris non alienis praecptis
sed suis imperii, non offensionibus belli sed victoriis,
non stipendiis sed triumphis est erudita. Quod de-
nique genus esse belli poetest, in quo illum non exercu-
erit fortuna rei publicae? Civile, Africanum, Trans-
alpinum, Hispaniense, [mixtum ex civitatibus atque ex
bellicosissimis nationibus,] servile, navale bellum, varia
et diversa genera et bellorum et hostium, non solum
gesta ab hoc uno, sed etiam confecta, nullam rem esse
declarant in usu positam militari, quae hujus viri scien-
tiam fugere possit.

xi. 29. Jam vero virtuti Cn. Pompei quae poetest
oratio par inveniri? Quid est quod quisquam aut illo
dignum aut vobis novum aut cuiquam inauditum pos-
sit adferre? Neque enim illae sunt solae virtutes im-
peratoriae, quae volgo existimantur,—labor in negotiis,
fortitudo in periculis, industria in agendo, celeritas in
conficiendo, consilium in providendo: quae tanta sunt
in hoc uno, quanta in omnibus reliquis imperatoribus,
quos aut vidimus aut audivimus, non fuerunt. 30. Tes-
tis est Italia, quam ille ipse victor L. Sulla hujus vir-
tute et subsidio confessus est liberatam. Testis est
Sicilia, quam multis undique cinctam periculis non terre-
rore belli, sed consili celeritate explicavit. Testis est
Africa, quae, magnis oppressa hostium copiis, eorum
ipsorum sanguine redundavit. Testis est Gallia, per
quam legionibus nostris iter in Hispaniam Gallorum
internezione patesfactum est. Testis est Hispania, quae
saepissime plurimos hostis ab hoc superatos prostratosque conspexit. Testis est iterum et saepius Italia, quae cum servili bello taetro periculosoque premeretur, ab hoc auxilium absente expetivit: quod bellum expectatione ejus attenuatum atque imminutum est, adventu sublatum ac sepultum. 31. Testes nunc vero jam omnes oraet atque omnes exterae gentes ac nationes, denique maria omnia cum universa, tum in singulis oris omnes sinus atque portus. Quis enim toto mari locus per hos annos aut tam firmum habuit praesidium ut tutus esset, aut tam fuit abditus ut lateret? Quis navigavit qui non se aut mortis aut servitutis periculo committeret, cum aut hieme aut refterto praedonum mari navigaret? 32. Hoc tantum bellum, tam turpe, tam vetus, tam late divisum atque dispersum, quis umquam arbitraretur aut ab omnibus imperatoribus uno anno aut omnibus annis ab uno imperatore confici posse? Quam provinciam tenuistis a praedonibus liberam per hosce annos? quod vectigal vobis tutum fuit? quem socium defendistis? cui praesidio classibus vestris fuistis? quam multas existimatis insulas esse desertas? quam multas aut metu relictas aut a praedonibus captas urbis esse sociorum? 33.

xii. Sed quid ego longinquaque commemoro? Fuit hoc quondam, fuit proprium populi Romani, longe a domo bellare, et propugnaculis imperi sociorum fortunas, non sua tecta defendere. Sociis ego nostris mare per hos annos clausum fuisse dicam, cum exercitus vestri numquam a Brundisio nisi hieme summa transmiserint? Qui ad vos ab exteros nationibus venirent captos querar, cum legati populi Romani redempti sint? Mercatoribus tutum mare non fuisse dicam, cum duodecim secures in praedonum potestatem pervenerint? Cnidum aut Colophonem aut Samum, nobilissimas urbis, innumerabilisque alias captas esse commemorem, cum vestros portus, atque eos portus
quibus vitam ac spiritum ducitis, in praedonum suisse potestatem sciatis? An vero ignoratis portum Cajetae celeberrimum ac plenissimum navium inspectante praetore a praedonibus esse direptum? ex Miseno autem ejus ipsius liberos, qui cum praedonibus antea ibi bellum gesserat, a praedonibus esse sublatos? Nam quid ego Ostiense incommodum atque illam labem atque ignominiam rei publicae querar, cum, prope inspectantibus vobis, classis ea, cui consul populi Romani praepositus esset, a praedonibus capta atque oppressa est? Pro di immortales! tantamne unius hominis incredibilis ac divina virtus tam brevi tempore lucem adferre rei publicae potuit, ut vos, qui modo ante ostium Tiberinum classem hostium videbatis, eij nunc nullam intra Oceani ostium praedonum navem esse audiatis? 34. Atque haec qua celeritate gesta sint quamquam videtis, tamen a me in dicendo prae-tereunda non sunt. Quis enim umquam aut obeundi negoti aut consequendi quaestus studio tam brevi tempore tot loca adire, tantos cursus confiscere potuit, quam celeriter Cn. Pompeio duce tanti belli impetus navigavit? Qui nondum tempestivo ad navigandum mari Siciliam adiit, Africam exploravit; inde Sardiniam cum classe venit, atque haec tria frumentaria subsidia rei publicae firmissimis praesiidiis classibusque munivit; 35. inde cum se in Italian recepisset, duabus Hispaniis et Gallia [transalpina] praesiidiis ac navibus confirmata, missis item in oram Illyrici maris et in Achaiam omnemque Graeciam navibus, Italiae duo maria maximis classibus firmissimisque praesiidiis adornavit; ipse autem ut Brundisio prefectus est, undequinquagesimo die totam ad imperium populi Romani Ciliciam adjunxit; omnes, qui ubique praedones fuerunt, partim capti interfector quantum, partim unius hujus se imperio ac potestati dediderunt. Idem Cretensibus, cum ad eum usque in Pamphyliam legatos deprecatorisque
misissent, spem deditis non ademit, obsidesque imperavit. Ita tantum bellum, tam diuturnum, tam longe lateque dispersum, quo bello omnes gentes ac nationes premebantur, Cn. Pompeius extrema hieme apparavit, ineunte vere suscept, media aestate con-secit.

vestrorum armis hostium urbis, an hibernis sociorum civitates esse deletas? Neque enim potest exercitum is continere imperator, qui se ipse non continet, neque severus esse in judicando, qui alios in se severos esse judices non volt. 39. Hic miramur hunc hominem tantum excellere ceteris, cujus legiones sic in Asiam pervenerint, ut non modo manus tanti exercitus, sed ne vestigium quidem cuiquam pacato nocuisse dicatur? Jam vero quem ad modum milites hibernent cotidie sermones ac litterae perferuntur: non modo ut summum faciat in militem nemini vis adsertur, sed ne cupienti quidem cuiquam permittitur. Hiemis enim, non avaritiae perfugium majores nostri in sociorum atque amicorum tectis esse voluerunt. —

xiv. 40. Age vero: ceteris in rebus quali sit temperantia considerate. Unde illam tantam celeritatem et tam incredibilem cursum inventum putatis? Non enim illum eximia vis remigum aut ars inaudita quae-dam gubernandi aut venti aliqui novi tam celeriter in ultimas terras pertulerunt; sed eae res quae ceteros remorari solent, non retardarunt: non avaritia ab institulo cursu ad praedam aliquam devocavit, non libido ad voluptatem, non amoenitas ad delectationem, non nobilitas urbis ad cognitionem, non denique labor ipse ad quietem; postremo signa et tabulas ceteraque orna-menta Graecorum oppidorum, quae ceteri tollenda esse arbitrantur, ea sibi ille ne visenda quidem existimavit. 41. Itaque omnes nunc in eis locis Cn. Pompeium sicut aliquem non ex hac urbe missum, sed de caelo delapsum intuentur. Nunc denique incipium cre-dere fuisse homines Romanos hac quondam continen-tia, quod jam nationibus exteris incredibile ac falso memoriae proditum videbatur. Nunc imperi vestri splendor illis gentibus lucem adferre coepit. Nunc intellegunt non sine causa majores suos, tum cum ea temperantia magistratus habeamus, servire populo
Romano quam imperare aliis maluisse. Jam vero ita faciles aditus ad eum privatorum, ita liberae querimoniae de aliorum injuriis esse dicuntur, ut is, qui dignitate principibus excellit, facilitate infimis par esse videatur. 42. Jam quantum consilio, quantum dicendi gravitate et copia valeat,—in quo ipso inest quaedam dignitas imperatoria,—vos, Quirites, hoc ipso ex loco saepe cognovistis. Fidem vero ejus quantam inter socios existimari putatis, quam hostes omnes omnium generum sanctissimam judicaret? Humanitate jam tanta est, ut difficile dictu sit utrum hostes magis virtutem ejus pugnantes timuerint, an mansuetudinem victi dillexerint. Et quisquam dubitabit quin huic hoc tantum bellum transmitendum sit, qui ad omnia nostrae memoriae bella conficienda divino quodam consilio natus esse videatur?

xv. 43. Et quoniam auctoritas quoque in bellis administrandis multum atque in imperio militari valet, certe nemini dubium est quin ea re idem ille imperator plurimum possit. Vehementer autem pertinere ad bella administranda quid hostes, quid socii de imperatoribus nostris existimetur quis ignorat, cum sciamus homines in tantis rebus, ut aut contemnunt aut metuant aut oderint aut ament, opinione non minus et fama quam aliqua ratione certa commoveri? Quod igitur nomen unquam in orbe terrarum clarius fuit? cujus res gestae pares? de quo homine vos,—id quod maxime facit auctoritatem,—tanta et tam praecella judicia fecistis? 44. An vero ullam usquam esse oram tam desertam putatis, quo non illius diei fama pervaserit, cum universus populus Romanus, referto foro completeisque omnibus templis ex quibus hic locus conspici potest, unum sibi ad commune omnium gentium bellum Cn. Pompeium imperatorem depoposcit? Itaque—ut plura non dicam, neque aliorum exemplis confirmem quantum [hujus] auctoritas valeat in bello—ab eodem
Reliquum est ut de felicitate (quam praestare de se ipso nemo potest, meminisse et commemorare de altero possumus, sicut aequum est homines de potestate clerorum) timide et paucà dicamus. Ego enim sic exsimio: Maximo, Marcello, Scipioni, Mario, et ceteris magnis imperatoribus non solum propter virtutem, sed etiam propter fortunam saepius imperia mandata atque exercitus esse commissos. Fuit enim profecto quibusdam summis viris quaedam ad amplitudinem et ad gloriam et ad res magnas bene gerandas divinitus adjuncta fortunà. De hujus autem hominis felicitate, de quo nunc agimus, hac utar moderatione dicendi, non ut in illius potestate fortunam positam esse dicam, sed ut praeterita meminissem, reliqua sperare videamur, ne aut invisa dis immortalibus oratio nostra aut ingrata esse videatur. Itaque non sum praedicaturus quantas ille res domi militiae, terra marique, quantaque felicitate gesserit; ut ejus semper voluntatibus non modo cives adsererint, socii obtemperarint, hostes obdierint, sed etiam venti tempestatibusque obsecundarint: hoc brevissime dicam, neminem tam impudentem suisse, qui ab dis immortalibus tot et tantas res tacitus auderet optare, quot et quantas di immortales ad Cn. Pompeium detulerunt. Quod ut illi proprium ac perpetuum sit, Quirites, cum communis salutis atque imperi tum ipsius hominis causa, sicuti facitis, velle et optare debetis.

Qua re, — cum et bellum sit ita necessarium ut neglegi non possit, ita magnum ut accuratissime sit administrandum; et cum ei imperatorem praeficere possitis, in quo sit eximia belli scientia, singularis virtus, clarissima auctoritas, egregia fortuna, — dubitatis, Quirites, quin hoc tantum boni, quod vobis ab dis immortalibus oblatum et datum est, in rem publicam conservandam atque amplificandam conferatis?

Quod si Romae Cn. Pompeius privatus esset hoc
tempore, tamen ad tantum bellum is erat deligendus atque mittendus: nunc cum ad ceteras summas utilitates haec quoque opportunitas adjungatur, ut in eis ipsis locis adsit, ut habeat exercitum, ut ab eis qui habent accipere statim possit, quid exspectamus? aut cur non ducibus dis immortalibus eidem, cui cetera summa cum salute rei publicae comissa sunt, hoc quoque bellum regium committamus?

51. At enim vir clarissimus, amantissimus rei publicae, vestris beneficiis amplissimis affectus, Q. Catulus, itemque summis ornamentis honoris, fortunae, virtutis, ingenii praeditus, Q. Hortensius, ab hac ratione dissentiunt. Quorum ego auctoritatem apud vos multis locis plurimum valuisse et valere oportere confiteor; sed in hac causa, tametsi cognoscetis auctoritates contrarias virorum fortissimorum et clarissimorum, tamen omissis auctoritatis ipsa re ac ratione exquirere possumus veritatem, atque hoc facilium, quod ea omnia quae a me adhuc dicta sunt, eidem isti vera esse concedunt, — et necessarium bellum esse et magnum, et in uno Cn. Pompeio summa esse omnia. 52. Quidigitur ait Hortensius? Si uni omnia tribuenda sint dignissimum esse Pompeium, sed ad unum tamen omnia deferri non oportere. Obsolevit jam ista oratio, re multo magis quam verbis refutata. Nam tu idem, Q. Hortensi, multa pro tua summa copia ac singulari facultate dicendi et in senatu contra virum fortem, A. Gabinium, graviter ornateque dixisti, cum is de uno imperatore contra praedones constituendo legem promulgasset, et ex hoc ipso loco permulta item contra eam legem verba fecisti. 53. Quid? tum, per deos immortalis! si plus apud populum Romanum auctoritas tua quam ipsius populi Romani salus et vera causa valuisse, hodie hanc gloriam atque hoc orbis terrae imperium teneremus? An tibi tum imperium hoc esse videbatur, cum populi Romani legati quaestores prae-
toresque capiebantur? cum ex omnibus provinciis com-
meatu et privato et publico prohibebamur? cum ita
clausa nobis erant maria omnia, ut neque privatam rem
transmarinam neque publicam jam obire possemus?

xviii. 54. Quae civitas antea umquam fuit, — non
dico Atheniensium, quae satis late quondam mare tenu-
isce dicitur; non Karthaginiensium, qui permultum
classe ac maritimis rebus valuerunt; non Rhodiorum,
quorum usque ad nostram memoriam disciplina navalis
et gloria remansit, — 𝒕HexString:sed quae civitas umquam antea
teneuis, quae tam parva insula fuit, quae non portus
suos et agros et aliquam partem regionis atque orae
maritmae per se ipsa defenderet? At (hercule) aliquot
annis continuos ante legem Gabiniam ille populus Ro-
manus, cujus usque ad nostram memoriam nomen in-
victum in navalibus pugnis permanserit, magna ac
multo maxima parte non modo utilitatis, sed dignitatis
atque imperi caruit. 55. Nos, quorum majores Antio-
chum regem classe Persenque superarunt, omnibusque
navalibus pugnis Karthaginiensium, homines in mariti-
mis rebus exercitatissimos, paratissimosque, vicerunt,
ei nullo in loco jam praedonibus pares esse poteramus:
nos, qui antea non modo Italianum tum habetamus, sed
omnis socios in ultimis oris auctoritate nostri imperi sal-
vos praestare poteramus, — tum cum insula Delos, tam
procul a nobis in Aegaeo mari posita, quo omnes undi-
que cum mercibus atque oneribus commeabant, referta
divitiis, parva, sine muro, nihil timebat, — eidem non
modo provinciis atque oris Italiae maritimis ac portu-
bus nostris, sed etiam Appia jam via carebamus; et eis
temporibus non pudebat magistratus populi Romani in
hunc ipsum locum descendere, cum eum nobis majores
nostri exuviis nauticis et classium spoliis ornatum reli-
quisset.

xix. 56. Bono te animo tum, Q. Hortensi, populus
Romanus et ceteros qui erant in eadem sententia, dicere
existimavit ea quae sentiebatis: sed tamem in salute communi idem populus Romanus dolori suo maluit quam auctoritati vestrae obtemperare. Itaque una lex, unus vir, unus annus non modo nos illa miseria ac turpitudine liberavit, sed etiam efficit, ut aliquando vere videremur omnibus gentibus ac nationibus terra marique imperare. 57. Quo mihi etiam indignius videtur obtrectatum esse adhuc,—Gabinio dicam an Pompeio, an utrique, id quod est verius,—ne legaretur A. Gabinius Cn. Pompeio expetenti ac postulanti. Utrum ille, qui postulat ad tantum bellum legatum quem velit, idoneus non est qui impetret, cum ceteri ad expilandos socios diripiendasque provincias quos voluerunt legatos eduxerint; an ipse, cujus lege salus ac dignitas populo Romano atque omnibus gentibus constituta est, expers esse debet gloriae ejus imperatoris atque ejus exercitus, qui consilio ipsius ac periculo est constitutus? 58. An C. Falciadius, Q. Metellus, Q. Caelius Latiniensis, Cn. Lentulus, quos omnis honoris causa nomino, cum tribuni plebi fuissent, anno proximo legati esse potuerunt: in uno Gabinio sunt tam diligentes, qui in hoc bello, quod lege Gabinia geritur, in hoc imperatore atque exercitu, quem per vos ipse constituit, etiam praecipuo jure esse deberet? De quo legando consules spero ad senatum relatuos. Qui si dubitabunt aut gravabuntur, ego me profiteor relaturum. Neque me impediet cujusquam inimicum edictum, quo minus vobis fretus vestrum jus beneficiumque defendam; neque praeter intercessionem quicum audiam, de qua (ut arbitror) isti ipsi, qui minantur, etiam atque etiam quid liceat considerabunt. Mea quidem sententia, Quirites, unus A. Gabinius belli maritimi rerumque gestarum Cn. Pompeio socius ascribitur, proptererea quod alter uni illud bellum suscipiendum vestris suffragiis detulit, alter delatum susceptumque confecit.
xx. 59. Reliquum est ut de Q. Catuli auctoritate et sententia dicendum esse videatur. Qui cum ex vobis quaereret, si in uno Cn. Pompeio omnia poneretis, si quid eo factum esset, in quo spem essetis habituri,—cepit magnum suae virtutis fructum ac dignitatis, cum omnes una prope voce in [eo] ipso vos spem habituros esse dixistis. Etenim talis est vir, ut nulla res tanta sit ac tam difficilis, quam ille non et consilio regere et integritate tueri et virtute conficere possit. Sed in hoc ipso ab eo vehementissime dissentio, quod, quo minus certa est hominum ac minus diurna vita, hoc magis res publica, dum per deos immortalis licet, frui debet summi viri vita atque virtute. 60. 'At enim ne quid novi fiat contra exempla atque instituta majorum.' Non dicam hoc loco majores nostros semper in pace consuetudini, in bello utilitati paruisse; semper ad novos casus temporum novorum consiliorum rationes adcommodasse: non dicam duo bella maxima, Punicum atque Hispaniense, ab uno imperatore esse confecta, duasque urbis potentissimas, quae huic imperio maxime minitabantur, Karthaginem atque Numantiam, ab eodem Scipione esse deletas: non commemorabo nuper ita vobis patribusque vestris esse visum, ut in uno C. Mario spes imperi poneretur, ut idem cum Jugurtha, idem cum Cimbris, idem cum Teutonis bellum administraret. 61. In ipso Cn. Pompeio, in quo novi constitui nihil volt Q. Catulus, quam multa sint nova summa Q. Catuli voluntate constituta recordamini.

ciis singulari innocencia, gravitate, virtute: bellum in Africa maximum confecit, victorem exercitum depor-
tavit. Quid vero tam inauditum quam equitem Ro-
manum triumphare? At eam quoque rem populus
Romanus non modo vidit, sed omnium etiam studio
visendam et concelebrandam putavit. 62. Quid tam
insitatum quam ut, cum duo consules clarissimi fortis-
simique essent, eques Romanus ad bellum maximum
formidolosissimumque pro consule mitteretur? Missus
est. Quo quidem tempore, cum esset non nemo in
senatu qui diceret non oportere mitti hominem priva-
tum pro consule, L. Philippus dixisse dicitur non se
illum sua sententia pro consule, sed pro consulibus
mittere. Tanta in eo rei publicae bene gerendae spes
constituebatur, ut duorum consulum munus unius adu-
lescentis virtuti committeretur. Quid tam singulare
quam ut ex senatus consulto legibus solutus consul
ante fieret, quam ullum alium magistratum per leges
capere licuisset? quid tum incredibile quam ut iterum
eques Romanus ex senatus consulto triumpharet?
Quae in omnibus hominibus nova post hominum me-
moriam constituta sunt, ea tam multa non sunt quam
haec, quae in hoc uno homine videmus. 63. Atque
haec tot exempla, tanta ac tam nova, profecta sunt in
eundem hominem a Q. Catuli atque a ceterorum ejus-
dem dignitatis amplissimorum hominum auctoritate.

xxii. Qua re videant ne sit periniquum et non ferun-
dum, illorum auctoritatem de Cn. Pompei dignitata
evobis comprobatam semper esse, vestrum ab illis de
eodem homine judicium populique Romani auctorita-
tem improbari; praesertim cum jam suo jure populus
Romanus in hoc homine suam auctoritatem vel con-
tra omnis qui dissentientium possit defendere, propterea
quad, isdem istis reclamantibus, vos unum illum ex
omnibus delegistis quem bello praedonom praeponere-
tis. 64. Hoc si vos temere fecistis, et rei publicae pa-
rum consuluisistis, recte isti studia vestra suis consiliiis regere conantur. Sin autem vos plus tum in re publica vidistis, vos eis repugnantibus per vosmet ipsos dignitatem huic imperio, salutem orbi terrarum attulistis, ali- quando isti principes et sibi et ceteris populi Romani universi auctoritati parendum esse fateantur. Atque in hoc bello Asiatico et regio non solum militaris illa virtus, quae est in Cn. Pompeio singularis, sed aliae quoque virtutes animi magnae et multae requiruntur. Dificile est in Asia, Cilicia, Syria regnisse interiorum nationum ita versari nostrum imperatorem, ut nihil aliud nisi de hoste ac de laude cogitetur. Deinde etiam si qui sunt pudore ac temperantia moderatores, tamen eos esse talis propter multitudinem cupidorum hominum nemo arbitratur. 65. Dificile est dictu, Quirites, quanto in odio simus apud exteram nationem propter eorum, quos ad eas per hos annos cum imperio misi- mus, libidines et injurias. Quod enim fanum putatis in illis terris nostris magistratibus religiosum, quam civitatem sanctam, quam domum satis clausam ac munitamuisse? Urbes jam locupletes et copiosae requiruntur, quibus causa belli propter diripiendo cuper- ditatem inferatur. 66. Libenter haec coram cum Q. Catulo et Q. Hortensio, summis et clarissimis viris, disputarem. Noverunt enim sociorum volnera, vident eorum calamitates, querimonias audiunt. Pro sociis vos contra hostis exercitum mittere putatis, an hostium simulatione contra socios atque amicos? Quae civitas est in Asia quae non modo imperatoris aut legati, sed unius tribuni militum animos ac spiritus capere possit?

XXIII. Qua re, etiam si quem habetis qui conlatis signis exercitus regios superare posse videatur, tamen nisi erit idem, qui [se] a pecuniis sociorum, qui ab eorum conjugibus ac liberis, qui ab ornamentis sanorum atque oppidorum, qui ab auro gazaque regia manus, oculos, animum cohibere possit, non erit idoneus qui.
ad bellum Asiaticum regiumque mittatur. 67. Ecquam putatis civitatem pacatam suisse quae locuples sit? ecquam esse locupletem quae istis pacata esse videatur? Ora maritima, Quirites, Cn. Pompeium non solum propter rei militaris gloriam, sed etiam propter animi continentiam requisivit. Videbat enim praetores locupletari quot annis pecunia publica praeter paucos; neque eos quicquam aliud adsequi, classium nomine, nisi ut detrimentis accipiens majore adfici turpitudine videremur. Nunc qua cupiditate homines in provincias, quibus jacturis et quibus condicionibus proficiscantur, ignorant videlicet isti, qui ad unum deferenda omnia esse non arbitrantur? Quasi vero Cn. Pompeium non cum suis virtutibus tum etiam alienis vitis magnum esse videamus. 68. Qua re nolite dubitare quin huic uni credatis omnia, qui inter tot annos unus inventus sit, quem socii in urbis suas cum exercitu venisse gaudeant.

Quod si auctoritatibus hanc causam, Quirites, confirmandam putatis, est vobis auctor vir bellorum omnium maximarumque rerum peritissimus, P. Servilius, cujus tantae res gestae terra marique exstiterunt, ut cum de bello deliberetis, auctor vobis gravior nemo esse debeat; est C. Curio, summis vestris beneficiis maximisque rebus gestis, summo ingenio et prudentia praeditus; est Cn. Lentulus, in quo omnes pro amplissimis vestris honoribus summum consilium, summam gravitatem esse cognovistis; est C. Cassius, integritate, virtute, constantia singulari. Qua re videte ut horum auctoritatibus illorum orationi, qui dissentiant, responder posse videamur.

xxiv. 69. Quae cum ita sint, C. Manili, primum istam tuam et legem et voluntatem et sententiam laudo vehementissimeque comprobo: deinde te hortor, ut auctore populo Romano maneas in sententia, neve cujusquam vim aut minas pertimescas. Primum in te
satis esse animi perseverantiaeque arbitror: deinde cum tantam multitudinem cum tanto studio adesse videamus, quantam iterum nunc in eodem homine praeficiendo videmus, quid est quod aut de re aut de perficiendi facultate dubitemus? Ego autem quicquid est in me studi, consili, laboris, ingenii, quicquid hoc beneficio populi Romani atque hac potestate praetoria, quicquid auctoritate, fide, constantia possum, id omne ad hanc rem conficiendam tibi et populo Romano polliceor ac defero: 70. testorque omnis deos, et eos maxime qui huic loco temploque praesident, qui omnium mentis eorum qui ad rem publicam adeunt maxime perspiciunt, me hoc neque rogatu facere cujusquam, neque quo Cn. Pompei gratiam mihi per hanc causam conciliari putem, neque quo mihi ex cujusquam amplitudine aut praesidia periculis aut adjumenta honoribus quaearam; propterea quod pericula facile, ut hominem praestare oportet, innocentia tecti repellemus, honorem autem neque ab uno neque ex hoc loco, sed eadem illa nostra laboriosissima ratione vitae, si vestra voluntas feret, consequemur. 71. Quam ob rem quicquid in hac causa mihi susceptum est, Quirites, id ego omne me rei publicae causa suscepisse confirmo; tantumque abest ut aliquam mihi bonam gratiam quae-sisse videar, ut multas me etiam simulataes partim obscuras, partim apertas intellegam mihi non necessarias, vobis non inutilis suscepisse. Sed ego me hoc honore praeditum, tantis vestris beneficiis adfectum statui, Quirites, vestram voluntatem et rei publicae dignitatem et salutem provinciarum atque sociorum meis omnibus commodis et rationibus praeferre oportere.
THE CONSPIRACY OF CATILINE.

B.C. 63.

During the absence of Pompey in the East (see the preceding Introduction), the politics of the city were kept in a constant ferment by the strife of parties. The violence and corruption of the time seemed to afford a fit opportunity for some daring enterprise. This opportunity was seized by Lucius Sergius Catilina. He was a man of noble birth, of middle age, and of the vilest character; an intimate friend of Verres, and like him distinguished for his infamous career in Sulla's army. He expected, probably, to make himself tyrant, as Dionysius and Agathocles — men no better than he — had done in Syracuse; but it was suspected at the time, and is believed by many at the present day, that he was, after all, only a tool of Caesar and Crassus, the leaders of the democratic party.

Catiline's plan was to make use of the consulship as a stepping-stone to the tyranny; and with this end he desired to be a candidate for this office, for the year B.C. 65. He was shut out, however, both that year and the next, by a charge of repetundae; of this he was at last acquitted, in season to present himself for the year B.C. 63. There was a very exciting canvass, which resulted in the election of Cicero by an overwhelming majority, while a confederate of Catiline, Caius Antonius — son of the distinguished orator, and uncle of the triumvir — was elected as his colleague. Catiline, nothing daunted, offered himself again for the following year, but was again defeated, mainly through the exertions of the consul Cicero, who had completely gained over his weak and greedy colleague Antonius. The rich province of Macedonia had fallen to Cicero by lot, for his proconsular year; but he transferred this to Antonius, on condition of his coöperation against Catiline.

Catiline would now wait no longer, but prepared for an immediate outbreak. As a private citizen he lost the advantages which the holding of the consulship would have given him, and the only member of the conspiracy who held a magistracy was the vain and indolent Lentulus, praetor and of consular rank. In the course of October, B.C. 63, a body of troops was collected at Faesulae (now Fiesole, close to Florence), a town in the north of Etruria; this was under the command of the centurion Caius Manlius, Catiline.
himself remaining in the city to direct operations there. Cicero, meantime, had managed to keep track of the conspiracy in all its details; and, when Catiline had the effrontery to appear in his seat in the Senate, he burst upon him with a fiery invective, the first of the four "Orations against Catiline." Probably none of his speeches is better known than this, or conveys a better impression of his power as an orator.

1. Invective against Catiline.

In the Senate, Nov. 8.


II. 4. Decretit quondam senatus, ut L. Opimius consul videret ne quid res publica detrimenti caperet. Nox nulla intercessit: interfector est propter quasdam seditionum suspiciones C. Gracchus, clarissimo patre, avo, majoribis; occisus est cum liberis M. Fulvius consularis. Simili senatus consulto C. Mario et L. Valerio consulibus est permessa res publica: num unum diem postea L. Saturninum tribunum plebis et C. Servilium praetorem [mors ac] rei publicae poena remorata est? At nos vicesimum jam diem patimur hebescere aciem horum auctoritatis. Habemus enim hujusce sophi senatus consultum, verum inclusum in tabulis, tamquam in vagina reconditum, quo ex sena-tus consulto consistit te interfector esse, Catilina, convenit. Vivis, et vivis non ad deponendam, sed ad confirmandam audaciam. X Cupio, patres conscripti, me esse clementem: cupio in tantis rei publicae peri-culis me non dissolvetur videri; sed jam me ipse inertiae neguitiaeque condemno. 5. Castra sunt in Italia contra populum Romanum in Etruriae faucibus conlocata: crescit in dies singulos hostium numerus; eorum autem castrorum imperatorem ducemque hostium intra moenia atque adeo in senatu videmus, intestinam alli- quam cotidie perniciem rei publicae molientem. Si te jam, Catilina, comprehendi, si interfecti jussero, credo, erit verendum mihi ne non hoc potius omnes boni serius a me, quam quisquam crudelius factum esse dicat. Verum ego hoc, quod jam pridem factum esse oportuit, certa de causa nondum adducor ut faciam.
Tum denique interficiere, cum jam nemo tam impro-
bus, tam perditus, tam tui similis ipsexerit poterit, qui
id non jure factum esse fateatur. 6. Quam diu quis-
quam erit qui te defendere audeat, vives; et vives ita
ut vivis, multis meis et firmis praesidiis oppressus, ne
commovere te contra rem publicam possis. Multorum
te etiam oculi et aures non sentientem, sicut adhuc
feuerunt, speculabuntur atque custodient.

III. Etenim quid est, Catilina, quod jam amplius
exspectes, si neque nox tenebris obscurare coetus ne-
farior, nec privata domus parietibus continer voces
conjurationis [tuae] potest? si inlustrantur, si erumpunt
omnia? Muta jam istam mentem: mihi crede, obli-
viscere caedis atque incendiorum. Teneris undique:
luce sunt clariora nobis tua consilia omnia, quae jam
mecum licet recognoscas. 7. Meministine me ante
diem xii. Kalendas Novembris dicere in senatu, fore
in armis certo die—qui dies futurus esset ante diem
vi. Kal. Novembris—C. Manlium, audaciae satellitem
atque administrum tuae? Num me fetellit, Catilina,
non modo res tanta, tam atrox tamque incredibilis,
verum—id quod multo magis est admirandum—
dies? Dixi ego idem in senatu caedem te optimatum
contulisse in ante diem v. Kalendas Novembris, tum
cum multi principes civitatis Roma non tam sui con-
servandi quam tuorum consiliorum reprimendorum
causa profugerunt. Num intiari potes te illo ipso die,
meis praesidiis, mea diligentia circumclusum, commo-
vere te contra rem publicam non potuisse, cum tu dis-
cessu ceterorum, nostra tamen qui remansissemus
cæde, te contentum esse dicebas? 8. Quid? cum te
Praeneste Kalendis ipsis Novembribus occupaturum
nocturno impetu esse consideres, sensistine illam colo-
niam meo jussu [meis] praesidiis custodiis vigiliis
esse munitam? Nihil agis, nihil poliris, nihil cogitas,
quod non ego non modo audiam, sed etiam videam
planeque sentiam.
He is bidden to leave the City.

metu liberabis, dum modo inter me atque te murus intersit. Nobiscum versari jam diutius non potes: non seram, non patiar, non sinam. 11. Magna dis immortalibus habenda est, atque huic ipsi Jovi Statori, antiquissimo custodi hujus urbis, gratia, quod hanc tam taetram, tam horribilem tamque instauram rei publicae pestem totiens jam effugimus. Non est saepius in uno homine summa salus periclitanda rei publicae. Quam diu mihi consuli designato, Catilina, insidiatus es, non publico me praesidio, sed privata diligentia defendi. Cum proximis comitiis consularibus me consulem in campo et competitores tuos interficere voluisti, compressi conatus tuos nefarios amicorum praesidio et copiis, nullo tumultu publice concitato: denique, quotiescumque me (petisti) per me tibi obstiti, quamquam videbamus perriciem meam cum magna calamitate rei publicae esse conjunctam. 12. Nunc jam aperte rem publicam universam petis: templo deorum immortalium, tecta urbis, vitam omnium civium, Italiam [denique] totam ad exitium ac vastitatem vocas. Qua re, quoniam id quod est primum, et quod hujus imperii disciplinaeque majorum prorium est, facere nondum audeo, faciam id quod est ad severitatem lenius, et ad communem salutem utilius. Nam si te interfici jussero, residebit in re publica reliqua conjuratorum manus. Sin tu, quod te jam dudum hortor, exieris, exhaurietur ex urbe tuorum comitum magna et perriciosa sentina rei publicae.

13. Quid est, Catilina? num dubitas id me imperante facere, quod jam tua sponte faciebas? Exire ex urbe jubes consul hostem. Interrogas me, num in exsilium? Non jubeo; sed, si me consulis, suadeo. vi. Quid est enim, Catilina, quod te jam in hac urbe delectare possit? in qua nemo est extra istam conjunctionem perditorum hominum qui te non metuat, nemo qui non odorit. Quae nota domesticae turpitudinis non
inusta vitae tuae est? Quod privataram rerum dedecus non haeret in fama? quae libido ab oculis, quod facinus a manibus umquam tuis, quod flagitium a toto corpore asuit? Cui tu adulescentulo, quem corruptellarum inlecebris substantissi, non aut ad audaciae ferrum aut ad libidinem facem praetulisti? X 14. Quid vero? nuper cum morte superioris uxoris novis nuptiis domum vacuefecisses, nonne etiam alio incredibili scelere hoc scelus cumulasti? quod ego praetermitto et facile patior sileri, ne in hac civitate tanti facinoris immanitas aut exstissem aut non vindicata esse videatur. Praetermitto ruinas fortunarum tuarum, quas omnis impendere tibi proximis Idibus senties. Ad illa venio, quae non ad privatam ignominiam vitiorum tuorum, non ad domesticam tuam difficultatem ac turpitudinem, sed ad summam rem publicam atque ad omnium nostrum vitam salutemque pertinent. 15. Potestne tibi haec lux, Catilina, aut hujus caeli spiritus esse jucundus, cum scias horum esse neminem qui nesciat te pridie Kalendas Januarias Lepido et Tullo consulibus stetisse in comitio cum telo? manum consulum et principum civitatis interficiendorum causa parvisse? scelieri ac furori tuo non mentem aliquam aut timorem [tuum], sed fortunam populi Romani obstississe? Ac jam illa omitt — neque enim sunt aut obscura aut non multa commissa — quotiens tu me designatum, quotiens consulem interficere conatus es! quot ego tuas petitiones, ita conjectas ut vitari posse non viderentur, parva quadam declinatione et (ut aiunt) corpore effugi! [Nihil agis,] nihil adsequeris, [nihil moliris,] neque tamen conari ac velle desistis. 16. Quotiens tibi jam extorta est ista sica de manibus! quotiens vero excidit casu aliquo et elapsa est! [Tamen ea carere diutius non potes,] quaque quidem quibus abs te initiata sacrarum ac devota sit nescio, quod eam necesse putas esse in consulis corpore desigere.
vii. Nunc vero quae tua est ista vita? Sic enim jam tecum loquar, non ut odio pernotus esse videar, quo de-beo, sed ut misericordia, quae tibi nulla debetur. Venisti paulo ante in senatum. Quis te e'x hac tanta frequentia, tot ex tuis amicis ac necessariis salutavit? Si hoc post hominum memoriam (contigit)nemini, vocis exspectas contumeliam, cum sis gravissimo judicio taciturnitatis oppressus? (Quid, quod) adventu tuo ista subsellia vacuefacta sunt? quod omnes consulares, qui tibi persaephe ad caedem constituì fuerunt, (simul atque) adsedisti, partem istam subselliorum nudam atque inanem reliquerunt, quo tandem animo tibi ferendum putas? 

17. Servi (mehercule) mei si me isto pacto metuerent, ut te metuunt omnes cives tui, domum meam reliquendam putarem: tu tibi urbem non arbitraris? et, si me meis civibus injuria suspectum tam graviter atque offensum viderem, carere me aspectu civium quam inestis omnium oculis conspici mallem. Tu, cum conscientia scelerum tuorum agnoscas odium omnium justum et jam diu tibi debitum, dubitas quorum mensis sensusque volneras, eorum aspectum praequentiamque vitare? Si te parentes tamerent atque odissent tui, neque eos ulla ratione placare posses, tu (opinor) ab eorum oculis aliquo concederes. Nunc te patria, quae communis est parenst omnium nostrum, odit ac metuit, et jam diu te nihil judicat nisi de parricidio suo cogitare: hujus tu neque auctoritatem verebere, nec judicium sequere, nec vim pertimesces?

18. Quae tecum, Catilina, sic agit, et quodam modo tacita loquitur: 'Nullum jam aliquot annis facinus exstirit nisi per te, nullum flagitium sine te: tibi uni mul- torum civium neces, tibi vexatio direptioque sociorum impunita fuit ac libera: tu non solum ad neglegendas leges et quaestiones, verum etiam ad evertendas perfringendasque valuisti. 'Superiora illa, quamquam ferenda non fuerunt, tamen, ut potui, tuli: nunc vero
me totam esse in metu propter unum te, quicquid in-
crepuerit Catilinam timeri, nullum videri contra me
consilium iniri posse quod a tuo scelere abhorreat, non
est ferendum. Quam ob rem discede, atque hunc mihi
timorem eripe: si est verus, ne opprimar; sin falsus,
ut tandem aliquando timere desinam.' viii. 18. Haec
si tecum, ut dixi, patria loquatur, nonne impetrare
debeat, etiam si vim adhibere non possit? X Quid,
quod tu te ipse in custodiem dedisti? quod vitandae
suspirationis causa, ad M'. Lepidum te habitate velle
dixisti? a quo non receptus etiam ad me venire ausus
es, atque ut domi meae te adservarem rogasti. Cum
a me quoque id respondum tulisses, me nullo modo
posse isdem parietibus tuto esse tecum, qui magno in
periculo essem quod isdem moenibus contineremur,
ad Q. Metellum praetorem venisti: a quo repudiatu
ad sodalem tuum, virum optimum, M. Marcellum de-
migrasti; quem tu videlicet et ad custodiendum [te]
diligentissimum et ad suspicandum sagacissimum et
ad vindicandum fortissimum fore putasti. Sed quam
longe videtur a carcere atque a vinculis abesse debere,
qui se ipse jam dignum custodia judicarit? 20. Quae
cum ita sint, Catilina, dubitas, si emori aequo animo
non potes, abire in aliquas terras, et vitam istam,
multis suppliciis justis debitisque ereptam, fugae soli-
tudinique mandare?

'Refer inquis' ad senatum: 'id enim postulas, et, si
hic ordo placere decreverit te ire in exsilium, obtempe-
raturum te esse dicis. Non referam, id quod abhorret
a meis moribus; et tamen faciam ut intellegas quid hi
de de te sentiant. Egredere ex urbe, Catilina; libera rem
publicam metu; in exsilium, si hanc vocem exspectas,
profiscere. Quid est, Catilina? ecquid attendis?
ecquid animadvertis horum silentium? Patiuntur,
tacent. Quid exspectas auctoritatem loquentium, quo-
rum voluntatem tacitorum perspicis? 21. At si hoc
idem huic adolescenti optimo P. Sestio, si fortissimo viro M. Marcello dixisset, jam mihi consuli, hoc ipso in templo, senatus jure optimo vim et manus intulisset. De te autem, Catilina, cum quiescunt, probant: cum patiuntur, decernunt: cum tacent, clamant. Neque hi solum, — quorum tibi auctoritas est videlicet cara, vita vilissima, — sed etiam illi equites Romani, honestissimi atque optimi viri, ceterique fortissimi cives, qui constant senatum, quorum tu et frequentiam videre et studia perspicere et voces paulo ante exaudire potuistis. Quorum ego vix abs te jam diu manus ac tela contineo, eosdem facile adducam, ut te haec, quae vastare jam pridem studes, relinquentem usque ad portas prosequantur.

ix. 22. Quamquam quid loquor? Te ut ulla res frangat? tu ut umquam te corrigas? tu ut ullam fungam meditere? tu ut exsilium cogites? Utinam tibi istam mentem di immortalis duint! tametsi video, si mea voce perterritus ire in exsilium animum induxeris, quanta tempestas invidiae nobis — si minus in praesens tempus, recenti memoria scelerum tuorum, at in posteritatem — impendeat: sed est tanti, dum modo ista sit privata calamitas, et a rei publicae periculos confugatur. Sed tu ut vitii tuis commoveare, ut legum poenas perpetuas, ut temporibus rei publicae cedas, non est postulandum. Neque enim is es, Catilina, ut te aut pudor umquam a turpitudine aut metus a periculo aut ratio a furore revocarit. X23. Quam ob rem, ut saepe jam dixi, profiscere; ac, si mihi inimico (ut praedicas) tuo conflare vis invidiam, recta perge in exsilium: vix feram sermones hominum si id feceris; vix molem istius invidiae, si in exsilium jussu consulis ieris, sustinebo. Sin autem servire meae laudi et gloriae mavis, egredere cum importuna sceleratorum manu: conier te ad Manlium, concita perditos civis, secernere te a bonis, infer patriae bellum, exsulta impio latro-
cinio, ut a me non ejectus ad alienos, sed invitatus ad tuos isse videarits.

24. Quamquam quid ego te invitem, a quo jam sciam esse praemissos qui tibi ad Forum Aurelium praestolarentur armati? cui sciam pactam et constitutam cum Manlio diem? a quo etiam aquisl am illam argenteam quam tibi ac tuis omnibus confido perniciosam ac funestam futuram, cui domi tuae sacrarium scelerum tuorum constitutum fuit, sciam esse praemissam? Tu ut illa carere diutius possis, quam venerari ad caedem profiscens solebas, a cujus alteribus saepe istam impiam dexteram ad necem civium transmutisti? 


26. Hic tu qua laetitia perfruere! quibus gaudiiis exsultabis! quanta in voluptate bacchabere, cum in tanto numero tuorum neque audies virum bonum quemquam neque videbis! Ad hujus vitae studium meditati illi sunt qui securunt labores tui, — jacer humi non solum ad obsidendum stuprum, verum etiam ad facinum obeundum; vigilare non solum insidiantem somno maritorum, verum etiam bonis otiosorum. Habes ubi ostentes tuam illam praeclaram patientiam famis, frigoris, inopiae rerum omnium, quibus te brevi tempore consectum esse senties.

27. Tantum profeci tum, cum te a consulatu reppuli, ut exsul potius temptare quam consul vexare rem publicam posses, atque ut id quod est a te scelerte susceptum, latrocinium potius quam bellum nominaretur.

xi. Nunc, ut a me, patres conscripti, quandam
prope justam patriae querimoniam detester ac deprecér, percipite, quae so, diligenter quae dicam, et ea peptinus animis vestris mentibusque mandate. Etenim si mecum patria, quae mihi vita mea multo est carior, si cuncta Italia, si omnis res publica, loquatur: 'M. Tulli, quid agis? Tune eum, quem esse hostem comperisti, quem ducem belli futurum vides, quem exspectari imperatorem in castris hostium sentis, auctorem sceleris, principem conjurationis, evocatorem servorum et civium perditorum, exire patiere, ut abs te non emissus ex urbe, sed immissus in urbem esse videatur? Non hunc in vincula duc, non ad mortem rapi, non summo supplicio mactari imperabis? 28. Quid tandem te impedit? Qosque majorum? At persaepe etiam privati in hac re publica perniciosos civis morte multaverunt. An leges, quae de civium Romanorum supplicio rogatae sunt? At numquam in hac urbe qui a re publica defecerunt civium jura tenuerunt. An invidiam posteritatis times? Praeclaram vero populo Romano referis gratiam, qui te hominem per te cognitum, nulla commendatione majorum, tam mature ad summum imperium per omnis honorum gradus extulit, si propter invidiae aut alicujus periculi metum salutem civium tuorum neglegis. 29. Sed si quis est invidiae metus, num est vehementius severitatis ac fortitudinis invidia quam inertiae ac nequitiae pertimescenda? An cum bello vastabitur Italia, vexabuntur urbes, tecta ardebunt, tum te non existimas invidiae incendio conflagraturum?'

xii. His ego sanctissimis rei publicae vocibus, et eorum hominum qui hoc idem sentiunt mentibus, paucà respondebo. Ego, si hoc optimum factu judicarem, patres conscripti, Catilinam morte multari, unius usuram horae gladiatori isti ad vivendum non dedissem. Etenim si summì et clarissimi vii Saturnini et Gracchorum et Flacci et superiorum complurium sanguine non
modo se non contaminarunt, sed etiam honestarunt, certe verendum mihi non erat ne quid hoc parricida civium interfecto invidiae mihi in posteritatem redundaret. Quod si ea mihi maxime impenderet, tamen hoc animo fui semper, ut invidiam virtute partem gloriam, non invidiam putarem. Quamquam non nulli sunt in hoc ordine, qui aut ea quae imminent non videant, aut ea quae vident dissimulent: qui spem Catilinae mollibus sententiis aluerunt, conjurationemque nascentem non credendo corroboraverunt: quorum auctoritatem seuti multi non solum improbi, verum etiam imperiti, si in hunc animadverterem, crudelter et regie factum esse dicerent. Nunc intellego, si iste, quo intendit, in Manliana castra pervenerit, neminem tam stultum fore qui non videat conjurationem esse factam, neminem tam improbum qui non fateatur. Hoc autem uno interfecto, intellego hanc rei publicae pestem paulisper reprimi, non in perpetuum comprimi posse. Quod si se ejecerit, secumque suos eduxerit, et eodem ceteros undique conlectos naufragos adgregarit, exstinguetur atque delebitur non modo haec tam adulta rei publicae pestis, verum etiam stirps ac semen malorum omnium.

xiii. 31. Etenim jam diu, patres conscripti, in his periculis conjurationis insidiisque versamur, sed nescio quo pacto omnium scelerum ac veteris furoris et audaciae maturitas in nostri consulatus tempus erupit. Quod si ex tanto latrocinio iste unus tolletur, videbimur fortasse ad breve quoddam tempus cura et metu esse relevati; periculum autem residebit, et erit inclusum penitus in venis atque in visceribus rei publicae. Ut saepe homines aegri morbo gravi, cum aestu febrili que jactantur, si aquam gelidam biberint, primo relevanti videntur, deinde multo gravius vehementiusque afflictantur; sic hic morbus, qui est in re publica, relevatus istius poena, vehementius reliquis vivis ingra-
vescet. 32. Qua re secedant improbi, secernant se a bonis, unum in locum congregentur, muro denique [id] (quod saepe jam dixi) discernantur a nobis: desinant insidiari domi suae consuli, circumstare tribunal prae- toris urbani, obsidere cum gladiis curiam, malleolos et faces ad inflammandam urbem comparare: sit denique inscriptum in fronte unius cujusque quid de re publica sentiat. Polliceor hoc vobis, patres conscripti, tantam in nobis consulibus fore diligentiam, tantam in vobis auctoritatem, tantam in equitibus Romanis virtutem, tantam in omnibus bonis consensionem, ut Catilinae prosectione omnia patefacta, inlustrata, oppressa, vindicata esse videatis.

33. Hisce omnibus, Catilina, cum summa rei publicae salute, cum tua peste ac pernicie, cunque eorum exitio qui se tecum omni scelere parricidioque junxerunt, profiscere ad impium bellum ac nefarium. Tu, Juppiter, qui isdem quibus haec urbs auspiciis [a Romulo] es constitutus, quem Statorem hujus urbis atque imperi vere nominamus, hunc et hujus socios a tuis ceterisque templis, a tectis urbis ac moenibus, a vita fortunisque civium [omnium] arcebis, et homines bonorum inimicos, hostis patriae, latrones Italiae, scelerum foedere inter se ac nefaria societate conjunctos, aeternis suppliciis vivos mortuosque mactabis.

2. Character of the Conspiracy.

Before the People, Nov. 9.

When Cicero had finished his speech and taken his seat, Catiline attempted to reply, but was interrupted by the cries and reproaches of the Senators. With a few threatening words, he rushed from the house, and left the city the same night, for the camp of Manlius. The next morning the consul assembled the people, and announced to them the news, in the triumphant speech which follows.
I. TANDEM aliquando, Quirites, L. Catilinam, furentem audacia, scelus anhelantem, pestem patriae nefarie molientem, vobis atque huic urbi ferro flam-maque minitantem, ex urbe vel ejecimus, vel emisimus, vel ipsum egredientem verbis prosecuti sumus. Abiit, excessit, evasit, erupit. Nulla jam pernicies a monstro illo atque prodigio moenibus ipsis intra moe-nia comparabitur. Atque hunc quidem unum hu-jus bellii domestici ducem sine controversia vicimus. Non enim jam inter latera nostra sica illa versabitur: non in campo, non in foro, non in curia, non denique intra domesticos parietes pertimescemus. Loco ille motus est, cum est ex urbe depulsum. Palam jam cum hoste nullo impediente bellum [justum] geremus. Sine dubio perdidimus hominem magnificeque vicimus, cum illum ex occultis insidiis in apertum latrocinium con-jecimus. 2. Quod vero non crucentum mucronem (ut voluit) extulit, quod vivis nobis egressus est, quod ei ferrum e manibus extorsimus, quod incolmis civis, quod stantem urbem reliquit, quanto tandem illum maerore esse adfictum et profligatum putatis? Jacet ille nunc prostratusque est, et se perculsum atque ab-jectum esse sentit, et retorquet oculos profecto saepe ad hanc urbem, quam e suis faucibus ereptam esse luget: quae quidem mihi laetari videtur, quod tantam pestem evomuerit forasque projecerit.

II. 3. Ac si quis est talis, qualis esse omnis oportebat, qui in hoc ipso, in quo exsultat et triumphat oratio mea, me vehementer accuset, quod tam capitalem hos-tem non comprehenderim potius quam emiserim, non est ista mea culpa, sed temporum. Interfectum esse L. Catilinam et gravissimo supplicio adfectum jam pridem oportebat, idque a me et mos majorum et hujus imperi severitas et res publica postulabat. Sed quam multos fuisse putatis qui quae ego deferrem non crederent? [quam multos qui propter stultitiam non putarent?]
quam multos qui etiam defenderent? [quam multos qui propter improbitatem savorent?] Ac si illo suplato depelli a vobis omne periculum judicarem, jam pridem ego L. Catilinam non modo invidiae meae, verum etiam vitae periculo sustulissem. Sed cum viderem, ne vobis quidem omnibus re etiam tum probata] si illum, ut erat meritus, morte multassem, fore ut ejus socios invidia oppressus persequi non possem, rem huc deduxi, ut tum palam pugnare possetis, cum hostem aperte videretis. Quem quidem ego hostem quam vehementer foris esse timendum putem, licet hinc intellegatis, quod etiam moleste fero, quod ex urbe parum comitatus exierit. Utinam ille omnis secum suas copias eduxisset! Tongilium mihi eduxit, quem amare in praetexta coeperat, Publicium et Minucium, quorum aetatem alium contractum in popina nullum rei publicae motum adferre poterat: reliquit quos viros, quanta aere alieno! quam valentis! quam nobilis! xii. 5. Itaque ego illum exercitum praefectus Galli-canis legionibus, et hoc dilectu quem in agro Piceno et Gallico Q. Metellus habuit, et his copiis quae a nobis cotidie comparantur, magno opere contemno, conlectum ex senibus desperatis, ex agresti luxuria, ex rusticis decuroribus, ex eis qui vadimonia deserere quam illum exercitum maluerunt: quibus ego non modo si aciem exercitus nostri, verum etiam si editum praetorius ostendere, concident. Hos, quos video volitare in foro, quos stare ad curiam, quos etiam in senatum venire, qui nitent unguentis, qui fulgent purpura, mallem secum milites eduxisset: qui si hic permanent, mementote non tam exercitum illum esse nobis quam hos, qui exercitum deseruerunt, pertimescendos. Atque hoc etiam sunt timendi magis, quod quicquid cogitans me scriere sentiunt, neque tamen permoventur. 6. Video cui sit Apulia attributa, quis habeat Etruriam, quis agrum Picenum, quis Gallicum, quis sibi has
urbanas insidias caedis atque incendiorum deoposce-
rit: omnia superioris noctis consilia ad me perfata esse
sentient: patefeci in senatu hesterno die: Catilina ipse
pertimuit, profugit: hi quid exspectant? Ne illi ve-
hementer errant, si illam meam pristinam lenitatem
perpetuam sperant futuram.

iv. Quod exspectavi, jam sum adsecutus, ut vos
omnes factam esse aperte conjurationem contra rem
publicam videritis: nisi vero si quis est qui Catilinae
similis cum Catilina sentire non putet. Non est jam
lenitati locus: severitatem res ipsa flagitat. Unum
etiam nunc concedam: exeat, profisciscantur; ne pati-
antur desiderio sui Catilinam miserum tabescere. De-
monstrabo iter: Aurelia via profectus est: si accelerare
volent, ad vesperam consequentur.) 7. O fortunatam
rem publicam, si quidem hanc sentiam urbis ejecerit:
Uno (mehercule) Catilina exhausto, levata milii et re-
creata res publica videtur. Quid enim maali aut sceleris
fingi aut cogitari potest quod non ille conceperit? Quis
tota Italia veneficus, quis gladiator, quis latro, quis
sicarius, quis parricida, quis testamentorum subjector,
quis circumscriptor, quis ganeo, quis nepos, quis adul-
ter, quae mulier infamis, quis corruptor juventutis,
quis corruptus, quis perditus inveniri potest, qui se cum
Catilina non familiarissime vixisse fateatur? quae cae-
des per hosce annos sinl facta est? quod nefarium
stuprum non per illum? 8. Jam vero quae tanta um-
quam in ullo homine juventutis inlecebra fuit, quanta in
illo? qui alios ipse amabat turpissime, aliorum amori
flagitosissime serviebat: aliis fructum libidinum, aliis
mortem parentum non modo impellendo, verum etiam
adjuvando pollicebatur. Nunc vero quam subito non
solum ex urbe, verum etiam ex agris ingentem nume-
rum perditorum hominum conlege rat! Nemo non
modo Romae, sed ne ullo quidem in angulo totius
Italiae oppressus aere alieno fuit, quem non ad hoc
incredibile sceleris foedus asciverit.
v. 9. Atque ut ejus diversa studia in dissimili ratione perspicere possitis, nemo est in ludo gladiatorio paulo ad facinus audacior, qui se non intimum Catilinae esse fateatur; nemo in scena levior et nequior, qui se non ejusdem prope sodalem suisse commemoret. Atque idem tamen, stuporum et scelerum exercitatione adsuæfactus, frigore et fame et siti et vigiliis perferendis, fortis ab istis praedicabatur, cum industriae subsidia atque instrumenta virtutis in libidine audaciaque consumeret.


11. Quibus ego confido impedire fatum aliquod, et poenam jam diu improbitati, nequitiae, sceleri, libidini debitam aut stare jam plane, aut certè appropinquare. Quos si meas consulatus, quoniam sanare non potest, sustulerit, non breve nescio quod tempus, sed multa saecula propagarit rei publicae. Nulla est enim natio quam pertimescamus, nullus rex qui bellum populo Romano facere possit. Omnia sunt externa unius virtute terra marique pacata: domesticum bellum manet; in-
tus insidia est, intus inclusum periculum est, intus est hostis. Cum luxuria nobis, cum amentia, cum scelere certandum est. Huic ego me bello ducem profiteor, Quirites: suscipio inimicitias hominum ditorum. Quae sanari poterunt, quacumque ratione sanabo; quae resectanda erunt, non patiar ad perniciem civitatis manere. Prondi aut exspectant, aut quiescant, aut, si et in urbe et in eadem mente permanent, ea quae meretur expectent.

Manlius iste centurio, qui in agro Faesulano castra posuit, bellum populo Romano suo nomine indixit, et illa castra nunc non Catilinam ducem exspectant, et ille ejectus in exsilium se Massiliam, ut aiunt, non in haec castra conferet.

vii. O condicionem miseram non modo administrandae, verum etiam conservandae Rei publicae! Nunc si L. Catilina consiliis, laboribus, periculis meis circumclusus ac debilitatus subito pertimuerit, sententiam mutaverit, deseruerit suos, consilium belli faciendo abjecerit, ex hoc cursu sceleris ac belli iter ad fugam atque in exsiliun converterit,—non ille a me spoliatus armis audaciae, non obstupefactus ac perterritus mea diligentia, non spe conatuque depulsus, sed indemnatus, innocens, in exsiliun ejectus a consule vi et mini esse dicetur; et erunt qui illum, si hoc fecerit, non improbum, sed miserum, me non diligentissimum consulem, sed crudelissimum tyrannum existimari velint! 15. *Est mihi tantum* Quirites, hujus invidiae falsae atque iniquae tempestatem subire, dum modo a vobis hujus horribilis belli ac nefarii periculum depellatur. *Dicatur sane* ejectus esse a me, dum modo eat in exsiliun. *Sed, mihi credite*, non est iturus. Numquam ego a dis immortalibus optabo, Quirites, invidiae meae levandae causa, ut L. Catilinam ducere exercitum hostium atque in armis volitare audiat: sed tribuo tamen audietis; multoque magis illud timeo, ne mihi sit invidiosum aliquando, quod illum emiserim potius quam quod ejecterim. Sed cum sint homines qui illum, cum profectus sit, ejectum esse dicant, eidem si interfectus esset quid dicerent? 16. Quamquam isti, qui Catilinam Massiliam ire dicitant, non tam hoc queruntur quam verentur. Nemo est istorum tam misericors, qui illum non ad Manlium quam ad Massilianensis ire malit. Ille autem, si (me hercule) hoc quod agit numquam antea cogitasset, tamen latrocinantem
Conspiracy of Catiline.

se interfici mallet quam exsulem vivere. Nunc vero, cum ei nihil adhuc praeter ipsius voluntatem cogitationemque acciderit, nisi quod vivis nobis Roma pro-

fectus est, optemus potius ut eat in exsilium quam queramur.

viii. 17. Sed cur tam diu de uno hoste loquimur, et
de hoste qui jam fateatur se esse hostem, et quem, quia
(quot semper volui) murus interest, non timeo: de eis
qui dissimulant, qui Romae remanent, qui nobiscum
sunt, nihil dicimus? Quos quidem ego, si ullo modo
fieri possit, non tam ulciscì studeo quam sanare sibi
ipsos, placare rei publicae, neque id qua re fieri non
possit, si me audire volent, intellego. Exponam enim
vobis, Quirites, ex quibus generibus hominum istae
copiae comparentur: deinde singulis medicinam con-sili atque orationis meae, si quam potero, adferam.

18. Unum genus est eorum, qui magnò in aere alieno
majores etiam possessiones habent, quàrum amore ad-
ducti dissolvi nullo modo possunt. Horum hominum
species est honestissima — sunt enim locupletés: volun-
tas vero et causa impudentissima. Tu agris, tu aed-i-
ificiis, tu argentò, tu familia, tu rebus omnibus ornatus
et copiosus sis, et dubites de possessione detrahere,
adquirere ad fidem? Quid enim exspectas? bellum?
Quid ergo? in vastatione omnium, tuas possessiones
sacrosanctas futuras putas? Aut tabulas novas? Errant
qui istas a Catilina exspectant: meo beneficio tabulæ
novae proferentur, verum auctionariae. Neque enim
isti, qui possessiones habent, alia ratione ulù salvi esse
possunt. Quod si maturius facere voluisset, neque —
id quod stultissimum est — certare cum usuris fructibus
praediorum, et locupletioribus his et melioribus civibus
uteremur. Sed hosce homines minime puto pertimes-
cendos, quod aut deduci de sententia possunt, aut, si
permanebunt, magis mihi videntur 'vota' facturi contra
rem publicam quam arma laturi.
IX. 20. Alterum genus est eorum qui, quamquam premuntur aere alieno, dominationem tamen exspectant, rerum potiri volunt, honores, quos quieta re publica desperant, perturbata se consequi posse arbitrantur. Quibus hoc praecipiendum videtur, — unum scilicet et idem quod reliquis omnibus; — ut desperent id quod conantur se consequi posse: primum omnium me ipsum vigilare, adesse, providere rei publicae; deinde magnos animos esse in bonis viris, magnam concordiam in maxima multitudine, magnas praeterea copias milium; deos denique immortalis huic invicto populo, clarissimo imperio, pulcherrimae urbi, contra tantam vim sceleris praesentis auxilium esse laturos. Quod si jam sint id, quod cum summum furore cupiunt, adeptum illi in cinere urbis et in sanguine civium, quae mente conscelerata ac nefaria concupiverunt, se consules ac dictatores aut etiam reges sperant futuros? Non vident id se cupere, quod si adepti sint, fugitivo alicui aut gladiatori concedi sit necesse?

20. Tertium genus est aetate jam adspectum, sed tam exercising robus tum; quo ex generis iste est Manlius, cui nunc Catilina sucedidit. Sunt homines ex eis colonis quas Sulla constituit: quas ego universas civium esse optimorum et fortissimorum virorum sentio; sed tamen ei sunt coloni, qui se in insperatis ac repentinis pecuniis sumptuosius insolentiusque jactarunt. Hi dum aedificant tamquam beati, dum praedii lectis, familiis magnis, conviviis apparatis delectantur, in tantum aet alienum inciderunt, ut, si salvi esse velint, Sulla sit [eis] ab inferis excitandus: qui etiam non nullos agrestis, homines tenuis atque egentis, in eandem illam spem rapinarum veterum impulerunt. Quos ego utrosque in eodem genere praedatorum direptorumque pono. Sed eos hoc moneo: desinant furere ac proscriptiones et dictaturas cogitare. Tantus enim illorum temporum dolor inustus est civitati, ut jam ista
non modo homines, sed ne pecudes quidem mihi passurae esse videantur.

x. 21. Quartum genus est sane varium et mixtum et turbulentum, qui jam pridem premuntur, qui numquam emergunt, qui partim inertia, partim male gerendo negotio, partim etiam suptibus in vetere aerre alieno vacillant; qui vadimoniiis, judiciis, proscriptione bonorum defatigati, permulti et ex urbe et ex agris se in illa castra conterre dicuntur. Hosce ego non tam milites acris quam initiatores lentos esse arbitror. Qui homines primum, si stare non possunt, conruant; sed ita, ut non modo civitas, sed ne vicini quidem proximi sentiant. Nam illud non intellego, quam ob rem, si vivere honeste non possunt, perire turpiter velint; aut cur minore dolore perituros se cum multis, quam si soli pereant, arbitrentur.

22. Quintum genus est parricidarum, sicariorum, denique omnium facinorosorum: quos ego a Catilina non revoco; nam neque ab eo divelli possunt, et perant sane in latrocinio, quoniam sunt ita multi ut eos carcer capere non possit. Postremum autem genus est non solum numero, verum etiam genere ipso atque vita, quod proprium Catilinae est,—de ejus dilectu, immo vero de complexu ejus ac sinu; quos pexo capillo, nitidos, aut imberbis aut bene barbatis videtis, manicatis et talaribus tunicis, velis amictos non togis, quorum omnibus industria vitae et vigilandi labor in antelucanis cenis expromitur. 23. In his gregibus omnes aleatores, omnes adulteri, omnes impuri impudique versantur. Hi pueri tam lepidi ac delicati non solum amare et amari, neque saltare et cantare, sed etiam sicas vibrare et spargere venena didicerunt; qui nisi exeunt, nisi pereunt, etiam si Catilina perierit, scitote hoc in rede publica seminarium Catilinarum futurum. Verum tamen quid sibi isti miserì volunt? Num suas secum mulierculas sunt in castra ducturi? Quem ad
modum autem illis carere poterunt, his praesertim jam noctibus? Qua autem pacto illi Apenninum atque illas pruinas ac nivis periferent? nisi idcirco se facilios hiemem toleraturos putant, quod nudi in conviviis saltare didicerunt.

xi. 24. O bellum magno opere pertimescendum, cum hanc sit habiturus Catilina scortorum cohortem praetoriam! Instruite nunc, Quirites, contra has tam praeclaras Catilinae copias vestra praesidia vestrosque exercitus. Et primum gladiatori illi confecto et saucio consules imperatoresque vestros opponite; deinde contra illam naufragorum ejectam ac debilitatam manum florem totius Italiae ac robur educite. Jam vero urbes coloniarum ac municipiorum respondebunt. Catilinae tumulis silvestribus. Neque ego ceteras copias, ornamenta, praesidia vestra cum illius latronis inopia atque egestate conferre debeo. 25. Sed si, omissis his rebus, quibus nos suppeditamin, egit ille, — senatu, equitibus Romanis, urbe, aerario, vectigalibus, cuncta Italia, provinciis omnibus, exteris nationibus, — si, his rebus omissis, causas ipsas quae inter se confligunt contendere velimus, ex eo ipso quam valde illi jaceant intellegere possimus. Ex hac enim parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia; hinc pudicitia, illinc stuprum; hinc fides, illinc fraudatio; hinc pietas, illinc scelus; hinc constantia, illinc furor; hinc honestas, illinc turpitudo; hinc continencia, illinc libido; denique aequitas, temperantia, fortitudo, prudentia, [virtutes omnes,] certant cum iniquitate, luxuria, ignavia, temeritate, [cum vitii omnibus]; postremo copia cum egestate, bona ratio cum perdita, mens sana cum amentia, bona denique spes cum omnium rerum desperatione confligit. In ejus modi certamine ac proelio, nonne, etiam si hominum studia denciunt, di ipsi immortales cogant ab his praeclarissimis virtutibus tot et tanta vitia superari?
xii. 26. Quae cum ita sint, Quirites, vos, quem ad modum jam antea, vestra tecta custodiis vigiliisique defendite: mihi, ut urbi sine vestro motu ac sine ullo tumultu satis esset praesidi, consultum atque provisum est. Coloni omnes municipesque vestri, certiores a me facti de hac nocturna excursione Catilinae, facile urbis suas finisque defendent. Gladiatores, quam sibi ille manum certissimam fore putavit, — quamquam animo meliore sunt quam pars patriciorum, — potestate tam men nostra continebuntur. Q. Metellus, quem ego hoc prospiciens in agrum Gallicum Picenumque praemisi, aut opprimet hominem, aut omnis ejus motus conatusque prohibebit. Reliquis autem de rebus constituendis, maturandis, agendis, jam ad senatum referemus, quem vocari videtis.

27. Nunc illos qui in urbe remanserunt, atque adeo qui contra urbis salutem omniumque vestrum in urbe a Catilina relictì sunt, quamquam sunt hostes, tamen, quia sunt cives, monitos etiam atque etiam volo. Mea lenitas si cui adhuc solution visa est, hoc exspectavit, ut id quod latebat erumperet. Quod reliquum est, jam non possum oblivisci meam hanc esse patriam, me horum esse consulem, mihi aut cum his vivendum aut pro his esse moriendum. Nullus est portis custos, nullus insidiator viae: si qui exire volupt, coniugere possum. Qui vero se in urbe commoverit, cujus ego non modo factum, sed inceptum ullam conatumve contra patriam deprehendero, sentiet in hac urbe esse con sules vigilantis, esse egregios magistratus, esse fortem senatum, esse arma, esse carcerem, quem vindicem nefario rum ac manifestorum scelerum majores nostri esse voluerunt.

xiii. 28. Atque haec omnia sic agentur, Quirites, ut maximae res minimo motu, p. ricula summa nullo tumultu, bellum intestineum ac domesticum post hominum memoriam crudelissimum et maximum, me uno togabo
duce et imperatore sedetur. Quod ego sic administrabo, Quirites, ut, siullo modo fieri poterit, ne improbus quidem quisquam in hac urbe poenam sui sceleris sufferat. Sed si vis manifestae audaciae, si impen-dens patriae periculum me necessario de hac animi lenitate deduxerit, illud prosecto perficiam, quod in tanto et tam insidioso bello víx optandum videtur, ut neque bonus quisquam intereat, paucorumque poena vos omnes salvi esse possitis. 29. Quae quidem ego neque mea prudentia neque humanis consiliis fretus polliceor vobis, Quirites, sed multis et non dubiiis deo-rum immortalium significationibus, quibus ego ducibus in hanc spem sententiamque sum ingressus; qui jam non procul, ut quondam solembat, ab externo hoste atque longinquo, sed hic praesentes suo numine atque auxilio sua templaque atque urbis tecta defendunt. Quos vos, Quirites, precari, venerari, implorare debetis, ut, quam urbem pulcherrimam florentissimamque esse voluerunt, hanc, omnibus hostium copiis terra marique superatis, a perditissimorum civium nefario scelere defendant.

3. How the Conspiracy was suppressed.

Before the People, Dec. 3.

Now that Catiline had been driven into open war, the conspir-acy within the city was in the hands of utterly incompetent men. Lentulus, who claimed the lead by virtue of his consular rank, was vain, pompous, and inefficient. The next in rank, Cethegus, was energetic enough, but rash and bloodthirsty. The consul easily kept the run of events, and at last succeeded in getting them to commit themselves in writing, when he had no difficulty in securing the documents, and arresting the conspirators. How this was accomplished is told in the third oration.

1. 1. REM PUBLICAM, Quirites, vitamque omnium vestrum, bona, fortunas, conjuges liberosque vestros,
atque hoc domicilium clarissimi imperi, fortunatissimum pulcherrimamque urbem, hodierno die deorum immortalium summo erga vos amore, laboribus, consiliis, periculis meis, e flamma atque ferro ac paene ex faucibus fati ereptam et vobis conservatam ac restitutam videtis. 2. Et si non minus nobis jucundi atque inlustres sunt ei dies quibus conservamur, quam illi quibus nascimur,—quod salutis certa laetitia est, nascendi incerta condicio; et quod sine sensu nascimur, cum voluptate servamur,—profecto, quoniam illum qui hanc urbem condidit ad deos immortalis benevolentia famaque sustulimus, esse apud vos posterosque vestros in honore debebit is qui eandem hanc urbem conditam amplificatamque servavit. Nam toti urbi, templis, delubris, tectis ac moenibus subjectos prope jam ignis circumdatosque restinvimus; idemque gladios in rem publicam dextraeves rettudimus, micronesque eorum a jugulis vestris dejecimus. 3. Quae quoniam in senatu inlustrata, patefacta, comperta sunt per me, vobis jam exponam breviter, Quirites, ut et quanta et qua ratione investigata et comprehensa sint, vos qui ignoratis et exspectatis scire possitis.

Principio, ut Catilina paucis ante diebus erupit ex urbe, cum sceleris sui sociis, hujusce nefarii belli acerrimos duces, Romae reliquisset, semper vigilavi et providi, Quirites, quem ad modum in tantis et tam absconditis insidiis salvi esse possemus. n. Nam tum, cum ex urbe Catilinam eiciebam,—non enim jam vereor hujus verbi invidiam, cum illa magis sit timenda, quod vivus exierit,—sed tum, cum illum exterminari volebam, aut reliquam conjuratorum manum simul exituram, aut eos qui restissent infirmos sine illo ac debilis fore putabam. 4. Atque ego, ut vidi quos maximo furore et scelere esse inflammatos sciebam eos nobiscum esse, et Romae remansisse, in eo omnis dies noctisque consumsi, ut quid agerent,
quid (molirentur, sentirem ac viderem; ut, quoniam auribus vestris propter incredibilem magnitudinem sceleris minorem fidem faceret oratio mea, rem ita comprehenderem, ut tum demum animis saluti vestrae provideretis, cum oculis maleficium ipsum videretis. Itaque, ut comperi legatos Allobrogum, belli Transalpini et tumultus Gallici excitandi causa, a P. Lentulo esse sollicitatos, eosque in Galliam ad suos civis, eodemque itinere cum litteris mandatisque ad Catilinam esse missos, comitemque eis adjunctum esse T. Volturnium, atque huic ad Catilinam esse datas litteras, facultatem mihi oblatam putavi, ut — quod erat difficilimum, quodque ego semper optabam ab dis immortalibus — tota res non solum a me, sed etiam a senatu et a vobis manifesto deprehenderetur. 5 Itaque hesterno die L. Flaccum et C. Pomptinum praetores, fortissimos atque amantissimos rei publicae viros, ad me vocavi; rem exposui, quid fieri pleret ostendi. Illi autem, qui omnia de re publica praeclara atque egregia sentirent, sine recusatione ac sine uilla mora negotium susceperunt, et, cum advesperacseret, occulte ad pontem Mulvium pervenerunt, atque ibi in proximis villis ita bipartito fuerunt, ut Tiberis inter eos et pons interesse. Eodem autem et ipsi sine cujusquam suspitione multos fortis viros eduxerant, et ego ex praefectura Reatina compluris delectos adulescentis, quorum opera utor adsidue in re publica praesidio, cum gladiis miseram. 6 Interim, tertia fere vigilia exacta, cum jam pontem Mulvium magno comitatu legati Allobrogum ingredi inciperent, unaque Volturcius, fit in eos impetus; educuntur et ab illis gladii et a nostris. Res praetoribus erat nota solis, ignorabatur ceteris.

III. Tum, interventu Pomptini atque Flacci, pugna [quae erat commissa] sedatur. Litterae, quaecumque erant in eo comitatu, integris signis praetoribus trà-
duntur; ipsi comprehensi ad me, cum jam dilucescet,
ret, deducuntur. Atque horum omnium scelerum
improbissimum machinatorem Cimbrum Gabinium sta-
tim ad me, nihil dum suspicantem, vocavi; deinde item
arcessitus est L. Statilius, et post eum C. Cethegus;
tardissime autem Lentulus venit, credo quod in litteris
dandis praeter consuetudinem proxima nocte vigilaret.
7. Cum summis ac clarissimis hujus civitatis
viris (qui audita re frequentes ad me mane conven-
rant) litteras a me prius aperiri quam ad senatum de-
ferrem placeret,—ne, si nihil esset inventum, temere
a me tantus tumultus injectus civitati videretur,—ne-
gavi me esse facturum, ut de periculo publico non ad
consilium publicum rem integram deserrem. Etenim
Quirites, si ea quae erant ad me delata reperta non
essent, tamen ego non arbitrabar, in tantis rei publicae
periculis, esse mihi nimiam diligentiam pertimescendam.
Senatum frequentem celeriter, ut vidistis, coëgi.
8. Atque interea statim, admonitu Allobrogum, C. Sul-
picium praetorem, fortem virum, misi, qui ex aedibus
Cethegi si quid telorum esset esferret: ex quibus ille
maximum sicarum numerum et gladiorum extulit.

iv. Introduxi Volturcium sine Gallis: fidem publicam
jussu senatus dedi: hortatus sum, ut ea quae scri-
ret sine timore indicaret. Tum ille dixit, cum vix se
ex magno timore recreasset, ab Lentulo se habere
ad Catilinam mandata et litteras, ut servorum prae-
sidio uteretur, ut ad urbem quam primum cum exercitu
accederet: ad autem eo consilio, ut, cum urbem ex
omnibus partibus quem ad modum descriptum distributumque erat incendissent, caedemque infinitam
civium fecissent, praesto esset ille, qui et fugientis
exciperet, et se cum his urbanis ducibus con jungeret.
9. Introduci autem Galli jus jurandum sibi et litteras
ab Lentulo, Cethego, Statilio ad suam gentem data
esse dixerunt, atque ita sibi ab his et a L. Cassio esse
praescriptum, ut equitatum in Italiam quam primum mitterent; pedestris sibi copias non defuturas. Lentulum autem sibi confirmasse, ex fatis Sibyllinis haruspicumque responsis, se esse tertium illum Cornelium, ad quem regnum hujus urbis atque imperium pervenire esset necesse; Cinnam ante se et Sullam fuisse; eundemque dixisse fatalem hunc annum esse ad iterum hujus urbis atque imperi, qui esset annus decimus post virginum absolutionem, post Capitoli autem incensionem vicesimus. 10. Hanc autem Cethego cum ceteris controversiam fuisse dixerunt, quod Lentulo et aliis Saturnalibus caedem fieri atque urbem incendi placeret, Cethego nimium id longum videretur.

v. Ac ne longum sit, Quirites, tabellas proferri justissimus, quae a quoque dicebantur datae. Primum ostendimus Cethego signum: cognovit. Nos linum incidimus: legitimus. Erat scriptum ipsius manu Allobrogum senatui et populo, sese quae eorum legatis confirmasset facturum esse; orare ut item illi facerent quae sibi eorum legati recepissent. Tum Cethegus, qui paulo ante aliquid tamen de gladiis ac sicis, quae apud ipsum erant deprehensa, respondisset, dixissetque se semper bonorum ferramentorum studiisum suisse, recitatis litteris debilitatus atque abjectus conscientia repente conticuit. Introductus est Statilius: cognovit et signum et manum suam. Recitatae sunt tabellae in eandem fere sententiam: confessus est. Tum ostendi tabellas Lentulo, et quaesivi cognosceretne signum. Adnuit. 'Est vero,' inquam, 'notum quidem signum, imago avi tui, clarissimi viri, qui amavit unice patriam et civis suos; quae quidem te a tanto scelere etiam muta revocare debuit.' 11. Leguntur eadem ratione ad senatum Allobrogum populumque litterae. Si quid de his rebus dicere vellet, feci potestatem. Atque ille primo quidem negavit; post autem aliquanto, toto jam indicio exposito atque edito, surrexit; quaesivit a Gal-
lis quid sibi esset cum eis, quam ob rem domum suam venissent, itemque a Volturcio. Qui cum illi brevi-
ter constanterque respondissent, per quem ad eum quotiensque venissent, quae ssentque ab eo nihilae secum esset de fatis Sibyllinis locutus, tum ille subito, scelere demens, quanta conscientiae vis esset ostendit. Nam cum id posset in siti, repente praeter opinionem omnium confessus est. Ita eum non modo ingenium illud et dicendi exercitatio, qua semper valuit, sed etiam propter vim sceleris manifesti atque deprahensi impu-
dentia, qua superabat omnis, improbitasque defecit. X

12. Volturcius vero subito litteras proferri atque ape-
riri jubet, quas sibi a Lentulo ad Catilinam datas esse dicebat. Atque ibi vehementissime perturbatus Len-
tulus tamen et signum et manum suum cognovit. Erant autem [scriptae] sine nomine sed, ita: Quis sim
scies ex eo quem ad te misi. Cura ut vir sis, et co-
gita quem in locum sis progressus; vide equid tibi
jam sit nescesse, et cura ut omnium tibi auxilia adjun-
gas, etiam infirmorum. Gabinius deinde introductus,
cum primo impudenter respondere coepisset, ad extre-
mum nihil ex eis quae Galli insimulabant negavit.

13. Ac mihi quidem, Quirites, cum illa certissima visa
sunt argumenta atque indicia sceleris, — tabellae, sig-
na, manus, denique unius cujusque confessio; tum
multo certiora illa, — color, oculi, voltus, taciturnitas.
Sic enim obstupuerant, sic terram intuebantur, sic fur-
tim non numquam inter sese aspiciebant, ut non jam
ab aliis indicari, sed indicare se ipsi viderentur.

vi. Indiciis expositis atque editis, senatum consului
de summa re publica quid fieri placet. Dictae sunt
a principibus acerrimae ac fortissimae sententiae, quas
senatus sine ulla varietate est secutus. Et quoniam
pomundum est perscriptum senatus consultum, ex mem-
oria vobis, Quirites, quid senatus censuerit exponam.

14. Primum mihi gratiae verbis amplissimis aguntur,
quod virtute, consilio, providentia mea res publica maximis periculis sit liberata: deinde L. Flaccus et C. Pomptinus praetores, quod eorum opera fortii fidelique usus essem, merito ac jure laudantur; atque etiam vire fortii, conlegae meo, laus impertitur, quod eos qui huys conjurationis participes fuissent a suis et a rei publicae consiliis removisset. Atque ita censuerunt, ut P. Lentulus, cum se praetura abdicasset, in custodiam traderetur; itemque uti C. Cethegus, L. Statilius, P. Gabinius, qui omnes praeentes erant, in custodiam traderentur; atque idem hoc decreta est in L. Cassium, quem sibi procurationem incendendae urbis depoposcerat, in M. Ceparium, cui ad sollicitandos pastores Apuliam attributam esse erat indicatum, in P. Furium, qui est ex eis colonis quos Faesulas L. Sulla deduxit, in Q. Annium Chiloneum, qui una cum hoc Furio semper erat in hac Allobrogum sollicitatione versatus, in P. Umbrenum, libertinum hominem, a quo primum Gallos ad Gabiniunm perductos esse constabat. Atque ea lenitate senatus est usus, Quirites, ut ex tanta conjuratione, tantaque hac multitudine domesticorum hostium, novem hominum perditissimorum poena re publica conservata, reliquorum mentis sanari posse arbitraretur. Atque etiam supplicatio dis immortalibus pro singulari eorum merito meo nomine decreta est, quod mihi primum post hanc urbem conditam togato contigit. Et his verbis decreta est "quod urbem incendiis, caede civis, Italian bello liberasse." Quae supplicatio si cum ceteris conferatur, hoc interest, quod ceterae bene gesta, haec una conservata re publica constituta est. Atque illud, quod faciendum primum fuit, factum atque transactum est. Nam P. Lentulus — quanquam patefactis indicis, confessionibus suis, judicio senatus non modo praetoris jus, verum etiam civis amiserat — tamen magistratu se abdicavit, ut, quae religio C. Mario, claris-
simo viro, non fuerat, quo minus C. Glauciam, de quo nihil nominatum erat decretum, praetorem occideret, ea nos religionem in privato P. Lentulo punito libero raremur.

vii. 16. Nunc quoniam, Quirites, consceleratissimi periculosissimique bellii nefarios duces captos jam et comprehensos tenetis, existimare debetis omnis Catilinae copias, omnis spes atque opes, his depulsis urbis periculis concidisse. Quem quidem ego cum ex urbe pellebam, hoc providebam animo, Quirites,—remoto Catilina, non mihi esse P. Lentuli somnum, nec L. Cassi adipes, nec C. Cethegi furiosam temeritatem pertimescendum. Ille erat unus timendus ex istis omnibus, sed tam diu, dum urbis moenibus continebatur. Omnia norat, omnium aditus tenebat: appellare, temptare, sollicitare poterat, audebat: erat ei consilium ad facinus aptum, consilio autem neque manus neque lingua deerat. Jam ad certas res conficiendas certos homines defectos ac descriptos habebat. Neque vero, cum aliquid mandaret, consectum putabat: nihil erat quod non ipse obiret, occurrat, vigilaret, laboraret. Frigus, sitim, famem, ferre poterat. 17. Hunc ego hominem tam acrie, tam audacem, tam paratum, tam callidum, tam in scelere vigilantem, tam in perditis rebus diligentem, nisi ex domesticis insidiis in castrense latrocinium compulsisse, —dicam id quod sentio, Quirites,—non facile hanc tantam molem mali a cervicibus vestris depulsisse. Non ille nobis Saturnalia constituisset, neque tanto ante exsiliac fati diem rei publicae denuntiavisset; neque commississet ut signum, ut litterae suae testes manifesti scelerosis deprhenderentur. Quae nunc illo absente sic gesta sunt, ut nullum in privata domo furtum umquam sit tam palam inventum, quam haec tanta in re publica conjuratio manifesto inventa atque deprehensa est. Quod si Catilina in urbe
ad hanc diem remansisset, quamquam, quoad fuit, omnibus ejus consiliiis occurri atque obstiti, tamen, ut levisisse dicam, dimicandum nobis cum illo fuisset; neque nos umquam, cum ille in urbe hostis esset, tantis periculis rem publicam tanta pace, tanto otio, tanto silentio liberassemus.

viii. 18. Quamquam haec omnia, Quirites, ita sunt a me administrata, ut deorum immortalium nufu atque consilio et gesta et provisa esse videantur; idque cum conjectura consequi possimus, quod vix video tur humani consili tantarum rerum gubernatio esse potuisse; tum vero ita praesentes his temporibus opem et auxilium nobis tulerunt, ut eos paene oculis videre possemus. Nam ut illa omissam,—visas nocturno tempore ab occidente faces, ardoremque caeli, ut fulminum jactus, ut terrae motus relinquam, ut omissam cetera, quae tam multa nobis consulibus facta sunt, ut haec, quae nunc fiunt, canere di immortales vide rentur,—hoc certe, quod sum dicturus, neque praetermittendum neque relicuendum est.

19. Nam proiecto memoria tenetis, Cotta et Torquato consulibus, compluris in Capitolio res de caelo esse percussas, cum et simulacra deorum depulsa sunt, et statuae veterum hominum dejectae, et legum aera liquefacta: tactus est etiam ille qui hanc urbem con didit Romulus, quem inauratum in Capitolio, parvum atque lactentem, uberibus lupinis inhiantem,uisse meministis. Quo quidem tempore cum haruspicies ex tota Etruria convenisset, caedes atque incendia et legum interitum et bellum civile ac domesticum, et totius urbis atque imperi occasum appropinquare dixerunt, nisi di immortales, omni ratione placati, suo numine prope fata ipsa flexissent. 20 Itaque illorum responsis tum et Judi per decem dies facti sunt, neque res ulla quae ad placandos deos pertineret praetermissa est; idemque jusserunt simulacrum Jovis facere
majus, et in excelsa conlocare, et (contra atque antea fuerat) ad orientem convertere; ac se sperare dixerunt, si illud signum, quod videtis, solis ortum et forum curiamque conspiceret, fore ut ea consilia, quae clam essent inita contra salutem urbis atque imperi, inlustrarentur, ut a senatu populoque Romano perspici possent. Atque [illud signum] conlocandum consules illi locaverunt; sed tanta fuit operis tarditas, ut neque superioribus consulibus, neque nobis ante hodiernum diem, conlocaretur.

IX. 21. Hic quis potest esse tam aversus a vero, tam praeceps, tam mente, captus, qui neget haec omnia quae videmus, praemineque hanc urbem, deorum immortalium nutu ac potestate administrari? Etenim cum esset ita responsum, caedes, incendia, interitum rei publicae comparari, et ea per civis,—quae tum propter magnitudinem scelerum non nullis incredibilis videbantur,—ea non modo cogitata a nefariis civibus, verum etiam suscepta esse sensistis. Illud vero nonne ita praesens est, ut nutu Jovis Optimi Maximi factum esse videatur, ut, cum hodierno die mane per forum meo jussu et conjurati et eorum indices in aedem Concordiae ducerentur, eo ipso tempore signum statueretur? quo conlocato atque ad vos senatumque converso, omnia [et senatus et vos] quae erant cogitata contra salutem omnium, inlustrata et patefacta visistis. 22. Quo etiam majore sunt isti odio supplicioque digni, qui non solum vestris domiciliis atque tectis, sed etiam deorum templis atque delubris sunt funestos ac nefarios ignis inferre conati. Quibus ego si me restitisse dicam, nimium mihi sumam, et non sim serendus. Ille, ille Juppiter restitit: ille Capitolium, ille haec templum, ille cunctam urbem, ille vos omnis salvos esse voluit. + Dis ego immortalibus ducibus hanc mantem, Quirites, voluntatemque suscepi, atque ad haec tanta indicia perveni. Jam vero [illa Allobrogum sollici-
tatio] ab Lentulo ceterisque domesticis hostibus tam
dementer tantae res creditaet et ignotis et barbaris
[commissae litterae] numquam essent profecto, nisi ab
dis immortalibus huic tantae audaciae consilium esset
ereptum. Quid vero? ut homines Galli, ex civitate
male pacata, quae gens una restat quae bellum populo
Romano facere posse et non nolle videatur, spem
imperi ac rerum maximarum ultero sibi a patriciis
hominibus oblatam neglegerent, vestramque salutem
suis opibus anteponerent, id non divinitus esse factum
putatis? praesertim qui nos non pugnando, sed tacendo
superare puterint?

x. 23. Quam ob rem, Quirites, quoniam ad omnia
pulvinaria supplicatio decreta est, celebratote illos dies
cum conjugibus ac liberis vestris. Nam multi saepe
honores dis immortalibus justi habiti sunt ac debiti,
shed profecto justiores numquam. Erepti enim estis
ex crudelissimo ac miserrimo interitu; erepti sine
daede, sine sanguine, sine exercitu, sine dimicatione.
Togati, me uno togato duce et imperatore, vicistis.

24. Etenim recordamus, Quirites, omnis civilis dissen-
siones: non solum eas quas audistis, sed eas quas
vosmet ipsi meministis atque vidistis. L. Sulla P.
Sulpicium oppressit; [ejecit ex urbe] C. Marium,
custodem hujus urbis, multosque fortis viros partim
ejecit ex civitate, partim interemit. Cn. Octavius
consul armis expulit ex urbe conlegam: omnis hic
locus acervis corporum et civium sanguine redundavit.
Superavit postea Cinna cum Mario: tum vero, claris-
simis viris interfectis, lumina civitatis extincta sunt.
Ultus est hujus victoriae crudelitatem postea Sulla:
ne dici quidem opus est quanta diminutione civium,
et quanta calamitate rei publicae. Dissensit M. Lepi-
dus a clarissimo ac fortissimo viro Q. Catulo: attulit
non tam ipsius interitus rei publicae luctum quam
ceterorum. 25. Atque illae tamen omnes dissensiones
erant ejus modi, quae non ad delendam, sed ad commutandam rem publicam pertinere. Non illi nullam esse rem publicam, sed in ea quae esset, se esse principes; neque hanc urbem conflagrare, sed se in hac urbe flore voluerunt. [Atque illae tamen omnes dissensiones, quorum nulla exitium rei publicae quae sivit, ejus modi fuerunt, ut non reconciliacione concordiae, sed internicione civium dijucdicate sint.] In hoc autem uno post hominum memoriam maximo crudelissimoque bello, quae bellum nulla umquam barbariae cum sua gente gessit, quo in bello lex haec fuit a Lentulo, Catilina, Cethego, Cassio constituta, ut omnes, qui salva urbe salvi esse possent, in hostium numero ducentur, ita me gessi, Quirites, ut salvi omnes conservamini; et cum hostes vestri tantum civium superfuturum putassent, quantum infinitae caedi restitisset, tantum autem urbis, quantum flamma obire non potuisset, et urbem et civis integros incoluisse servavi.

11. 20. Quibus pro tantis rebus, Quirites, nullum ego a vobis praemium virtutis, nullum insigne honoris, nullum monumentum laudis postulo, praeterquam hujus diei memoriam sempiternam. In animis ego vestris omnis triumphos meos, omnia ornamenta honoris, monumenta gloriae, laudis insignia condi et conlocari volo. Nihil me mutum potest delectare, nihil tacitum, nihil denique ejus modi, quod etiam minus digni adsequi possint. Memoria vestra, Quirites, res nostrae alentur, sermonibus crescent, litterarum monumentis inveterascent et conrorborabuntur; eandemque diem intellego, quam spero aeternam fore, propagatum esse et ad salutem urbis et ad memoriam consulatus mei; unoque tempore in hac re publica duos civis exstitisse, quorum alter finit vestri imperi non terrae, sed caeli regionibus terminaret, alter ejusdem imperi domicilium sedisque servaret.
xii. 27. Sed quoniam earum rerum quas ego gessi non eadem est fortuna atque condicio quae illorum qui externa bella gesserunt,—quod mihi cum eis vivendum est quos vici ac subegi, isti hostis aut interfectos aut oppressos reliquerunt,—vestrum est, Quirites, si ceteris facta sua recte prosunt, mihi mea ne quando obsint providere. Mentes enim hominum audacissimorum sceleratae ac nefariae ne vocis nocere possent ego providi; ne mihi noceant vestrum est providere. Quamquam, Quirites, mihi quidem ipsi nihil ab ists jam noceri potest. Magnum enim est in bonis praeidium, quod mihi in perpetuum comparatum est; magna in re publica dignitas, quae me semper tacita defendet; magna vis conscientiae, quam qui neglegunt, cum me violare volent, se [ipsi] indicabunt. 28. Est etiam nobis is animus, Quirites, ut non modo nullius audaciae cedamus, sed etiam omnis improbos ullo semper lacesamus. Quod si omnis impetus domesticorum hostium, depulsus a vobis, se in me unum convertit, vobis erit videndum, Quirites, qua condicio posthae eos esse velitis, qui se pro salute vestra obtulerint invidiae periculosque omnibus: mihi quidem ipsi, quid est quod jam ad vitae fructum possit adquiri, cum praesertim neque in honore vestro, neque in gloria virtutis, quiquam videam altius, quo mihi libeat ascenderet? 29. Illud profecto perficiam, Quirites, ut ea quae gessi in consulatu privatus tuear atque ornem: ut si qua est invidia conservanda re publica suscepta, lae dat invidos, mihi valeat ad gloriam. Denique ita me in re publica tractabo, ut meminerim semper quae gesserim, curemque ut ea virtute, non casu gesta esse videantur. Vos, Quirites, quoniam jam nox est, venerati Jovem, illum custodem hujus urbis ac vestrum, in vestra tecta discedite; et ea, quamquam jam est periculum depulsum, tamen aequa ac priore nocte
custodiis vigiliisque defendite. Id ne vobis diutius faciendum sit, atque ut in perpetua pace esse positis, providebo.

4. Sentence of the Conspirators.

In the Senate, Dec. 5.

Two days later the Senate was convened, to determine what was to be done with the prisoners. It was a fundamental principle of the Roman Constitution that no citizen should be put to death without the right of appeal to the people. Against the view of Cæsar, which favored perpetual confinement, Cicero urged the very lame argument that, by the fact of taking up arms against the Republic, they had forfeited their citizenship, and the law therefore did not protect them. This view prevailed, and the conspirators—Lentulus, Cethegus, Statilius, Gabinius, and Cæpiarius—were strangled by the public executioners.

This was one of those acts of excessive vigor and severity which a man who feels himself deficient in decision of character—as Cicero was, at bottom—will sometimes force himself to commit. Had he had the strength to maintain himself as a leader in public affairs, it need not have hurt him in the end. As it was, he was soon pushed aside by men of genuine executive power, Pompey and Cæsar, and was made to suffer severely for his illegal act.

1. 1. Video, patres conscripti, in me omnium vestrum ora atque oculos esse conversos. Video vos non solum de vestro ac rei publicae, verum etiam, si id depulsum sit, de meo periculo esse sollicitos. Est mihi jucunda in malis et grata in dolore vestra erga me voluntas: sed eam, per deos immortales, deponite; atque obliti salutis meae, de vobis ac de vestris liberis cogitate. Mihi si haec condicio consulatus data est, ut omnis acerbitates, omnis dolores cruciatusque perferrem, feram non solum fortiter, verum etiam libenter, dum modo meis laboribus vobis populoque Romano dignitas salusque pariatur. 2. Ego sum ille consul,
patres conscripti, cui non forum, in quo omnis aequitas continetur, non campus consularibus auspiciis consecratus, non curia, summum auxilium omnium gentium, non domus, commune perfugium, non lectus ad quietem datus, non denique haec sedes honoris [sella curulis] umquam vacua mortis periculo atque insidiis fuit. Ego multa tacui, multa pertuli, multa concessi, multa meo quodam dolore in vestro timore sanavi. Nunc si hunc exitum consulatus mei di immortalis esse voluerunt, ut vos populumque Romanum ex caede miserrima, coniuges liberosque vestros virginesque Vestalis ex acerbissima vexatione, templum atque delubra, hanc pulcherrimam patriam omnium nostrum ex foedissima flamma, totam Italiam ex bello et vastitate eriperem, quaecumque mihi uni proponetur fortuna, subeatur. Etenim si P. Lentulus suum nomen, inductus a vatibus, fatale ad perniciem rei publicae fore putavit, cur ego non laeter meum consulatum ad salutem populi Romani prope fatalem exstitisse?

II. 3. Qua re, patres conscripti, consulite vobis, prospicite patriae, conservate vos, coniuges, liberos fortunasque vestras, populi Romani nomen salutemque defendite: mihi parere ac de me cogitare desinit. Nam primum debeo sperare omnis deos, qui huic urbi praesident, pro eo mihi ac meereor] relatuos esse gratiam; deinde, si quid obtegerit, aequo animo paralleto moriar. Nam neque turpis mors fortis viro potest accidere, neque illam maturam consulari, nec misera sapienti. Nec tamen ego sum ille ferreus, qui fratris carissimi atque amantissimi praesentis mæore non movear, horumque omnium lacrimis, a quibus me circumsemissum videtis. Neque meam mentem non domum saepe revocat exanimata uxor, et abjecta metu filia, et parvulus filius, quem mihi videtur amplecti res publica tamquam obsidem consulatus mei, neque ille, qui espectans hujus exitum diei adstat in conspectu meo
gener. Moveor his rebus omnibus, sed in eam partem, uti salvi sint vobiscum omnes, etiam si me vis aliqua oppresserit, potius quam et illi et nos una rei publicae peste pereamus.

4. Qua re, patres conscripti, incumbite ad salutem rei publicae, circumspicite omnis procellas, quae im- pendent nisi providetis. Non Ti. Gracchus, quod iterum tribunus plebis fieri voluit, non C. Gracchus, quod agrarios concitare conatus est, non L. Saturninus, quod C. Memmium occidit, in discrimen aliquod atque in vestrae severitatis judicium adductur: tenentur ei qui ad urbis incendium, ad vestræm omnium caedem, ad Catilinam accipiendum, Romae restiterunt; tenen- tur litterae, signa, manus, denique unius cujusque confessio; sollicitantur Allobroges, servitia excitantur, Catilina arcessit; id est initum consilium, ut inter- fectis omnibus nemo ne ad deplorandum quidem populi Romani nomen atque ad lamentandum tanti imperi calamatatem relinquatur.

III. 5. Haec omnia indices detulerunt, rei confessi sunt, vos multis jam judiciis judicavistis: primum quod mihi gratias egistis singularibus verbis, et mea virtute atque diligentia perditoris hominum conjura- tionem patefactam esse decrevistis; deinde quod P. Lentulum se abdicare praetura coegistis; tum quod eum et ceteros, de quibus judicastis, in custodi- diam dandos censuistis; maximeque quod meo nomine supplicationem decrevistis, qui honos togato habitus ante me est nemini; postremo hesterno die praemia legatis Allobrogum Titoque Volturcio dedistis amplissima. Quae sunt omnia ejus modi, ut ei qui in custo- diam nominatim dati sunt sine ulla dubitatione a vobis damnati esse videantur.

6. Sed ego institui referre ad vos, patres conscripti, tamquam integrum, et de facto quid judicetis, et de poena quid censeatis. Illa praedicam quae sunt con-
What shall be the Sentence?

Ego magnum in re publica versari furorem, et nova quaedam misceri et concitari mala jam pridem videbam; sed hanc tantam, tam exitiosam haberi conjurationem a civibus numquam putavi. Nunc quicquid est, quocumque vestrae mentes inclinant atque sententiae, statuendum vobis ante noctem est. Quantum facinus ad vos delatum sit videtis. Huic si paucos putatis adfinis esse, vehementer erratis. Latius opinionis disseminatum est hoc malum: manavit non solum per Italiam, verum etiam transcendit Alpis, et obscure serpens multas jam provincias occupavit. Id opprimi sustentando ac prolatando nullo pacto potest. Quacumque ratione placet, celeriter vobis vindicandum est.

iv. 7. Video adhuc duas esse sententias: unam D. Silani, qui censet eos, qui haec delere conati sunt, morte esse multandos; alteram C. Caesaris, qui mortis poenam removet, ceterorum suppliciorum omnis acerbitates amplectitur. Uterque et pro sua dignitate et pro rerum magnitudine in summa severitate versatur. Alter eos qui nos omnis, [qui populum Romanum,] vita privare conati sunt, qui delere imperium, qui populi Romani nomen exstinguere, punctum temporis frui vita et hoc communi spiritu non putat oportere, atque hoc genus poenae saepe in improbos civis in hac re publica esse usurpatum recordatur. Alter intellectig mortem ab dis immortalibus non esse supplici causa constitutam, sed aut necessitatem naturae, aut laborum ac miseriaeum quietem. Itaque eam sapientes numquam inviti, fortes saepe etiam libenter oppetivereunt. Vincula vero et ea sempiterna certe ad singularem poenam nefarii sceleris inventa sunt a Municipiis dispersiri jubet. Habere videtur ista res iniquitatem si imperare velis, difficultatem si rogare. Decernatur tamen, si placet. 8. Ego enim suscipiam, et (ut spero) reperiam qui id quod salutis omnium causa statueritis, non putent esse suae dignitatis recusare. Adjungit
Conspiracy of Catiline. [CATIL. IV.

gravem poenam municipibus, si quis eorum vincula ruperit: horribilis custodias circumdat, et dignas scelere hominum perditorum; sancit ne quis eorum poenam quos condemnat, aut per senatum aut per populum, levare possit; eripit etiam spem, quae sola hominem in miseriis consolari solet; bona praeterea publicari jubet; vitam solam relinquit nefariis hominibus, quam si eripuisset, multos uno dolores animi atque corporis et omnis scelerum poenas ademisset. Itaque, ut aliqua in vita formido improbis esset posita, apud inferos ejus modi quaedam illi antiqui supplicia impius constitueta esse voluerunt, quod videlicet intellegebant, eis remotis, non esse mortem ipsam pertimescendam.

v. 9. Nunc, patres conscripti, ego mea video quid intessit. Si eritis secuti sententiam C. Caesaris, quoniam hanc is in re publica viam quae popularis habetur secutus est, fortasse minus erunt — hoc auctore et cognitore hujusce sententiae — mihi populares impetus pertimescendi: sin illam alteram, nescio an amplius mihi negoti contrahatur. Sed tanquam maiorum periculorum rationes utilitas Rei publicae vincat. Habemus enim a Cæsare, sicut ipsius dignitas et majorum ejus amplitudo postulabat, sententiam tamquam obsidem perpetuae in rem publicae voluntatis. Intellectum est quid interestet inter levitatem contentionum et animum vere popularum, saluti populi consulentem. 10. Video de istis, qui se popularis haberit volunt, abesse non nemi- nem, ne de capite videlicet civium Romanorum sententiam ferat. At is et nudius tenuis in custodiem civis Romanos dedit, et supplicationem mihi decrevit, et indices hesterno die maximis praemiis adfectit. Jam hoc nemini dubium est, qui reo custodiem, quaesitori gratulationem, indici praemium decrevit, quid de tota re et causa judicarit. At vero C. Caesar intellegit legem Semproniam esse de civibus Romanis constitutam; qui
autem rei publicae sit hostis, eum civem nullo modo esse posse; denique ipsum latorem Semproniae legis jussu populi poenas rei publicae dependisse. Idem ipsum Lentulum, largitorem et prodigum, non putat, cum de pernicie populi Romani, exitio hujus urbis tam acerbe, tam crudeler cogitarit, etiam appellari posse popularem. Itaque homo mitissimus atque lenissimus non dubitat P. Lentulum aeternis tenebris vinculisque mandare, et sancit in posterum, ne quis hujus supplicio levando se jactare, et in perniciem populi Romani posthac popularis esse possit: adjungit etiam publicationem bonorum, ut omnis animi cruciatus et corporis etiam egestas ac mendicitas consequatur.

vi. ii. Quam ob rem, sive hoc statueritis, dederitis mihi comitem ad contionem populo carum atque juvendum; sive Silani sententiam sequi malueritis, facile me [atque vos] crudelitatis vituperatione exsolveritis, atque obtinebo eam multo leniorem suisse. Quamquam, patres conscripti, quae potest esse in tanti sceleris immanitate punienda crudelitas? Ego enim de meo sensu judico. Nam ita mihi salva re publica vobiscum perfrui liceat, ut ego, quod in hac causa vehementior sum, non atrociitate animi moveor—quis est enim me mitior?—sed singulari quadam humanitate et misericordia. Videor enim mihi videre hanc urbem, lucem orbis terrarum atque arcem omnium gentium, subito uno incendio concidentem. Cerno animo sepulta in patria miseros atque insepultos acervos civium. Versatur mihi ante oculos aspectus Cethegi, et furor in vestra caede bacchantis. 12. Cum vero mihi propositi regnante Lentulum, sicut ipse ex fatis se sperasse confessus est, pupuratum esse huic Gabiniun, cum exercitu venisse Catilinam, tum lamentationem matrum familias, tum fugam virginum atque puerorum ac vexationem virginum Vestalium perhorresco; et quia mihi vehementer haec videntur misera atque
miseranda, idcirco in eos qui ea perficere voluerunt me severum vehementemque praebes. Etenim quaero, si quis pater familias, liberis suis a servo interfectis, uxore occisa, incensa domo, supplicium de servo non quam acerbissimum sumpserit, utrum is clemens ac misericors, an inhumanissimus et crudelissimus esse videatur? Mihi vero importunus ac ferreus, qui non dolore et cruciatu nocentis suum dolorem cruciatumque lenierit. Sic nos in his hominibus, —qui nos, qui conjuges, qui liberos nostros trucidare voluerunt; qui singulas unius cujusque nostrum domos et hoc universum rei publicae domicilium delere conati sunt; qui id egerunt, ut gentem Allobrogum in vestigiis hujus urbis atque in cinere deflagrati imperi conlocarent,—si vehementissimi fuerimus, misericordes habeimus: sin remissiores esse voluerimus, summæ nobis crudelitatis in patriæ civiumque pernicie fama subeunda est.

13. Nisi vero cupiam L. Cæsar, vir fortissimus et amantissimus rei publicae, crudelior nudius tertius visus est, cum sororis suae, feminæ lectissimæ, virum præsen- tem et audientem vita privandum esse dixit, cum suam jussu consulis interfertum, filiumque ejus impus- berem, legatum a patre missum, in carcere necatum esse dixit. Quorum quod simile factum? quod initum delendæ rei publicae consilium? Largitionis voluntas tum in re publica versata est, et partium quaedam contentio. Atque eo tempore hujus avus Lentuli, vir clarissimus, armatus Gracchum est persecutus. Ille etiam grave tum volnus accepit, ne quid de summa re publica deminueretur: hic ad evertenda rei publicae fundamenta Gallos arcessit, servitia concitat, Catilinam vocat, attribuit nos trucidandos Cethego, et ceteros civis interficiendos Gabinio, urbem inflammandam Cassio, totam Italian vastandam diripien- damque Catilinae. Vereamini, censeo, ne in hoc scelere tam immani ac nefando nimis aliquid severe
No Penalty can be too Severe.

statuisses videamini: multo magis est verendum ne remissione poenae crudelis in patriam, quam ne severitate animadversionis nimis vehementes in acerbissimos hostis, fuisses videamur.

vii. 14. Sed ea quae exaudio, patres conscripti, dissimulare non possum. Jaciuntur enim voces, quae perveniunt ad auris meas, eorum qui vereri videntur ut habeam satis praesidi ad ea quae vos statueritis hodierno die transigunda. Omnia et provisa et parata et constituta sunt, patres conscripti, cum mea summa cura atque diligentia, cum multi etiam majore populi Romani ad summum imperium retinendum et ad communis fortunas conservandas volun
tate. Omnes adsunt omnium ordinum homines, omnium denique ætatum: plenum est forum, plena templum circum forum, pleni omnes aditus hujus templi ac loci. Causa est enim post urbem conditam haec inventa sola, in qua omnes sentirent unum atque idem, praeter eos qui, cum sibi viderent esse pereundum, cum omnibus potius quam soli perire voluerunt. 15. Hosce ego homines excipio et secerno libenter, neque in impro
borum civium, sed in acerbissimorum hostium numero habendos puto. Ceteri vero, di immortales! qua frequen
tia, quo studio, qua virtute ad communem salutem dignitatemque consentiunt! Quid ego hic equites Ro
manos commemorem? qui vobis ita summam ordinis consilique concedunt, ut vobiscum de amore rei publicae certent; quos ex multorum annorum dissensione hujus ordinis ad societatem concordiamque revocatos hodiernus dies vobiscum atque haec causa conjungit: quam si conjunctionem, in consulatu confirmatam meo, perpetuam in re publica tenuerimus, confirmo vobis nullum posthac malum civile ac domesticum ad ullam rei publicae partem esse venturum. Pari studio defend
dundae rei publicae convenisses video tribunos aerarios, fortissimos viros; scribes item universos, quos cum
casu hic dies ad aerarium frequentasset, video ab ex-
spectatione sortis ad salutem communem esse conve-
sos. 16. Omnis ingenuorum adest multitudo, etiam
tenuissimorum. Quis est enim cui non haec templae,
aspectus urbis, possessio libertatis, lux denique haec
ipsa et [hoc] commune patriae solum, cum sit carum
verum vero dulce atque jucundum?

viii. Operae pretium est, patres conscripti, liberti-
norum hominum studia cognoscere, qui, sua virtute
fortunam hujus civitatis consecuti, hanc suam patriam
judicant, — quam quidam hic nati, et summo loco nati,
non patriam suam sed urbem hostium esse judicave-
runt. Sed quid ego hosce homines ordinesque com-
memoro, quos privatae fortunae, quos communis res
publica, quos denique libertas, ea quae dulcissima est,
ad salutem patriae defendendam excitavit? Servus
est nemo, qui modo tolerabili condicione sit servitutis,
qui non audaciam civium perhorrescat, qui non haec
stare cupiat, qui non quantum audet et quantum potest
conferat ad salutem voluntatis. 17. Qua re si quem
vestrum forte cómmovet hoc, quod auditum est, leno-
nem quendam Lentuli concursare .circum tabernas,
pretio sperare sollicitari posse animos egentium atque
imperorum, — est id quidem coeptum atque tempta-
tum; sed nulli sunt inventi tam aut fortuna miser aut
voluntate perditi, qui non illum ipsum sellae atque
operis et quaestus cotidiani locum, qui non cubile ac
lectulum suum, qui denique non cursum hunc otiosum
vitae suae salvum esse velint. Multo vero maxima
pars eorum qui in tabernis sunt, immo vero — id enim
potius est dicendum — genus hoc universum, amantis-
simum est oti. Etenim omne instrumentum, omnis
opera atque quaestus frequentia civium sustentatur,
alitur otio: quorum si quaestus occlusis tabernis minui
solet, quid tandem incensis futurum fuit?

18. Quae cum ita sint, patres conscripti, vobis populi
Romani praesidia non desunt: vos ne populo Romano deesse videamini providete. 

x. Habetis consulem ex plurimis periculis et insidiis atque ex media morte, non ad vitam suam, sed ad salutem vestram reservatum. Omnes ordines ad conservandam rem publicam mente, voluntate, voce consentiunt. Obsessa facibus et telis impiae conjurationis nobis supplex manus tendit patria communis; nobis se, nobis vitam omnium civium, nobis arcem et Capitolium, nobis aras Penatium, nobis illum ignem Vesta sempternum, nobis omnium deorum templum atque delubra, nobis muros atque urbis tecta commendat. 
Praeterea de vestra vita, de conjugum vestrum atque liberorum anima, de fortunis omnium, de sedibus, de focis vestris, hodierno die nobis judicandum est. XIX. Habetis ducem memorem vestri, oblitum sui, quae non semper facultas datur: habetis omnis ordines, omnis homines, universum populum Romanum—id quod in civilis causa hodierno die primum videmus—unum atque idem sentientem. Cogitate quantis laboribus fundatum imperium, quantas virtutes stabilitam libertatem, quantas deorum beneficata auctas exaggeratasque fortunas, una nox paene delerit. 

Id ne umquam posthac non modo non confici, sed ne cogitari quidem possit a civibus, hodierno die providendum est. Atque haec non ut vos, qui mihi studio paene praecurritis, excitarem, locutus sum; sed ut mea vox, quae debet esse in re publica princeps, officio functa consulari videretur. 

x. 20, Nunc, ante quam ad sententiam redeo, de me paucam dicam. Ego, quanta manus est conjuratorum, quam videtis esse permagnam, tantam me inimicorum multitudinem suscepisse video: sed eam judico esse turpem et infirmam et abjectam. Quod si aliquando alicujus furore et scelere concitata manus ista plus valuerit quam vestra ac rei publicae dignitas, me tamen meorum factorum atque consiliorum numquam,
patres conscripti, poenitebit. Etenim mors, quam illi fortasse mimitantur, omnibus est parata: vitae tantam laudem, quanta vos me vestris decretis honestastis, nemo est adsecutus. Ceteris enim semper bene gesta, mihi uni conservata re publica, gratulationem decrevistis. 21. Sit Scipio ille clarus, cujus consilio atque virtute Hannibal in Africam redire atque Italia deedere coactus est; ornetur alter eximia laude Africanus, qui duas urbis huic imperio infestissimas, Karthaginem Numantiamque, delevit; habeatur vir egregius Paulus ille, cujus currum rex potentissimus quondam et nobilissimus Perses honestavit; sit aeterna gloria Marius, qui bis Italiam obsidione et metu servitutis liberavit; anteponatur omnibus Pompeius, cujus res gestae atque virtutes isdem quibus solis cursus regionibus ac terminis continentur: erit profecto inter horum laudes aliquid loci nostrae gloriae, nisi forte majus est patefacere nobis provincias quo exire possimus, quam curare ut etiam illi qui absunt habeant quo victores revertantur. 22. Quamquam est uno loco condicio melior externae victoriae quam domesticae, quod hostes alienigenae aut oppressi serviunt, aut recepti in amicitiam beneficio se obligatos putant; qui autem ex numero civium, dementia aliqua depravati, hostes patriae semel esse coeperunt, eos cum a pernicie rei publicae reppuleris, nec vi coercere nec beneficio placare possis. Qua re mihi cum perditis civibus aeternum bellum susceptum esse video. Id ego vestro bonorumque omnium auxilio, memoriaque tantorum periculorum, quae non modo in hoc populo, qui servatus est, sed in omnium gentium sermonibus ac mentibus semper haerebit, a me atque a meis facile propulsari posse confido. Neque ulla profecto tanta vis reperietur, quae conjunctionem vestram equitumque Romanorum, et tantam conspirationem bonorum omnium, confringere et labes factare possibilit.
Quae cum ita sint, pro imperio, pro exercitu, pro provincia, quam neglexi, pro triumpho ceterisque laudis insignibus, quae sunt a me propter urbis vestraeque salutis custodiam repudiata, pro clientelis hospitiisque provincialibus, quae tamen urbanis opibus non minore labore tuor quam comparo, pro his igitur omnibus rebus, pro meis in vos singularibus studiis, proque hac quam perspicitis ad conservandam rem publicam diligentia, nihil a vobis nisi hujus temporis totiusque mei consulatus memoriam postulo: quae dum erit vestris fixa mentibus, tutissimo me muro saeptum esse arbitrabor. Quod si meam spem vis improborum fesellerit atque superaverit, commendo vobis parvum meum filium, cui prosecto satis erit praesidi non solum ad salutem, verum etiam ad dignitatem, si ejus, qui haec omnia suo solius periculo conservavit, illum filium esse memineritis. Quapropter de summa salute vestra populique Romani, de vestris conjugibus ac liberis, de aris ac focis, de fanis atque templis, de totius urbis tectis ac sedibus, de imperio ac libertate, de salute Italiae, de universa re publica, decernite diligenter, ut instituistis, ac fortiter. Habetis eum consulem qui et parere vestris decretis non dubitet, et ea quae statueritis, quoad vivet, defendere et per se ipsum praestare possit.
THE CITIZENSHIP OF ARCHIAS.

B.C. 62.

The case of Archias, though not a public one, yet had its origin in the politics of the time. The aristocratic faction, suspecting that much of the strength of their opponents was derived from the fraudulent votes of those who were not citizens, procured in B.C. 65 the passage of the Lex Papia, by which “all the strangers, who possessed neither Roman nor Latin burgess-rights, were ejected from the capital” (Mommsen). Archias, a native of Antioch, but for many years a Roman citizen, a friend of Lucius Lucullus, was accused in B.C. 62, by a certain Gratius, under this law, on the ground that he was not a citizen. The case was tried before the praetor Quintus Cicero, brother of the orator.

It was a very small matter to disprove the charge, and completely establish Archias’s claims to citizenship. The greater part of the speech, therefore, is made up of an eulogy upon the poet, and upon poetry and literature in general. It is, for this reason, one of the most agreeable of Cicero’s orations, and perhaps the greatest favorite of them all.

*Si quid* est in me ingenii, judices, quod sentio quam sit *exiguum*, aut si qua exercitatio dicendi, in qua *me* non *infitior* mediocriter esse versatum, aut si hujusce rei ratio aliqua ab optimarum artium studiis ac disciplina profecta, a qua ego nullum confiteor aetas meae tempus abhorruisse, earum rerum omnium vel in primis hic A. Licinius fructum a me repetere prope suo jure debet. Nam quoad longissime potest mens mea respicere spatium praeteriti temporis, et pueritiae memoriam recordari ultimam, inde usque *repetens* hunc video mihi principem et ad susciendam et ad ingrediendam rationem horum studiorum exstitisse. Quod si haec vox, hujus hortatu praeceptisque conformata, non nullis alius saluti fuit, a quo id accepimus quo ceteris opitulari et alios servare possemus, huic profecto ipsi, quantum est situm in nobis,
et opem et salutem ferre debemus. 2. Ac ne quis a nobis hoc ita dici forte miretur, quod alia quaedam in hoc facultas sit ingeni, neque haec dicendi ratio aut disciplina, ne nos quidem huic uni studio penitus umquam dediti fuimus. Etenim omnes artes, quae ad humanitatem pertinent, habent quoddam commune vinculum, et quasi cognatione quadam inter se continentur.

II. 3. Sed ne cui vestrum mirum esse videatur me in quaestione legitima et in judicio publico — cum res agatur apud praetorem populi Romani, lectissimum virum, et apud severissimos judices, tanto conventum hominum ac frequentia — hoc uti genere dicendi, quot non modo a consuetudine judiciorum, verum etiam a forensi sermone abhorreat; quaeo a vobis, ut in hac causa mihi detis hanc veniam, adcommodam huic reo, vobis (quem ad modum spero), non molestam, ut me pro summo poëta atque eruditissimo homine dicentem, hoc concursu hominum literatisissimorum, hac vestra humanitate, hoc demique praetore exercente judicium, patiamini de studiis humanitatis ac litterarum paulo loqui liberius, et in ejus modi persona, quae propter otiunm ac studium minime in judiciis periculisque tractata est, uti prope novo quodam et insitato genere dicendi. 4. Quod si mihi a vobis tribui concedique sentiam, perficiam prosecto ut hunc a. Licinium non modo non segregandum, cum sit civis, a numero civium, verum etiam si non esset, putetis ascendendum fuisset.

III. Nam ut primum ex pueris excessit Archias, atque ab eis artibus quibus aetas puerilis ad humanitatem informari solet se ad scribendi studium contulit, primum Antiociae — nam ibi natus est loco nobili — celebri quondam urbe et copiosa, atque eruditissimis hominibus liberalissimisque studiis adfluenti, celeriter antecellere omnibus ingeni gloria contigit. Post in
ceteris Asiae partibus cunctaeque Graeciae sic ejus adventus celebrabantur, ut famam ingeni exspectatio hominis, exspectationem ipsius adventus admiratioque superaret. 5. Erat Italia tunc plena Graecarum artium ac disciplinarum, studiaque haec et in Latio vehementius tum colebantur quam nunc eisdem in oppidis, et hic Romae propter tranquillitatem rei publicae non neglegebantur. Itaque hunc et Tarentini et Regini et Neapolitani civitate ceterisque praemiis donarunt; et omnes, qui aliquid de ingeniis poterant judicare, cognitione atque hospitio dignum existimarunt. Hac tanta celebritate famae cum esset jam absentibus notus, Romam venit Mario consule et Catulo. Nactus est primum consules eos, quorum alter res ad scribendum maximas, alter cum res gestas tum etiam studium atque auris adhibere posset. Statim Luculli, cum praetextatus etiam tum Archias esset, eum domum suam receperunt. Sic etiam hoc non solum ingeni ac litterarum, verum etiam nature atque virtutis, ut domus, quae hujus adulescentiae prima fuit, eadem esset familiarissima senectuti. 6. Erat temporibus illis jucundus Metello illi Numidico et ejus Pio filio; audiebatur a M. Aemilio; vivebat cum Q. Catulo et patre et filio; a L. Crasso colebatur; Lucullos vero et Drusum et Octavios et Catonem et totam Hortensiorum domum devinctam consuetudine cum teneret, adficiebatur summo honore, quod eum non solum colebant qui aliquid percipere atque audire studebant, verum etiam si qui forte simulabant. 7. Interim satis longo intervallo, cum esset cum M. Lucullo in Siciliam profectus, et cum ex ea provincia cum eodem Lucullo decederet, venit Heracliam: quae cum esset civitas aequissimo jure ac foedere, ascribi se in eam civitatem voluit; idque, cum ipse per se dignus putaretur, tum auctoritate et gratia Luculli ab Heracliensibus impetravit.
V. 9. *His Technical Right as Citizen.*

7. *Data est civitas Silvani lege et Carbonis: Si qui foederatis civitatibus ascripti fuissent; si tum, cum lex ferebatur, in Italia domicilium habuissent; et si sexaginta diebus apud praetorem essent professi.* Cum hic domicilium Romae multos jam annos habe-ret, professus est apud praetorem Q. Metellum familiarissimum suum. 8. Si nihil aliud nisi de civitate ac lege dicimus, nihil dico amplius: causa dicta est. Quid enim horum infirmari, Grati, potest? Heracliaene esse tum ascriptum negabis? Adest vir summa auctoritate et religione et fide, M. Lucullus, qui se non opinari sed scire, non audisse sed vidisse, non inter-fuisse sed egisse dicit. Adsum Heraclienses legati, nobilissimi homines: hujus judici causa cum mandatis et cum publico testimonio [venerunt]; qui hunc ascriptum Heracliensem dicunt. X Hic tu tabulas desideras Heracliensium publicas: quas Italico bello incenso tabulario interisse scimus omnis. Est ridiculum ad ea quae habemus nihil dicere, quae habere non possumus; et de hominum memoria tacere, litterarum memoriam flagitare; et, cum habeas amplissimi viri religionem, integerrimi municipi jus jurandum fidem-que, ea quae depravari nullo modo possunt repudiare, tabulas, quas idem dicis solere corrumpi, desiderare.

9. An domicilium Romae non habuit is, qui tot annis ante civitatem datam sedem omnium rerum ac fortun-narum suarum Romae conlocavit? At non est professus. Immo vero eis tabulis professus, quae solae ex illa professione conlegioque praetorum obtinent publicarum tabularum auctoritate. V. Nam — cum Appi tabulae neglegentius adservatae dicerentur; Gabini, quam diu incolurs fuit, levitas, post damnationem calamitas omnem tabularum fidem resignasset — Metellus, homo sanctissimus modestissimusque omnium, tanta diligentia fuit, ut ad L. Lentulum praetorem et ad judices venerit, et unius nominis litura se commo-
tum esse dixerit. In his igitur tabulis nullam lituram
in nomine A. Licini videtis.

10. Quae cum ita sint, quid est quod de ejus civitate
dubitetur, praeertim cum aliis quoque in civitatibus
fuerit ascriptus? Etenim cum mediocribus multis et
aut nulla aut humili aliqua arte praeditis gratuito civi-
tatem in Graecia homines impertiebant, Reginos credo
aut Locrensis aut Neapolitanos aut Tarentinos, quod
scenicis artificibus largiri soletbant, id huic summa
ingeni praedito gloria noluisse! Quid? cum ceteri
non modo post civitatem datam, sed etiam post legem
Papiam aliquo modo in eorum municipiorum tabulas
infepserunt, hic, qui ne utitur quidem illis in quibus
est scriptum, quod semper se Heracliensem esse voluit,
reicietur?

11. Census nostros requiris scilicet. Est
enim obscurum proximis censoribus hunc cum claris-
simo imperatore L. Lucullo apud exercitum suisse;
superioribus, cum eodem quaestore suisse in Asia;
primis Julio et Crasso nullam populi partem esse cen-
sam. Sed—quoniam census non jus civitatis confir-
mat, ac tantum modo indicat eum qui sit census [ita] se
jam tum gessisse pro cive—eis temporibus quibus tu
criminarius ne ipsius quidem judicio in civium Roma-
norum jure esse versatum, et testamentum saepe fecit
nostris legibus, et adiit hereditates civium Roma-
norum, et in beneficiis ad aerarium delatus est a L.
Lucullo pro console. vi. Quaere argumenta, si qua
potes: numquam enim hic neque suo neque amicorum
judicio revincetur.

12. Quaeres a nobis, Grati, cur tanto opere hoc
homine delectemur. Quia suppeditat nobis ubi et
animus ex hoc forensi strepitu reficiatur, et aures con-
viuio defessae conquiescant. An tu existimas aut sup-
petere nobis posse quod cotidie dicamus in tanta
varietate rerum, nisi animos nostros doctrinae excola-
mus; aut ferre animos tantam posse contentionem,
nisi eos doctrina eadem relaxemus? Ego vero fateor me his studiis esse deditum: ceteros pudeat, si qui se ita litteris abdiderunt ut nihil possint ex eis neque ad communem adferre fructum, neque in aspectum lucemque proferre: me autem quid pudeat, qui tot annos ita vivo, judices, ut a nullius umquam me tempore aut commodo aut otium meum abstraxerit, aat voluptas avocarit, aut denique somnus retardarit? 13. Qua re quis tandem me reprehendat, aut quis mihi jure suscenseat, si, quantum ceteris ad suas res obeundas, quantum ad festos dies ludorum celebrandos, quantum ad alias voluptates et ad ipsum requiem animi et corporis conceditur temporum, quantum alii tribuunt tempestivis conviviis, quantum denique alveolo, quantum pilae, tantum mihi egomet ad haec studia recolenda sumps ero? Atque hoc ideo mihi concedendum est magis, quod ex his studiis haec quoque crescit oratio et facultas quae, quantacumque in me est, numquam amicorum periculis desuit. Quae si cui levier videtur, illa quidem certe, quae summa sunt, ex quo fonte hauriam sentio. 14. Nam nisi multorum praecipitis multisque litteris mihi ab adultescencia suasissem, nihil esse in vita magno opere expetendum nisi laudem atque honestatem, in ea autem sequenda omnis cruciatus corporis, omnia pericula mortis atque exsili parvi esse ducenda, numquam me pro salute vestra in tot ac tantas dimicationes atque in hos profligatorum hominum cotidianos impetus objecissem. Sed pleni omnes sunt libri, plena sapientium voces, plena exemplorum vetustas: quae jacerent in tenebris omnia, nisi litterarum lumen accederet. Quam multas nobis imagines — non solum ad intuendum, verum etiam ad imitandum — fortissimorum virorum expressas scriptores et Graeci et Latini reliquerunt? Quas ego mihi semper in administranda re publica proponens, animum et mentem meam ipsa cogitatione hominum excellentium conformabam.
vii. 15. Queret quispiam: 'Quid? illi ipsi summivi, quorum virtutes litteris prodatae sunt, istane doctrina, quam tu effers laudibus, eruditi fuerunt?' Difficile est hoc de omnibus confirmare, sed tamen est certe quod respondeam. Ego multos homines excellenti animo ac virtute fuisse, et sine doctrina naturae ipsius habitu prope divino per se ipsos et moderatos et gravis exstitisse, fateor: etiam illud adjungo, saepius ad laudem atque virtutem naturam sine doctrina quam sine natura valuisse doctrinam. Atque idem ego contendo, cum ad naturam eximiam atque inlustrem accesserit ratio quaedam conformatoqui de doctrinae, tum illud nescio quid praeculhum ac singulare solere existere.

16. Ex hoc esse hunc numero, quem patres nostri vide-runt, divinum hominem Africanum; ex hoc C. Laelium, L. Furium, moderatissimos homines et continentissimos; ex hoc fortissimum virum et illis temporibus doctissimum, M. Catonem illum senem: qui profecto si nihil ad percipiendam [colendam] virtutem litteris adjuvarentur, numquam se ad earum studium contulissent. Quod si non hic tantus fructus ostenderetur, et si ex his studiis delectatio sola peteretur, tamen (ut opinor) hanc animi adversionem humanissimam ac liberalissimam judicaretis. Nam ceterae neque temporum sunt neque aetatum omnium neque locorum: haec studia adolescentiam alunt, senectutem oblectant, secundas res ornant, adversis perfugium ac solacium praebent, delectant domi, non impedient foris, pernoctant nobiscum, peregrinantur, rusticantur.

17. Quod si ipsi haec neque attingere neque sensu nostro gustare possemus, tamen ea mirari deberemus, etiam cum in aliiis videremus. viii. Quis nostrum tam animo agresti ac duro fuit, ut Rosci morte nuper non commoveretur? qui cum esset senex mortuus, tamen propter excellentem artem ac veritatem videbatur omnino mori non debuisse. Ergo ille corporis motu
tantum amorem sibi conciliarat a nobis omnibus: nos animorum incredibilis motus celeritatemque ingeniorum neglegemus? Quotiens ego hunc Archiam vidi, judices, — utar enim vestra benignitate, quoniam me in hoc novo genere dicendi tam diligenter attendi, — quotiens ego hunc vidi, cum litteram scripsisset nullam, magnum numerum optimorum versuum de eis ipsis rebus quae tum agerentur dicere ex tempore! Quotiens revocatum eandem rem dicere, commutatis verbis atque sententias! Quae vero adcurate cogitatione scripsisset, ea sic vidi probari, ut ad veterum scriptorum laudem perveniret. Hunc ego non diligam? non admirer? non omni ratione defendendum putem?

Atque sic a summis hominibus eruditissimisque accepimus, ceterarum rerum studia et doctrina et praecoceptis et arte constare: poëtam natura ipsa valere, et mentis viribus excitari, et quasi divino quodam spiritu inflari. Qua re suo jure noster ille Ennius sanctos appellat poëtas, quod quasi deorum aliquo dont atque munere commendati nobis esse videantur. Sit igitur, judices, sanctum apud vos, humanissimos homines, hoc poëtae nomen, quod nulla umquam barbaria violavit. Saxa et solitudines voci respondent, bestiae saepe immanes cantu flectuntur atque consistunt: nos, instituti rebus optimis, non poëtarum voce moveamur? Homerus Colophonii civem esse dicunt suum, Chii suum vindicant, Salaminii repetunt, Smyrnaei vero suum esse confirmant, itaque etiam delubrum ejus in oppido dedicaverunt: permulti alii praeterea pugnant inter se atque contendunt. Ergo illi alienum, quia poëta fuit, post mortem etiam expetunt: nos hunc vivum, qui et voluntate et legibus noster est, repudiabimus? praesertim cum omne olim studium atque omne ingenium contulerit Archias ad populi Romani gloriam laudemque celebrandam? Nam et
Cimbricas res adulescens attigit, et ipsi illi C. Mario, qui durior ad haec studia videbatur, jucundus fuit.  

20. Neque enim quisquam est tam aversus a Musis, qui non mandari versibus aeternum suorum laborum facile praeponium patiatur. Themistoclem illum, summum Athenis virum, dixisse aiunt, cum ex eo quae-reretur, quod acroama aut cujus vocem libentissime audiret: Ejus, quia sua virtus optime praedicaretur. Itaque ille Marius item eximie L. Plotium dilexit, cujus ingenio putabat ea quae gesserat posse celebrari.  


22. Carus fuit Africano superiori noster Ennius, itaque etiam in sepulcro Scipionum putatur esse constitutus ex marmore. At eis laudibus certe non solum ipse qui laudatur, sed etiam populi Romani nomen ornatur. In caelum hujus proavus Cato tollitur: magnus honos populi Romani rebus adjungitur. Omnes denique illi Maximi, Marcelli, Fulvii, non sine communi omnium nostrum laude decorantur. x. Ergo illum, qui haec fecerat, Rudinum hominem, majores
nostri in civitatem receperunt: nos hunc Heraclien-
sem, multis civitatibus expetitum, in hac autem legibus
constitutum, de nostra civitate eiciemus?

23. Nam si quis minorem gloriae fructum putat ex
Graecis versibus percipi quam ex Latinis, vehementer
errat: propterea quod Graeca leguntur in omnibus
fere gentibus, Latina suis finibus, exiguis sane, con-
tinentur. Qua re si res eae quas gessimus orbis
terrae regionibus desiniuntur, cupere debemus, quo
manuum nostrarum tela pervenerint, eodem gloriam
famamque penetrase; quod cum ipsis populis de quo-
rum rebus scribitur, haec ampla sunt, tum eis certe,
qui de vita gloriae causa dimicant, hoc maximum et
periculorum incitamentum est et laborum

24. Quam multos scriptores rerum suarum magnus ille Alexander
secum habuisse dicitur! Atque is tamen, cum in
Sigeo ad Achillis tumulum astitisset: O fortunate
inquit adulescens, qui tuae virtutis Homerum praec-
conem inveneris! Et vere. Nam nisi Ilias illa exstis-
tisset, idem tumulus, qui corpus ejus contereraet,
nomen etiam obruisset. Quid? noster hic Magnus,
qui cum virtute fortunam adaequavit, nonne Theoph-
nem Mytilenaen, scriptorem rerum suarum, in con-
tione militum civitate donavit; et nostri illi fortes viri,
sed rustici ac milites, dulcedine quadrat gloriae com-
moti, quasi participes ejusdem laudis, magno illud
clamore approbavereunt?

25. Itaque, credo, si civis Romanus Archias legibus
non esset, ut ab aliquo imperatore civitate donaretur
perficere non potuit. Sulla cum Hispanos donaret et
Gallos, credo hunc petentem repudiasset: quem nos
in contione vidimus, cum ei libellum malus poëta de
populo subjecisset, quod epigramma in eum fecisset,
tantummodo alternis versibus longiusculis, statim ex
eis rebus quas tunc vendebat jubere ei praemium
tribui, sed ea condizione, ne quid postea scriberet.
Citizenship of Archias.

Qui sedulitatem magno poëtae duxerit aliquo tamen praemio dignam, hujus ingenium et virtutem in scribendo et copiam non expetisset? 26. Quid? a Q. Metello Pio, familiarissimo suo, qui civitate multos donavit, neque per se neque per Lucullos impetravisset? qui praesertim usque eo de suis rebus scribi cuperet, ut etiam Cordubae natis poëtis, pingue quidam sonantibus atque peregrinum, tamen auris suas dederet.

xi. Neque enim est hoc dissimulandum (quod obscurari non potest) sed praeb nobis ferendum: trahimur omnes studio laudis, et optimus quisque maxime gloria ducitur. Ipsi illi philosophi, etiam in eis libellis quos de contemnenda gloria scribunt, nomen suum inscribunt: in eo ipso, in quo praedicationem nobilitatemque despiciunt, praedicari de se ac nominari volunt. 27. Decimus quidem Brutus, summus vir et imperator, Acci, amicissimi sui, carminibus templorum ac monumentorum aditus exornavit suorum. Jam vero ille, qui cum Aetolis Ennio comite bella vavit, Fulvius, non dubitavit Martis manubias Musis consecrare. Qua re in qua urbe imperatores prope armati poëtarum nomen et Musarum delubra coluerunt, in ea non debent togati judices a Musarum honore et a poëtarum salute abhorriere.

28. Atque ut id libentius faciatis, jam me vobis, judices, indicabo, et de meo quodam amore gloriae, nimirum acri fortasse verum tamen honesto vobis, confitebor. Nam quas res nos in consulatu nostro vobiscum simul pro salute hujusce imperi et pro vita civium proque universa re publica gessimus, attigit hic versibus atque inchoavit: quibus auditis, quod mihi magna res et jucunda visa est, hunc ad perficiendum adornnavi. Nullam enim virtus aliam mercedem laborum periculorumque desiderat, praeter hanc laudis et gloriae: qua quidem detracta, judices, quid est quod in

xii. 30. An vero tam parvi animi videamur esse omnes, qui in re publica atque in his vitae periculis laboribusque versamur, ut, cum usque ad extremum spatium nullum tranquillum atque otiosum spiritum duxerimus, nobiscum simul moritura omnia arbitremur? An statuas et imagines, non animorum simulacra sed corporum, studiose multi summi homines reliquerunt; consiliorum reлинаquere ac virtutum nostrarum effigiem nonne multo malle debemus, summis ingeniis expressam et politam? Ego vero omnia quae gerebam, jam tum in gerendo spargere me ac disseminare arbitrabar in orbis terrae memoriam semper. Haec vero sive a meo sensu post mortem futura est, sive—ut sapientissimi homines putaverunt—ad aliam mei partem pertinebit, nunc quidem certe cogitatione quadam speque delector. 

31. Qua re conservate, judices, hominem pudore eo, quem amicorum videtis comprobari cum dignitate tum etiam vetustate; ingenio autem tanto, quantum id convenit existimari, quod summorum hominum ingeniis expetitum esse videatis; causa vero ejus modi, quae beneficio legis, auctoritate municipi, testimonio Luculli, tabulis Metelli comprobetur. Quae cum ita sint, petimus a vobis, judices, si qua non modo humana, verum etiam divina in tantis ingeniis com-
mendatio debet esse, ut eum qui vos, qui vestros imperatores, qui populi Romani res gestas semper ornavit, qui etiam his recentibus nostris vestrisque domesticis periculis aeternum se testimonium laudis daturum esse profitetur, estque ex eo numero qui semper apud omnis sancti sunt habitu itaque dicti, sic in vestrarn accipiatis fidem, ut humanitate vestra levatus potius quam acerbitate violatus esse videatur.

32. Quae de causa pro mea consuetudine breviter simpliciterque dixi, judices, ea confido probata esse omnibus. Quae autem remota a mea judgmentique consuetudine, et de hominis ingenio et communiter de ipsius studio locutus sum, ea, judices, a vobis spero esse in bonam partem accepta; ab eo qui judgment exercet, certo scio.

Datum 16 tháng 1871.
NOTES.

DEFENCE OF ROSCIUS.

Argument.

[Omitted portions in brackets.]

CHAP. I. Exordium. Cicero's reasons for undertaking the case. — [2. Political aspect of the trial, showing (a) why others refused to undertake it; (b) why the jury ought to be especially cautious] — Narratio. 6. The murder. — 7. Circumstances pointing to Magnus as the procurer: Chrysogonus informed, and a conspiracy made with him by Capito and Magnus. — 8. Prosecution and sale of property: Chrysogonus buys it up for a nominal sum. Sex. Roscius dispossessed. — 9. Americans take up his cause and apply to Sulla. but are staved off by Capito, who was on the committee. — 10. Roscius flies to his friends at Rome: the conspirators commence the prosecution. — 11. Commiseration of his client's position, with review of the circumstances. — 12. Partitio: (a) the charge; (b) the reckless villany of the two T. R.; (c) influence of Chrysogonus. — Defensio: I. 14. The crime not in accordance with the character of the defendant: no motive can be shown: no enmity between father and son. — 15-17. His rustic employment: this is no evidence of ill-will. — 19. Alleged intention to disinherit: no proof. — 20. No case made out: hence the accuser (Erucius) is attacked for bringing such a charge. — 21. The case rests only on the negligence of the Court; and supposed friendlessness of defendant. — 22. For the conspirators' manner changed when they found there would be a real defence. — Recapitulation: no motive existed; enormity of the crime, and severity of its punishment. — 23-26. Instances from real life and fiction. — 27, 28. No means of committing the crime. — 29. Again: the accuser's presumption in trying to force a conviction. — II. 30. Countercharge: T. Roscius the probable murderer: in his case there are motives. — 31. It was for his advantage. — 32. He was the murdered man's enemy. — 33. He had opportunities (compare the two cases). — 34. His acts after the murder: hasty message to Capito (his character). — 36. His testimony at the trial. — 37. Speedy announcement to Chrysogonus — apparently from the Roscii, for they have received the reward and possess the property. — 38, 39. Capito's perfidy to the committee. — 41. Magnus refuses the slaves for question. — 42. Influence of Chrysogonus. — III. 43. Chrysogonus the purchaser: the sale illegal, for proscriptions had ceased. — 44-47. Lawlessness and insolence of Chrysogonus: Sulla artfully excused. — 48. No political necessity of conviction. — 49. Responsibility of the attack on Chrysogonus is Cicero's: Roscius asks only his life. — Peroratio. 50-51. Simulated appeal to Chrysogonus, to stir sympathy of the jury: incidental mention of the powerful friends of the defendant. — 52, 53. But if Chrysogonus does not spare him, he appeals confidently to the Court.

PAGE

§ 1. Credo ... periculum vitant. This paragraph may be analyzed as an example of the involved periodic style of Latin writers. The main clause is credo ego; the rest of the sentence is all the object of credo in the indirect discourse (§ 67, 1).* The main verb of the discourse is mirari (changed from miramini),

* The references are to the sections of Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar.
with *vos* in the accusative as its subject. The object of *mirari* is the indirect question *quid sit quod*, etc., embracing all the rest, changed from a direct question *quid est quod*, etc. Again, the subject of *sit* is all that follows, being a clause with *quod* (§ 70, 5), of which *surrexerim* is the main verb, and all the other clauses are modifiers. — The clause *cum . . . sedent* is a kind of adverbial modifier of *surrexerim*, while the clause *qui . . . sim . . . comparandus* is a kind of adjective modifier of *ego* the subject of *surrexerim*, and *qui sedent* is a kind of adjective modifier of *his*. — *omnes hi*, etc., is an independent sentence, but is connected in thought with the preceding, and explains the fact at which the jurors are supposed to be surprised, i.e., *I suppose you wonder*, etc., *but the fact is*, etc.

N B. Notice, as a practical guide, that in Latin (as in all languages) the verb next following a relative is its verb, — unless another relative intervenes, in which case the latter relative has its verb first, and the first relative clause is suspended; but even then, the next following verb will belong to the former relative. A careful attention to analysis, like that above, and the observance of this obvious but often forgotten rule, will carry a student safely through the most involved constructions.

*ego*: not emphatic itself, but only expressed to set off *vos*, which is. The Latin is so fond of putting pronouns in antithesis, that one is often (as here) expressed on purpose. — *judices*: not judges, but rather *jurors*. They were persons selected by law to try facts (under the presidency of a *pretor* or *judex questionis*), and were often quite numerous, from a single one to fifty or more.

In the year B.C. 149, an important reform was introduced into the criminal procedure of Rome, by establishing a *Quaestio Perpetua*, or standing Criminal Court, for trial of cases of extortion by provincial governors: the object of the suit was *res repetere* (to recover property), and the court was known as the *Quaestio Rerum Repetundarum*, or simply *Repetundarum*. A second court of murder — *de Sicariis et Veneficis* — was (according to Mommsen) established shortly after, by Caius Gracchus; and perhaps others followed. The whole system was revised by Sulla, and six or eight separate courts were established, embracing the entire field of criminal offences. Each was under the presidency of a *pretor*, appointed by lot, or *judex quaestionis*, appointed by the *pretor* for the special case. These new and remodelled courts went into operation in B.C. 80, and the case of Roscius was the first that came before them. His trial was before the *Quaestio inter Sicarios*, under the presidency of the *pretor*, Marcus Fannius. The *judices*, or jury in all these courts, were originally selected from the Senators; Caius Gracchus had transferred the right to the *Equites*, or wealthy middle class; Sulla restored it to the Senators, but ten years later (B.C. 70) a new arrangement was made (see Verr. i. 15).

*quid sit quod*, *why it is that*. Here *quod* . . . *surrexerim* is a clause of *fact* (§ 70, 5), taking the subj. on account of the indirect question. — *summi oratores, homines nobilissimi*: notice the inversion (*chiasmus*, § 76, 1, f). — *sedeant*: subj. because *cum* is causal (§ 63, 2, b), though to be translated *when*, or *while*. Since Sulla’s victory had restored the aristocracy to power, it might be expected that men of rank (*nobilissimi*) would have courage to come forward to defend Roscius: their presence (*sedeant*) showed their
Defence of Roscius.

§ 1, 2.]
sympathies. — *ego*: emphatic, as opposed to the orators and men of rank. — *potissimum*, rather than any other (§ 17, 4). — *aestate*: Cicero was now but 26 years old. — *auctoritate*, personal influence, particularly that derived from rank, or office. — *sim*: in direct disc. this might be either subj. to indicate the character of Cicero, or ind. to denote a mere fact about him; but here necessarily subj. on account of the indirect question (§ 66, 2). — *hi*: strongly demonstrative and accompanied, perhaps, with a gesture, — these men here. — *injuriam*, injustice. — *novo soelere* (abl. of means), the strange charge of parricide. — *confiadam*, got up, implying a conspiracy to effect it. — *oporere*: this verb is always impersonal; its subject here is the clause *injuriam defendi*. The verb *defendere* signifies not to defend, but to strike down, hence to ward off, or avert. — *ipsi*, agreeing with the subject of *audient*; not (as we might expect) with that of *defendere*, which is a complementary infinitive (§ 57, 8, c). Supply *but* in translating. — *iniquitatem temporum*, i.e. the disturbed state of politics, while the wounds of the civil war were still fresh. — *ita fit*: the subject is the clause *ut adsint*, etc. (§ 70, 4, a). — *propertera* = *propeter* (compar. of *prope*) ea, near (hence caused by, or on account of) these things: distinguish carefully from *praeterea*, which is *praeter* (compar. of *prae*) ea, along by (beyond and so besides) these things. — *officium*, duty, arising from their relation to the murdered man, who had stood in relation of *hospitium* with some of the highest families. — *adsint*: the friends of the parties to a suit (called *advocati*) attended court to give them the weight of their influence (compare *Cæs. B. G.* i. 4). Hence the word *suit*, which originally meant following of witnesses and friends.

§ 2. *ergo*, at: for the force of these conjunctions, see Gr. § 43, 3, b and c. — *officior*, with a stronger sense of duty. — *ne* . . . *qui- dem*, not . . . either, enclosing, as usual, the emphatic word (§ 41, 3, e). — *istius*, i.e., which is in your thoughts (§ 20, 2, c) — *sim*, conjunctivus modestiae (§ 60, 2, b). — *alius*, dat. (§ 51, 2, e). — *præ- reptam*: *praeb* gives here the force of getting the start of others in snatching it (compare *prevent*, from *praevenio*). — *me*: emphatic from its position between *quæ* and *igitur* (§ 76, 2). — *Rosci*: gen. (§ 10, 4, b). — *recipient*, undertake a case offered; *suscipere* is to take it up of one's own motion. (For the mood, see § 64, 1; tense, § 58, 10, a.) — *amplitudo*, position, from birth, wealth, office, or the like. — *do re publica*, on politics. — *id quod*, a thing which (§ 48, 3, e). — *dixisset*: as a part of the case supposed in *si fecisset*, this must also be in the plup. subj. (see next note). — *putaretur*, apodosis of *fecisset* (§ 59, 3, b), while the whole from *si verbum*, etc., is the apodosis of *si quis dixisset*. Translate, if any one had spoken. in case he had alluded to politics, he would, etc.
§ 3. si dixerō... poterit: for the form of condition, see § 59, 4, e.—similiter, in like manner, i.e. as if a man of rank had spoken.—exīre, etc., i.e. this speech would not be quoted and talked over, nor on the other hand distorted and misinterpreted.—emānāre, leak out (cf. mānēro).—volgus = vulgus (§ 1, 2, b).—deinde quod: the second reason, corresponding to quia above.
—ceterorum, opposed to ego, below.

The learner is greatly assisted (as, indeed, the Romans themselves must have been) in the understanding of a sentence like this, by noticing the way in which one word is set off against another. Thus, besides the case just mentioned, dictum obscūrum esse is opposed to temerō dicto concedi; so propter nobilitatem is opposed to propter atatem, and occultum, etc., to ignosci, etc. At the same time, occultum is parallel with obscūrum, and ignosci with concedi. These antitheses are indicated in various ways,—(a) by emphatic and similar or chiastic position, as here ceterorum precedes neque and ego precedes sīquid, though the connective is usually placed first; (b) by particles, as the correlative neque...neque, and vel...vel.

dictum is a noun limited by ceterorum (in the case of the others); dicto is also a noun, though modified by an adverb (see examples under § 72, 2, a).—concedi (impersonal, § 51, 2, f), allowed, or put up with.—nondum...accessi, I have not yet gone into public life, i.e. become candidate for any office. Cicero began his political career five years later, with the quaestorship.—tametsi, although, in its so-called “corrective” use,—the concession coming after the general statement, as a kind of limitation of it.—ignoscendi has a subject supplied from si quid (§ 51, 2, c).—ignoscendi ratio, the idea of pardon. As Latin has few abstract nouns, their place is supplied in various other ways. The thought is, not only pardoning, but even official investigation (cognoscendi) has ceased in the state (in consequence of the stormy times of Sulla). But this thought can hardly be expressed in any other way than by the general word ratio with a genitive, which we may translate as above.

"This is boldly said, at a time when the tyrant Sulla was in power. Sulla never pardoned, and inquiry in legal form was out of fashion; at least such a trial as an innocent man could rely on. The legislation of Sulla had excluded the Equites from the office of judges; and the senators, who were his tools, were the class from which judges were now taken." (Long). It should be observed, however, that during the period in which the equites were in possession of the courts, they showed themselves—in spite of Cicero’s assertion (see Verr. i. 13)—quite as corrupt as the Senators. The fact is, each class was under a temptation to pass unjust judgments, since the provincial governors belonged to the Senatorial order, and the farmers of revenue to the Equestrian.

3. § 4. accedit, is added: used as a kind of passive of addo.—quod, that (§ 70, 5).—a ceteris, from the others, i.e. the nobles. (For the use of the prep., see § 52, 2, c, Rem.)—petitum sit, subj. by § 60, 2, a: it is, strictly, subj. of ind. question after forsitan (=fors sit an, it is a chance whether).—ut dicērent (sc. causam), that they should plead: a subst. clause (§ 70, 3, a), subject of petitum sit.—dicere causam is the technical expression for the
Defence of Roscius.

§ 3-5. counsel (to argue or defend a case), as well as for the defendant (to be brought to trial). — ut ... arbitrantur, a clause of result, correlative with ita (§ 65, 1). — utrumvis, lit. either [of the two] you please: here, simply, either at their option. — salvo officio (abl. abs.), without breach of duty. — arbitrantur; imperfect following petitum sit (§ 58, 10, a). — a me (opposed to a ceteris) contendereunt, have compelled it from me: preserve the antithesis by inserting, but as to myself, which is implied in the position of a me. — ei (simply correlative to qui, § 20, 2, d), men: not a demonstrative, like hic, etc. The noble friends of Roscius are here meant, who would desire his cause to be well conducted. — plurimum possunt, have the greatest weight. — debeam, subj. of characteristic (§ 65, 2). — ego: expressed to continue the emphasis of a me. — his: emphatic, referring to the reasons just mentioned; ego, as opposed to the others present. — causa, dat. (§ 51, 7, a). — patronus, advocate (the word advocati meaning friends, as above). The term patronus, protector, — properly the correlative of cliens, a dependant, — was transferred to the counsellor, as the defender of his client; all the more easily, as the practice of the law was in the hands of the nobles, who were obliged to defend their friends and dependants gratis. It should be noticed, that cliens is never used in the modern sense of client in law, correlative to counsel: the Roman cliens was necessarily a poor man, or one in humble station, or a foreigner. — electus, relictus: this antithesis (in sound as well as sense) suggests at once that ingenio is in the same construction as periculo, and that possem dicere must be supplied. — unus, as the one. — uti: older form for ut. — uti ne: in purpose clauses (§ 64, 1), the double form is often used instead of ne alone.

§ 5. municeps (munus-capio), lit. sharing public duties, and so, citizen of a municipium or free Italian town with Roman citizenship.

A native Italian town which had lost its original independence, and was absorbed in the Roman state, ceased to be a civitas, and became a municipium; its citizens now possessed Roman citizenship as well as that of their own town. This Roman citizenship was possessed in various degrees. Some towns lost all rights of self-government, without receiving any political rights at Rome in their place; that is, their political existence was extinguished, and their citizens became mere passive citizens of Rome, with civil rights, but no political ones: this worst condition of municipal liberties was called jus Caritum, because the Etruscan town of Cære was taken as the type. The most favored class retained all powers of self-government, with magistrates of their own election, at the same time being full citizens of Rome. All furnished their contingent to the Roman army, and were under the civil jurisdiction of the Roman praetor; but they paid no taxes except for their own local concerns.

Amerinus, of America (§ 50, 1, a). — vicinitatis: i.e. probably the whole territory of America, extending to the Tiber. — hospitium, guest-friendship. This was a relation between individuals of different cities or states, at a time when there were no international rela-
tions: it included the duties of hospitality and protection, was transmitted from father to son, and was vouched for by a ticket (tesserae). — **domesticus... consuetudo, intercourse and companionship in their homes.** — **honestatis gratia (so honoris causa, § 17), with all honor:** it seems to have been held a liberty to mention the name of any person of quality; and it is generally done in some such form of compliment. — **hoc solum, i.e. the hospitium.** — **domestici, of his own house.** — **ereptum possident, have plundered and now hold (§ 72, 3, a): possidere does not signify to own, in the modern sense, but only to hold or occupy.** — **innocentis, i.e. filii.**

§ 6. **nobilitatis fator, i.e. of Sulla’s party.** — **hoc tumultu, this last disturbance (euphemistic):** i.e. the final scenes of the civil war of Marius and Sulla, which Cicero will not call **bellum.** — **in discrimen veniret, was at stake:** subj. of characteristic (at a time when, etc.). — **opera, etc., labor, zeal, influence.** — **se pugnare, simply to fight (§ 70, 2, d):** object of **putabat,** while **rectum** is in pred. apposition (§ 46, 2). — **honestate, honestissimus, refer respectively to the rank and dignity of these great families, and the credit which his connection with them gave him in his own neighborhood.** — **victoria, i.e. of Sulla’s party.** — **constituta est, prae- scriberentur:** the first is of **absolute, the second of relative time (§ 62, 2), describing the period by its characteristics (§ 65, 2).** — **prae- scriberentur:** the number of the proscribed in Sulla’s time was 4,700. — **frequens:** adj. for adv. (§ 47, 6).

Whoever killed one of these outlaws was not only exempt from punishment, like an executioner duly fulfilling his office, but also obtained for the execution a compensation of 14,000 denarii (nearly $2,400); any one on the contrary who befriended an outlaw, even his nearest relative, was liable to the severest punishment. The property of the proscribed was forfeited to the state like the spoil of an enemy; their children and grandchildren were excluded from a political career, and yet, so far as of senatorial rank, were bound to undertake their share of senatorial burdens” (Mommsen). At first only the names of those who had justly forfeited their lives were proscribed; afterwards it became easy for friends and favorites of the dictator (as Chrysogonus, attacked in the oration for Roscius) to put upon the list the names of innocent men, and even of men already dead, so as to work confiscation of their property. These proscriptions nominally ceased June 1, B.C. 81.

4. § 7. **erant, see § 76, 1, b.** — **inimicitiae:** plural of the abstract, signifying **causes or occasions of enmity (§ 14, 1, a).** — **accusatorum:** prosecutions might be brought by private persons (as by Cicero against Verres): these Rosci took their places as prosecutors along with Erucius (**coadjutores, subscriptores**). — **isti (§ 20, 2, c).** — **Capitoni (§ 51, 3, b).** — **palmarum, prizes:** sarcastically said of his acts of violence, as of so many victories in gladiatorial fights. — **nobilis, famous (as of artists, actors, etc.).** — **hic, the one here present (Magnus); eum, referring to the one just mentioned, the absent one (Capito).** — **lanistam, a professional trainer or “coach”:** used sarcastically, like **palmarum,** above. — **quod sciam, so far as I know,** sc. **id (adv. acc. § 52, 3, b):** i.e. he must have been a mere
§ 8. *hie, this man* (with a gesture), i. e. here at my side; *iste, that one*, i. e. there on the accusers’ bench. — *cillum...esset*, parenthetical. — *iste*, T. Roscius: the repetition of the words *frequens*, etc., brings out the point that he was likeliest to be the murderer. — *Palacinias*: the reading is uncertain, and the place unknown. — *suspicio*: this word is not formed immediately from the verb-stem of *suscipio*, but the true derivative ending is -tio, and the long vowel seems to indicate contraction (§ 44, i. c, 2). — *res ipsa, the fact itself*: — *hunc*, i. e. my client. — *judicatote* (§ 57, 7, c): the second or longer form of the imperative is regular where the action is not to be performed immediately, especially when a future appears in protasis (§ 59, 4).

§ 9. *Ameriam nuntiat, brings the news to Am.*: the acc. of *end of motion* (55, 3, b). — *quidam, one*. — *horam primam*: the night from sunset to sunrise was divided into 12 hours; these would be longer in the late autumn or winter, when the murder is thought to have been committed. — *nocturnis*, i. e. when the travelling would be more difficult and slow. — *cissis*: the plural form shows that there were *relays of carriages*.

§ 10. *quadríduo, i. e. in the same space of four days*: we should say *within four days*. — *in castra*: the idea of motion, vividly conceived, suggests the acc. of place as well as person; we should say, *to Sulla in his camp at V.*. — *Volaterrae*: a very ancient and important town of Etruria, on a high and very steep hill, about 30 miles S. W. of Florence. “Here some of the Etruscans and of these proscribed by Sulla made a stand and were blockaded for two years, and there surrendered on terms” (Strabo). — *defertur*: this word implies an *intentional* conveying of the information, in the manner of a formal report, or charge.

§ 5. *fundos, estates*, i. e. lands or buildings, whether in town or country. — *tris = tres* (§ 16, 2, b): the acc. termination in is remained in this and a few other words for a considerable time after the form in es became more common. — *Tiberim* (§ 11, i. 3, a, 1): the river must add greatly to the value of these estates, whether for transportation or irrigation. — *splendidus, eminent*: the regular complimentary epithet of *equites*, and persons of similar rank; *gratiosus, in favor*: referring to his relations with great families. — *negotia, difficulty*: — *de medio tolli, put out of the way*: — *ne teneam, not to detain you*: a purpose clause after some verb of *saying*, etc., which is, as usual, omitted (§ 64, 1, b). — *societas, partnership*: — *coitur*: *coire*, as governing the accusative (52, i, c), here takes the passive.

§ 11. *cillum*, etc.: the proscriptions ceased June 1, B. C. 81; the
march was committed some months after this date (see below, § 39). — jam (with reference to time preceding), already (§ 41, 3, b): nunc (referring only to the moment itself), now. — defunctus, rid of, sc. esse. — Rosci limits nomen. — studioissimi, devoted to the party of Sulla, and so not likely to be proscribed. — manceps (manu capio), purchaser of confiscated goods and the like. — iste, yonaer, on the accusers' benches. — nomine, i. e. as agent. — impetum facit, makes a raid upon, implying violence, as of a charge in battle. — duobus milibus nummum, i. e. about $100 (§ 85); they are estimated in ch. ii. to have been worth $300,000 (sexagies).

§ 12. imprudente, without the knowledge (prudens = providens). — certo scio, I am well aware (§ 41, 3, c). — neque enim, negative of et enim (§ 43, 3, d), introducing a point obvious or indisputable, for, you see. — mirum, predicate of the clause si ... moliantur, below (§ 70, 5, R.). — praeparet, must provide for: cum is causal, though to be rendered when. — pacis ... rationem, i. e. the ordering of the new constitution. — distentus, pulled different ways. — si aliquid (more emphatic than si quid) non animadvertat, if there is something he does not notice: protasis with si, above. — ut ... moliantur, that as soon as he takes off his eyes they may get up something of this sort: clause of purpose (§ 64, 1); despexerit, perf. subj. (§ 66, 2), for fut. perf. — hoc accedit, add to this. — quamvis felix sit (§ 61, 2), however fortunate he may be: Sulla was so impressed with his own good fortune, that he assumed the agnomen Felix, implying, by the ancient notion, peculiar favor of the gods. (See Manil. § 47). — familia, household of slaves and dependants. — qui habeat, as to have (§ 65, 2, a). — libertum, freedman: he still remained attached to his former master as patronus, often lived in his family, did various services for him, and stood towards him in a relation somewhat like that of a son under the patria potestas. Towards others he was a libertinus, fully free, but with some political disqualifications; towards his former master he was a libertus.

§ 13. vir optimus, sarcastic. — qui ... solvisset (§ 65, 2), though he had not yet, etc. — justa, the due rites of burial: these ended with a sacrifice on the ninth day (novem dia) after the death or burial. — eicit = ejicit: in the compounds of jacio, the combination ji is properly, as here, written with a single letter (§ 1, 3, d).

6. pecuniae, property. — dominus, master in the sense of owner. — qui ... fusisset (§ 65, 2), since he had been, etc. — ut fit, as generally happens. — insolens, here, extravagant, etc. — domum suam (§ 55, 3, b, e), to his house. — auferebat (§ 58, 3, c), began to, etc. — auctione, verbal from augeo, i. e. increasing the bids. — usque eo, to that degree. — urbe tota, § 55, 3, f.

§ 14. iter, right of way: this was usually reserved in case of the
sale of any estate on which was a family burial-place: by the pro-
scription this right was cut off. — bonorum emptio, the technical
term denoting *purchase at public sale.* — flagitiosa, flagrant (cf. a
"burning shame"), because of the fictitious proscription. — furta
refers to clam; rapinae to palam, above.

§ 15. decurionum: these were members of the municipal senate,
or council. — decem primi: these were a committee of ten, in
whom the administration was vested. — T. Roscius Capito (see § 16)
was one of this committee: — qui vir, what sort of man. — ut...
velit, that he will consent. — decretum: the decree was here read
to the court, but is not given in the published speech. — id quod,
as (§ 48, 3, e). — nobilis, acc. plur. (§ 16, 2, b). — ab eis qui pe-
terent (§ 64, 1), to beg of them: eis refers to the decem primi.
ne ... adirent, obj. of pesterent. — veulent, § 66, 1, a.

§ 16. antiqui, of the old stamp. — ex sua natura, after their
own nature. — ceteros, subj. of esse understood, depending on fin-
gerent, imagined. — confirmaret, assured them. — apprommitteret,
promised in addition.

7. re inorata, without having pleaded their case: the primary
meaning of oro implies not entreaty, but statement or argument
(cf. orátor). — reverterunt: the transitive force of this verb is
found only in the tenses of the perfect stem; otherwise deponent.
— isti, i. e. Chrysogonus and Capito. — lontius, more slackly. — nihil
agere, do nothing, not even make a show of putting off. — deludere,
make fools of the Americans, i. e. treat them with contempt. — id
quod, etc., as we may easily infer: this point is an inference, not
like the rest an attested fact. — neque, and not, the negative qualifi-
ying posse: and judge that they can no longer, etc. In Latin the
connective attracts the negative.

§ 17. hoc, my client. — cognatorum (co-gnatus), blood-rela-
tions: these were accustomed to hold a consilium, or formal delib-
eration, on important family affairs. — Cæciliam, see § 50. — id
quod, etc., i. e. she showed on this occasion (nunc) the generous
traits all expected in her. — quasi ... causa, as a model. — antiqui
officil, old-fashioned fidelity: officium means the performance of
duties as well as the duties themselves. — domo (§ 55, 3, a),
without the prep., while bonis requires ex. — vivus ... referetur,
brought alive to trial, rather than murdered and put on the pro-
scription-list.

§ 18. consilium ceperunt: this phrase is equivalent to a verb
of determining, and so has the clause ut ... pugnarent for its
object (§ 70, 3, d). — nomen deferrent, i. e. lay a formal charge.
— de parrio., § 50, 4, b. R. — veterem, old in the trade: the reign
of terror through which Rome had just passed had given ample
practice. — suspicio, ground of suspicion. — crimen, the charge
itself. — poterant: indic. as being Cicero’s reason, not theirs. — tempore: partly the character of the time in general; partly the fact that the courts were now first reopened, after their reorganization by Sulla. — loqui: the thought of the conspirators put in ind. disc., the verb being implied in consilium ceperunt. — tam diu, during the long troubles. — eum, any one. — qui primus: this was the first case that came before the Questio inter Sicarios. — adductus esset: for fut. perf. of direct disc. — huius: opposed to the indefinite qui primus. — gratiam, favor or influence, i. e. with Sulla. — fore ut: the more usual form for the fut. infin. pass., which is rare (§ 28, 2, h). — tolleretur, got out of the way: a derivative meaning (praegnans) from the original sense of lift. —nullus: for the abl. of nemo, which is never used. — atque adeo, or rather. — quem: the antecedent is eum, below. — jugulandum (§ 73, 5, c), i. e. for judicial murder.

§ 19. unde, where: i. e. the point whence the argument proceeds. — potissimum (superl. of potius, as if rathest), soonest, or rather than anywhere else. — summam: i. e. of rendering a verdict. — fidem: i. e. the protection required by good faith. — pater, etc.: these nominatives are in no grammatical construction, but are simply a list of crimes (see § 72, 3, a). — infesta, assailed. — nefariis, abl. of instr. after cumulant: but translate, upon these they heap up other infamies. — hujusce (emphatic instead of ejus, the regular pronoun of reference, § 20, 2, d), his own. — condicionem, terms (or dilemma): as containing the idea of a bargain, it is followed by ut (§ 70, 3, d). — services: this word is used by early writers only in the plural. — insutos in culeum: the old punishment of parricide was to be “beaten with blood-red rods, then sewed into a sack, with a dog, a cock, a viper, and an ape, and thrown into the deep sea” (see below, § 29). — patronos: Cicero’s modesty will not allow him to call himself a patronus (cf. note on § 4). — qui dicit, purpose-clause (§ 64, 1): the antecedent is the subj. of deest, below.

§ 20. quantum, so far as (adverbial acc.). — crimen, the criminal charge: with the other wrongs of the accused the advocate has nothing to do. — confessionem, the getting up. — quidigitur est? how then? The whole task implied in oportere is too large to be attempted in a single plea. He has only to argue the case on the charge: the jury must see that reckless audacity and coercion shall have no effect with them. — primo quoque tempore, the very first opportunity since the violence and disorder of the civil war.

§ 21. quo uno maleficio, that in this one crime. — volu, by a look, showing lack of filial affection (pietas).

9. si... cogerant, would compel it if the case should require (see § 59, 4, f): a future protasis, relative to the time of cogerant,
which is past. — *auditum sit*, fut. cond. completed (*§ 59, 4, c*). — *tu* (emphatic), *you*, a professional prosecutor. — *censes*: the word used to express deliberate judgment, after discussion, etc. — *mores*, character, as resulting from habits of life; *naturam*, natural disposition. — *tu*, emphatic, as opposed to accusers generally. — *ne...causa*, i. e. not even as a plausible charge.

*§ 22.* *qui homo? what sort of man?* — *adulescentulus*, some young fellow: the diminutive emphasizes the contrast in age. — *nequam*, agreeing with *hominibus*. — *major*, anomalous for the more usual *plus* or *amplius* (*§ 54, 5, c*). — *videlicet*, no doubt (ironical), Eng. *vix*. — *de luxuria*, abl. of charge (*§ 50, 4, b, R*.*). — *objectit*: the accuser made it a point in his charge, that the accused was of a gloomy and morose temper, shunning all society. — *officio*, discharge of duty.

*§ 23.* *justam*, sufficient or well-grounded. — *illud*, this, in appos. with the clause immediately following, i. e. the point previously treated; *hoc*, the new point now introduced. — *eodem*, to the same point as that treated in the preceding section.

10. *qui odisset*, in that he hated (according to their argument). — *constantissimus*, most consistent. — *illud* refers to *causam fuisse*. — *jam*, by this time.

*§ 24.* *jam prope cotidiana*, i. e. which have come to be, etc. — *convenisse...videntur*, seem to have converged upon one spot and to agree together: the phrase *inter se* may express any sort of reciprocal relation. — *ingenio*, power.

*§ 25.* *expressa vestigia*, distinct footprints. — *ratione*, contrivance.

*§ 26.* *Tarracinensem*, of Tarracina (Anxur), a colony on the Latian coast, 40 miles from Rome. — *non obscurum*, respectable.

11. *servus*: here used as an adjective (cf. *§ 47, 3, c*). — *id ætatis*, i. e. too old for the sound sleep of childhood. — *propior*, near by. — *autem*, on the other hand. — *potissimum*, of all others.

*§ 27.* *non modo...possunt*, not only cannot, etc. (*§ 41, 2, c*): the verb is sufficiently negated by *ne*.

*§ 28.* *singulare*, special. — *rerum natura*, the universe, represented by air (*calum*), fire (*solem*), water, and earth, the elements "from which all things are said to be produced."

*§ 29.* *obicere*, cast forth to. — *ne bestiis...uteremur*, lest we should find the very beasts more savage (immanioribus, in pred. appos.). — *sic nudos*, naked as they were. — *ipsum*, even that. — *violata*, defiled. — *excripi*: sea-water, as well as running water, was regarded as having a purifying quality, — a notion prevailing in various religions, and found in the forms of ablation, baptism, and the like. — *tam...volgare*, so cheap or so common. — *et enim*: i. e. it needs no argument to show, etc.
Notes.

12. ejectis, to waifs. — Ita, in such a way.

§ 30. crimen, accusation. — talibus viris, “to this intelligent jury.” — causam, motive. — emptores, i. e. men having the strongest interest in his conviction, with Chrysogonus himself as their presiding officer. — judicio, the trial. — venissese, you should have come (§ 57, 3, d). — utrum ... an, i. e. which is it — the nature of the question or the character of the court [another compliment to the jury] that you do not see? — admittere, commit.

§ 31. esto, well then (to quit that point). — causam proferre, to allege a motive. — vicisse debeo, I ought to be already victorious, i. e. by my past argument: ought to have conquered is vincere debui (§ 58, 11, a). — in alia causa, in another case, an implied condition to concederem. — quae re, why; quo modo, how. — ita, sic, i. e. I will deal with you on these terms. — meo loco, in my place, i. e. in the time allotted to the defence: this was determined for each party by the prætor.

§ 32. ipsum, sc. percussisse. — per alios, for abl. of means, when living persons are intended (§ 54, 4, β). — indidemne Am., from America itself? — hosce sicarios, these cut-throats of ours. — convenit, i. e. to bargain for the murder. — unde, i. e. where did he get the money?

13. caput, fountain-head. — tibi, dat. for poss. (§ 51, 7, a). — veniat, with facito (fac) for simple imperat. (§ 70, 3, f, R.). The fut. form of the imperat. is used, because it is a point for the accuser to reflect upon (§ 57, 7, c). — ferum atque agrestem, rude and clownish (not simply countrified). — in oppido constitisse, to have stayed in any town: oppidum is distinguished both from urbs, the great city, and vicus, a country village, or mere hamlet: it would be a place of some society and cultivation.

§ 33. poterat, might, i. e. if I chose to use it (§ 60, 2, c). — victuarido, dry or meagre way of life. — inculta, uncouth. — possis, potential subj. (§ 60, 2, a). — erumpant, burst forth: a strong word on account of audacia, reckless daring. — autem, on the other hand. — agrestem, boorish. — parsimonie, thrift (in a good sense).

§ 34. missa facio, I let that pass: such phrases are often used colloquially or with emphasis, for the simple verb (§ 72, 3, c). — per quos: these words are the interrogative expression with which the translation of the clause should begin; is homo is put first for emphasis. — suspitiose, i. e. so as to look suspicious. — suspicio, culpam: i. e. in so clear a case I will not ask proof of guilt; any suspicious circumstance will be enough. — credo, I suppose: ironical, as usual when thus used parenthetically. — causa dicitur, lit. the case is argued by the defendant: i. e. a charge is brought.

§ 35. quod [innocenti] relates to id, having in appos. the clause ut ... polliceatur. — quaestionem, question in the technical
sense, i.e. examination by torture, the regular legal way of examining slaves. In a few special classes of cases, the slaves of the accused could be tortured in order to get evidence against their master (see Milo, ch. 22). The master might, however, of his own accord, offer them for torture (polliceri): in this case Roscius had lost his slaves, and so was deprived of this privilege.— unus puer, modified by non. The position makes the negative very emphatic.— minister, i.e. to wait upon him.

14. familia: this word, in its primary meaning, properly embraced the entire body of free persons, clients and slaves, under the patriarchal rule of the paterfamilias. In time, the meaning was divided, applying either (1) to a group of kinsfolk having a common name, as Metellus, Scipio, Cicero, Caesar; (2) to a body (or gang) of slaves. The latter is the meaning here.— Scipio, Metelle, these were, probably, P. Scipio Nasica, father of Metellus Scipio (a leader on Pompey's side in the civil war), and his cousin, Q. Metellus Nepos, brother of Cæcilia (§ 50), and father of the Celer and Nepos referred to in the orations against Catiline. — advocatias, summoned (as friends of the accused); agentibus, taking active part. The demand seems to have been formal, and these friends were present to attest it.— aliquotiens, several times. — meministisne, don't you remember?— T. Roscium, i.e. Magnus.— sectantur, wait on.

§ 36. aureum: the Greek name Chrysogonus means gold-born. — latuit: because his was the only name that appeared.— alii quoque, i.e. other purchasers of confiscated estates. — sectorum: these were the purchasers of confiscated property in the lump, who afterwards divided it (seco) to sell again in detail. The word also means both cut-throat and cut-purse, and was perhaps used here to imply, by the double meaning, that these men connived at the death of the proscribed.

§ 37. venierunt, were sold (§ 35, 2, b). — tantus homo, such a great person: a hint that more important men than he had suffered. In fact, all the really eminent victims of the civil war had perished before the proscription.— Valeria: the law by which Sulla was made perpetual dictator and invested with absolute power of life and death (B. c. 82): it was proposed by L. Valerius Flaccus as interrex. Laws were designated by the gentile name of their proposer: all laws, for example, carried by L. Cornelius Sulla were known as Leges Cornelica.— Cornelia: this appears to have been enacted some time after the lex Valeria, in order to regulate the details of the proscription. Cicero's ignorance of the law is no doubt affected.— novi, I know the thing or person; scio, I know the fact: I am not acquainted with the law, and do not know which it is.
Notes.

15. proscripti sunt: the indic. must mean those already proscribed when the law was passed. Future cases would be referred to by the subj. or fut. perf. (see Verr. ii. ch. 41, 42). — adversariorum præsidii, within the enemies' lines, i.e. in arms. — bona, the property. — veteres, those of the regular code: novas, those of the Sullan revolution.

§ 38. in eum, i.e. Sulla. Here it is necessary for the orator to proceed with great caution: even if not himself present, Sulla would watch jealously the first case before his own criminal court. — ab initio, from the beginning of this trial; omni tempore, in his whole career. — ut . . . passus non sit, clauses in appos. with haec omnia: for the change of tense, see § 58, 5, d. — apud adversarios, in the enemies' ranks = in præsidii, above. — postea: the passage referred to appears to have been lost out of the oration, probably in the gap in ch. 45. The scholiast represents Chrysogonus as saying that he had used the property in building a villa at Veii.

§ 39. Kal. Junias, acc. in the same constr. as diem. — aliquot post mensias, see introd. — tabulas, the records of confiscated property, which belonged to the State. — nulla, not at all (§ 47, 6). — redierunt = relata sunt. — nebulone, knave. — facetius, more neatly: in the case supposed, the proscription would be a mere trick, and the property would be taken without even the forms of law. — corruptæ, tampered with. — ante tempus, prematurely. — redivivam curen, treat a sore finger (a proverbial expression): i.e. in a case of life and death, I deal only with some trifling ailment. — non rationem ducit, he does not take account (a mercantile phrase).

§ 40. partim pro me, partly in my own name. To avoid entangling the case of his client with politics, Cicero makes himself responsible for all that might have a political bearing: he was a known partisan of the nobility, and could afford to speak freely.

16. ad omnis pertinere, concerns all. — sensu ac dolore, feeling and pain, i.e. painful feeling. The adjective idea is enforced by dwelling on it in the form of another noun (hendiadys). — jam, with the fut., presently.

§ 41. ego, opp. to Roscio. — diem, fem. (§ 13, 2, n.). — præ-finita, fixed in advance, as the limit (finio). — tantulo, so little. — patronum, i.e. Sulla. (See note on libertus, § 12.) — conferre, throw the responsibility. — imprudente, without the knowledge of. — egerit, will effect; fut. perf. for fut. (§ 58, 7, r.).

§ 42. placet, do I like? i.e. do I think it right? — imprudentia, want of foresight. — etenim si, etc. The comparison is strained, and rather offensive to good taste; but it is curious as showing the ancient notions as to the origin of evil, and at the same time Sulla's relation to the State as "lord protector." (Compare
the oration for Marcellus.) — pernicii for pernicii (§ 13, 3). — vi
ipsa rerum, by the very violence of the elements. — possit, adepta
sit, inform: I ind. disc., as the thought of the person surprised. — si
. . . sit, clause with mirum (§ 70, 5, r.).

17. § 43. tametsi, and yet. — meo jure, with perfect right (as
belonging to that party): jure alone would mean justly; meo
limits it to the speaker's own case. The passage that follows is in-
teresting, as showing the way in which Cicero regarded the general
issues of the civil war, and the excesses of the victorious party.
— pro mea, etc., to the extent of my poor and feeble ability. — ut
componeretur, that reconciliation should be made: a clause of
result in appos. with id (§ 70, 4). — qui vicerrunt, who did (in
fact) conquer: the subj. here would imply, whatever party might
conquer. — humilitatem, not merely low rank, but meanness and
vulgarity; dignitate, personal worth, from birth and services; am-
plitudine, rank or position. With all his arrogance, blood-thirsti-
ness, and narrow conservatism, Sulla was, after all, the representa-
tive of orderly government against anarchy and mob-law. — re-
mineretur, would be preserved (fut. cond. § 59, 4, f), the prot. being quibus
incolubibus. — quae, i.e. the reinstating of the nobility. — gra-
dum, rank.

§ 44. quod . . . in eos, that those have been punished (a mild
expression for proscription). — non debeo, I have no right. —

in eo studio partium, in favor of that party: studium is the
regular word for partisan favor. — id actum est, this was the object:
the clause ut . . . facerent is in appos. with id. — postremi, the
lowest in class or character. — non modo: understand non with
prohibere.

§ 45. male: to speak ill is to utter abuse or calumny. — causam
communicare, make common cause.

18. equestre, referring to the struggle for the judicia (§ 11),
and the extensive sympathy of the equites with the party of Marius.
Compare note to Verr. § 1. — servi: Chrysogonus was a freedman
of Sulla. — dominationem, mastery or tyranny. — versabatur,
displayed itself. — quam viam munire, whither it is paving a
way: road-building, both literally and figuratively among the
Romans, was spoken of by the engineering term munire. — ad
fidem: i.e. after getting possession of the political power, these low-
born fellows were aiming at the courts, the one security of public
faith and good government. — jusjurandum: the jurors were
under oath to give a righteous judgment. — hicine, § 20, 1, N. —
neque . . . possit: this is exactly what good men said in New York
ten years ago. — verear: subj. because it is not a real reason, but
one introduced only to be contradicted (§ 66, 1, d, r.).

§ 46. exspectata, so long waited for. — servoli, dim. of con-
Notes.

tempt. — *bona, estates; fortunas (more generally), wealth.* — id actum est, this was the object. — *senserim, sided with them:* this verb, with its noun *sententia,* often refers to political opinions.

— *inermis:* i. e. had he taken up arms, his regret would have been deeper. — *cuique, to every man* in proportion as he is, etc. (§ 17, 5, c). — *probus novit:* note the strong sarcasm. — *rationem, relations:* so that what touches one touches the other. — *læditur,* etc., *is injured* being separated, etc. Mommsen puts *cum* before *læditur,* in which case it means, “by owning himself injured he cuts himself off,” etc.

§ 47. mea, emphatic: he will avoid prejudice to his client, by assuming the responsibility of these words. — *istorum, those men’s.* — *morum, the customs of business.* — *more, in the regular way.* — *jure gentium:* the “law common to all nations” (Maine), as opposed to *jus civile,* or law of the state. It is thus used as nearly equivalent to *natural right.*

19. a *nobis,* i. e. once clear of guilt, and acquitted of a shocking crime, he will leave you unmolested. — rogat: a feigned appeal to his persecutors. — *in suam rem:* in a former passage, allusion is made to a charge that Roscius had fraudulently kept back part of his father's property. — *concessit,* etc., *has given up* [the immovable property], *counted and weighed* [the rest]; by particularizing and dwelling upon different kinds of property, a stronger impression is produced. — *anulum,* probably the gold ring indicating his rank as an *eques.* — *neque ... exceptit,* and has reserved nothing else besides his naked self.

§ 48. quod, quia, § 63, 1. — *hominem,* i. e. the owner. — *præter ceteros:* i. e. even if other purchasers had to refund, he the favorite had no cause to fear. — *patria, of their fathers.* — *ne quando:* i. e. some time when there comes a political reaction.

§ 49. facis *injuriam,* i. e. *you act unreasonably.* — *majorem spem:* Cicero artfully suggests that Chrysogonus has no confidence that Sulla’s constitution will last; hence he wishes to remove a dangerous claimant in case of another overturn. — *monumenti,* memorial, or keepsake.

20. *cruenta* (pred.): the thought is strengthened by the use of words only appropriate to an actual killing and stripping of the dead.

§ 50. *rem tuam,* your interests. — *quasi nescias,* as if you did not know (§ 61, 1). — *spectatissima,* most estimable: the friends of Roscius are purposely exalted, in order to influence the Court.*

* Cecilia is called in § 17 daughter of Nepos; but the the statement here is probably correct. Q. Cecilius Metellus Balarius was one of the four sons of Metellus Macedonicus — two of consular rank, the third consul, and the fourth candidate for the consulship — who accompanied the bier of their distinguished father (b. c. 115). The description of father, uncles, and brother applies, therefore, perfectly in this case; but Nepos, son of Balarius and (as we assume) the *ornatissimum fratrem* referred to, had no brothers that
§ 46-55. Defence of Roscius.

—cum haberet, though she had. — cum esset, while she was, etc. — femina, mulier: observe the distinction between the words, the latter being always used when speaking of the tenderness of the feminine nature. — quanto: the usual correlative is supplied by non minora, full as great.

§ 51. quod, the fact that. — pro hostipio, in accordance with his father's friendly relations and personal influence (see above, § 1). — pro eo quod, in view of the fact that. — sin ... vindicarent, i. e. if all were disposed to right this wrong: hinting that the accusers would be in danger of violence. — summa res publica, i. e. the existence of the state itself. — hæo, these outrages. — nunc, opposed to the preceding suppositions. — sane, certainly.

§ 52. quæ domi: i. e. the protection of Roscius, supply of money, providing of witnesses, etc. — fori ... rationem, the business of forum and court, i. e. the preliminaries of the trial. — ut videatis, i. e. Messala* is here in court. — sectorum, see note to § 36. — assiduitate, constant presence, probably at the preliminary proceedings. — hac nobilitate, i. e. such nobles as he. — hæo res, the present state of things was brought about. — ei nobiles, i. e. the nobles expelled by Marius and Cinna.

21. § 53. pròpria, his own; communis, common to all. — pristina, as of the olden time. — versata est, has prevailed. — id quod, etc., which surely can never be. — actum est, all is over.

§ 54. condemnaretis: for the tense, see § 58, 10, a; so potuissent, have not been able. — nimium, doubtless. — consilium publicum: the administration of justice, along with all other affairs of the state originally vested in the kings, was transferred to the people in their sovereign capacity, and exercised in the comitia. Hence the bodies to which it was afterwards delegated were consilia, — a term which includes (as here) the body of jurors.

§ 55. an vero, or can it be true that, etc. In this use of an, the first question is omitted (§ 71, 2, b), and the second is often a reducito ad absurdum, as here. The full thought is, Do you not agree with me, or can it really (vero) be, etc. — ait, is at stake: ali- quid agere is to aim at something. — ut ... tollantur, be got rid of, in one way or another. — periculo, often used of defendants.

22. sectorem ... accusatorem, i. e. T. Roscius Magnus, at once purchaser, enemy, cut-throat, and accuser. — probatum suis, vouched for by his friends.

are known, and on the other hand had two sons, — neither of whom, however, was old enough at this time to deserve this epithet. Both were active in the time of Catiline's conspiracy. Celer was consul b. c. 60, the younger Nepos in 57. Caecilia, daughter of Balari- cus, married App. Claudius, and was mother of Cicero's bitter enemy Clodius.

* This is supposed to have been the one who was consul b. c. 53 (not the consul of 61). In this case he was father of the distinguished orator and soldier of the reign of Augustus. As appears from this passage, he was too young to undertake the case himself.
Notes.

§ 56. suscipere noluit: the law by which the proscriptions were instituted was passed by the people, without the intervention of the Senate. — more majorum, i.e. that every capital judgment was subject to an appeal to the people in the comitia centuriata.


—

IMPEACHMENT OF VERRES.

Argument.

CHAP 1. The jurors are congratulated on the opportunity of restoring the good name of the senatorial courts: character of the defendant. — 2, 3. Attempts of Verres to avoid the trial: he places all his hope in bribery. — 4, 5. His crimes in administration, of pillage, extortion, and cruelty, open and flagrant. — 6. His attempt to contract in advance for acquittal. — 7, 8. His hopes in the election of Hortensius as consul and Metellus as praetor. — 9, 10 Cicero's anxiety. The great effort to have the case tried before Metellus, which was to be effected by delaying the trial till after the holidays. — 11, 12. Cicero proposes to display his case at once, without argument, and so prevent its being laid over: he will meet the domineering Hortensius on that issue. — 13-15. The senatorial compared with the equestrian courts; their corruption and ill repute. Loss of confidence in Roman justice; ruin and misery of the provinces. — 16. The court itself on trial: acquittal can have but one meaning. — 17. Appeal to Glabrio to prevent bribery. — 18. The Sicilians must not be baffled. Way in which Cicero proposes to conduct the prosecution: he will introduce witnesses at once, without previous argument. List of the charges, including the plunder of 4,000,000 sesterces from the Sicilians.

PAGE

25. § 1. erat optandum (§ 60, 2, c, not necessarily implying a protasis contrary to fact), what was chiefly to be wished. — quod ... pertinebat, the one thing which most tended (or, was of chief importance). — invidiam infamiamque, odium and dishonor, from the partisan use of the courts by the Senators (see Rosc. Am. § 3). These points are here emphasized, as being of quite equal importance with the conviction or acquittal of Verres. In fact, the trial turns more on the character of the court than on the guilt of the accused, which was notorious. — vestri ordinis, i.e. the senatorial, from which the judices were at this time taken. (See note on judices, R. A. § 1.) The word Ordo was used loosely to describe any recognized body of citizens — as freedmen, publicans, clerks; it was more especially used of the two powerful classes of the Roman Aristocracy, the Senatorial and the Equestrian, which struggled with each other for power during the last century of the Republic.
§ 1.

Impeachment of Verres.

The Roman Aristocracy.

Senatorial Order. — Strictly speaking the Ordo Senatorius was only another name for the Senate, the members of which, by virtue of their lieutenancy of office, and their apris de corps, formed a united body or "order" in the state. The list of senators, amounting in general to about 300, was formerly made up by the Censors from among those who had held high magistracies: after the time of Sulla every person who held the questorship—the first grade of the regular magistracy (see note § 11)—was entitled to a seat in the Senate. The number therefore fluctuated, running up to five or six hundred. The elections were so largely under the control of the Senate and the magistrates, that it was very hard for any person not belonging to the nobility (see note on § 13) to be chosen to any office: when any such person, novus homo, entered the Senate, — such as Cato the Censor, Marius and Cicero,—he belonged of course to the Senatorial order, although he was not a noble. Such cases, however, were so rare, that it may be laid down as a general truth, that the Senatorial order and the Nobility were identical, and "new men" became necessarily identified with the class to which their posterity would belong, rather than from which they came. This double relation of Cicero,—a member of the Senate, but sprung from the Equestrian order—goes a great way to explain what is inconsistent and vacillating in his political career.

Equestrian Order. — The title Equites was properly applied to the members of the eighteen centuries equium equo publico; to whom a horse was assigned by the state, together with a certain sum of money yearly for its support. Those who served equo publico must have a fortune of 400,000 sesterces (§16,000), and the horses were assigned by the censors, as a rule, to the young men of senatorial families. The centuriarum equitum were therefore composed of young nobemen, [see "Celsi Ramesi," Hor. A. P. v 342]. When they entered the Senate, they were (in the later years of the republic) obliged to give up the public horse; on becoming senators therefore they voted in the centuries of the first class, not with the Equites (see note on Assemblies, § 18). This aristocratic body had, however, long before this period, ceased to serve in the field; they formed a parade corps (somewhat like the Royal Guards in England), from which active officers of the legions, tribuni, were taken. When the Roman equites ceased to serve as cavalry, troops of horse were demanded of the allies; and in the time of Caesar we find that the Roman legion consisted exclusively of infantry, the cavalry being made up of auxiliaries.

During the time that the equites equo publico still served in the field as cavalry, another body grew up by their side, of equites equo privato, that is, persons of the equestrian censum, who had a property of 400,000 sesterces, who had not received a horse from the state, but who volunteered with horses of their own. This body consisted mainly of young men of wealth, who did not belong to noble (that is, senatorial) families. No very distinct line was, however, drawn between the two classes, until the Lex Judician of Caius Gracchus (a. c. 133), which prescribed that the judices should no longer be taken from the senators, but from those who possessed equestrian censum, and at the same time were not members of the Senate (see note on judices, R. A § 1). This law did not formally exclude nobles who were not members of the Senate: but the entire body of nobility was so far identified in spirit and interest with this body, that an antagonism immediately grew up between them and this new judicial class. A principal cause of the antagonism was that members of the Senate were prohibited from being engaged in any trade or business; while, as has been shown above, the Senate, by its control over the elections, virtually filled its own vacancies, of course from the ranks of the nobility.

Since rich men of non-senatorial families were thus excluded from a political career, while Senators were excluded from a business life, there were formed during the last century of the republic two powerful aristocracies,—the nobles, or Senatorial order, a wealthy governing aristocracy of rank, and the Equestrian order, an aristocracy of wealth, the counterpart of the moneymaking aristocracy of our day. The name Ordo Equestrius was derived from the fact of its members possessing the equestrian censum; that is, that amount of property which would have entitled them to a public horse. From the ranks of the nobility were taken the oppressive provincial governors; the equestrian order furnished the publicani, the equally oppressive tax-gatherers. It is easy to see, therefore, that neither the law of Gracchus, which placed the Court of Reipublicae in the exclusive power of the Equestrian order, nor that of Sulla, which gave it to the Senators exclusively, was calculated to protect the provincials against extortion.
The equestrian order, *ordo equestris*, is therefore not merely distinct from the *centuriae equitum*, but strongly contrasted with them. The one is the wealthy middle class, the other the young nobility. The term *equites* is sometimes applied to both, although the strictly correct term for the members of the equestrian order was *judices*.

consilio, foresight.—datum, oblatum, refer respectively to *optandum* and *pertinebat*.—summo, most critical: the year of the consulship of Pompey and Crassus.—inveteravit (emphatic position), there has come to be deeply rooted.—opinio, notion (not so strong as *opinion*, which is *sententia*).—neminem, more emphatic than *nullum*, and often so used, especially by early writers.

§ 2. *contionibus et legibus*, harangues and bills (proposed laws). The proposition of the law which took the exclusive control of the courts from the Senators was even now pending, and it was promulgated before the case was decided.

actor, complainant, i. e. agent or attorney for conducting the suit in personal processes (*in personam*).—*ordinis*, the body, i. e. the Senate, from which the *judices* were at this time taken. The right of *judicium* was soon after restored to the *equites*.—communi, i. e. so far as it affected the whole state.—reconciliare, etc., win back the lost repute.—*depeculatorem*, etc.: for a more complete statement of these charges, see ch. iv. and v.—*juris urbani*, i. e. as *praetor urbanus*.—labem, pest.

§ 3. *vos*, opposed to *ego*, below.—*religiose*, according to your oath.—*judicaveritis*, fut. perf. (§ 59, 4, c).—*religionem veritatemque*; here, feeling of obligation and regard for the truth.—*judicium*, etc., i. e. the fault will be with the court, not with the prosecutors.—*equidem*, i. e. for my own part.—*quas partim*, some of which (*partim* is properly adv. acc. § 41, 1, h).—*devitarem*, subj. as part of concession (§ 66, 2).

26. neque ... neque, following *numquam*, do not destroy the negative, but are more emphatic than *aut ... aut*.

§ 4. *istius*, constantly used of an opponent.—*Glabrioni*, the *praetor* presiding.—*ordini ... senatorio*, i. e. *the senatorial order*, now, the very name of senator.—*dictat*, constantly repeats (§ 36, b).—*esse metuendum* (for *erat met*. in dir. disc., § 58, 11, b), i. e. those would have to fear if the case were theirs, but he, etc.—*quod*, i. e. only what.—*pecunia* belongs to both clauses, as is indicated by their parallelism.

§ 5. *esse*, imp. in prot. of a *continued* condition lasting till now.—*sefellisset*, he would have foiled us. —*cadit*: pres. of time lasting till now (§ 58, 2, a).—*corruptendi judicii*, of bribing the court.—*tempus ... o=ffereret*, he hit an unfavorable time; because popular sentiment was so roused and exasperated in regard to the corruption of the courts.

§ 6. *invenit qui*, he found some one who: for the circumstances,
see introd. The fictitious case was not brought against Verres. — Brundisium, Brindisi, the port whence the greater part of Italian travel, now as then, embarks for the East. — obli, went throughout. — populorum, communities. The political system of the ancients was composed of an indefinite number of petty communities, all possessing a certain degree of independence. (See the beginning of note on municeps, R. A. § 5). — qui ... obsideret, to block my opportunity.

§ 7. nunc: i. e. now that his former scheme has failed.

27. socios, allies: citizens of communities which, although embraced within the boundaries of Roman provinces (see note § 11), had nevertheless, for special reasons, been allowed to retain a nominal independence, with their own laws and magistrates, — cives, citizens, travelling or doing business in the provinces, or provincials who had received the citizenship.

auctoritates, documents, i. e. credentials, or (more probably) official testimony relating to the acts of Verres.

§ 8. bonis: here, as generally in Cicero, used in a partisan sense, the aristocracy. — judicia, courts. — experiatur, in apparent violation of the sequence of tenses: the imperf. would make it refer to the time of getting the money. — tempus: the present scheme of the defence is by corrupt means to stave off the judgment to a more advantageous time (see ch. 6–8). — posset, imperf. referring to the time of the purchase. — criminum vim, the force of the charges. — poterat, indic., the reason being Cicero’s. (The whole passage is an instructive example of the freedom of a living language from its own trammels. Rules are made for the language, not language for the rules.)

§ 9. non modo, not merely. — eloquentia, gratia: even sophistical arguments and personal influence were respectable means of escape, to a criminal who had no case (causa). — profecto, I am sure. — aucuparetur, fish for (lit. set nets for birds). — ut ... fieret, as to have some chosen to be put on trial (see § 6): the Senate itself was insulted, by selecting one of its members to be set up as a man of straw, that Verres might get clear. — hic, i. e. Verres.

— causam diceret, stand trial.

§ 10. quibus rebus, from this (abl. of means with perspiccio). — consilio, “panel,” i. e. the body of jurors. — in rejectione judicavit, decided at the challenging (“throwing out”) of the jury: i. e. on seeing the kind of men challenged by the two sides respectively. The regular number to be challenged was three; but Verres, as senator, was permitted to challenge more. — ea spe: words of this class, used with a demonstrative, allow a clause of result instead of the more regular indir. disc. (compare § 65, 2), as in ut ... constituerat and ut ... arbitraretur, which follow.
Notes.

XX. § 11. *adulescens*, i.e. before he entered public life. — *quaestura, quaestorship*, the first grade of political honor.

The quaestors were at this time twenty in number, two having charge of the treasury and archives in the city, while the others were assigned to the several military commanders and provincial governors, to serve as quartermasters and paymasters. Aspirants for honors were required to serve as quaestors before presenting themselves for the praetorship, which was, again, a requirement for the consulship. The office of curule ædile was regularly held—as by Cicero—between the quaestorship and praetorship. That this was not necessary, however, as is often assumed, is proved by the fact that there were six praetors, but only two curule ædiles. (See Mommsen Röm. Staatsrecht, vol. i. p. 443.)

*Carbonem*: Carbo was the leader of the Marian faction after the death of Marius and Cinna. He was consul B. C. 82, the year of Sulla’s return and victory. Verres was his quaestor, and went over to the enemy with the money-chest, when he saw which side was likely to prevail.—*necessitudo religio*, the quaestor was originally nominated specially by the consul; and the peculiarly close and sacred relation (*necessitudo*) existing between them was known as *pietas*,—a sentiment of filial affection. (See Lange, Röm. Alt. vol. i. p. 633.) The designation by lot (*sors*) was also held to be a token of divine will, and so sacred (*religio*). —*legatio*: the *legatus*, or *aid*, was a member of the general’s staff, and stood in something of the same relation to him as the quaestor. Verres, as *legatus*, served Dolabella much as he had served Carbo: not that either of those infamous commanders deserved better treatment.—*Asia*: the province of this name, the old kingdom of Pergamus, embraced the western part of Asia Minor. The province of Dolabella (B. C. 80–79) was Cilicia. His extortions and those of Verres were in the adjoining regions of Pamphylia, Pisidia, and parts of Asia. The word *totius* is therefore a rhetorical exaggeration.

The term *provincia* was primarily used to designate the special field of operations assigned (by lot, agreement, or designation of the Senate) to a consul or other military commander. When a foreign territory was conquered and reduced to a subjection to Rome, the government of it was assigned to one of the praetors, or the imperium of a consul or praetor was extended (*prorogatum*) for a second year for this purpose. The foreign state thus organized as a Roman dependency was called by the old name *provincia*; and this special use of the word is more familiar in classic writers than its original meaning. Of the states here mentioned, Asia was an organized province, while Cilicia, Pisidia, and Pamphylia were provinces only in the early sense of the word: Cilicia, however, was the regular *provincia*, or special command, of a pro-praetor, whose field of operations was western C. I. c. a (Cilicia Aspera), with the adjoining coast-line of Pamphylia, and mountain region of Pisidia—Cilicia was not formally organized as a province until B. C. 75. As governor of a province in the later sense of the word, the pro-praetor exercised direct rule only over those portions of the country which had been subjugated by Rome, while the geographical limits of his province enclosed also allied and independent communities, *civitates sociæ* and *libera* (see Kuhn, Verisslung des Röm. Reich. vol. ii. p. 14); some of which paid tribute, while others were tribute-free, *immunes*, as well as legally exempt from his authority in matters of administration. Practically, however, even these last were under his almost unlimited control.

*pro quaestore, acting quaestor*: when there was a vacancy in a
§ 10-13.] Impeachment of Verres.

provincial quaestorship, the commander might appoint any person to perform its functions. (Mommsen, R.S. vol. i. p. 187).—

Dolabella was bad enough, but he had to bear the added infamy of Verres' outrageous acts, and after all Verres saved himself by turning against him (oppugnavit), appearing as witness in his trial for extortion.

§ 12. praetura urbana: this is the topic of the first oration of the accusatio.

There were at this time eight praetors, whose office it was to preside over the administration of justice; after the expiration of their year of office, they went as pro-praetores to govern provinces. Verres held the first and most important of the praetorships, that of praetor urbana, who had the charge of civil cases between Roman citizens; the praetor peregrinus had civil cases in which aliens were a party; the other six presided over the Questiones perpetue. The praetor urbana, having charge of all civil cases between citizens, had almost unlimited power of plunder, and this was used by Verres without scruple. His colleague, the praetor peregrinus, filled several books with cases in which he interceded, in order to oblige Verres to administer justice in accordance with his own rules. The functions of the praetor were summed up in these words do (judicem, vindicat), dico (just), addico (rem, etc.).

sedium, etc. The public buildings were under the charge of the aedile, not of the praetor: the cases referred to here were, therefore, not connected with any special official power of Verres, but certain flagrant instances of corruption and extortion arising out of contracts for public buildings in which the praetor had it in his power to interfere for his own advantage.—in jure dicundo; jus dicere (jurisdictio), declaring the law, was the primary function of the praetor; honorum addicio is the adjudging of property to the claimant; condonatio (grant) is the giving it up to the defendant: in the case of Verres both are presumed to be unlawful. —instituta, precedents. The edicts of the praetors made up a body of common law, not absolutely binding, however, for their successors.—posse, virtually a fut. infin.

§ 13. senatus consulta, decrees (or executive orders) of the Senate.

The Senate had originally only advisory powers. It had therefore, strictly speaking, no authority to make laws or to enforce their execution; and its votes were simply consulta, i.e., matters agreed upon, as advisable, while its power was auctoritas. When the Senate came (in the 3rd cent. B.C.) to be the actual governing power in the State, these consulta became ordinances, in which the Senate directed the administration of the whole empire. The organization of a new province, e.g., was not by a law of the people, but by an ordinance of the Senate; and in this ordinance was embodied the entire authority of Rome over the province, except so far as this was prescribed by general laws. This jus legis describes the native institutions of the several communities, so far as they were allowed to retain them: communia jura, the principles of justice recognized by all nations: senatus consulta, the regulations, laid down by the Senate, under which the province was organized and governed.

communia jura, the same as jus gentium, those laws common to all mankind (see note on jus gentium, R.A. § 47). The terms leges, consulta, jura, include the three sources of provincial law.
—tenuerunt, retained. — subterfugit, escaped his notice. — tan-
tum, [only] so much.
ab eo, away from him, i. e. the possessor. — aratorum, tenants
of public lands.

The territory of conquered communities in the provinces was partly given or sold to
individuals or allied states, as private property (ager privatus), paying a tax (vextical) of
a tenth of the products (decumus); partly retained as public domain (ager publicus), which
was let by the censors, generally for a long term of years, sometimes as heritable. These
tenants were called aratores. In Sicily the original proprietors received back their old
estates on these terms, paying tithes, decuma, just as the proprietors of ager publicus did,
from whom therefore they differed only in right of property, not in amount of tax or mode
of payment. (Marquardt, Röm. Art. iii. 2 p 141.) The collection of the tenth, as well as
of other indirect revenues, was farmed out by auction to publicani, of the equestrian order;
these paid a round sum into the treasury, for the chance of squeezing a larger amount in
detail out of the provincias. From these aratores Verres had required a supply of corn,
as he was entitled to do, and then commuted the demand for cash, valuing the corn at five
or six times its market value. (Cæcil. x.)

socili; these were the provincial states which retained inde-
dependent self-government, either by treaty or by special enactment:
to this class belonged Messana and Tauromenium. — cruciati et
necati: a Roman citizen could not legally receive any punishment
touching life or limb, except by judgment of his peers in Rome.
Thus, Jesus was crucified by the Roman governor under the or-
dinary provincial law applying to Jews: while Paul, a Roman
 citizen of the free city Tarsus, appealed to Cæsar, and was sent to
Rome for trial. (See extract from Verr. vi. pp. 51-56). — judicio,
by mock trial.

29. rei facti, accused, (rei from reus). The details of these
charges are given in the five orations of the Accusatio; it would
require too much space to repeat them here. — indicta, unpleaded.
— ejecti, expelled from the country. — optimae, best in themselves;
opportunissime, most valuable in the circumstances. — populi
Romani, obj. gen.

§ 14. regum, the famous kings of Syracuse,— Hiero, Agathocles,
etc. — imperatorum: Marcellus, who conquered Syracuse, and
Scipio Africanus the elder, who had Sicily as his province, and
crossed over from there for the conquest of Carthage. — Deum,
i. e. statue of a god. — commemorare, complem. infin. for subj.
with ne or quominus (§ 57, 8, d).

§ 15. at enim (a supposed objection), but, you may say. — co-
gnoscere, learn; recognoscere, review.

In Chap. vi. the orator returns to the charge of bribery. He has shown at close of
Chap. iii. that Verres had been disappointed in the character of the jury: the two following
chapters show that no favor could be expected from an honest jury in so patent a case. He
now reviews the several schemes of bribery, leading at last to the final plot of staving off
the trial till the next year.

eloquentiam, etc., see note on § 9; gratia and auctoritate

refer to his counsel, Hortensius; potentia, to the noble family of the Metelli.—inania nomina, empty names.

39. nobiles, noble by birth; noti, well known or notorious.

The Roman nobility has been shown (see note § 1) to have been in the main identical with the Senatorial order. It was in point of fact an hereditary rank, although based directly upon the holding of office. Whoever held any curule office—that is, Dictator, Consul, Praetor, Magister Equum, or Curule Aedile—secured to his posterity the jus imaginum; that is, the right to place in the hall and carry at funeral processions a wax mask of this ancestor, as well as of any other deceased members of the family of curule rank. All patricians were, as a matter of course, nobles: the nobility which governed Rome during the last three centuries of the republic was, therefore, composed of the entire patriciate, and those plebeian families, members of which had held curule office. Among patrician families were those of Caesar, Sulla, Scipio, Lepidus: the most eminent of the plebeian nobility were Metellus, Catulus, Lucullus, Crassus, Gracchus.

§ 16. ut, how.—redemptio, a contract with another party for buying up the court.—in condicione, by the terms: until the jury was made up, the bargain could not be absolutely concluded; and when the character of the jury was known, the contractor renounced (renuntiavit) the bargain.—rejectio: after Cicero's careful challenging, the lot had fortunately given a trustworthy jury. —istius limits spem.—istorum, the partisans of Verres.

§ 17. praæclare, well for the cause of justice.—libelli, lists.—color: in a former case, in which Hortensius had been counsel, in order to make sure that the bribed jurors voted as they had agreed, colored ballots were given to them.—sententias: this is the word regularly used for a formal and official expression of opinion in the Senate (vote) or a court of justice (verdict).—cum, whereupon.—ex alacri, from being, etc.—hís diebus paucis, a few days ago: the consular and other elections were held this year towards the end of July.—famae and fortunis, dat. after insidiæ comparantur.—per eosdem homines, the same professional bribers; the redemptor, etc., referred to in § 16.—aperto, etc., when the door to suspicion had once been opened.

§ 18. reducebatur: the successful candidate was escorted home by his friends after the election.—Campo: higher magistrates were elected in the comitia centuriata, which were in form a military organization of the people. As the military command, imperium, could not lawfully be exercised in the city (except for the purpose of celebrating a triumph), these comitia met in the Campus Martius, or military exercise-ground, north of the city.

There were at this time two principal Assemblies, both of them having as their basis the thirty-five local tribes into which the whole people were divided for administrative purposes. 1. The Comitia Centuriata, or great comitia, which was established at the foundation of the republic upon the basis of the military organization of Servius Tullius. At a later period it was reorganized upon the basis of the tribes; and, although there is no precise statement as to either the time or the manner of this reorganization, there is little doubt as to either. It must have been between the First and Second Punic Wars, and in the manner here described. The old division of the people into five classes, according to wealth, was retained:
for each tribe there were now formed two centuries of each class,—one of seniores, one of juniores,—making in all 350 centuries. To these were added 18 centuries of equites (the young men of senatorial families, see note § 1), guilds of smiths, carpenters, horn-blowers and trumpeters, and a century of freedmen and capite censi (those who had no property); 373 in all. Each centur, had one vote, determined by the majority of its voters. These comitia were regularly presided over by the consuls; they elected all the higher magistrates, and had full power of making laws, as well as judicial power in capital cases. So far as this had not been transferred to the Quaestiones Perpetuae. Legislation had, however, practically passed into the hands of the Comitia Tributa. 2. These were simply the assemblies of the thirty-five tribes, each tribe having one vote. They were sometimes presided over by the praetor; but of far more importance was the tribal assembly of the plebeians exclusively, presided over by the Tribune of the People. Strictly speaking, this was not comitia, inasmuch as it was not composed of the whole people, populus,—the patricians being excluded from it. But the patricians were now reduced to a few noble families, whose members would not have cared to take part in this democratic assembly even if they had been permitted; and by the Hortensian Law, b. c. 287, acts of this assembly, plebiscita, received the validity of laws. (See Mommsen, Röm. Forschungen, i p. 208.)

Curio: C. Scribonius Curio was one of the leaders of the aristocratic party, always a good friend of Cicero. — honoris causa, see note R. A. § 5. — ratio, consideration.

31. § 19. F. Fabianum, the Fabian Arch, erected b. c. 109 by Q. Fabius Maximus Allobrogicus,—one of the earliest triumphal arches in Rome. — immo vero, no, rather. — renuntio, the word regularly used to announce the result of an election. — de- fertur means a formal announcement by some one person; narrabat, telling of a piece of news. — criminum ratione, the logical relation of the charges. — positam, resting on.

§ 20. ratiocinabantur, reasoned: the imperf. describing a state of mind, and in different persons. — aperte, manifestly. — quod, the fact that. — publica, official, from cities (as auctoritates, above). — existimationem, opinion, i. e. as weighed by their established tests in court. — unus, i. e. Hortensius. — moderationem, control. — quidem (concessive), it is true: this criminal may be rescued, but such a thing will not be allowed to happen again; the judicial power will be given to other hands. — nos, we Senators.

§ 21 hominis amplissimi, i. e. Curio. The congratulations of so respected a man showed the significance of the fact. — cupiebam dissimulare, etc., I was anxious to conceal the fact, etc.

32. sortirentur, allotted. The particular offices (posts) of coordinate magistrates were assigned by lot, for which the regular word is obtingere. — Metello: a brother of Q. Metellus Creticus, consul elect, and of L. Metellus, praetor in Sicily. — factam, offered. — pueros, slaves.

§ 22 sane, you may be sure. — ne haec quidem, not this either. — neque intellegebam: i. e. his confidence in the integrity of

* There were three principal branches of the powerful family of Metelli: 1. that of Metellus Pius, the colleague of Sulla; 2. that of Nepos (second cousin of Pius), whose sister, Cecilia, was the friend of Roscius; 3. that of Creticus, the friend of Verres (of uncertain relation to the others).
Metellus was so great, that he did not even yet see through the tricks of the defence. — _certis, trusty._ — _reperiebam_ : the imperf. denotes a succession of items of information. — _fiscos, wicker baskets_, used for carrying money. The word came to mean _treasure-chest_, or private treasury: and, when the empire was established, it was applied to the emperor's privy-purse. Hence the word _fiscal._ — _Siciliense_, i. e. that extorted in Sicily. — _senatore_, etc. The senator, a man of the same class as Verres, put the money to be used in the elections and trial into the hands of an _eques_, one of the class that had the management of all such financial operations. He retained, however, say (quasi) ten baskets, to be used directly to defeat Cicero's election to the ædileship. — _nomine, on account of._ — _divisores, managers_. The money to be used at elections was put into the hands of _sequestres_ (election agents), who themselves made use of _divisores_ to approach the voters personally. On this occasion, the exigency was so great that Verres himself (_istantum_ called the _divisores_ to his house, without the mediation of _sequestres_.

§ 23. _omnia debere_, was bound to do any thing for me. — _proximis, the last._ — _negasse audere_, said they did not dare. — _fortem, stanch_ (ironical), in allusion to _audere_. — _Romilia_, sc. _tribu_. — _ex optima disciplina_, from the best school (ironical), i. e. that of Verres' father. — _H 8._ (see § 85, 1-3): the defeat of Cicero would, therefore, cost about $25,000, which the purchasing power of money made full twice as valuable then as now.

§ 24. A lively description of the embarrassment in which Cicero was placed at the end of July by the election and the trial, both coming on together. — _agere deterrebar_, I was deterred from doing (§ 57, 8, d.). — _petitioni, canvass._ — _ratio, my policy._

33. § 25. _hoc ipso tempore_, in the midst of all. — _denuntiatum esse_, that a message was sent. This compound implies a peremptory and threatening message. — _primum_ corresponds to _arcessat_, etc., § 27. — _sane liberos, quite free_, i. e. in refusing to come. If he had been consul, instead of merely consul-elect, they would have had to come. — _cursare, run hither and thither._ — _appellare et convenire, accost and greet._

§ 26. _M. Metellum_ (see § 21), the friend of Verres, who had obtained the presidency of the court of _Repetundae_ for the next year. — _eo, this thing_, i. e. postponing the trial. — _praerogativam, indication_. In the _comitia centuriae_, it was determined by lot which century should first cast its vote. The vote of this century, called _praerogativa_ ( _praerogo_ ), was regarded as an omen, and was likely to decide the result. The _praerogativa_ which Q. Metellus gave to Verres, in return for the _praerogativa_ of the comitia, is described in the next section.
§ 27. alter consul: Q. Cæcilius Metellus Creticus (see § 21).

The three brothers, fast friends of Verres, were so situated as to promise the greatest help the next year, when Quintus would be consul, and Marcus praetor, presiding over the court of Reptunda, while Lucius was already pro-praetor in Sicily. Certain of the Sicilians, therefore, complied with the summons of Metellus, although they had disregarded that of Hortensius. The object of Metellus was to induce the Sicilians to withdraw the suit, or at any rate to refrain from appearing as witnesses.

34. § 28. alienissimum, no kin of yours.—dictatit, says incessantly (see next section).—alicui follows videatur.

§ 29. ceteros, etc.: the Metelli seemed born to hold office. The poet Nævius wrote, a hundred and fifty years before:

Fatō Metelli Rōmæ fiunt consules.

To this Cicero alludes in the word fato.—populi existimationi, reputation with the people.—illud, what follows. He here points out the changes in the jury which must follow from changes in the government with the new year.—conlega, colleague of Cicero: i. e. as ædile designatus.—expediat, subj. of charact. (§ 65, 2).—Juniano consilio, the jury of Junius. This was a case four years before, in which wholesale and unblushing bribery had been proved; so that the presiding praetor, Junius, as well as the entire consilium (body of jurors) had been stamped with infamy. Cæsarius, a member of the jury, had been proof against corruption.—ex Kal. Jan., after the New Year; for at that time he would be transferred to another office.

§ 30. Non. Dec. (Dec. 5): on this day the new quæstors entered on their office.—L. Cassius: the family characteristic here stated was proverbial (Cassiani judices).—tribuni militares, at this time legion-commanders.

The legion, consisting of 6,000 men, was commanded by six tribuni, two at a time commanding for a term of two months. (Mommsen, R. S. i p. 79.) The 24 tribunes of the four regular legions were elected in the comitia tributa; the others were deputed by the commanders. After the time of Cæsar, a legatus was appointed over the six tribunes, as chief officer of the legion.

non judicio abunt, will not serve as jurors.—subsortiemur, i. e. we shall draw another to fill his place. This is the regular use of sub in similar compounds: as suffectus, subrogatus, etc.—prope toto: the jury, therefore, apparently consisted of no more than twelve or fifteen.

35. § 31. Nonæ, etc.: it was, therefore, about 3 P.M. of the 5th of August (see § 84).—votivos, in fulfilment of a vow. These games were in celebration of Pompey’s victory over Sertorius.—continuo, directly after.—tum denique, not till then.

The votive games would occupy from Aug. 16 to Sept. 1 (August had at this time only 29 days); Sept. 4 began the Ludi Romani, continuing till the 19th. The intervening days (Sept. 2, 3) were of no account for the trial, so that it could not be resumed before Sept. 20, a suspension of 34 days (prope quadragesinta). The Ludi Victoria (Oct. 27 to Nov. 1)
were established by Sulla in honor of his victory. The Ludi Plebei (Nov. 4 to 17) were established in the time of the decisions of the orders early in the Republic, in imitation of the Ludi Magni or Romani, and were presided over by the plebeian aediles.

perpauci: the month of December was full of festivals. — rem integrum, i.e. from the beginning. The points of the prosecution would have been forgotten, the public interest would have cooled down, and the jury would be almost wholly new. The case must therefore be taken up de novo.

§ 32. nunc, opposed to si diffius essem, above. — jurato, on oath. The judices were on oath; the prætor, not. Metellus might therefore be trusted to vote honestly as juror, but not to preside impartially. — legitimò tempore: he had a right to use twenty days for developing the points of the prosecution.

§ 33. perpetua oratione, a continuous argument, before bringing up the witnesses. This is what we possess in the five speeches of the Accusatio, which, in the usual order of proceeding, would have been delivered before bringing up the witnesses, but which were never delivered at all. — percipi, reaped: the regular term for gathering crops. — potuit, might have been. — publicis, official, i.e. of cities. — tabulis, records; auctoritatis, documents. — res omnii. Here, before stating his plan, Cicero goes off on another digression against Hortensius, which shows clearly one of his principal motives in undertaking the prosecution. — diluendi, refuting (washing off).

36. explicandis, unfolding. — nunc, as it is. — ex tua natura: Hortensius, like M. Metellus, was personally an amiable and honorable man, though pledged to a bad cause. — malitioso, in bad faith. — rationi, scheme, looking to the means; consilio, plan, looking to the end. Cicero contrasts them more than once.

§ 34. binos ludos, i.e. Pompey’s games and the Roman. — comperendinem, adjourn over a day (perendie).

After opening the case (as in the present speech), the usual course was for the prosecutor to present his proofs and arguments in a connected speech, or series of speeches (perpetua oratio), to which the counsel for the defence could answer, and then the witnesses would be brought forward. The case was now really complete; but it was required at this point comperendinare, i.e. adjourn over the second day, in order to make sure that the chain of evidence was complete. For this actio secunda, as it was properly called, a very short time only was necessary. The comperendinatio was therefore a sign that the trial was near its close. Cicero’s determination to bring this about before Pompey’s games—i.e. within ten days—settled the case in his favor; for, as has been shown, the only hope of the defence lay in putting off the trial.

necessarium, unavoidable: id refers to eos velle, etc. — amplum et præclarum, honor and distinction. — periculum, trial (from the same root found in experior). — innocentiae, purity of administration in Sicily: an almost technical word for using with moderation the immense power in the hands of a Roman official in the provinces.
§ 35. potentia, domineering.—regnum judiciorum, lordling it over the courts.—nunó, opposed to the time of videbatur.—hominum, the corrupt Senatorial jurors.—inuere, etc., bent on making themselves hateful and offensive.—hoo, i.e., to break down Hortensius’s control, and the corruption of a few senators.—nervos statis, the sinews of my youth. Cicero was now 36.

§ 36. ordo, the Senate.—odiosum, filled with hate, unrelenting.—magistratu, the aedileship of the coming year.—loco: the Rostra, the elevated place in the Forum adorned with beaks of ships, from which the magistrates addressed the people.

37. secum agere, the technical expression for transacting business in the comitia. The jus agendi cum populo belonged to the curule aediles only in the case here alluded to,—an appeal from a fine de hominibus improbis. (Mommsen, R.S. vol. 1. p. 146. n. 4.)—munus aedilitatis, service of the aedileship.

The munera (services) are generally distinguished from the honoræ (honors). The honoræ were conferred by election, the munera imposed by a magistrate. Strictly speaking, however, as in this case, the term munus included both; the more so, as the aedileship was quite as much a burden as an honor. (Kuhn: Verf. des Röm. Reichs, vol. 1. p. 8.)

The aediles formed a board (collegium) of four magistrates, who had the general superintendence of the poeice of the city, the care of the games, public buildings, etc. Two of these were lower in grade, and were necessarily plebeians; the other two, the curule aediles, possessed also a limited jurisdiction, with power of imposing fines. The aedileship was not a necessary step in a political career, but it was eagerly sought, between the questorship and the praetorship, by ambitious men, for the reason that the superintendence of the public games gave great opportunity for gaining popular favor. A certain sum was appropriated from the public treasury for these games; but an aedile who wished to rise to higher positions, and not to be thought mean, took care to add a good sum from his own pocket.

deponere, deposit with the sequestres (see note § 22); by in-terpretés (go-between) is probably meant the divisaures.—politi-ceri, offer.—abstineant, withhold.

§ 37. imperio et potestato: these words are not contrasted, as implying classes or fields of power; but the idea of imperium (sovereign power) was contained in that of potestas (power in general). All magistrates possessed potestas; only the consul and praetor (of the regular magistrates) the imperium.—com-memorabuntur, talked over; agentur, made ground of action.—certis rebus, well ascertained facts.—inter decem annos, i.e. since Sulla’s Lex Judicaria.

§ 38. quinquaginta. i.e. from the law of Caius Gracchus, B.C. 123, to that of Sulla, B.C. 80.—ne tenuissima quidem suspicio: one of the exaggerations of the advocate.

The condition of the courts at the time spoken of (about B.C. 93) is thus described by Mommsen: “The commision regarding exactions [Court of Reptundae] was convicted from a shield of the provincials into their worst scoure: the most notorious robber escaped with impunity, if he only indulged his fellow-robbers and did not refuse to allow part of the sums exacted to reach the jury; but any attempt to respond to the equitable demands of the provincials for right and justice sufficed for condemnation.” If the courts were really worse in B.C. 70 than they had been in 93, it was simply because the times were worse.
§ 35-44] Impeachment of Verres.

sublata, taken away.—populi Romani, etc., i.e. the power of the people to control the senatorial order. This refers to the suspension of the tribunician power by Sulla (see note § 44).—Q. Calidius, praetor, B.C. 79; condemned for extortion in Spain.

It seems, from an old note, that Calidius, being condemned de repetundis, with bitter irony assailed the bribed jurors on account of the smallness of the bribe, saying that it was not respectable (honestum) to condemn an ex-praetor for so small a sum. The allusion shows that the corruption was notorious and universal.

H. S. triciens (see § 85), 3,000,000 sestertii; = $150,000.—praetorium: an ex-magistrate always preserved the dignity of the office he had held, —as consularis, praetorius, adilicius.—honeste, in a gentlemanly manner.—P. Septimio (Scaevola), condemned B.C. 72; the damages were placed higher than they would have been, because of his connection with the odious consilium Junianum (see § 29). The amount extorted was estimated in a separate process (litis assimatio); and the money taken in bribery was included in the reckoning.

§ 39. peculatus, embesslement, and majestas (sc. minuta), treason (any thing affecting the dignity or the power of the state), were the object of two of the Quaestiones perpetae of Sulla.

The fact came out on these trials. Evidence under Roman law was not confined to the immediate issue, but might bear on other crimes of the accused, as now in France. All the offenders here mentioned were apparently connected with the infamous judicium Junianum. (See Or. pro Cluentio, ch. 30, seq.)

38. sortiente, drawing the jury.—exirent, etc., were drawn for [the case of] a defendant, to condemn him without a hearing.

§ 40. jam vero, and finally (introducing the climax of all).—illam, i.e. the one next described: hoc factum esse, etc.—discoloribus signis, see note on color, § 17.—acturum esse, will attend to.—tandem, tell me.—violatum, etc. (a kind of hendiadys), that like violence has been done.—hominem, i.e. Hortensius; cuius, obj. gen.—secum ... agi, he was doing very well.—quaestum, gains.—in rem suam, into his own pocket.—patronis, see note, R.A. § 4.

§ 41. relc. judicibus (loc. abl.), at the time of challenging.—tolleretur, should be abolished.—victoriam, i.e. in the courts. They can satiate the avarice of any man, but cannot give enough to clear him when guilty.

39. § 42. comparata sunt, were established.

§ 43. loco, point, in the argument.

§ 44. tribuniciam potestatem: the overgrown power of the tribunes of the people had been greatly abridged by Sulla, but restored by a law of Pompey early in this year, B.C. 70.

The Tribuni Plebis (or Plebi), ten in number, were the magistrates of that portion of the people (a state within the state) known as the Plebs. The P'beians at this epoch, however, composed the whole people, with the exception of the few families of the patrician aristocracy (such gentes as the Cornelian, Julian, Æmilian, Claudian). Not being
magistrates of the city or the whole people, but only of a single class, the Tribunes did not possess the imperium, had no real executive power, and were not magistrates in the strict sense of the term. On the other hand they had two very important and wide-reaching powers: 1. Negative, that of interfering, jus intercedendi ("veto"), to arrest almost any legislative or executive act. 2. Positive, to hold the assembly of the plebs, organized by tribes. In this assembly the plebeian magistrates (tribunes and plebeian aediles) were chosen, and laws were passed, plebi scita, which of course were originally binding only upon the plebs, but which, by the Hortensian Law, a c. 287, received the force of legis (see note, p. 17). Fines were likewise imposed by this assembly, and this is the power alluded to in the passage. Sulla had restricted this power of imposing fines, by punishing its abuse. He had further made the legislative power of the plebeian assembly depend upon the initiation of the Senate. But these statutory provisions were abolished by Pompey, the people being that the corruptness of the courts could be remedied by restoring this mischievous power to the tribunes.

vero, in name; re vera, in fact; illam, the tribunician power. —
Catulum: Q. Lutatius Catulus was the best and most eminent man of the aristocracy. — fugit, has escaped. — referente, bringing forward, the technical expression for bringing a matter before the Senate for action.

The prefix re, implying the repetition of an act, describes the original process. In case of proposing a law, it was necessary, first, ferre ad populum, then, referre ad Senatum, for ratification, which ratification could only be refused on religious or constitutional grounds; but, in order to guard against any unfair use of this power, it was established that the ratification should come before the action of the comitia. The order of proceedings was then, to lay the matter, referre, before the Senate, then bring it, ferre, before the people.—Momm. Röm. Forsch. i. p. 245.

rogatus: each Senator in turn was asked his opinion, sententia, by the consul, or other presiding officer. — patres [et] conscriptos (the conjunction is often omitted in such combinations): patres were the patrician members of the Senate; conscripti, the plebeians enrolled in that originally patrician body. — fuisse desideraturos, would have missed (§ 67, 1, c).

§ 45. contionem habuit, made a speech: contio means, strictly, an assembly, for the purpose of discussion merely. — ad urbem, i.e. in the Campus Martius. Pompey was elected in his absence, and while still clothed with the military imperium: he could not therefore enter the city to meet the citizens, but called them to him outside the walls. — ubi, in which. — in eo, at that point.

40. strepitu, confused noise. — clamore, shout. — voluntatem, i.e. what they felt.

§ 46. in speculis, on the look-out. — religione, regard for oath. — tribunicium, i.e. reinstating the tribunes. — unum senatum: there does not seem to be any reproach in this, as if it were only one: rather, one, it is true; but, under the circumstances, that means nothing. — vel tenuissimum, a man of no means.

§ 47. hoc est judicium, i.e. this will be a test. — nihil sit, i.e. there is no disturbing influence.

Cicero was mistaken in the hope here expressed, that an honest verdict in this case might yet prevent a reorganization of the courts. The Aurelian law, passed shortly after
this time, provided that the *judices* should be taken, one-third from the Senators, the rest from the equestrian order; one-half of the equestrians (one-third of the whole) being required to have held the office of *Tribuni Aeviarii*, that is, President of one of the 35 local Tribes. The *tit. e aevarius* was due to the fact that the duties of these officers were largely financial. This regulation remained in force until the dictatorship of Cæsar, b. c. 45, when this third decursa, of *Tribuni Aeviarii*, was abolished.

§ 48. *again, conduct. — res, facts. — manifestas*, a technical word, denoting direct proof, not circumstantial evidence. — *a vobis contendere, urge upon you. — certam, definite. — rationem, plan.* — *consequi, get hold of. — eorum, i.e. the defence.*

§ 49. *voces*, opposed to former juries, which have occasioned the scandal. — *post haec*, etc., since the reorganization of the courts by Sulla. — *utimur, have the benefit of.* — *splendore, personal distinction*, from wealth and exploits; *dignitate, dignity*, from rank and office. — *consilium, body of jurors* ("panel"). — *offensum, slip* (a mild word).

41. § 50. *opto, pray.* Observe the adroit union of compliment and threat in this passage, which at the same time forms the transition to the appeal to the praetor presiding.

§ 51. *is*, referring to the Senate. — *qui sis, what sort of a man you are.* — *reddere, pay back*: he owes life and position to his ancestors. — *legis Acilise;* this (probably b. c. 101) provided that there should be neither *ampliatio* (further hearing) nor *comperedinatio* (see note § 34) in cases of *repetundae*. All earlier laws were superseded by the Cornelian law of Sulla.

§ 52. *summae auctoritates*, strongest influences, especially family traditions. &c. — *nocenti reo*, etc., for the criminal, his great wealth is of more account for a suspicion of guilt, than for any way of safety.

§ 53. *mihi certum est, I am resolved.* — *non committere, to take no step*: *committere* governs the *ut* clause, in the sense of bringing it to pass by mistake or fault. — *nobis* (eth. dat.), *our.*

42. *novo exemplo, an unheard-of manner.* — *lictiores*: each consul was attended by twelve lictors, who had the power of arresting and coercing. The consul elect, of course, had no such attendants, but could only send messages by his slaves. — *eorum*: this word connects the Metelli, &c., with Verres in the original conspiracy. — *jus suum, their [lost] rights.* — *potestatem* (contrasted with *imperium*): a hint that not only their liberties, but their lives, were in peril.

* The elder G’abrio married Mucia, daughter of P. Mucius Scævola, "the founder of scientific jurisprudence in Rome," who was consul b. c. 133, the year of the legislation and death of Tiberius Gracchus, and showed himself not disinclined to a moderate reform, and at any rate opposed to the violent course of the aristocracy on that occasion. He was grandfather of the younger G’abrio. The father-in-law was M. Æmius Scævulus, for many years *princeps senatus*, a man distinguished for dignity and moderation, but not characterized by any very great qualities, and not free from the corruption of the times.
§ 54. oomitorum, etc. The trial came just between the election and the games of Pompey. At the same time censors, for the first time since Sulla's domination, were in office, and were making a registry of property and voters, to which citizens from all parts of Italy were obliged to report. — censendi, of being registered. — vestrum, nostram, and omnium are predicate after esse. — quid agatur depends on the verbal noun scientiam. — omnium, i.e. not the inhabitants of Rome alone.

§ 55. principes: these were the two distinguished brothers, L. and M. Lucullus. — testibus: the case was usually argued first. — ita testis constitutum, etc.: this is the criminum ratio (§ 19). — crimen totum, the impeachment as a whole; crimen (below), the special charge of extortion, stated formally in the next section. — dantur, are offered (see note § 34). — in singulas res, to each point. — illis, the counsel for the defence. — altera actione, i.e. after the comperedinitio: in this sense the speeches of the Accusatio are correctly called Actio Secunda. — hæc, etc., this is all the Accusatio there will be in the first Action.

§ 56. quadreringentiens seestertium (§ 85), 40,000,000 seestertii, = $1,600,000.

43. fuisse (for fuerat, § 59, 3, d), there would have been. — Dixi, I have done: a formal ending, particularly appropriate to so unexpectedly brief a speech.

---

The Plunder of Syracuse.

The passage which follows is from the fourth oration of the Accusatio, the most famous of all, known as the De Signis, for the reason that it treats chiefly of the works of Art stolen by Verres. Cicero has been describing the plundering of many temples and public buildings; and in this passage he recounts in detail the case of one chief city, Syracuse, as a climax.

Syracuse was far the largest and richest of all the Greek cities of Italy and Sicily. It was a colony of Corinth, founded B. C. 734, and in course of time obtained the rule over the whole eastern part of Sicily. Syracuse remained independent, with a considerable territory, after the western part of the island (far the largest part) passed under the power of Rome in the First Punic War; but in the Second Punic War (B. C. 212) it was captured by Marcellus, and ever after was subject to Rome. It was at this time the capital of the province.

§ 1. unum etiam, still one more, connects the incident here related with the one described last. — in medium proferam, publish. — aliquando, at last (implying impatience). — nemo fere, hardly any one. — annalibus, chronicles: there were as yet no regular histories. — hanc, illo, indicate nearness and remoteness of time.
§ 1–4. The Plunder of Syracuse.

(§ 20, 2, a, b). — imperatoris: this title, which properly belonged to every possessor of the military imperium, was by usage assumed by the commander after his first considerable victory. — cohortem, train of courtiers, &c.: the provincial magistrates, representing the Roman imperium, had many of the insignia of royalty. — oonstitutae, well ordered.

This is a brilliant antithesis: nevertheless, the orator exaggerates, as on so many occasions. "Not only did Marcellus stain his military honor by permitting a general pilage of the wealthy mercantile city, in the course of which Archimedes and many other citizens were put to death; but the Roman Senate lent a deaf ear to the complaints which the Syracusans afterwards presented regarding the celebrated general, and neither returned to individuals their property nor restored to the city its freedom." (Mommsen.)

§ 2. locis, i.e. in the other speeches of the Accusatio.— forum: every ancient town had its central market place (forum, or ἀγώνα), an open space, used for trading, public assemblies, and the administration of justice. The same feature exists in European towns to the present day. — clausus fuisse: Marcellus had been obliged to starve out the city. — Cilicum: Cilicia was the chief seat of the organized bands of pirates who ruled the Mediterranean at this time (see oration for Manilian Law). — illis rebus, i.e. the plunder of temples, &c.

44. § 3. maximam: the circuit of its walls was 180 stadia = about 20 miles. — ex omni aditu limits praecola-ro ad spectum, glorious to the sight. (For descriptions of Syracuse, see Cic. de Rep. iii. 31; Livy, xxv. 24.) — in ædi-fications, etc., i.e. enclosed by the buildings of the city. Ancient harbors (as at Athens) were often at a considerable distance. — conjunguntur: Ortygia (the site of the original town) had an independent harbor on each side, connected by a narrow channel. — insula, i.e. Ortygia. — contintetur, is made continuous.

§ 4. quattuor: the heights of Epipolæ, west of the town, were sometimes reckoned as a fifth city. — Hiero II., King of Syracuse (b.c. 270 to about 216), was during most of his reign a steadfast ally of Rome. — Dianae: the Quail, ἄρσε, was sacred to Diana (Artemis); hence the name Ortygia. — extrema, end of. — istius, i.e. of Diana. — Arethusa: fabled to have fled beneath the sea from
the pursuit of the river-god Alpheus (see Classical Dictionary). Another fresh-water fountain rises in the harbor, about eighty feet from the shore. — munitione, construction: used of any embankment (compare munire viam, etc.).

§ 5. Achradinia, the plain and table-land just north of Ortygia: the name is supposed to have been derived from the wild pear-trees, ἀχράδες, which still abound there. — porticus, arcades. — prytaneum, the building in which the city was conceived to have its home. Here was the hearth, sacred to Vesta, whence colonists carried the sacred fire to kindle a new hearth in the prytaneum of their new home. It was also used for courts of justice, public banquets, &c. — curia, senate house, the building where the administration of public affairs was conducted. — urbis, i. e. Achradinia. — perpetua, running its whole length. — continentur, are lined in continuous row. — Typha, Doric form of Typh, Fortuna. — gymnasio, the place for exercise and baths, with porticos, groves, and halls, somewhat like the thermae of Rome under the Empire, only that the Greeks gave more attention to physical and intellectual exercises, and less to the luxuries of bathing. — coedificata, built on. — Neapolis, "the new city." — quam ad summam, at the highest point of which.

45. § 6. Marcellum: Marcus Claudius Marcellus, of a noble plebeian family (all other Claudii were patricians), was the ablest general the Romans had in the early years of the Second Punic War, but illiterate and cruel; called "the Sword of Rome." He was killed in battle, b. c. 208. — ornatum, adornments. — habuit rationem, had regard for (compare Livy, xxv. 31). — deportare: the Romans, like Napoleon, were in the habit of carrying off with them whatever works of art and other treasures might redound to the reputation of their city. — victoriae, the right of victory; humanitatis, the part of humanity.

§ 7. Honoris, Virtutis: it was a characteristic of the Roman religion to worship and build temples to abstractions. The temple of Virtus was built, and that of Honor restored, by Marcellus. — in aedibus, etc., i. e. his own house, garden, and suburban estate. — ornamento, i. e. as being free from stolen treasures. — deum, i. e. statue. — jurisdictionem, the special function of the prætor. — ne qua injuria, lest some injustice. — comitatum, train.

§ 8. Religionum, things sacred; consuetudinis, i. e. things allowed by use. — Agathocles, tyrant of Syracuse, b. c. 317–289.

46. profana fecissent: the Romans had a formula by which they called away (evocare) and gained over to their side the tutelary deities of any cities that they were besieging. Of course, the temples of these gods then lost all their sanctity, and became profane buildings. The true name of Rome and that of its tutelar
divinity were said to be kept as a mystery, lest they should become known to an enemy, who might thus disarm the city of its protector. The formula is thus given by Macrobius, Saturn. iii. 9:—

*Sis deus, si dea est, cui populus civitasque Carthaginiensis est in tutela, teque maxime ille qui urbis hujus populique tutelam recepisti, precor venerorque veniamque a vobis peto, ut vos populum civitatemque Carthaginisenm deseratis, loca templam sacra urbeque eorum reliquitis, absque his abeatis, eique populo [civitati] metum formidinem oblivionem iniciatis, proditique Romanam ad me meosque veniatis, nostraque vobis loca templam sacra urbs acceptior probatioque sit, mihique populoque Romano militibusque meis præpositi sitis, ut sciamus interlegamusque. Si ita feceritis, voveo vobis templam ludosque facturum.*

§ 9. *in quibus erant, upon which were represented.*—*imagines, portraits.*—*Siciliae regum, i. e. those rulers of Syracuse and other cities who had exercised dominion beyond their own cities.*—*cognitio formarum, acquaintance with their features.*

§ 10. *valvis, folding doors,* opening inward. They were found especially in temples.—*tam... cupidum, that I am so eager (in appos. with quod).*—*liquido, with a clear conscience.*—*illī, i. e. the Greeks, as too fond of art.*

47. *argumenta, stories (in relief).*

§ 11. *Gorgonia, the head of Medusa, a favorite subject of ancient art.*—*gramineas hastas, bamboo staves.*—*in hoc nomine, at this point,* (i. e. wondering why they were mentioned).—*commovēri, startled.*—*satis esset (§ 58, 10, d):* i. e. they were only curiosities.—*id merely repeats hastas.*

§ 12. *nam explains (ironically) why he mentions the valueless bamboos, &c.* Thoese have no excuse; but the Sappho was so fine, etc.—*Silanionis:* an artist of the time of Alexander the Great.—*quisquam (see § 21, 2, 4).*—*potius, etc, rather than this most tasteful and cultivated man, Verres.*—*nimīrum, of course.*—*delicati, pampered.*—*eat, must go (§ 57, 3).*—*ad sēdem Felicitatis:* the temple of Felicitas was adorned with the spoils of conquered Corinth. Catulus had adorned his temple of Fortuna, and Metellus his portico, with splendid works of art.—*istorum, Verres and his friends.*—*Tusculanum, villa at Tusculum* (about 15 miles south-east of Rome) where the wealthy Romans, Hortensius among the rest, had splendid country-houses.—*forum ornatum,* i. e. on festal days (see Livy, ix. 40).—*commodarit, lent:* such works of art were often placed temporarily on the forum.—*operari, mere day-laborer:* in allusion to the works of art that Verres had manufactured under his own eye.—*studia, fine tastes; delicias, luxurious pleasures.*
48. ad ferenda, etc., to carry (as a porter) than to carry off (as a connoisseur): a sarcasm on Verres’ coarse and sturdy build.

§ 13. pernible, very famous. — Graeculus, in contemptuous allusion to his pretense of taste. — subtiliter judicae, is a fine connoisseur. — nunc, at this moment.

§ 14. Paeanis, Apollo, as god of healing. — Aristaeus, son of Apollo, discoverer of the olive, and of various improvements in husbandry. [The gloss Liberis filius is incorrect: patre below does not mean his father, but is a common attribute of Liber, as well as of Mars and other gods.] — parinum (corrupt and meaningless): the common reading is parvum: perhaps the old conjecture Parium, of Parian marble, is best.

§ 15. Jovem: identified from some fancied resemblance with Zeus oikios, god of favorable weather. — Flamininus: T. Quinctius Flamininus, who defeated Philip of Macedon at Cynoscephalae, B.C. 197. — in Ponti ore: the Thracian Bosporus (Strait of Constantinople). — Capitolo: the Capitol, or Temple of Jupiter Capitolinus, had three cellae, or chapels, sacred to the Capitoline triad, — Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva. This was now the most illustrious temple, “the earthly abode” of Jupiter.

49. incolae, residents: i.e. persons of foreign birth, who made Syracuse their home, without having obtained citizenship. — advenae, visitors.

§ 16. adventu, by his coming. In fact, the chief plunder was two or three years after his arrival.

§ 17. mensas Delphicas, tables with three legs, like the Delphic tripod. — vasa Corinthia were made of a kind of bronze, of peculiar beauty and very costly.

§ 18. fanorum, shrines: this word is of the same root (FA) as fatum, nefas, &c., and indicates whatever is consecrated by signs (the expressions of Divine will) to religious purposes. (Hartung, Rel. der Röm. i. p. 137.) It is therefore the consecrated spot, rather than the temple or altar erected upon it.

50. § 19. desilunt, ceased, i.e. by the transference of the courts to the Senators. — Crasso: Lucius Crassus, the famous orator, and Quintus Scævola, pontifex maximus, the famous jurist and statesman, were close friends and colleagues in nearly every office. They were curule aediles, B.C. 103, and gave the first exhibition of lion-fights. The splendor of their aedilship was the work of Crassus, a man of elegant and luxurious tastes, while Scævola was moderate and simple in his habits. — Claudio. This was (according to Drumann) a brother of Claudia, the wife of Tiberius Grac-

* There may be some confusion here with T. Quinctius Cincinnatus, who brought a bust of Jupiter Imperator from Praeneste to Rome and placed it in the Caritoline temple. At any rate, it was destroyed in the burning of the Capitol B.C. 83. (Comp. Liv. vi. 20.)
Crucifixion of a Roman Citizen.

In his aedileship, B.C. 99, he exhibited fights of elephants.
—commercio: Crassus and Claudius would have bought these objects if anybody could have done it. (Supply commercium with suis.)

§ 20. referri, be entered, has for subject pretio...abalienasse.
—rebus istis, things of that sort.—apud illos, i.e. the Greeks generally.—sooios (see note on provincia, Verr. i. § 11).

§ 21. Reginos: Rhegium, Reggio, was a very ancient Greek city, at the point of Italy nearest Sicily. It was a colony of Chalcis, probably founded in the eighth century B.C., and became a Roman municipium after the Social War, B.C. 90.—merere velle, would take.—illa, that famous (§ 20, 2, b).—Tarentinos: Tarentum was the largest Greek city in Italy, a colony of Sparta, founded in the eighth century B.C., subjugated by Rome just after the invasion of Pyrrhus, B.C. 272.

§ 31. Satyrum. The satyrs were divinities of nature, inhabiting the woods, represented with pointed and hairy ears, knobs upon the forehead, &c.

The towns here mentioned as centres of Greek art are the following:—Thebes, a city of Boeotia, always allied with Athens: the statue of Eros (Cupid) was one of the most famous works of Praxiteles. Cnidus, a Dorian town in Asia Minor: the statue of Venus there was accounted one of the finest of all the works of Praxiteles. Cos, an island on the coast of Asia Minor: here was the picture of Venus by Apelles. Ephesus, one of the chief Ionian towns of Asia Minor: it was now at the height of its splendor and commercial greatness. Cyzicus, a Greek city, on a peninsula, on the southern coast of the Propontis (Sea of Marmora). Rhodes, then the chief commercial city of the East, and a powerful independent state: Ialysus was a native here. Athens: the works of art here mentioned at Athens were by the most famous artists,—Scopas, Protogenes, and Myron.

longum est, it would be tedious (fut. cond., § 60, 2, c).

Crucifixion of a Roman Citizen.

The fifth speech of the Accusatio is entitled De Suppliciis, because it details the cruelties of Verres. The passage here given is one of the most graphic and celebrated.

§ 1. nunc, opposed to the time of the actio prima, which he has just referred to.—hoo genero, this one class, i.e. bloody executions, as contrasted with the variety of charges, below.—tot horas dicam, § 58, 2, a.—qua sint, § 65, 2.—tenerem, § 58, 10, a.—rem, the facts (emphatic).—in medio, before you.

§ 2. Consanus, of Consa (Compsa), a town in Samnium.—in illo numero: Cicero has been describing the treatment of a number of fugitives from the insurrectionary army of Sertorius in Spain, who had made their way to Sicily after the death of Sertorius, B.C. 72, and the overthrow of his faction by Pompey.—nescio qua,
§ 67, 2, e. — lautumnis, the stone-quarries, at Syracuse, used as a prison. — Messanam, the present Messina, the point of Sicily nearest Italy.

Messana was at first called Zankle (sickle), from the shape of the tongue of land which forms the harbor. It was one of the group of Greek colonies founded in the eighth century B.C. The name was changed three centuries later, in honor of the Greek Messene. It was one of the very few privileged towns, civitates federatae, of Sicily (see note on aratorum, Verr. i. § 13). It was specially favored by Verres, and, as is represented by C. cero, was an accomplice of his iniquities.

Reginorum: Rhegium is almost in sight of Messana. — odore, breath.

§ 2. recta, sc. via. — praesto futurum, would be on hand. — advenienti, at his arrival.

§ 3. in prætorio, the house (or palace) of the prætor, as an imperial magistrate. — ante, Lib. iv. 23. — adjutricem, accomplice; consciam, confidant. — Mamertinum. The city of Messana had been treacherously taken possession of by a body of mercenaries, who called themselves Mamertini (children of Mars), about B.C. 282. Although the name of the city was not changed, yet its citizens were from this time called Mamertini. — defertur, is reported (officially). — ipse, Verres.

§ 4. expectabant, were on the watch to see. — quo tandem, how far: tandem (as also nam) gives a sense of wonder to the question, which cannot be preserved in English in an indirect question. — expediri, to be got ready, by untying the fasces (rods and axe), which were the badge of the prætor's imperium. — meruisse, etc., stipendia, served as a soldier. — cum splendidissimo: cum indicates that he had been his comrade, not his subordinate. — Panormi (all harbor), the present Palermo: in spite of its Greek name, this was originally a Phænician settlement. — negotiatur, was in business, i.e. at this time (see note on negotiatores, Verr. i. § 20). — fugitivorum, escaped slaves, whose insurrection had made the frightful servile war of Spartacus, B. C. 73-71.

§ 5. civitatis, citizenship. — dolorem, cries of pain. — cum,
§ 62, 2, b (R. 2). — commemoratone, claim.

§ 5. crux, the special punishment of slaves. — perfect, gained (by his prayers). — infelici, ill-omened. — pestem, cursed instrument.

§ 6. lex Porcia, which forbade the scourging of citizens (see Liv. x. 9). — leges Sempronii (of Caius Gracchus), which gave the right of appeal in capital cases, even against the military imperium. In civil life it had existed ever since the foundation of the republic. (Mommsen, Hist. of Rome, iii. p. 140. See Catil. iv. 5; Rabir. 4). — tribunicia potestas, see note Verr. i. § 44. — lucine, § 20. 1, R. — beneficioe, favor, in conferring authority upon him. — admovabantur, were applied. — quemquam, § 21, 2, h.
§ 7. *agere, treat; statui modum, set a limit. — Glabrionem,* subj. of tacere. — *consilium, jury:* he feared that lynch law would get the start of a legal verdict. — *repitisse, inflicted: lit. exacted; punishment being regarded as a forfeit. The original root *pu* (purify) is found in *purus* and *putare.* — *veritus esset* has for its subject *populus Romanus.*

§ 8. *quid . . . sit, what will happen to you. — istum, i. e. whom you misrepresent. — repentinum, of a sudden, having never been such a thing before. — speculatores, spy.*

§ 4. *ad arbitrium tuum, as many as you like. — municipes, fellow-townsmen. — necessarios, see note on *necessitudinem,* Verr. i. § 11. — *sero, too late (for you, but not too late for the court). — judices, obj. of docent.*

§ 9. *patronis, see note, R. A., § 4. — istuc ipsum, that single fact. — nuper tu ipse, here Cicero draws on his imagination for his facts. — ideo, for this season, i. e. quod, etc. — jam, i. e. after you have said that. — Tauromenitano: Tauromenium was an allied state of Sicily, between Messana and Syracuse. — argentarium [rem], banking business.*

§ 10. *ex eo genero, i. e. non qui, etc. — induatur, etc. (§ 23, 3, N.), tie himself up and strangle himself (as in a noose).”

§ 55. usurpatione, claim.


§ 12. *tolle, a sort of protasis (§ 60, 1, b), of which the apod. is jam . . . praecursers, below. — quod velit, any he pleases (§ 65, 2). — quod . . . ignorant, because one may not know him. — liberas civitates, the allied states in the provinces, which were not strictly under the jurisdiction of the pretors. — magnum fuit, would it have been, etc. (§ 60, 2, c). — adservasse, you should have kept. — dum veniret, till he should come. — cognosceret, should he know (understand as: compare Greenough's "Analysis of the Latin Subjunctive," pp. 10, 11, note). — locupletem refers properly to lanced property, and very likely has this meaning here. Landed proprietors (freeholders) ranked as peculiarly respectable, until the great growth of commerce within the last few centuries.*

§ 56. *§ 13. fretum, the strait of Messina, which separates Sicily from Italy. — servitutis: the cross was the special punishment of slaves.*

§ 14. *parricidium:* for the peculiar horror with which this crime was regarded by the Romans, see note, R. A., § 19. — in comitio: the *comitium* was a portion of the Forum, somewhat elevated, and set apart from the rest; it was used for the most ancient *comitia,*
the curiata (in which the people were assembled by the thirty hereditary curiae), for hearing lawsuits, and for contiones. (Its position is a subject of great controversy: probably it was at the end of the Forum towards the Capitoline hill) — defigere, plant. — quod: i.e. that point which. — ocelebrate, thronged condition. — potuit, sc. fieri. — prætervectiones, etc., on the track of all who sail to and fro by the Straits of Messina.

THE ROMAN FORUM.

NORTH.

The Forum Romanum was an open space, about 600 feet long and 200 feet wide at its broader end, which lay against the steep slope of the Capitoline Hill. It was surrounded by the principal buildings of the city, something as represented above — though the exact position of most of them is uncertain. The space bounded by the broken line is flagged; at the broader end was the Comitium, higher than the rest; between them the Rostra, from which a speaker could face either part. Statues and monuments were set here and there in the space, and rows of shops or booths (tabernae) were on each side.

The line — — represents the probable route of the triumphal procession along the Sacra Via, passing by the Cives Capitolineus and the 100 steps up to the temple of Capitoline Jupiter. The two summits at the left were covered with temples; and the Palatine, at the right (below) with the finest private residences. Portions of the pavement have been uncovered at a depth of 15 to 20 feet below the present level of the streets, and 53 feet below the higher portion of the Sacra Via, as it passes over the Velia, the low hill at the right.

The Manilian Law.

Argument.

Chap. 1. Exordium. Why this is Cicero's first appearance before a political assembly. — Narratio. 2. Statement of the case: Mithridates and 'Igranes have made war on the Roman domain. The war is demanded by the dignity and safety of the State. — Confirmatio. I. 3, 4. Conduct of Mithridates: his preparations for war; massacre of Roman citizens; success of former commanders. — 5. Present tameness of the Roman people contrasted with their ancient pride. The allies, whose safety is at stake, demand Pompey as commander. — 6. The chief revenues are at stake, endangered by mere suspicion of calamity — 7. The general financial ruin resulting from disaster to the publicani. — II. 8. Magnitude of the war: (objection that, though important, it is not formidable:) successful campaign of Lucullus. — 9. But Mithridates has gained new strength; fresh nations are roused, and the Roman army disheartened; possible disaster. — 111. 10. Who then should be appointed? Military experience of Pompey — 11, 12. His successes, especially in the Piratic war. State of things in that war, even in the neighborhood of Rome. — 13, 14. His moral qualities: blamelessness, humanity, self-restraint, easy manners. — 15. His prestige and influence, especially as derived from the Piratic war. — 16. His reputation in the East, largely resulting from his brilliant fortune. — 17. Moreover, he is on the spot. — Confirmatio. Objection of Hortensius, that all power ought not to be given to one man. — 18. Refuted by the precedent of the Gabinean Law. — 19. (Incidentally Gabinius should be assigned to Pompey as legatus.) — 20. Objection of Catulus, that the proposition is against precedent. — 21. Evaded by referring to other violations of precedent in Pompey's case. — 22. Appeal to the people against these objections. Peculiar qualities are needed, which exist in him. — 23. His especial virtue of moderation and self-restraint. — Peroratio. 24. Cicero advocates his cause purely from devotion to the commonwealth.

The speech on the Manilian Law is pronounced by Halm to give a better example of the systematic plan of a deliberative oration than any other of antiquity. It was delivered in a contio, or public meeting of Roman citizens, held for debate or address merely. The contio could be called by any magistrate who had any matter to lay before the people, and was held regularly in the Comitium, or elevated part of the Forum. (See note on Verr. V. § 14.) After a rogatio (proposition of a law) had been offered, the contio was called, in order that the voters might hear the arguments on both sides; and any person might speak to whom the presiding magistrate gave permission. When the rogatio had been thus discussed, the comitia (see note on Verr. I. § 18) voted upon it, Yes or No.

Page.
§ 1. frequens conspectus vester, the sight of you in full assembly. — hic locus, the Rostra. — agendum, taking public action (see note, R. A., § 55). — amplissimus, dignified (of the magistrates' power); ornatus, honorable (of private glory). — Quirites, fellow-citizens: the name by which the Romans were addressed when acting in a civil capacity. The word is usually derived from curia, a Sabine word: by Lange and others it is connected with curia, the earliest political division of the people. — hoc aditu, this avenue: i. e. addressing them on political questions. — optimo ouique (§ 17, 5, c), i. e. such as the
magistrate would permit. —rationes, plan: the plural indicating the details which would enter into it.

In the structure of this opening sentence, notice the antithetic balancing of one word or clause against another, which marks the Latin periodic style (see § 78. 4). It consists of two pars, — the first Concessive, introduced by quamquam, the second Adver-sive, introduced by tamen. So, in the first, conspectus balances locus, which is brought into relief by autem (and again); while ad agendum amissimus and ad dicendum ornatisimus are balanced in like manner against each other. In the second, the relative causa qui...patuit (virtually concessive) is, as usual, embedded in the main cause, bringing the relative as near as possible to its antecedent additum; voluntas and rationes are set in antithesis by sed; while the main verb, prohiberunt, as usual, comes last. The logical form of the whole is, “Though political speaking is agreeable, yet I have been prevented,” &c.

By stating first the leading thought (hoc additum, etc.), and putting the verb at the end (the most emphatic place), Latin is able to make the main clause active, thus partly disguising the antithesis. But here, as elsewhere, it is of great help in reading to observe these two rules: (1) that Latin puts first the main idea, the key to the whole; and (2) that it constantly deals in antitheses, often forcing them when they do not naturally occur (as in amissimus and ornatisimus), each thought or expression having its pendant, like on aments which go in pairs. (See note on the opening sentence of the oration on Roscius, p. 1.)

cum, while. — antea, i.e. until his time was claimed by public interests of the state. — auctoritatem: the position itself (locus) of the speaker carried weight. — statuerem, made it a principle. — perfectum ingenio, i.e. the fruit of fully developed mental power — elaboratum, laboriously wrought, needing more practice than youth could give. — temporibus, occasions or exigencies (a common word to denote the condition of an accused person). A Roman lawyer was not regarded as doing a service for hire, but was expected to defend his friends gratuitously. He was, indeed, prohibited from receiving pay. No bargain was made, but it was understood that the obliged party gave a liberal present to his patronus.

§ 2. ita, accordingly, referring to the idea contained in trans-mittendum. — neque...et, here the first clause is really concessive: it may be rendered while...yet. — caste, with clean hands; integre, in good faith to the client. — judicio, i.e. their action in electing him. The term judicare is applied to any act that amounts to a formal expression of judgment, though not a technical decision. — fructum, reward, i.e. the several grades of office he had already filled: he was now praetor. — amplissimum (emphatic by position), the richest. — dilutionem, adjournment: there were many things which could break up an assembly and put off the business, especially unfavorable auguries, the announcement of which was a favorite device of politicians. — praetor primus: the eight praetors were regarded as colleagues, and determined their several functions — as urbanus, peregrinus, or president of qus-tiones perpetuae — by lot. Praetor primus means, therefore, only that Cicero was the first of the eight who got a majority. If any
failed of the requisite number of votes, he must be voted for again; and if the proceedings were broken off, the whole election began anew, including those already chosen. Hence Cicero was thrice declared elected (ter renuntiatus sum). — centuriae, abl. of means. — quid aliis, etc., i.e. to win like distinction.

39. honoribus, see note, Verr. I. § 36. — ad agendum (loosely), for speaking — vigilanti, wide-awake. — forensi usu, the practice of the forum (where the courts were held). — quoque, i.e. as well as to military or public acts.

§ 3. atque, and further (emphatic). — laetandum (§ 35, 1, b), a thing to be glad of. — mihi following insolita (§ 51, 4, b). — ratione, style, i.e. as affected by his new position on the rostra. — oratio, language; orationis, argument (abstracts from oro, in its original sense of to speak). — singulari, unparalleled (as compared with the excellence of others); eximia, exalted (as compared with absolute perfection). — virtute, good qualities, generally. — copia, ample material.

§ 4. atque (the strongest of the copulas), and now, to come to the point. — vectigalibus ac sociis, tributaries and allies (of which latter some were tributary and others not). — infertur, used of offensive war. — Tigrano: he was king of Armenia, and son-in-law of Mithridates.

Armenia, the mountain region east of Asia Minor, was never thoroughly incorporated in the empire of Alexander, and after his death became an independent kingdom. Tigranes, by help of Mithridates, enlarged his dominions by conquest, and built a new and splendid capital, Tigranocerta. The two allied kings seemed about to get the mastery of the whole East; but the defeat of Tigranes by Lucullus (b.c. 69), with the capture and destruction of his capital, reduced his short-lived empire to less than its former dimensions. This eme and inaccessible kingdom remained practically independent until the conquest of the Turks in the eleventh century.

elictus, i.e. before the contest was fully decided. Tigranes, on the other hand, had been only harassed (lacessitus), not seriously attacked. — Asiam: i.e. the province of this name, occupying the western half of Asia Minor, and bordering on the dominions of Mithridates. — quorum . . . occupatae, whose large properties, invested in managing your revenues, are endangered. The revenues were farmed out to societates (companies) of publicani, who were members of the equestrian order (see § 15). — necessitudine, lose relation: Cicero was of an equestrian family.

§ 5. Bithynia: this territory had been bequeathed to the Roman republic by Nicomedes III. (B.C. 74). — exustos, burnt o ashes. — Ariobarzanis, king of Cappadocia, which had been overrun by Mithridates. — Lucullum (see Introd.): Lucullus was related to both branches of the family of Metellus, and married Clodia, sister of the notorious Publius Clodius. It was chiefly his mischievous demagogue, who was serving with his brother-in-law, that stirred up the dissensions and mutinies which robbed
Lucullus of the fruits of his victories. — discodere, is on the point of going. — qui successerit, i.e. Glabrio. — non satis paratum, not adequately furnished. — sociis, i.e. of Asia; civibus, Romans engaged in business there. — imperatorem, in pred. appos. with unum.

69. § 6. certissima: because the province of Asia was the richest and most fruitful of all. — agitur, is at stake. — ornamenta, requisites (from orno, equip).

§ 7. civis Romanos, etc. This massacre (B.C. 88), in which 80,000 persons perished, was intended by Mithridates as a step to the entire expulsion of the Roman power from Asia. — significat. litterarum, signal by letter. — luce, contrasted with laticris. — versari, to move freely.

§ 8. etenim, for (you will notice). — triumphavit de, not triumphed over, but led a triumph for [victory over]. The word is repeated in emphatic antithesis to the clause sed...regnaret.

The triumphus was the solemn procession in which the imperator entered the city at the head of his victorious army, ascended the Capitoline, and performed sacrifice to Jupiter Capitolinus. The victory must have been a considerable one (5,000 of the enemy must have fallen), won by the commander himself in a war waged against foreign enemies. Triumphs were therefore never celebrated for victories in a civil war.

regnaret, i.e. they left him his kingdom. — verum tamen, but still. — quod egerunt, for what they have done: quod implies the antecedent propter id, or a similar phrase. — res publica: Sulla hastened to make an unsatisfactory peace, that he might return to Italy and restore order there.


The kingdom of Bosporus (so named from the Cimmerian Bosporus, the entrance to the Sea of Azof), was a flourishing Grecian state, embracing the Crimea and adjoining lands: capital, Panikepharium (Kertsch). This region was then, as now, a chief source of the supply of wheat for Europe. It was seized by Mithridates, who placed his son Machares as ruler there.

ad eos duces, i.e. Sertorius and his comrades.

Sertorius was the ablest general of the Marian faction in the civil wars. After the victory of Sulla, and the complete overthrow of his own party, he continued to hold Spain, where he attempted a new republic, entering into alliance with Mithridates and other enemies of Rome.

de imperio, for supremacy.

§ 10. alterius corresponds to altera, below. — firmamenti, outward support; roboris, intrinsic strength. — Cn. Pompei: in fact, neither Pompey (“the boy”) nor Metellus Pius (“the old woman”) was able to subdue Sertorius, who was treacherously assassinated (B.C. 72). — rerum gestarum, deeds. — haec extrema, these late disasters. — tribuenda, attributable.
§ 11. animum, feeling. — putatis, i. e. from your point of view. — superbius, too haughty.

In a. c. 148, the Roman ambassadors required the Achaian League to give up all its recent acquisitions; at which the incensed i. o. ulace insulted the ambassadors and drove them away. In the war that followed, Corinth was captured by Mammianus and destroyed, while Greece was made into a province by the name of Achaia.

Legatum consularum, M. Aquillius, envoy to Nicomedes (b. c. 88).

Manius Aquillius — colleague of Marius (b. c. 101), who had earned a triumph by suppressing the second slave revolt in Sicily — was sent by the Senate (b. c. 88), at the head of a special commission, to restore Nicomedes, who had been driven out from Bithynia by Mithridates. By his counsel a raid was made into the territory of Mithridates, followed, after some negotiations, by war, in which he commanded a division of 40,000 troops. The allies were defeated. Aquillius was captured in flight on his way to Rhodes, and surrendered to Mithridates; who, after parading him on a donkey through a long march, ordered melted gold poured down his throat. He was not, in reality, protected by the jus legationis, which in any case he had forfeited; but his title as envoy (legatus) gave Cicero the opportunity of this very effective appeal.

62. § 12. videte, see to it — see whether it be not. — ut, as, correl. with sic. — illis, i. e. your ancestors. — non posse, subj. of sit. — quid, a regular formula of transition: again. — periculum ac discrimen, a dangerous crisis: the former word signifying the trial; the latter, the decision. — expectare, look to. — certum, a particular. — sine summo periculo, i. e. by offending Lucullus and Gabrion.

§ 13. sentunt, feel. — propter, at hand. — quo, abl. of means with aegris. — adventu ipso, by his mere coming. — maritimum: the war against the pirates had just been finished by Pompey with great glory. — ceterarum provinciarum: the Gabinian Law gave Pompey power over the entire Mediterranean, and the coasts fifty miles inland. The province of Bithynia, and most of Asia, were therefore excluded (not Greece, however: but Gracia may here mean the Greek cities in Asia). The Manilian law extended this power over the entire East. — quorum . . . commendatis (§ 65, 7, f.), worthy for you to, &c. — ejus modi homines, men of that stamp: the expression is none too strong for the average type of provincial governors.

§ 14. the events here alluded to are the following: —

Antiochus the Great, king of Syria, was defeated by Scipio Asiacicus at Magnesia, b. c. 190. Philip V., king of Macedonia, was defeated by Flaminius, at Cynocephile, b. c. 197. The Aetolians had helped Rome against Philip, and then joined Antiochus against her. They were obliged to submit after the battle of Magnesia. Carthage revolted after the third Punic War, b. c. 149; and was taken and destroyed by Scipio Aemilianus, b. c. 148.

63. agatur, etc., it is a question of your richest revenues.

The province of Asia, like Sicily (see note on aratorum. Verr I. § 15), paid the tenth of all products, decemum. The collection of this was farmed out by the censors to companies of publicani. This method was instituted by Caius Gracchus, in order to gain over to his side the equestrian order, to which the publicani belonged. All other provinces regularly paid a stipendium, or fixed tax, which they raised themselves.

The description given below of Asia Minor is no longer true, since bad government and bad cultivation have exhausted its remarkable natural wealth.
tanta, so great [only]. — vix contenti, i.e. they will hardly pay the costs of their own defence. — agrorum, whence the tithes of grain, &c. — pastionis, pasture land, let to publicans, who paid a tax called scriptura (so called from the register that was made of the number of the cattle grazing on the pastures). — exportantur: the portoria were tolls and customs' duties paid upon goods both exported and imported: the rate was 2¾, or (in Sicily) 5 per cent. ad valorem.

§ 15. inruptio, inroad. — pecuaria, etc.: parallel with the classification of vectigalia, given before: portu, etc., repeat them in inverse order. — exercent, manage, refers to the societates publicanorum, who took contracts for collecting the revenues; exigunt, collect, to the agents and slaves who attended to the details of the collection. — excursio, cavalry-raid. — familias, see note R. A. § 35.

It must be remembered that the Roman slaves were not merely rude Gauls and Thracians, but educated Greeks and Asians. They served in noble families as secretaries, stewards, and tutors; and would naturally be employed by the great tax-collecting corporations as clerks and agents.

saltibus, mountain pastures (like those of Vermont or New Hampshire). Here again we have allusion to three classes of revenue: scriptura (in saltibus), decumae (in agris), portoria (in portus).
— custodias, police-guards, stationed to prevent smuggling, at the custom-houses and toll-houses. — posse, will be able, in connection with conservaritis (fut. perf.).

§ 17. ne... quidem, not... either. — quod pertinet, which bears upon, &c. The antecedent is genere. — nam et corresponds to deinde (§ 18). — honestissimi, respectable; ornatissimi, well-provided, i.e. with the requisites for their enterprise, being men of wealth.

64. rationes, business enterprises; copias, fortunes. — in illam provinciam, i.e. the farming of revenues. — ipsorum, etc., for their own sake. — ceterorum omnium, i.e. the senators and commonalty.

§ 18. ex ceteris ordinibus appears here to refer to other companies besides the publicani, who carried on business in the provinces. — negotiantur, see note on negotiatores, Verr. I. § 20. — eorum (redundant) limits partim. — conlocatas, invested. — primum answers to deinde, § 19. — illud parvi refert, etc., it is of slight consequence that we can afterwards win back by victory: publica agrees with vectigalia; his. i.e. the publicani. — redimendi, leasing the revenues: the word regularly used for taking a contract by bid.

§ 19. memoria, loc. abl. (§ 54, 10). — cum amiserant (statement of fact in absolute time, § 62, 2, b, r.), when (as you remember), &c. — solutione... concidisse (description of a financial
panic), when payments were suspended, credit fell. — ut non
trahant without dragging. — prohibete, this verb is used, like
defendere, in the sense either of ward off, or of defend. — ratio
pecuniarum, system of money transactions. — in foro, see Verr.
vi. § 4. — versatur, centres. — pecuniis, finances. — ruere, be
ruined. — illa, hæc, used of distance in place. — num... sit,
whether you ought to hesitate: dubitandum, impersonal, and
followed (as usual) by the complem. infin. in the sense of utrum
or quin.

§ 20. potest (emphatic position), etc., it may be said (in answer
to my argument). — belli genus, i. e. the war, in its character.

65. elaborandum est, i. e. I must, etc. — ornatas, equipped;
inestructas, organized. — obsessam, invested; oppugnatam, at-
tacked by the active operations of siege. This was B. C. 74.

§ 21. in Italiam: the fleet which Mithridates was despatching
to Italy, with a contingent furnished by Sertorius, was defeated by
Lucullus near the island Lemnos. — studio, seal for one party;
odus, hate for the other. — Pontum, i. e. the Euxine Sea. — ex
omni aditu, at every approach. — Sinopen, Amium, towns on
the north coast of Asia Minor. In fact, they both made a very
stubborn resistance: uno aditu, etc., may be meant only to apply
to the “numerous other cities.” — aditu, approach; adventu,
arrival. (It is a frequent practice thus to use two words meaning
almost precisely the same thing, but viewed from different points,
giving the emphasis of repetition without its tautology.) — alios
reges: his son Machares, king of Bosporus, and his son-in-law Ti-
granes, king of Armenia. (“All Cicero’s talk about the campaign
of Lucullus is so vague that it is impossible to extract a fact out
of it.” — Long.) — supplicem, in appos. with se. — salvis, i. e. with-
out harming the allies: integris, without impairing the revenues.

§ 22. primum: the corresponding particles are omitted; the
next point begins at § 23. — Ponto: on whose eastern shore was
Colchis, the scene of the adventures of the Argonauts and the
golden fleece (see Classical Dictionary). — quam prædictant,
who, as they tell. (The usual form of indir. disc., that, cannot
be used with a relative in English.) — persequeretur, was likely
to follow. The same form would be used in dir. disc. — conlectio
dispersa, the scattered gathering, giving vividly the idea of his
wandering about to pick them up.

68. vim auri, etc., the immense treasures which Mithridates
had accumulated in his several fortresses came into the hands
of Lucullus: not money simply, but works of art, &c. — quas
et... et = quas partim... partim. — dum with pres. (§ 58, 2, e).
— illum, hos, distance and nearness of time.

§ 23. Tigranes: he did not, however, welcome his father-in-law,
but for some time treated him coldly and suspiciously. — confirmavit, reassured. — eis nationibus, near Armenia. — opinio, notion. — fandi: "The temple of the Persian Nanae, or Anaitis, in Elymais or the modern Luristan [that part of Susiana nearest to the Euphrates], the most celebrated and the richest shrine in the whole region of the Euphrates." (Mommsen.) Such a rumor would at once fire the population of the whole East. — urbe: Tigranocerta, the new capital of Tigranes, situated in the south-west part of his kingdom, near the river Tigris. The city was destroyed by Lucullus. — commovebatur, was affected. After all his successes, Lucullus had made somewhat the same mistake as Napoleon in his Russian expedition, and had found himself in an awkward situation, far from his base of operations, and in the midst of infuriated enemies.

§ 24. hie, on this point — extremum, the last thing to be expected. — opes ... misericordiam, a short expression for win over to pity and draw out their resources. — ut ... videatur, a result-clause following qui ... regno, which implies the motive.

67. § 25. ut ... attingeret, in appos. with eo following contentus. (It should regularly be quod with the indic., but the form appears to be determined by acciderat.) — poetae: Nævius, who wrote a Bellum Punicum, and Ennius, author of Annales, recounting events of Roman history. Both lived in the third century B.C. — calamitatem: defeat of Triarius (B.C. 67), who was leading reinforcements to Lucullus. Only a severe wound of Mithridates saved the Roman army from utter destruction. — sertone, common talk.

§ 26. offensione, disaster (a mild word). — tamen, i.e. though it was so disastrous. — vestro jussu, i.e. the Gabinian law (see Introd.). — imperi: the military imperium was held by the highest grades of magistrates, and could be extended after the term of office by the Senate. The holder of a command thus "prorogued" was called proconsul or prœprætor. — diurnitate: Lucullus had now held command seven years from B.C. 74. — veteri exemplo, by old precedent. — stipendis, properly, pay; here, campaigns. — confecti, worn out. — conjungant, unite to wage. — cogitato: i.e. by apprehensions as well for their independence as for their religion. — integrae nationes, the other Asiatic nations that would be drawn into the war.

§ 27. satis ... videor, I have shown, as I think, at sufficient length. (Latin prefers the single personal clause to our impersonal parenthetical form, "it seems that I.") — esse, is (imperfect by sequence of tenses). — videatur (as above). — utinam haberetis, I wish you had (§ 68, 1). — nunc vero, but now (opposed to the hopeless wish, utinam). — cum sit, where there is (subj. of charact.). — unus, but one. — Pompeius, etc. This wonderful exag-
geration, which puts the exploits of Pompey above those of Alexander, Hannibal, Scipio, and other generals of antiquity, probably suited well enough the temper of the assembly. — superarit, subj. of charact. (§ 65, 2). — virtute, excellence (not valor only).

§ 28. rei militaris, military science. — auctoritatem, prestige. — scientior, better versed. — ludo, school.

68. bello, etc., abl. of circumstance. — ad patris exercitum: Pompey, then seventeen years old, served with his father, Cn. Pompeius Strabo, consul b. c. 89, the last year of the social War. — summī imperatoris: his father, who commanded on the side of the Senate against Cinna, b. c. 87: summī does not here imply supreme command, but supreme command. — imperator: in b. c. 83 the young Pompey raised an army — largely from his father's immense estates in Picenum — and joined Sulla, who complimented him as imperator, although he had not yet held even the questorship. — conflīxit, grappled. — quīquam: for the use of this word after comparative as well as negative constructions, compare the French ne after que (than). — inimīco, a private adversary (e.g. before a court). — confeicit, reduced. — imperiis. The first civil office held by Pompey was the consulship (b. c. 70): all his former offices he exercised as a simple equus equo publico (see note, Verr. I. § 1). When the Censors, in his consulship, held the transvectio equitum, or formal inspection of the equites equis publicis, and asked him the usual question whether he had served all his campaigns, "All," he answered, "and all under my own imperium." — exeruerit, given him exercise. — civile, the war of Cinna and Sulla. — Africanum, the war with Hiarbas of Numidia; Transalpīnum, certain hostilities in Gaul, on his way to Spain; Hispaniense, the war of Sertorius; servile: Pompey, on his return from Spain (b. c. 71), fell in with and cut to pieces the remnants of the troops of Spartacus; navale, the war with the pirates, in which Pompey was at present engaged.

§ 30. Sicilia. After Sulla's final victory in Italy, in which he was materially aided by the young Pompey, he intrusted to him the subjugation of Sicily and Africa, where Carbo, with the remnants of his power, had taken refuge.

69. iterum: in extirpating the last remains of the insurrection of Spartacus; sēpius must include his earlier campaigns in Italy, in Sulla’s time. The whole passage is a rhetorical exaggeration.

§ 31. omnes orae, etc. There was no extravagance in this: the suppression of piracy was the most glorious part of Pompey's career. — tam vetus: the piratical forces were made up of the wreck of those numberless armies beaten and broken up in the wars of the past half-century or more. When the lesser states lost their independence, their bravest men would often prefer the
outlaw freedom of piracy to personal slavery, or even to political subjugation. In fact, the pirate State in Cilicia made a sort of independent republic, unrecognized and defiant.

§ 32. *fruit*: i.e. is no longer. — *propugnaculis, outworks.* — *Brundisium*: i.e. the short passage to Greece. — *legati*: the case is not known; probably not an ambassador, but a military aid. The plural is perhaps used rhetorically for the singular. — *redempti, bought off, ransomed.* — *duodecim secures*, twelve lictors, who carried axes in bundles of rods (*fasces*), the symbol of the military *imperium*. The praetors in Rome were attended by two lictors; as governors of provinces, they had six: here, *two praetors*.

§ 33. *Cnidum, etc.*: all of these were important cities, although none of them of the first rank. — *vestros portus*: i.e. those of Cajeta, Misenum, and Ostia, mentioned below.

70. *vitam ac spiritum*, i.e. ports of entry are the breath of life to a state like Rome, which must import its daily supplies of food. — *potestatem*: acc., because it is implied that they fell into their power. — *Caietæ*, now *Gaëta*, a port on the southern coast of Latium: who was the praetor here referred to is not known. — *Miseno*, the northern promontory of the Bay of Naples: it had a fine harbor, which, under the empire, became the principal naval station of the Tuscan Sea. — *liberos*, a rhetorical use of the plural for the singular, also illustrating the masculine form for either sex: it was a daughter of the distinguished orator Marcus Antonius, who had celebrated a triumph for a victory over the pirates, B.C. 102. — *Ostiensæ*: Ostia, at the mouth of the Tiber, was the seaport of Rome: the harbor, however, was choked up with sand, and early in the empire it was necessary to construct another artificial harbor in its place. It is not known who was the consul here referred to. — *consul*. the dignity of the commander showing the importance of the fleet. — *esse*, subj. of charact. — *tantam...lucem*: the position of these words emphasizes those enclosed by them. — *Oceanis ostium*, the Strait of Gibraltar.

§ 34. *sunt*, agreeing directly with *haec*, instead of *est* with the indirect question as subject (compare acc. of anticip. § 67. 2, e). — *tanti bellorum, etc.* the rush of so great a war sped over the sea.

§ 35. The geographical allusions may be explained as follows: —

*Hispanis*: Spain was occupied by Rome, in the time of the Second Punic War, and made into two Provinces: H. Citerior, extending to the Iberus (afterwards enlarged so as to comprise half the peninsula); H. Ulterior, the territory beyond. — *Gallia*: Gallia Transalpina (or Narbonensis), the whole southern coast of Gaul, was made into a province, B.C. 120. — *Illyrici Maris*: Illyria was always a chief seat of piracy: it had been dependent upon Rome, since B.C. 178. — *Achaia*: this term was usually applied to the Peloponnese, so that by Græcia is here intended Hellas proper. The independence of Greece ceased with the capture of Corinth by Mummius, B.C. 146; still the chief part of the country remained nominally free, and no regular province was organized until the time of Augustus. — *Duo mariæ*, the Adriatic Sea (*Mare Superum*), and the Tyrrenian
The Manilian Law.

§ 31–39. — *Ciliciam*: *Cilicia aspera*, the western part, had been, since B.C. 103, the regular post of a praetor or pro praetor (see Verr. I. § 11): in B.C. 75 it was organized as a province, with the adjoining districts of Pamphylia, Isauria, &c. Pompey completed the conquest of the whole country. — *Cretensis*: Quintus Metellus, the proconsul (the fr.e.d of Verres), had reduced Crete nearly to submission, deriving from this his cognomen Creticus. The Cretans, alienated by his harshness, sent to Pompey, that he might receive their surrender, rather than Metellus, which Pompey was very willing to do. Civil war nearly broke out between the two commanders in consequence. Pompey, however, who had his hands full in Asia, withdrew from the field and left the honors to his rival.

**71.** *premebantur, f*c the weight.

§ 36. *imperatoris*: of a commander. — quid cetera, how with the others? — *administræ, handmaids*. — *innocentia*: the word especially used to denote *cleanliness of hands* in the governor of a province (see Verr. I. § 34). — *temperantia, self-restraint*. — *humanitate, courtesy*. — *qua*, acc. of anticip. (§ 67, 2, c).

§ 37. *putare* (in its earlier meaning of reckon, etc., count as such). — *centuriam*: the office of centurion. Two centurions commanded each *manipulus* of 200 men. The Legion was divided into thirty maniples; and after the time of Marius, also into ten cohorts of three maniples each: under the empire the maniple was divided into *two centuriae*, each commanded by a centurion. The centurions were advanced from the ranks by appointment of the commander: hence *venire*. — *amplum cogitare*, have any grand ideas. — *aerario*: the treasury was in the Temple of Saturn, under the superintendence of the two city *quaestors*. The actual management of the funds was in the hands of a large body of clerks, *scriba*, who formed a permanent *collegium*. — *provinciam, sc. retinenda*: for which he desired the influence of the magistrates. Nothing is known as to the circumstances here hinted at. — *in quaestu, on speculation*. — *facit ut*, etc., shows that you know (compare note, § 24).

§ 38. *recordamini, protasis* (§ 60, 1, b). — *quid existimetis*, in dir. disc. it would be the same form, as *deliberative subj.* (§ 57. 6).

**72.** *urbis, acc. — hibernis*: notice the strong antithesis; *sociorum* limits *civitates*. — *judicando*: a great part of the imperator's business would be deciding cases of extortion by the *publicani*, who were of the same class (*equites*) that held the judicial power in Rome. By favoring them, he might purchase immunity for himself, if brought to trial on a similar charge.

§ 39. *manus, vestigium*: i.e. not only was there no intentional violence, but no unintended evils followed in its train. — *jam*, here simply a particle of transition, made emphatic by *vero*: that which follows refers to the winter quarters. — *sermones, reports*, by way of common talk. — *ut ..., faciat, to incur expense* in entertaining officers and soldiers. — *enim*: understand, "and in this he follows old custom," *for*, etc. — *hiemis, from winter* (obj. gen.): *avaritiae, for avarice* (subj. gen.).
§ 40. oeleritatem, speed; cursum, extent of travel.—remigum: galleys, worked by oars and independent of the wind, were generally used as war vessels. In the Mediterranean (particularly in the Barbary states) their use was continued till a very late day; and for some purposes they are still employed. Their trained crews of rowers gave them a speed hardly less than that of steam-vessels. —non...quedam...aliquì, it was not that some, &c. —amoenitas, used of objects of sight, beauty of scenery, &c. —labor, toil, always with the sense of effort and fatigue. —signa, statues; tabulas, pictures (on wood).

§ 41. hac continentia, i.e. such as his. —jam videbatur, was now getting to seem. —nunc: notice the emphatic repetition (“anaphora”). —servire quam imperare, a rhetorical exaggeration for preferring the condition of subject allies to nominal independence. The language may also refer to such cases as that of Attalus, king of Pergamus, who left his kingdom by bequest to Rome, B.C. 133.

73. § 42. consilio, etc., compare § 36. —ipso, of itself. —hoo loco, the Rostra. —fidem vero, etc.: render, and as to his good faith, &c., changing the construction so as to keep the emphasis. So quam, etc., when the enemy esteemed it, &c. (contrasting hostes with socios. —pugnantes, in battle; vioti, in defeat. —consilio, purpose.

§ 43. auctoritas—reputation. —imperio militari, distinguished from the imperium domi, or the authority of the consul and praetor within the city, which was subject to intervention and appeal. —ut...ament, clause of result, following commoveri. —judiciis, i.e. by conferring offices and commands.

§ 44. illius dies, i.e. of the proposal of the Lex Gabinia, which conferred upon Pompey the command against the pirates. (See Introd.). —commune, i.e. against pirates, enemies of all mankind. —aliae exempla, i.e. by way of contrast.

74. § 45. praelio, the defeat of Triarius (see § 25). —provincia, i.e. Asia. —discremen, the turning point. —ad eae regiones, i.e. only into the neighborhood, as Pompey’s authority did not reach the seat of war.

§ 46. illa res, in appos. with quod...dediderunt. —Cretense. The towns of the same region or race were often united in leagues or confederacies, chiefly for religious purposes. After the Roman conquest, such communia were sometimes left in existence, and even new ones were organized, and these were invested with some subordinate political function. The existence of a commune Cretense is known from inscriptions. (For the incident here referred to, see § 35.) —ad eundem, i.e. rather than Quintus Metellus Pius (referred to by ei quibus), who also had a command in Spain. Nothing is known of any such embassy, but from
the apologetic tone of what follows, it may be inferred that there was no great honor in the affair.—\textit{eum quem, one who. — \textit{et quisbus, while they, &c.}, i. e. those jealous of Pompey's reputation.}

75. \textit{\textsection} 47. \textit{felicitate}: in this quality is implied a special favor of the gods, which it would be presumptuous to arrogate to one's self, although Sulla had done so by assuming the \textit{cognomen} Felix (see R. A. \textsection 12). — \textit{prestare, give assurance of. — Maximo}: Quintus Fabius Maximus, "the shield of Rome;" \textit{Marcello}: Marcus Claudius Marcellus, "the sword of Rome," both in the Second Punic War. — \textit{Scipioni}: either Africanus the elder, or \textit{Æmilianus}: from \textsection 60, it might appear to be the latter. — \textit{Mario}; Caius Marius, who vanquished Jugurtha, subdued the Cimbri and Teutones, and afterwards engaged in civil war with Sulla, B. C. 88. — \textit{saeptus, repeatedly}: Marius was consul seven times. — \textit{fuit} (emphatic), there really has been; \textit{fortuna} is also emphatic. — \textit{invisa}, i. e. presumptuous.

\textsection 48. \textit{non sum praedicatus}: this affectation of silence is called \textit{prateritio}. — \textit{proprium ac perpetuum, secured to him for ever. — \textit{cum . . . tum, not less . . . than.}}

\textsection 49. \textit{cum}, etc., recapitulation. — \textit{quin onferatis}, \textsection 65, 1, b.

76. \textsection 50. \textit{erat deulationes}, \textsection 59, 3, d.— \textit{nuno, as it is}. — \textit{utilitates, advantages. — opportunitas, fortunate circumstance. — eis qui habent}, i. e. Lucullus, Glabrio, and Marcius Rex.

\textsection 51. at \textit{anim} (objection), \textit{but, you will say. — adfectus, enjoying. — Catulus}: Quintus Lutatius Catulus, at this time the leader of the senatorial party; an estimable man and an experienced statesman, but no soldier. The \textit{beneficia amplissima} are the successive offices that had been conferred upon him. — \textit{ornamenta, endowments}. — \textit{Hortensius}, the leading lawyer of the time (see oration against Verres). — \textit{viro rum, etc.}, see \textsection 68.

\textsection 52. \textit{obsolevit, etc.}, "is played out," become stale. — \textit{Gabinium}, see Intro.; and compare the oration \textit{Post Reditum}, chap. 5. — \textit{promulgasset, had given notice. — ex hoo ipso lobo, i. e. in the public discussion of the law, before the vote, in the \textit{contio} (see \textsection 1).}

As the Gabinian Law was strictly a \textit{plebiscitum}, brought by a Tribune before the Plebeian Assembly of Tribes (see note on Verr. I. \textsection 18), it did not require any ratification by the Senate (Momms. Röm. Forsch. i p. 230). The expression of opinion by Hortensius must therefore have been in an informal discussion, after the promulgation of the law.

\textsection 53. \textit{hano, i. e. which we have now. — an implies a strong negative (\textsection 71, 2, b). — legati, etc. (see \textsection 32, 33).}

77. \textit{commematu, supplies, i. e. by the embargo on their trade. — neque jam, no longer.}

\textsection 54. \textit{Atheniensium}: the Athenian empire of the sea, in the fifth century B. C., resulted from the great victories in the Persian war. — \textit{Karthaginaeensium}: the maritime power of Carthage was
at its height in the third century B.C. — Rhodiorum: the city of Rhodes was the chief naval power of the Mediterranean during the last three centuries before Christ: its power was broken B.C. 42, at its capture by Cassius.

§ 55 Antiochum: Antiochus the Great, king of Syria, defeated at Magnesia, B.C. 190. — Perseus: Perseus, the last king of Macedonia, defeated at Pydna, B.C. 168. — Kardaginiensis: Carthage was mistress of the sea at the time when the wars with Rome began; but in the first Punic War she was beaten at her own weapons. — paratissimos, best equipped. — ei repeats nos: we, i.e. that nation. — praestare, warrant. — Delos, a very small island in the Ægean Sea, sacred as the birthplace of Apollo and Artemis. It has an excellent harbor, and this, added to its peculiar sanctity, gave it high importance. It was the nominal seat of the confederacy of which Athens was the head, after the Persian Wars, and had at all times a flourishing commerce. In the time of Cicero it was the great slave market of the world, 10,000 slaves being sometimes sold here in a single day — ommobreant, resorted. — Appia Via, the principal highway of Italy, running from Rome to the next town in importance, Capua. It was commenced by Appius Claudius Cæcus, in his censorship, B.C. 312. — jam, at length. — pudebat: notice the tense. No special case is referred to, but it is implied that any magistrate ought to have felt shame, seeing that the beaks of ships, rostra, were the trophy over a naval power.

7N. § 57. ne legaretur: the legati, who accompanied the general as his staff, were generally nominated by him, but were appointed by the Senate. (For the construction, see § 64, 1.) — expetenti, earnestly requesting; postulantl, claiming as a right. — utrum... an. § 71. 2.

§ 58. C. Faioidius, etc.: what distinguished the case of these tribunes from that of Gabinius, was that there was a law prohibiting any person from receiving an appointment under a law proposed by himself: compare Art. I. § 5, clause 2 of the United States Constitution. — honoris causa, see note on Rosc. Am. § 5. — in, in the case of. — diligentes, scrupulous. — me... relaturum, I pledge myself to bring it before the Senate.

To bring business before the Senate (referre ad Senatum) was in Cicero's power as praetor. There would be no hindrance to Gabinius being legatus under the Manilian Law. The praetor could, however, be forbidden by the edict of the con-ul (who possessed major potestas) from bringing forward any business which was not on the order of the day. If, in spite of the edict, he should persist, as he threatens, the act would nevertheless be valid. The intercession of a Tribune, however, he would be obliged to respect.

edictum: the official proclamation or announcement of a magistrate; not, however, of a Tribune, whose act was intercessio, which could stop any political action. — considerabunt, i.e. hesitate before they set themselves against the will of the people. — socius:
not as legatus (if it referred to an official position, ascribetur would be used), but simply as partner in honor and credit.

§ 59. cum quaereret: compare cum dixit, just below (§ 62, 2, b). — si ... esset, if anything should happen to him, — a common euphemism, then as now. — quo minus ... hoc magis, § 54, 6, e.

§ 60. at enim, see § 51. — exempla, precedents; instituta, established customs. — paruisse, adcommodasse: i. e. they disregarded precedents in great emergencies, — a course which thus became itself a controlling precedent. — temporum, dep. on casus, consiliorum on rationes (chiastic). — non dicam (prateritio), I will not speak of. — ab uno imperatore: Scipio Africanus the younger (Æmilianus), who captured Carthage (B. C. 146) and Numantia (B. C. 133). At this time it was a law that no person should be consul twice. — C. Mario: Marius was chosen consul five years in succession, to carry on the wars here referred to.

§ 61. quam ... nova: here certainly the orator makes a point. For the several circumstances see notes on §§ 28–30. — privatum, i. e. not a magistrate. — conficere, make up, the technical expression for recruiting an army. — a senatorio gradu: the Senate could not be entered until after the quæstorship, the legal age for which was thirty at least, and regularly thirty-six, while Pompey was at this time (B. C. 82) only twenty-three. — in ea provincia, i. e. Africa (Momm. R. S. i. p. 470).

§ 62. dux exercitum deportavit: this was one of the essential conditions of the triumph. — equitem, i. e. having never held a magistrate, and so not in the Senate. — triumphare: the honor of a triumph was properly accorded only to commanders who possessed the imperium in virtue of holding a regular magistracy (Momm. Rom. St. i. p. 109). Pompey's imperium was held irregularly, by special appointment of the Senate: both his triumphs, therefore, in B. C. 80 and 71, were irregular, which accounts for the vehement opposition they met.

§ 62. duo consules: i. e. Marmurus Lepidus and Decimus Brutus, B. C. 77. Instead of either of these being sent to Spain as proconsul the next year, against Sertorius, Pompey, a simple eques, was taken. — quidem, by the way. — non nemo, a man or two. — Philippus, a prominent member of the aristocracy (consul B. C. 91), distinguished for his wit; a man of liberal temper, but a vehement partisan. (For an entertaining anecdote of him, see Horace, Ep. i. 7.) — pro consulis, in place of both consuls.

When it was desired to retain the services of a magistrate after his term of office had expired, his imperium was extended (prorogatum) by the Senate, and was held by him pro consule or pro praetore, that is, as having the power of the magistracy, while no longer actually a magistrate. It was only the military imperium that was prorogued: its authority did not extend within the walls of Rome, and of course the proconsul possessed
none of the civil powers of the consul within the city,—as, for instance, the right of calling together the Senate or an assembly of the people (Momms. Röm. St. i. pp. 143 and 155). Sometimes a private citizen, like Pompey, was invested with the imperium, and called proconsul; but this irregular proconsulship did not rank with the prorogued imperium of a regular magistrate, and did not entitle to the honors of a triumph.

mittere, for mitto of dir. disc. The simple present, along with sententia, seems a regular form of giving one's opinion in the Senate.—duorum, another exaggeration: only one of these would at any rate have gone as proconsul.—legibus solutus, relieved from the operation of the laws, i. e. those limiting the age of magistrates (leges annales).—ex senatus consulto: another irregularity, for the comitia were the law-making power, and of course had the sole power of exempting from the laws.—magistratum: the legal age of a consul was forty-three, and that of a prætor forty. Pompey was consul B. C. 70, at the age of thirty-six, which was the regular age for the quaestorship.—iterum: Pompey celebrated his second triumph Dec. 31, B. C. 71, and the next day entered upon the consulship.

§ 63. auctoritate, i. e. since they were then prominent members of the Senate.—comprobatam: i. e. the people, in electing Pompey consul, had only followed the example of the Senate in conferring these repeated honors.—judicium, formal decision, i. e. in the Gabinian law.—improbabil, disapproved.—delegistis: this is not literally correct. The Gabinian law merely prescribed that an ex-consul should receive this command: the Senate selected the man. In fact, however, it was a law made for a particular man, and the Senate would not have ventured to appoint any other.

§ 64. parum (same root as parvus), too little; or ill.—sin: the protasis extends to attulistis.—auctoritati, § 51, 2, f.—Asiatico et regio: the two adjectives enhance the impression of the difficulty of the war, by emphasizing its distance and the dignity of the enemy.—pudore, respect for others; temperantia, self-restraint.

§ 65. jam: i. e. it has now gone so far that, &c.—requiruntur, are in demand: pretexts of war are sought for, with cities that are hardly known of.—inferatur, fastened.

§ 66. libenter, etc., I should be glad to argue this face to face, &c.—hostium simulatione, under the guise of enemies: i. e. as if they were.—animos ac spiritus, pride and insolence.—conlatis signis, i. e. in actual warfare.—nisi erit idem, unless he shall also be one.—animum, desires.—idoneus, etc. (§ 65, 2, f), fit to be sent.

§ 67. pacatam: that is, hostilities have not ceased as long as there was any money to be extorted.—prætores, i. e. præprætores: for, after the time of Sulla, the prætors regularly remained at Rome during their term of office. The most notorious
case of such dishonesty was M. Antonius Ceticus, son of the orator, and father of the triumvir. — *publica*, assigned to them for the support of their fleets and armies. — *jaeituri, expenses*, in buying their places. — *condictonibus, bargains*, with creditors, &c. — *quasi non videamus* (§ 61, I, R.), *as if we did not see*.

§ 68. *dubitare quin*, *hesitate*. The usual construction in this sense would be with the infin. The exception is allowed, because the subj. with *dubitare quin* makes a kind of indir. disc. Their thought, in direct disc., would be *credamus, shall we trust?* which remains unchanged except in person. — *auctoritatis*, i.e. the opinion of influential men. — *est vobis auctor, you have as authority*.

Servilius Vatia Isauricus, one of the most reputable men of the time, cos. B. C. 70: he held the proconsulship of Cilicia, B. C. 78-75, in which time he gained great successes over the pirates, and obtained his *agnomen*, IsauricuS, from the capture of Isaura, the mountain fortress of the Isaurians. It was probably his intimate knowledge of the region and the kind of warfare, that led him to support this vigorous measure.

*Curio*, see Verr. I. § 18. — *Lentulus*: Cn. Cornelius Lentulus Clodianus, cos. B. C. 72; not to be confounded with Lentulus Sura, cos. B. C. 71, the accomplice of Catiline. — *Cassius*: for the character of this family, see note on Verr. I. § 30.

§ 69. *de re ... facultate*: the cause itself, or the power of carrying it through. — *potestate praetoria*, official influence as *praetor*; more official than *auctoritas*. — *defer*, put at your service.

§ 70. *templo*: i.e. the *rostra*. The term *templum* was applied to any place consecrated by regular auspices (*augurate*). As the public assembly was held *augurate*, the place of holding it must be consecrated. — *ad remp. adeunt*, are engaged in public affairs (see § 42, 2, ad). — *neque quo, nor because* (§ 66, I, D, R.). — *honoribus*, i.e. public office, which he proposes to earn, not by the arts of a demagogue, but by faithful professional labors, as a lawyer. — *pericula* relates to the *simulatae* in the next section. It was not possible for him to espouse this democratic measure so earnestly, without incurring coolness at least on the part of the aristocracy. — *ut, so far as*.

§ 71. *ego*: expressed not as itself emphatic, but to give emphasis to the whole expression: *I give you my word, &c.* — *tantum ... abest ut videar*, I am so far from seeming (§ 70, 4, D). *hoc honore*, the praetorship. — *affectum*, privileged. — *me oportere*, I am bound (me is obj. of oportere, of which the subj. is *praeferre*, etc.).
Notes.

Catiline I.

Argument.

Chap. 1. Propositio. Catiline's audacity in appearing in the Senate when his guilt is known. — 2. Weakness of the consuls, in allowing him to live. — 3, 4. Contrast, in the cases of Gracchus, Mælius, and Saturninus. — 4. The Senatorial decree is suspended in Catiline's case, till all shall be satisfied of his guilt. His plans enumerated. — Hortatio. 5. He is exhorted to go out and join his confederates. The plots against Cicero have been thwarted; but now they aim at the State. — 6, 7. Catiline has no inducement to remain where all good men hate and shrink from him. — 8. He has offered to go into custody: the Senate shows by silence its approval of Cicero's words. — 9, 10. Though he insolently refuses to depart, yet his defeat as candidate for the consulship has made him from a conspirator into a public enemy. — Peroratio. 11. The State remonstrates against the consul's lenity. — 12. But it is a gain to force him into exile, and thus draw the conspiracy to a head. — 13. For his death would only palliate the evil. So let him go, taking with him the ruin of his plot, the hate of men, and the wrath of the gods.

Page.

§ 5. § 1. etiam (et jam), still. — eludet, mock. — quem ad finem, almost equivalent to quamdiu, but implying some shock or crisis which must follow. — see se jactabit, insolently display itself. — Palati, one of the strongest positions in the city, commanding the Forum, and so most likely to be seized by the conspirators.

The Palatium, an isolated hill, of a rudely quadrangular shape, was the original seat of the city of Rome, Roma Quadrata, from which it spread gradually over the other hills. In the last years of the republic, the Palatine became the most honorable place for residences. Here was Cicero's house as well as Catiline's. On the brow of the hill towards the Sacred Way stood the temple of Jupiter Stator, in which the Senate was now assembled. It was because of its nearness to his house, as well as because of the strength of its position, that the consul selected this temple for the meeting of the Senate on this occasion. In the Empire the Palatine became the seat of the imperial residence, and its name, palatium, has passed in this sense into most modern languages.

bonorum, see § 21. — locus: the regular place of meeting for the Senate was the Curia Hostilia; on special occasions it met in other places, but always in a consecrated place (templum; see note on Manil. Law, § 70). — horum (with a gesture), the senators present. — ora, features; voltus, expression (a sort of hendiadys). — constrictam tenet, is held fast bound. — proxima, superior: for what was done on the night of Nov. 6, see § 4; as to proxima, last night, we do not meet with anything but general assertions.

§ 2. O tempora, etc., what a time! what a state of things! — immo, nay more: immo here negatives only the form of the preceding, as not strong enough. — consili, counsels. — vitemus, subj. of indir. disc. — ad mortem: the consuls originally possessed full powers of judgment in criminal cases, including punishment by death. These highest powers of the imperium were suspended
within the city by laws which gave the right of appeal to the people (see note on § 28), but the Senate could revive it in cases of danger by the formula Videant consules ne quid respublica detrimenti capiat,—a proceeding analogous to the proclamation of martial law. This action the Senate had taken Oct. 21, nearly three weeks before. — oportebat, implied cond. (§ 60, 2, c): the imperf. is used with jam pridem, where we might expect the pluperf. (compare § 58, 2, a).

§ 3. an vero, while, &c., belongs both to interfecit and perfere-mus, introducing (as usual) a sort of reductio ad absurdum.—vir amplissimus, pontifex maximus: observe how these words strengthen the force of the example.

P. Scipio Nasica Serapio was leader of the mob of gentlemen that murdered Tiberius Gracchus, b. c. 133. He held the office of Pontifex Maximus, president of the board (collegium) of pontifices, which had the general superintendence of the State religion. Since in all ancient states the political constitution was based on the State religion, the pontifices exercised great political power. They were the earliest jurists; and the office of their head, the pontifex maximus, was, in Rome, on the whole the first position in dignity and influence. He was appointed by the Board from their own number. But, in the last two centuries of the republic, it was established that the person to be so appointed should be designated by popular election. This was confined to the minority (seventeen) of the thirty-five tribes, designated by lot. An absolute choice by the people was regarded as inadmissible in religious offices.

Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, a young man of high rank and great personal purity of character, attempted to carry through some important reforms, particularly touching the tenure of the public lands, b. c. 133. Requiring more time to make his legislation effective, he attempted illegally to secure his own re-election as Tribune; when he was attacked and killed by a mob of senators headed by Scipio Nasica. The mother of Gracchus was a daughter of the great Scipio, the conqueror of Hannibal.

privatus: Nasica at this time was only a private citizen of consular rank. He afterwards went into exile, and was made Pontifex Maximus in his absence. The word privatus is opposed to nos consules, and the contrast is rhetorically exaggerated.—illa, that case, plural for singular, as frequently in Greek. — Ahala, the magister equitum of the famous Cincinnatus: he killed without law the eques Metius, on suspicion of his aiming at a dangerous power by his lavish gifts of corn (b. c. 439).

§ 6. novis rebus (the classic expression for a violent change of government). — revolution. — senatus consultum: i. e. ut videant consules, etc. The consultum of the Senate was its ordinance, regularly passed and promulgated, and recognized as valid. If it was invalid by reason of informality or intercession of a tribune, it was called senatus auctoritas, and might still be drawn up in form, and would still have a certain modified authority. — vehemens, severe, as regards Catiline; grave, carrying weight, as regards the consuls. — rei publicae (dat. with deest): we know well enough what to do—we have authority enough: it is the execution that is remiss.

§ 4. decrevit (emphatic), there was once a decree, &c. This
word is used (as well as censeo, plaet) to express the intent of the Senate; the consultum, ordinance, or any separate article of it, might, as regarded its purport, be called decretum.

L. Opitius Opimius was consul b.c. 121, when Caius Gracchus, the younger brother of Tiberius, was attempting to carry through a series of measures far more revolutionary than those of his brother. The Senate, the champion of the existing order of things, took alarm, and intrusted the consul with absolute power. In the tumult that ensued, some 3,000 were said to have lost their lives, including Gracchus and his leading associate Fulvius.

The father of the Gracchi was Tiberius Gracchus, one of the most eminent statesmen of his day, distinguished for integrity and humanity, as well as ability and culture. Their mother was Cornelia, daughter of Scipio Africanus, the conqueror of Hannibal. Ancestors on both sides were distinguished in the Second Punic War, and the brothers were likewise connected by kinship and marriage with many of the noblest families of Rome.

The case of Marius was in b.c. 100, the year of his sixth consulship. He was secretly in league with the revolutionists,—Saturninus and Servilius Glaucia, corrupt demagogues, unworthy imitators of the noble Gracchi. When it came to the point, however, the courage of Marius failed him: he deserted his accomplices, and joined the Senate in crushing the revolt. rei publicae, poss. gen., the punishment being looked on as something belonging to the party avenged, and taken from the other party. — remorata est, governing Saturninium, etc.: the punishment is oddly regarded as waiting for them. — vicesimum: strictly speaking, it was now the 19th day from Oct. 21. — horum, the senators. — hujusce modi, i.e. like those others. — tabulis, brazen tablets, on which the laws, &c., were inscribed. The edict is said to be shut up in them (until put in force), like a sword hid in its scabbard. — interfectum esse (§ 58, 11, d'). But, after all, it would have been hardly possible, even with the extraordinary power granted to the consuls, to put the conspirator to death without some overt act. — cupio, I am anxious (emphatic): a concession, opposed by sed, below. — dissolutum, hasty, as having one’s actions out of the control of law, reason, &c. — ipse: Latin in such cases emphasizes the subject, English the object. — nequitia, worthlessness.

§ 5. faucibus, narrow pass, leading north from Etruria. — conlocata, § 72, 2, d. — jam, at once. — erit verendum, etc. This difficult sentence is best rendered by connecting non and potius with verendum: I shall not have more reason to fear; and by remembering that credo is, in this parenthetical use, ironical. The sense is, of course I shall be accused of cruelty rather than slackness. — boni (sc. dicant): here, as usual, the well-intentioned, i.e. those who held the speaker’s views. — ego, opposed to omnes boni.

§ 7. dentique, i.e. then, and not before. — jam, at length. — fateatur, § 65, 2.

§ 6. etiam, besides the forces on guard. — speculabuntur, referring to the spies in the interest of the government, who were in the very heart of the conspiracy. Of these the chief was Fulvia,
mistress of one of the conspirators.—quid, etc., what is there for you to wait for more?—nox, privata domus: the time and place of meeting.—inlustrantur refers to tenebris; erumpunt to parietibus.—recognoscas, review (§ 70, 3, f, r.).

§ 7. dicere, § 58, 11, b.—fore (subj. C. Manlius): the rising in arms is put first, as being the main thing; the person is less important.—num, etc., was I mistaken in, &c.—idem has the force of also.—optimatum, i.e. of the senatorial party.—in ante diem, § 56, 1, f.—sui conservandi (§ 73, 3, a): this passage is neatly turned, to save their self-respect by showing that discretion was the better part of valor.—cum dicebas, equivalent to saying (compare § 72, 1, c).—discessu, loc. abl.—tamen, opposed to discessu: though the rest were gone.

§ 8. Prænesto (Palestrina), an important town of Latium, about twenty miles from Rome, in a very commanding situation. Its possession would have given Catiline an important military post. It was a chief stronghold of the Marian party in the civil war.—senalistine, did you not find? The negative meaning occasionally found in this enclitic is probably its original one.—coloniam: Prænesto proudly declined the Roman franchise, and retained its nominal independence until the time of the Social War. Sulla established a military colony there by way of punishment.—presidiis, the garrison manning the walls; custodiis, sentinels at the gates; vigiliiis, night-guard.—agis, etc.: notice the climax.

§§, noctem superiorem, night before last, i.e. Nov. 6: priore (below) refers to the same.—jam, you will at once see.—quam te, § 67, 1, b, r.—inter falcarios, i.e. the street of the scythemakers.—non agam obscure, i.e. I will speak plainly.

§ 9. gentium. § 50, 2, d.—quam rem publicam, what sort of a state?—hoc, hic, here, right here.—sanctissimo, venerable.—omnium, § 47, 5, b.—atque adeo, and in fact.—opertebat, see § 2.—igitur (resumptive), as I said.—quemque, each of the conspirators.—placert, for indic.; reliqueres, for deliber. subj. (both in indir. disc.).—equites: these were C. Cornelius and L. Vargunteius.

§ 10. id temporis (§ 50, 2, c), at that very time.—desiderant, have been wanting (§ 58, 2, a).—si minus (sc. omnes), if not.

§§. § 11. atque, and particularly.—huc, i.e. in whose temple we are sitting.—Stator (sto), the one who causes to stand firm. The temple to Jupiter Stator was vowed by Romulus when his troops were giving way, and built upon the spot where their flight was stayed. (See note, § 1).—in uno, etc., risked upon one man (i.e. Cicero: compare Thucyd. ii. 35).—proximis: the consular election was usually held in July; but this year, on account of the disturbed condition of things, did not take place until Oct. 28, when
Manlius was in fact already in arms. Catiline's successful competitors were D. Silanus and L. Murena. — nullo... concitato, without exciting (the most common way of expressing this idiom in Latin). — videbam, I saw all along (§ 58, 3).

§ 12. nuno jam, now at length. — hujus imperi, i.e. which I possess; that conferred upon the consuls by the special act of the Senate. Without this, they possessed an imperium, it is true, but restricted by laws. — tu, opposed to comitum. — hortor, see note on desiderant, § 10. — rei publicae limits sentina somewhat in the sense of an adjective, — political rabble. Or, keeping the original figure, we might say, bilge-water of the ship of state.

§ 13. faciebas, were on the point of doing. — hostem, a public enemy, over whom the consul would have that right — me consulis, ask my advice. — jam, longer. — nota, brand. — domesticae, of the household; privatuum rerum, in private life, i.e. intercourse with others out of the family.

§ 14. quid vero, and say. — vacuefecisses: this crime is mentioned by no other writer, and is perhaps one of the orator's exaggerations. — alio... scelere: Sallust mentions, as a common matter of belief, that Catiline killed his own son, in order to gratify his new wife, Aurelia Orestilla, — "a woman praised for nothing but beauty." — facile, etc., I readily pass in silence. — tanti, etc., a crime of such monstrosity. — ruinas: this charge was undoubtedly correct. The conspiracy was mainly composed of men of ruined fortunes, who hoped to better themselves in the general scramble of a revolution. — Idibus: the Kalends and Ides — the beginning and middle of the month — were the usual terms for the payment of debts. Catiline's failure in his consular canvass had probably stirred up his creditors to push him for payment. — difficultatem, straits.

§ 15. cum, causal, though to be rendered when. — prid. Kal. On the 1st of January, B.C. 65, the consuls Cotta and Torquatus entered upon their office. It was the intention of Catiline to take advantage of their inauguration to murder the new consul and seize the government. The plot got whispered about, and its execution was put off to Feb. 5, when it failed again through Catiline's over-haste. The act of Dec. 31 seems to have been in preparation for the rising. — cum telo (a technical expression), with weapons. — manum, a band (of assassins). — mentem aliquam, change of mind. — aut... aut, etc, either obscure or few. — non multa, etc.: i.e. they were too well known to need recapitulation, and too numerous to admit of it. — interficere. "Cicero charges the man with frequent attempts to murder him since he has been elected.
consul, but he does it in such a way as not to convince us that he is speaking the truth" (Long). — petitiones, thrusts, the word regularly used for the attack of a gladiator. — ita conjectas, so aimed that they seemed impossible to be shunned. — corpore (a proverbial expression), i.e. dodging with the body.

§ 16. quae quidem, etc., I know not by what rites it has been consecrated and set apart, that you think, &c.

§ 17. vita, i.e. that you should desire to prolong it (in allusion to § 15). — quae nulla (§ 50, 2, c. R.'), nothing of which. — necessarius: this word is used of any special personal relation, as that of kinsman, client, guest, comrade, member of the same order, &c. (see note on necessitum, Verr. 1. § 11). — quid quod, what of this — that, &c. — ista, where you are sitting. — consulares: these voted as a class, and probably sat together; but it is not easy to see how Catiline could have sat among them. — ferendum is the pred. of the clause quod . . . reliquerunt.

§ 18. quae (i.e. patria) . . . agit, she pleads with you. — sociorum, i.e. the allied cities of the province of Africa, which Catiline governed as praetor, B. C. 67. — leges et questiones, probably both as praetor in Rome and as praetor in Africa. — neglegendas implies only evasion; evertendas, violence. — superiora illa, your former crimes.

§ 19. me . . . abhorreat, subj. of est ferendum. — quicquid inovepuerit, at the least noise, modifies timeri. — abhorreat, is inconsistent with. — hunc . . . eripe, rescue me from, &c., lit., snatch it from me (§ 51, 2, e). — aliquando, some time or other (implying impatience).

§ 13. in custodiam dedisti, i.e. in free custody, on parole. This appears to have been late in October, when Catiline was prosecuted on the Lex Plautia de vi. — M. Lepidum, the consul of B. C. 66. — ad me: "a proposal," says Long, "which might be viewed either as evidence of his innocence or his impudence." — parietibus, loc. abl.; montibus, abl. of means. Observe the emphasis of the contrast. — Metellum: Q. Metellus Celer, consul B. C. 60; he did good service in the campaign against Catiline. He was nephew of Cæcilia, the friend of Roscius (see note R. A. § 50). — virum optimum, that excellent man (ironical). — demigrasti, moved over. — sagacissimum, keen-scented; fortissimum, energetic and fearless. — videtur debere, does it seem that he ought?

§ 20. refer: Halm conjectures that the members of the Senate were secretly trying to persuade Catiline to go into voluntary exile,
when all prosecutions would be dropped. — *id enim, for that is what you demand*. — *placere* has for subj., *te . . . exsilium*. — *abhorreret, is contrary to*: because the Senate had no power to pronounce such a judgment. — *tacitorum, i.e. their silence gives consent to my words.*

93. § 21. *Sestio*: whom Cicero afterwards defended in one of his greatest orations (see p. 147). — *M. Marcello*: a prominent member of the aristocracy, consul, B. C. 51; not to be confounded with the person of the same name mentioned § 19. He took a leading part in the civil war against Caesar, and was afterwards defended by Cicero (see p. 210). — *consuli, though consul*. — *jure optimo, with perfect right*. — *vim et manus, violent hands*. — *videlicet cara*, alluding to his demand to have the matter submitted to the Senate. — *quorum, § 48, 3, b, r. — haec (with a gesture), all that is round us, the city, &c.* — *prosequantur, escort*. It was the custom for those who were going into voluntary exile to be thus accompanied to the gate by their friends. If Catiline would depart, the whole Senate would forget his crimes and pay him this honor (perhaps irrational).

§ 22. *te frangat, i.e. break down your stubbornness*. — *duint*, § 30, 6, e. — *tametsi* (corrective), *although*. — *tempus, moment*. — *est tanti, it is worth the price* (§ 54, 8, a).

§ 23. *inimico, a private enemy*, thus attributing to Cicero personal and private motives of opposition. — *si vis, if you choose*. — *recta* (sc. *via*), *straightway*. — *latoquino, partisan warfare*, as opposed to regular war (*justum bellum*).

94. § 24. *quamquam, and yet* (corrective, cf. *tametsi*, § 22). — *Forum Aurelium*, a small place on the *Via Aurelia*, about fifty miles from Rome. The *Via Aurelia* was the road which led along the sea-coast of Etruria, by which Catiline left the city the following night. The word Forum, *market-place*, was used for the highest class of inferior towns (market towns) within the territory of a colony or *municipium*. — *aquilam*: the silver eagle had been adopted by Marius as the standard of the legion, and the eagle in question was said to have been actually used in the army of Marius. The place in the camp where the eagle was kept was in fact consecrated: hence the word *sacrarium*. — *ut possis, exclam. clause with ut, § 70, 4, c. — necem, slaughter, or death by violence.*

§ 25. *haec res, i.e. exile*. — *non modo, to say nothing of*. — *atque connects perditis and derelictis*; *ab connects fortuna* and *spe to derelictis*. — *confiam, got together* (like molten metal).

§ 26. *bacchabere, will revel*. — *studium, taste for*. — *meditati sunt, have been practised*; *feruntur, are talked about*. — *facinus, deed of violence*, contrasted with *stuprum, debauchery*; just as *bonis otiosorum, property of peaceful citizens*, is with *somno*
maritorum, the repos of husbands.—ubi ostentes, an opportun-ty to display.—confectum, shattered.

§ 27. repulsi: the consul who presided over the election had it in his power to exercise great influence. That of Cicero on this occasion was perfectly legitimate, in maintaining order and checking Catiline’s adherents.—exsil, consul: observe the play upon words.—latrocinium: rebellion is regularly described by words which ally it with disorder or highway robbery; as, tu-multus.

95. querimoniam, i. e. for not having suppressed the conspiracy more vigorously.—detester ac deprecere (construed with a me, above), remove by protest and plea.—animis mentibus-que, hearts and minds.—evocatorem servorum, a summoner of slaves, i. e. to enlist under him.—maictari, § 70, 3, a.

§ 28. at, but (it may be said): introducing an objection.—rogatæ sunt: the magistrate who proposed a law formally asked the people whether they would accept it; hence rogo was the word regularly used for this act, and the proposition itself was called rogatio. The leges in question, Valeria, Porcia, and Sem-pronia (of Caius Gracchus), protecting the life and liberty of citizens, had been not merely asked (rogatæ), but passed (jussæ); not merely proposed (lateæ), but carried (perlrate). The word rogatæ appears to be used here to emphasize the part which the people had in their establishment.—praæclaram...gratiam, you show a noble gratitude.—tam mature: Cicero says of himself that he was the only novus homo [nulla commendatione majorum] on record, who both sought and gained the consulship the first year the law permitted it. He was equally fortunate in the quæstorship and praetorship.

§ 29. inertiae, sc. invidia, the reproach.—an belongs with non existimas.—conflagraturum, will burn up, suggested by ardebunt.—idem sentiunt, have the same views.—mentibus, thoughts.—superiorum, before them.

96. maxime, ever so much.—partam (from pario), acquired (a very common meaning).—putarem, the real apodosis: the regularity of the sentence being broken by sui, etc.

§ 30. videant, subj. of charact.—aluerunt, indic. of fact.—regie, despotically: the Roman idea of king and kingly government was associated with Tarquinius Superbus. Here the word also implies the assumption of unlawful power (= tyrannice), as well as its abuse.—eodem, to the same place.—adulta, full-grown, as opposed to stirps, the stock, and semen, the seed.

§ 31. jam diu: the conspiracy was ready to break out b. c. 65 (see note on § 15).—versamur, have lived.—nescio quo pacto,
somehow (§ 67, 2, e). — visceribus, vitals (properly the great interior organs, as the heart, lungs, &c.).

§ 97. circumstare, hang around: the praetor urbanus had his tribunal on the Forum — consensionem, unanimity.

§ 33. ominibus, prospects. — Juppiter, i. e. the temple. — arcebis, a mild imperative (§ 57, 7, d).

CATILINE II.

Argument.

Chap. Pars I. 1. Catiline is gone: the city breathes again: it is open war now, and no longer a concealed insurrection. — 2. Excuse for setting him go: all were not convinced. Now, his guilt is manifest. — 3. His force is not formidable: what remains is closely watched. — 4. All have been forced to declare themselves. Joy at his departure: he has been a leader in every vice and crime. — Pars II. 5. His associates are desperate but contemptible: character of this domestic war. — 6. Oudum of his banishment decreed: in fact, he went to his own. — 7. He will not go into exile, but to the camp of Manlius, and will seek to cast odium on the consul. — Pars III. 8-10. The real fear is from those who remain, viz.: (a) Rich but embarrassed profligates; (b) Poor debtors: the two classes have nothing to gain from viol. ce; (c) Sulla's veterans, who will not be allowed to repeat those times; (d) Ruined men, hoping for any change; (e) Criminals who had better be fought in the field; (f) Profligates and debauchees, men of Catiline's own stamp. — 11. Superiority of the patriot forces arrayed against them. — Peroratio. 12. Review of the situation: warning to the ill-disposed. — 13. The work shall be done without shock to the public order: the gods will lend their help.

Page

De. § 1. ejectimus, expelled (with violence); emisimus, sent forth. The words vel . . . vel imply that the same act may be called by either name. — ipsum, of his own accord. — verbis prosecuti may apply as well to kind words of dismissal as to invective. — abit, simply, is gone; excessat, has retreated before the storm; evasit, has escaped by stealth; erupit, has broken forth with violence, a climax of expression, but nearly identical in sense. — atque (adding with emphasis), and so. — hunc quidem, him at any rate. — sine controversia, without dispute — unquestionably. — versabitur, will be busy. — campo, foro, parietae, observe the narrowing climax. — loco motus est, a gladiatorial expression: he has lost his vantage-ground. — nullo, etc., i. e. his defenders till now could screen him by forms of law. — iustum, regular, in due form.

§ 2. cruentum (pred.), reeking with blood. — vivis nobis, leaving us alive. — civis, acc. plur. — jacet, etc., lies prostrate. — retorquet oculos begins the figure of a wild beast, which is continued in faucibus.
§ 3. omnis, acc. plur. — oportebat, § 60, 2, c. — in hoc ipso, in this very point. — qui ... accuset, as to accuse (§ 65, 2). — hujus imperi, see note on Cat. I. § 12. — res publica, the public interest.

99. § 4. cum viderem, seeing: its obj. is fore ut ... possetis (§ 58, 11, f.). — vobis, construed with probata; ne ... quidem, i. e. much less the people at large. — videretis, § 66, 2. — quod ... exerit, § 70, 5, but subj. on account of the implied indir. disc. — eduxisset, § 68, 1. — mihi, eth. dat. (§ 51, 7, d') — in praetexta: the toga praetexta, with a broad purple border, was worn by boys as well as magistrates: this means, therefore, that Togius was still a boy. — as alienum, etc., i. e. petty debts run up in cookshops and the like; not like the heavy mortgages spoken of afterwards. — quos viros: for a characterization of these, see the next division of this oration.

§ 5. praec, in comparison with. — Gallicans, i. e. those stationed in Gaul, — Cisalpine Gaul, the northern part of Italy. The ager Gallicus below was that strip of sea-coast, north of Picenum, formerly occupied by the Senones, but at this time reckoned a part of Umbria. — hunc, the present. — Q Metellus (Celer): see note on Cat. I. § 19. — luxuria (Synecdoche), high-livers. — vadimonia deserere, cut bail: i. e. leave their bondsmen in the lurch. — edictum praetoris, in effect like a sheriff's warrant. (A proclamation was published by each new praetor, "in which he declared the manner in which he intended to administer his department." Maine). — coincident, collapse. — purpura: the Roman toga was of unbleached wool: it was a mark of effeminacy and foppishness for any men but magistrates to wear colors in public. — mallem, § 57, 4, c. — eduxisset, § 70, 3, f. — si ... permanent, a fut. cond. — pertimescendo, i. e. he will keep an eye on them.

100. § 6. superioris noctis, i. e. two nights before the last. — ne, nay: an affirmative particle, wrongly spelt ne. — nisi vero, ironical (as usual), introducing a reductio ad absurdum. — Aurelia via, see Cat. I. § 24.


§ 8. ullo, § 21, 2, h. — serviebat, pandered.

101. § 9. diversa studia. In another passage (Cat. 13) Cicero ascribes to Catiline: "Cum tristibus severe, cum remissis jucundae, cum senibus graviter, cum juventute comiter, cum faciornoribus audaciter, cum libidinosis luxuriós vivere." — in dissimilitudine, in different directions. — possitatis, § 64, 1, b. — indo, the regular training-school. — scena, i. e. among the actors of the
baser sort. — tamen, i. e. in contrast to the usual effeminacy of these profligates. — exercitationes, abl. of means: trained by the practice of debaucheries and crimes to endure, &c. — frigore . . . perferendis, abl. with adsuefactus. — fortis, an able fellow. — istic, his hangers-on. — subsidia, etc., i. e. means which might be, &c.


§ 11. instare plane, is close at hand. — nescio quod, § 67, 2, e. — unitus: Pompey, of course, now returning from his triumphs in the East.

102. resecand a erunt, shall need pruning.

§ 12. etiam, still (after all that has been done). — enim, i. e. the idea is absurd, as implied in the irony that follows. — quid, what of this, that it was really the act of the Senate that drove him out: ut is here nearly equivalent to quod. — hesterno die qualifies convocavi.

§ 13. in proximam: Cicero certainly said nothing definite as to the night of Nov. 7, although he wishes to make it appear that he had. — et, dat. of agent (§ 51, 4) — teneretur, was caught. — pararet, for plup. (see Cat. I. § 2, end). — securis, fasos: the use of these signified that Catiline intended to assume the authority and imperium of consul. — aequilam: see Cat. I. § 24.

§ 14. eiciebam, conative imperf. (§ 58, 3, c).

103. suo nomine, i. e. not by Catiline's order. — nuno, even now. — Massiliae: Marseilles, an ancient Greek city of Gaul. always faithful and friendly to Rome. It was a favorite place of sojourn for Romans who went into voluntary exile. — condicionem, terms. — pertinuerit, take alarm. — erunt qui . . . velint, § 65, 2, a.

§ 15. est tanti, it is worth the price. — sane (concessive), for all me. — aliquando, one day. — illum emiserim . . . ejecterim: let him go . . . drove him out. — si interfector, etc.: adroitly excusing his leniency to those who would have wished harsher measures.

§ 16. quamquam (corrective), and yet. — nemo, not a man. — misericors: his going to Manlius was his inevitable ruin, and yet, for all their pity, they desired this. — latrocinantem, in partisan warfare.

104. § 17. sibi, for their own good. — placare, gain over. — ex quibus generibus: "a similar picture," says Long, "may be drawn of any great city." — comparantur, are made up.

§ 18. est eorum, consists of those (§ 50, 1, c). — dissolvi, sc. a possessionibus: although they might pay their debts, they will not make up their minds to do so. — honestissima, very respectable.
§ 9-24. Catiline II.

— argento, plate. — sis, § 58, 6. — tabulas novas, new accounts, i. e. a sweeping alteration of debts, such as that, B.C. 86, "which reduced every private claim to the fourth part of its nominal amount, and cancelled three-fourths in favor of the debtors" (Momm.). — auctionariae: a forced sale would give them new accounts. — certare cum usuris (§ 54, 6, b), struggle to meet the interest. — fructibus is abl. of means. — uteremur, we should find them. — vota facturi, likely to offer prayers.

105. § 19. quamquam premuntur: a man must be rich in Rome to be active in politics. — sciloet, in fact. — praesentis agrees with deos. — jam, at once. — non vident, don't they see? (§ 71, 1, R.). — fugitivo, i. e. (probably) one of their own slaves.

§ 20. ex eis coloniis: Sulla rewarded his veterans (120,000 in number) by grants of land, partly in municipia already existing, partly by founding new colonies. Those here referred to may have belonged to either class. — universas, as a whole. — ei sunt coloni, there are (among them) colonists of this sort. — beatii, wealthy. — lectoris, choice. — apparatiss, splendid. — Sulla, etc., they must raise Sulla from the dead: they can have no such hope in Catiline. — illorum temporum, i. e. the times of proscription. — inustus, branded.

106. § 21. sane, rather. — vacillant, stagger under. — vadiumonii, etc., the three steps in bankruptcy, — bail, judgment, and sale of property; proscriptio is properly the public notice that property is for sale. — initiatores, swindlers. — stare, keeping their feet.

§ 22. carcer, the Tullianum, a dungeon near the Forum, now existing. It was properly a jail, for temporary detention, as imprisonment was not recognized in Rome as a form of punishment. — numero, in order; genere, rank. — imberbis, a mark of effeminacy; bene barbaros, a practice regarded by respectable Romans as soppish; talaribus, down to the heel; velis, veils, rather than the substantial toga, which was of unbleached wool.

§ 23 saltare et cantare: these accomplishments were hardly regarded as respectable in the better classes. — spargere, i. e. in food or drink: poisoning has in all ages been carried to high art in Italy.

107. his noctibus: although this was spoken Nov. 9, yet the Roman year was at this time in such a state of confusion, that the true time was probably some time in December, just when the winter was setting in.

§ 24. cohortem prætoriam, body-guard. — debilitatam, broken down. — urbes coloniarum, etc.: the colonies and municipia included their walled cities, urbes, in their territory. These well-
manned walls would be more than a match for Catiline's rude
works. — ornamenta, outfit or equipment of all sorts.

§ 25. ex eo ipso, from the very comparison. — jaceant, lie
helpless. — bona ratio, good counsel; perdita, desperate.

108. § 26. custodia vigiliaque: see note, Cat. I. § 8. —
consultum, etc., provident measures have been taken. — coloni
municiopesque: see note on municipes, R. A. § 5. A colony dif-
fered from a municipium in being founded by Roman (or Latin)
citizens, who retained from the first their citizenship, either in whole
or in part. At the time of Cicero all practical difference between
the two classes of towns had been done away; but the colonies
always retained a certain precedence in rank. — vocari videtis:
the members of the Senate had their gathering place (senaculum)
adjoining the curia, and were summoned by heralds (precones)
from this into the building. If any were absent, the heralds were
sent to their houses. The curia and senaculum could be seen from
the place of assembly on the Forum, and the heralds were no doubt
noticed going their rounds.

§ 27. monitos volo, § 72, 3, c. — etiam atque etiam, again and
again. — solution, too remiss. — quod, etc., as for the rest. — ho-
um and his relate to the conspirators, Lentulus, Cethegus, &c.

§ 28. togato: as the toga was only the garb of peace, this word
means in peace, or as a statesman, instead of a warrior.

109. manifeste, overt. — illud, in appos. with ut... pos-
sitis: I will secure that you shall all be safe.

§ 29. quam urbem... hanc, this city which (§ 48, 3, b).

CATILINE III.

Argument.

CHAP. Exordium. 1. The citizens are congratulated on their safety. — Narratio.
2, 3. The conspirators' plans have been watched: the Gallic embassy seized with letters;
which, with the reasonable leaders, are brought before the Senate. — 4. Testimony of Vol-
6. The Senate decrees the custody of the traitors and a general thanksgiving. — 7. Now all
is safe: Catiline alone was to be feared, and only while in the city. — 8, 9. The Divine
aid manifest in sundry omens; chiefly in the madness of the traitors in confiding their
counsels to the Gauls. — Peroratio. 10. Exhortation to keep the thanksgiving: this
bloodless victory compared with others more costly. — 11. Cicero claims no reward but a
grateful remembrance. — 12. But he is less fortunate than victors in foreign war, since the
conquered are still citizens. The State shall be his reward and defence.

§ 1. vitam, lives: the plur. could not be used in Latin (§ 14,
1, a). — bona, estates (landed property); fortunas, goods (per-
sonal property).
110. § 2. Salutis, preservation. — illum: Romulus, who, after his death, was considered to be a god, and identified with the Sabine god of war, Quirinus. — eorum, i.e. the swords.

§ 3. per me, by my means (§ 54, 4, b). — vobis, opposed to in Senatu. — expectatis, are waiting to hear. — ut, since. — cum reliquisset, having left. — cisclebam, notice the difference in tense between this word and erupit. — illa, sc. invidia. — exterminari (terminus), put out of the boundaries. — restitissent, in dir. disc. restiterint (fut. perf.).

111. § 4. Oratio, argument; fidem faceret, gain credence. — ut... comprehenderem, that I might get hold of the matter. — Allobrogum. The Allobroges were a Gallic nation, between the Rhone and the Alps (in the modern Dauphiné and Savoy); subdued B. c. 121, and united with the province Narbonensis. They were restless under their new masters (see § 22), and inclined to take up with Catiline's movement. Their ambassadors had come to complain of certain exactions of their provincial governor.— belli, i.e. when out of the range of the Roman jurisdiction; tumultus, rebellion, i.e. when nearer home. — Lentulo, see Introd.: he was consul B. c. 71, but was expelled from the Senate the next year, with sixty-three others, on account of his character, and now held the praetorship with the view of beginning the course of honors over again. — litteris, a letter. — manifesto deprehenderetur, taken in the act: the words apply strictly to the criminals themselves.

§ 5. Praetores. Although the regular duties of the praetors were judicial, yet they possessed the imperium, and in virtue of this could command troops in the absence of the consuls, or under their authority. — amans rei publicae, patriotic. — qui sentirent, as men who, &c. — pontem Mulvium, the bridge over the Tiber, about two miles above the city, by which the principal roads (the Flaminian and Cassian) led into north Italy. — villis, country houses. — inter eos, i.e. between the two divisions. — praefectura: this was the title given to a class of towns which, after losing their political independence (see note R. A. § 5) had justice administered by a prefect, appointed by the Roman praeator urbanus, as his representative. (Momm. Röm. St. i. p. 185.) They were, therefore, as a class wholly deprived of self-government; but after the Social War (B. c. 90–89), in which citizenship was bestowed upon all the Italians, the praefectura became municipia, only sometimes retaining their old familiar appellation, as in this case. — Reatina: Reate was a very ancient town of the Sabines, about forty miles north-east of Rome. Cicero was the patronus (see note R. A. § 4) of Reate; that is, acted as its attorney and legal counsel: which accounts for his having this body-guard of young men from that
place. Besides, these simple mountaineers still retained something of the old Italian virtues, and therefore were well fitted for this service.

§ 6. tertia vigilia: the night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four equal watches; this time, therefore, was about 3 A. M. — res, the occasion of the attack. — ignorabatur, etc. Though the Allobroges had played the conspirators false, and knew that the consul had his plans ready, they did not know what these plans were, and therefore were as much taken by surprise as Volturnius himself. Even the troops would appear not to have known what special enterprise they were engaged in.

112. ipsa, the men (as opposed to the letters). — machinator: Gabinius had been the go-between in this case; he and Statilius had had it in charge to burn the city (Sall. Cat. 43, 44). — dum, as yet. — praeter, etc., since Lentulus was notoriously lazy.

§ 7. cum vix, dat. after placeret, which has for subject litteras . . . deferrem (see § 66, 2). — esse facturum governs the clause ut . . . deferrem: it may be rendered: I said I would not fail to lay before the public council a matter touching the public danger before it had been tampered with (integram). — et enim si, for even if: — frequentem, full.

§ 8. admonitu, suggestion. — introduxi, sc. in Senatum. — fidem publicam, assurance of safety: he was to be used as State's evidence. — vix = at length with difficulty. — servorum: in the memory of the terrible servile insurrections in Sicily, and especially that of Spartacus in Italy, less than ten years before, this would shock and terrify his hearers beyond measure. — ut . . . uteretur (§ 70, 3, a), obj. of the verb implied in mandata, etc. — erat, § 67, 1, b.

113. § 9. equitatum. The Roman cavalry was chiefly composed of Gallic and other auxiliaries (see note on the Equestrian Order, Verr. I. § 1). — defuturas (§ 67, 1), dep. on the verb implied in praescriptum. — sibi (copias) refers to the conspirators; sibi (confirmasse) to the Allobroges. — fatia Sibyllinis, the books bought by Tarquinius Superbus of the Cumæan Sibyl. They were kept in charge of a board, collegium, the quindecimviri sacris faciundis, and consulted in cases of great public emergency. They appear to have been the source of the introduction of Grecian rites and forms of worship in Rome (Marquardt, Röm. Alt. iv. p. 51). — haruspicum. The haruspices were Etruscan soothsayers, who interpreted the will of the gods, chiefly from the entrails of animals sacrificed. They were a private class, and were not to be confounded with the augurs, who were a board of Roman noblemen, of high rank, who interpreted the auspices according to the native Roman rules. — Cinnam, etc.: L. Cornelius Cinnus was colleague
of Marius, and ruled Rome after his death, B.C. 86. L. Cornelius Sulla ruled Rome B.C. 82–79 (see § 23). — fatalem, destined. — virgínium: the Vestal Virgins, six in number, maidens of high rank, consecrated to chastity and the service of Vesta. They were peculiarly sacred, and were highly privileged. Violation of their vow of chastity was incestus, and was regarded as a prodigium of very bad omen. Of the incident referred to here nothing further is known. — Capitóli: the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus (see note, Verr. IV. § 15) was burned during the rule of the Marian faction, B.C. 83.

§ 10. Saturnálibus: a very ancient festival, in honor of Saturnus, the god of seed-sowing, celebrated Dec. 19. During this festival every serious business was suspended; and it was so complete a holiday that slaves feasted at the same tables with their masters. No better opportunity could be found for the outbreak of an insurrection than this season of unrestrained jollification. — tabellás, tablets of wood: wax was spread on the inside, and on this the writing was scratched with a stílus. When used for letters, the tablets were tied about with a linen thread, linum, and sealed. — ipsius manu: the ambassadors had made sure to get all the conspirators committed in writing except Cassius, who alone had the sagacity to keep out of it. — senatóri: the Gallic tribes were governed by an aristocracy, having a council or senate as its mouth-piece. — sese, etc.: in dir. disc., faciam quæ vestris legatis confirmavi. — sibi receptissent, had taken upon themselves. — tamen: i.e. notwithstanding the staggering evidence against him. — semper ... fusisse, had always been a fancier of good cutlery. — est vero, etc., i.e. you may well recognize it: it is, &c. — avi tui: Cornelius Lentulus, cos. B.C 162. He was princeps senatus, that is, designated by the censors as first man of the Senate: an honorary office, held ordinarily by patricians (Momm. i. p. 92). It was from this dignity that the emperors derived one of their chief titles, princeps, — that by which they were known in civil administration, as by that of imperator in regard to foreign politics and war. — débuit (§ 58, 11, a, R.), ought to have recalled. (The joining of such opposites as muta and revocaró is called oxymoron, or paradox.)

§ 11. eadem ratione = in eandem sententiam, to the same purport. — si ... vellet, subj. of indir. disc. (si vis).

114. per quam (§ 54, 4, b), i.e. who had conducted them.

§ 12. quis sim, etc. This letter is given with slight variations by Sallust. — jam, still. — infíorum, i.e. slaves; see note, § 8.

§ 13. furtim, stealthily ("like thieves"). — indicare, inform against. — a principibus, the leading men: the voting was in the order of dignity (see note, Cat. IV. § 1). — sententia: the views of individual senators. — perscriptum: the vote in the Senate.
merely determined the substance of the ordinance, which was afterwards written out in regular form by the secretaries, under the direction of the presiding officer.

§ 14. *verbis amplissimis, in the most ample terms. — gratiae aguntur, thanks are rendered.*

115. *conlegæ, C. Antonius: see Introd. Cat. I. — ret publice consiliis, the public counsels: i.e. his own as consul. — se abdicasset: Lentulus could not properly be called to account during his magistracy, and was therefore compelled to abdicate (see below). — L. Cassium, etc.: these last mentioned had not yet been arrested, but Ceparius was caught in his flight and brought back. — pastores: Apulia was, as now, used chiefly for pasturage. In the summer, when these broad plains were dried up, the flocks were driven to the mountain pastures of Samnium and Lucania. These pastoral regions have always been the home of a lawless and restless population, prone to brigandage.*

§ 15. *supplioctio, a day of prayer, proclaimed by the Senate, either in thanksgiving, gratulatio, as in the present case, or in entreaty favor of the gods. Another class, obsecuratio, was directed by the Sibyline books (see note, § 9), in order to ward off some impending calamity. — eorum, i.e. the gods. — meo nomine (a mercantile phrase), on my account. — togato, as a civilian: the toga was the regular dress of the Roman in time of peace; none other was authorized to wear it, and the Roman was required to wear it when acting in a civil capacity. — liberasses: in the decree, liberavit. — bene gesta agrees with re publica. — jus, rights. — tamen: he was allowed to resign instead of being put to death without (as in the case below). — religio, religious scruple.*

116. *quo minus occideret, to prevent his killing, following religio (§ 55, 1, a). — C. Glauciam, see note Cat. I. § 4. — nominatio: i.e. the authority was conferred in general terms, by the formula Videant, etc. — privato, as a private citizen.*

§ 16. *pellebam, was attempting, etc.: see Cat. I., passim. — tam diu, so long only. — consilium, ability to plan. — jam habebat, already had in hand: he had reduced conspiracy to a science.*

§ 17. *huno ego: two pronouns are often put together thus for antithesis. — callidum, experienced. — depulisseme, pushed aside: the image is of averting a crushing weight (molem), just ready to fall. — non ille, etc.: i.e. as Cethagus did. — tanto ante: this praise of Catiline's sagacity is hardly consistent with his successive schemes of conspiracy, repeatedly foiled for now three years (see Cat. I. § 15). — rei publicae, dat. after denuntiavisset: testes, in appos. with both signum and litterae. — manifesti, flagrant.*

117. *hostis (predic. appos.), as an enemy.*
§ 18. quod... potuisse (parenthetical), because, &c. — consiti limits gubernatio in the predicate: to belong to human wisdom; tum (below) answers to cum. — faces, etc.: these omens are such as the Romans observed and noted carefully. Livy's history is full of them. — prætermittendum, inadvertently; reinquendum, intentionally.

§ 19. Cotta et Torquato, consuls B. C. 65, the year in which Catiline's conspiracy was first intended to break out. — aera: the laws were engraved on bronze tables. Some of these are still extant. — illa... Romulus: it is disputed whether this was the bronze statue of the wolf suckling the infants, which is now in the Capitoline Museum at Rome, and which bears marks either of lightning seaming one of its hind legs, or of some defect in the casting. Mommsen (Vol. I. p. 608) holds it to be the same. — flexissent: in dir. disc. flexerint, following appropinquare, which has a future sense.

§ 20. illorum, the haruspices. — idem (plur.), they also.

118. contra atque, opposite to what (§ 43, 3, a). — solis... conspiceret: this is one of the most conclusive passages in support of the view that the Capitolium, or Temple of Jupiter Capitolinus, was on the south-western point of the hill. A statue here, facing east, would also face (conspiceret) the forum and comitium, which would not be the case with one upon the north-eastern point. — conlocandum locaverunt: the regular expression for giving out a contract (§ 72, 5, c). — illi, of year before last. — consulibus and nobis, abl. abs. expressing the date (§ 84, 1).

§ 21. præcepse, headstrong; mente captus, insane. — haec omnia, i.e. the universe. — rei publicae (dat.), against the State. — in sēdem Concordiæ: one of the principal temples at the northern end of the Forum, where the Senate had held its session on this day. It was built by the consul L. Opimius, B. C. 121, after his bloody victory over C. Gracchus. One would almost think it a piece of satire.

§ 22. quo: abl. of means (§ 54, 6, c). — si dicam, if I should say (§ 59, 4, b). — illa: the words in brackets are a manifest gloss.

119. gens relates here to the Gauls as a whole, not to the Allobroges in particular. — ultero, voluntarily. — patriokia: the patricians were the original citizens of Rome; and the plebeians, the mass, were their clients or dependants, foreign residents, and emancipated slaves. When the plebeians, after a contest of more than a hundred years, obtained an equality of political rights, the original patrician families still continued to be an hereditary aristocracy, with no political privileges, but with the exclusive right to certain positions of mere honor and dignity, such as the princeps
senatus (see note, § 10) and certain priestly offices. All patricians were of course members of the new nobility. Of the conspirators, Catiline, Lentulus, and Cethegus were patricians.

§ 23. pulvinaria, shrines: properly cushions, upon which the statues of the gods were laid, when a feast was spread before them. This was called lectisternium, and was usually connected with the supplicatio (see note, § 15). Only certain gods, chiefly Grecian, had pulvinaria, and the rite was established by direction of the Sibylline books (see note, § 9). — illas dies: the supplicatio lasted several days.

§ 24. P. Sulpicius (Rufum), a young man of remarkable eloquence, a leader in the reforming party among the aristocracy, one of the speakers in Cicero's De Oratore. He was tribune b. c. 88, and his quarrel with C. Cæsar was the first act of the Civil War. By his proposition, the command in the Mithridatic War was transferred from Sulla to Marius; and when Sulla refused to obey, and marched upon the city, Sulpicius was one of the first victims. — conlegam: Lucius Cornelius Cinna (see note, § 9). They were consuls b. c. 87, after the departure of Sulla for the East, and in their dissensions the civil war broke out afresh. The victory of Cinna recalled Marius from exile. — lumina: among these were Octavius; C. Cæsar (see above), and his brother Lucius; Q. Catulus, father of the opponent of the Manilian Law (see below); M. Antonius, the great orator; and the pontifex maximus, Q. Scævola (see note, Verr. V. § 19). — ultus est: to preserve the emphasis, render, the cruelty, &c., was avenged by Sulla (see note, R. A. § 6). — M. Lepidus, father of the triumvir, was consul b. c. 78 (after Sulla's death), with Q. Catulus, son of the one murdered by Cinna. The scheme of Lepidus to revive the Marian party resulted in a short civil war, in which he was defeated by his colleague and killed.

120. § 25. commutandam rem publicam, a change of government. — quale bellum, a war such as. — tantum, so much only.

§ 26. mutum, dumb: such as a statue, for example. — eandem diem, etc., the same period of time — eternal as I hope — is extended at once to the safety of the city, &c.

121. § 27. nihil noceri potest, no harm can be done.

§ 28. in honore vestro: honor is used here, as usual, to denote external honors (offices) conferred by the people. Holding the consulship, he had nothing higher to look forward to.
Argument.

Chap. Exordium. 1. The question of the traitors' doom must be settled without regard to Cicero's interest or his household; his act is its own reward — Proposito.

2, 3. Desperate nature of the conspirators' guilt: it is manifest already by clear proof, and condemned already by the action of the Senate. — 4. The two opinions: that of Silenus, for death; of Caesar, for perpetual imprisonment. — 5. The latter will be least invidious to Cicero: its extreme severity. — Contentio. 6. But in either there can be no cruelty: severity to them is mercy to the people. What if the conspiracy had succeeded? The city to be given over to plunder and conflagration. — 7. The general excitement and alarm. The guilty are to be regarded no longer as citizens, but as public enemies. — 8, 9. All classes of citizens — even freedmen and slaves — desire the safety of the city. — 9. Responsibility resting on the Senate: the Consul will not fail them. — Peroratio. 10. He cares nothing for himself: his fame is sure. The war he has taken up is without end; but the harmony of the State shall be unbroken. — 11. Let them remember his political sacrifices; but vote only for the welfare and safety of the State.

As this is the first deliberative oration, delivered in the Senate, contained in this collection, it will be well to describe the course of a senatorial debate.

The Senate could be called together by any magistrate possessing the civil imperium (regularly the consul), also by the Tribunes of the People: the magistrate who summoned it also presided. and laid before it (referre) the business for which it was summoned. He might at this point give his own judgment. Then he proceeded to ask (rogare) the Senators individually their opinions (sententia). The order was to ask in turn the consularles, praetorii, adiiticii, and quaestorii; that is, those who sat in the Senate in virtue of having held these offices respectively. If the annual election had already taken place, which was usually in July, — six months before the new magistrates assumed their offices, — the magistrates elect, designati, were called upon before their several classes. The princeps Senatus (see note, Cat. III. § 10) was called upon first of all, when there were no consules designati. The presiding officer had it indeed in his power to vary the order, and honor or slight a senator by calling upon him extra ordinem.

The business was as a rule laid before the Senate in general terms, not in any special form for action: each senator could, as he chose, give his judgment in full, by argument (sententiam dicere), or simply express his assent to the judgment of another (verbo assentiri). Only those who held seats by virtue of having held magistracies were entitled to do this; the others, who were enrolled by the Censors to fill up the number, were called pedarii, and had no right to speak, but only to vote (pedibus ire in sententiam). The vote was taken by going on one side or other of the house (discessio). When a majority had decided in favor of any sententia, it was written out in proper form by the secretaries (scriba), under the direction of the president, in the presence of some of its principal supporters (adesse scribundo), and promulgated.

In the present case, what should be done with the captured conspirators, — the consul elect, D. Junius Silenus, had advised that they be put to death: and C. Julius Caesar, as praetor elect, that they be kept in custody. At the end of the discussion, the presiding consul gave his views in this speech.

§ 1. si haec, i.e. if the consulship has been given me on these terms.

123. § 2. æquitas: the prætor, who administered justice between citizens, had his tribunal upon the Forum. — campus:
the *comitia centuriata*, in which the higher magistrates were elected (see note, Verr. I. § 18), were held in the *Campus Martius*, north of the city, just outside the walls, — the level space in which the modern city is chiefly situated. — *auspicia*, ablative: as it was only through the auspices that the Campus was consecrated.

The Roman commonwealth was regarded as resting directly upon the will of the gods, expressed in signs sent by them, *auspicia*. The magistrates alone were authorized to consult the auspices (*spectia*), which was done by special formalities; and the auspices, when observed, were interpreted by a special board (*collegium*) of priests called Augurs. All important public acts were done *auspicato*, that is, under authority of the auspices; the right of interpreting these was therefore a source of great political influence to the board of augurs, which was composed of men of the highest rank and distinction. Cicero himself became a member of this board ten years after his consulsiphip. The rules of interpretation were developed into a special science called *jus augurium*. Most public acts must be performed *auspicato*, that is, after consulting the auspices; especially all public assemblies in which business was transacted. Thus the Campus was "consecrated by auspices" every time that the *comitia centuriata* were held. The enclosure upon the Campus, called *sagittarum ovile*, in which the assembly met, was like the *Curia*, or Senate-house, and the *rostra*, or speaker's stand, specially set apart and consecrated as a *templum*, (see note, Manil. § 70).

*auxilium*: the Roman Senate was at this time a great court of appeal for subject or friendly nations. — *sella curulis*, the seat used by the *curule* magistrates, — king, interrex, dictator, magister equitum, consul, praetor, censor, and curule ædile. It was like a modern camp-stool without back or sides, with crossed legs of ivory, so that it could be folded up and carried with the magistrate wherever he went. — *fodissima*, *horrible*, with the added idea of polluting things sacred. — *fatale*, see note, Cat. III. § 9.

§ 3. *pro eo ac mereor*, in proportion as I deserve. — *relaturos gratiam*, will reward ("return favor"). — *immatura*: because a consular had reached the highest point of Roman ambition. — *misera*: the philosophy of the ancients professed to make them despise death (see Plato, Apol., and Tusc. i.). — *ille ferreus qui, so iron-hearted as*. — *fratris*: his brother Quintus, younger than he, and at this time praetor elect. He served with credit in Cæsar’s Gallic campaigns. — *neque...non, nor can it be but that*, &c. — *uxor*, etc.: his wife Terentia; his daughter Tullia (daughters took the gentile name of the father, see § 15), married to C. Calpurnius Piso; his son Marcus, now two years old. — *amplecti, take in its arms.*

124. *gener*: Piso was not yet a member of the Senate, and was probably standing in the lobby. — *moveor* (emphatic), *I am affected*. — *uti sint*, [to wish] *that*, &c. (the verb being implied in *moveor*).

§ 4. *incumbite*, bend your energies, a figure taken from rowing. — *circumspicite*, watch for. — *Gracchus*, etc., see notes, Cat. I. §§ 3, 4 — *illa consulis*, I will say in advance what belongs to [me as] the consul: i.e. declare the need of instant action; *what ac-
tion, it is for the Senate to determine. — Memmius: C. Memmius, one of the most upright men of his time, and a candidate for the consulship against Glaucia, was murdered by instigation of Glaucia and Saturninus (B.C. 100). This led to the separation of Marius from these demagogues, and, on their forcible resistance, they were put to death. — tenantur, are in custody. — signa, seals; manus, handwriting (see Cat. III.).

§ 5. judicibus: their acts (here recounted) were their verdict on the conspirators' guilt.

§ 6. sed: i.e. though you have in fact decided. — tamquam integrum, as if you had not already expressed your judgment. — judicetis, censeatis: respecting the facts, they acted as a Court; respecting the punishment, as a State Council.

125. jam pridem videbam, had long seen (§ 58, 3, b). — adfinis, implicated. — provincias, especially Spain, with which Cn. Piso had had relations. It had not yet become fully reconciled since the overthrow of Sertorius, only eight years before. — sustentando, forbearance; prolatando, procrastination.

§ 7. hac (with a gesture), all this, i.e. city, citizens, and government. — amplectitur, adopts. — versatur in, exhibits. — punctum temporis, for a moment. — mortem, etc., the Epicurean doctrine, espoused by Cæsar. — municipis dispersiti, sc. eos in custodiam. — iniquitatem, unfairness, as it might expose them to danger; difficultatem, embarrassment, since they might decline the service.

§ 8. adjungit, he (Cæsar) adds to his proposal.

126. sanctit, ordains under penalties. — per senatum, by an executive decree; per populum, by law. — uno, sc. dolore. — itaque, etc., an artful way of making the punishment of death seem less cruel: since death is a relief, these myths had been invented to give it terror. — videlicet, no doubt.

§ 9. mea, § 50, 4, d. — hanc ... viam, this course in politics (Cæsar's well-known course). — popularis, not popular, but devoted to the people, democratic: Cæsar was now the recognized leader of the party. — auctore (abl. abs.), proposer; cognitor, sponsor (a legal term). — nescio an, I don't know but. — impetus, violence. — negoti, trouble. — rationes, consideration. — majorum: none of Cæsar's ancestors were men of any distinction, although some distant relations of the same name were prominent in public affairs in the time of Sulla (see note, Cat. III. § 24). It was, however, one of the oldest patrician families. — obsidem: he is pledged at all events to defend the State as against the conspirators. — levitatem, recklessness. — contionatorum, demagogues. — saluti, i.e. not voluntati: their interests, not their capricious wishes.

§ 10. non neminem, one or another.
Here Cicero turns from Caesar, a genuine democrat, to some self-seeking demagogue, whom he does not name. No doubt all his hearers knew what he meant; and we are told that it was Q. Metellus Nepos, brother of Celer (see Cat. I. § 19), a fugitive from Pompey and enemy of Cicero. He was tribune the next year—entering upon his office upon the Ides, Dec. 13—and when Cicero, on New Year’s Day, on laying down his office, was about to address the people, Nepos forbade it, “declaring it unfit that the murderers of Roman citizens should address an assembly of free men. Amidst the uproar which this act excited, Cicero could only exclaim, with a solemn adjuration, that he had served the State, and the general acclamations of the people overwhelmed every opposing whisper” (Merivale).

de capite: this was properly only in the power of the comitia centuriata. — is, this person. — dedit, decrevit, adfecit: gave his vote for these acts. — qui has for antecedent the subject of judicarit. — re, the matter (in general); causa, the issue to be decided. — C. Caesar: the full name gives emphasis; he does not hesitate to pass a judgment upon them, equally affecting the caput — i.e. not only the life, but the civil existence—which was protected by the Sempronian law. — Semproniam, see note, Verr. VI. 6.

127. ipsum latorem, C. Gracchus: he was put to death not jussu populi, but in virtue of the dictatorial authority intrusted to the consuls by the Senate. But a violation of the law in his case did not excuse another on the part of Cicero. — largitorem, etc.: i.e. however lavish,—a symptom of courting the popular favor. — etiam, still. — se jactare, show himself off (as a friend of liberty).

§ 11. obtinebo, make it appear that it (this opinion). — ita. . .

like ut, so may I enjoy, etc., as I am [in fact] moved by no malignity.

§ 12. cum vero: here vero introduces (as often) the most striking point. The others are bad enough, but when, &c. — purpuratum, a courtier: huic, § 51, 7. — Vestalium, see note, Cat. III. § 7.

128. si quia, in case any. — universum, common. i.e. belonging to all. The city, as the seat of empire, is contrasted with each man’s private domicile. — id egerunt, have aimed at this.

§ 13. nisi vero, etc., unless, indeed, any one thought (a reductio ad absurdum, as usual with this phrase).

L. Caesar (cos. b. c. 64) was a distant relative of the dictator, son of Lucius Caesar (consul b. c. 93, the year of the Social War), the author of the law giving citizenship to the Italian allies (see note, Arch. § 7). The sister of Lucius Caesar (the younger) was married to Lentulus, and his mother, Fulvia, was daughter of M. Fulvius Flaccus, the leading adherent of C. Gracchus. When Gracchus and Flaccus found themselves (b. c. 131) drawn into a collision with the Senate, they sent the young son of Flaccus with a proposition of compromise. The Senate, however, refused to listen to any terms, threw the messenger in prison — where he was afterwards strangled — and moved upon the insurgents with all the power of the State. In the contest that followed, both leaders, and several thousands of their partisans, lost their lives. It was to these events that L. Caesar appealed, in justifying his vote in condemnation of his brother-in-law Lentulus.

nudius tertius, day before yesterday. — legatum: of course the informal messenger of insurgents could have no claim to the title
ambassador, or to the privileges which attached to the title, in ancient as well as modern times. — quorum limits factum: understand with simile some word describing the present conspiracy. — largitionis ... versata est, a disposition for lavish grants then prevailed in the public policy, leading to violent class-jealousy.

The plans of C. Gracchus embraced not only a lex frumentaria, allowing every citizen to buy a certain amount of corn from the State at less than half its market rate, and a lex agraria, providing for the distribution of public land among the poorer citizens; but also the establishment of several colonies, both in Italy and the provinces, the object of which was at once to provide poor citizens with land, and relieve the city, by emigration, of a part of its proletariat. Of these last the only ones actually established were Junonia, on the site of Carthage, and — after the death of Gracchus — Narbo, Narbonne, in Gaul.

aves (see note, Cat. III. § 10): he was an active supporter of the Senate on this occasion. — urbiem inflarnmandam: according to Sallust, ch. 43, this work was assigned to Gabinius and Statilius. — censeo, ironical (like credo).

129. § 15. consentiunt, show their agreement. — ita ut = only to; lit., with this limitation that. — summam ordinis consilique, superiority in rank, and precedence in counsel. — hujus ordinis (i.e. the Senate) limits dissensione in the sense of cum hoc, etc. The long contest here alluded to (see note, Verr. I. § 1) was at last compromised by the Aurelian Law (see note, Verr. I. § 47). — quam si, etc., and if we keep this union. — confirmo, I assure. — tribunos sacerdios, deans of the tribes. The Roman people were divided into thirty-five tribes, strictly local and territorial, like wards, but with the provision that the sons of citizens belonged to the tribe of their father, rather than to that in which they themselves resided. These tribes were made the basis of the comitia centuriata, as well as the comitia tributa. The tribuni sacerdii consisted of those who had been their presiding officers. — scribas: the scribeae quaestorii (treasury clerks) formed an important and powerful corporation. As they were a permanent body, while the quaestors (treasurers) were elected annually, they had the real responsibility in the management of the treasury (see Momm. Röm. St. i. p. 272). — universos, the whole body.

130. sortis: the quaestors entered upon office on the Nones of December (Dec. 5); all other patrician magistrates on Jan. 1. The scribeae had therefore come together in order to be present while the quaestors drew lots for their provinces (note, Verr. I. § 11).

§ 16. ingenuorum, free-born. Freedmen, libertini, were always regarded as inferior in rank, if not in civil and political rights. Even these, however, are shown in the next chapter to be interested in the safety of the republic. — operæ pretium est, it is worth while. — sua virtute: manumission was very commonly practised among the Romans, as the reward of some peculiar merit in the slave. — hic nati: i.e. opposed to the slaves, who were, as
a rule — at least city slaves — not born in slavery, but brought from foreign countries. — quantum ... voluntatis, whatever good will he dare and can.

§ 17. tabernas, i.e. handicraftsmen. — quidem (concessive), to be sure. — otiosum, peaceful. — instrumentum, stock in trade. — quaestus, profits. — quorum relates to eorum, four lines above. — incensis, sc. tabernis. — futurum fuit = fuisse (§ 59, 3, f).

131. § 18. præsidia, supports. — obsessa, beset. — arcem et Capitolium: the Capitoline was a saddle-shaped hill, having the temple of Jupiter Capitolinus on one elevation, the old citadel, arx, on the other. Which was which is a point of great dispute, but one of the arguments will be found in note Cat. III. § 20, for the view which appears best supported — that the Capitolium proper, the height which contained the Capitoline temple, was the south-westernly one. The difficulty arises in part from the fact that the word Capitolium is used in three different senses — for the temple, the whole hill, and that part of the hill containing the temple. — aras Penatium: the Penates were the gods of the household (from penus), worshipped by every paterfamilias in his own atrium. The State, being developed from the family, had likewise its Penates, which were fabled to have been brought by Æneas from Troy, and established at Lavinium, whence they were transferred to Alba Longa, and afterwards to Rome. Their temple was on the Velia, the low hill connecting the Palatine and Esquiline. — ignem Vesta: the temple of Vesta (ades, not templum, not having been consecrated by the augurs) was on the Sacra Via, towards the Palatine, — a small round building. Adjoining it was the regia, the residence of the Vestal Virgins and the Pontifex Maximus.

§ 19. in civil causa, in a political question. — quantis ... delerit: this clause will be best turned into English by translating the participles, fundatum, etc., as verbs, and delerit as a relative clause, — with how great toil this empire was established, which one night, &c.

132. § 20. gesta, abl. abs. with re publica.

§ 21. Scipio: the elder Africanus, who brought the Second Punic War to a triumphant close by the battle of Zama, B. C. 202. By “carrying the war into Africa,” he forced Hannibal to retire from Italy. — alter Africanus: the younger, surnamed Æmilianus. He was son of L. Æmilius Paulus (mentioned below), and adopted by the son of the elder Africanus. He captured Carthage B. C. 146, and Numantia, in Spain, B. C. 133. — Paulus: father of the younger Africanus, and, like his son, the most eminent and upright man of his generation. He brought the Third Macedonian War to a close by the battle of Pydna, B. C. 168, and led King
Perseus captive in his triumphal procession. — currum, sc. triumphalem: the captives did not go with or behind the triumphal chariot, but preceded it in the procession. — bis liberavit: by the victories over the German invaders, — over the Teutones at Aqüae Sextiae (B.C. 102), and the Cimbri at Campi Raudii (B.C. 101). — Pompeius: it should be remembered that Pompey was now in the East, in the midst of his career of conquest, and, that his return was looked for with expectancy by all parties. Cicero took every means to win the confidence of the great general, and gain him over to his views in public affairs; but to no purpose. After some wavering, he associated himself with Caesar, thus giving the Senate a blow from which it never recovered, and preparing the way for his own downfall.

133. § 23. pro imperio, in place of: i. e. all these would be gained by a foreign command. — neglexi, i. e. by turning it over to his colleague Antonius (see Introd. Cat. I.). — triumpho: by thus surrendering his province, he renounced all thought of gaining a triumph, the highest honor to which a Roman could aspire. — clientelis hospitialis: the relation of clients to patronus was that of a subordinate to a superior, carrying with it services on the one side and protection on the other; the hospites were, on the other hand, equals, and their connection was one of mutual aid and friendship. Foreign states and citizens were eager to form such ties with influential Romans, and they were equally advantageous to the Roman. Of course a provincial governor had peculiar opportunities for this. — urbanis opibus, the means afforded by a city life. Such ties would be formed by a sojourn in the province; but their value to the provincial consisted in the opportunities for protection and assistance which a Roman statesman possessed in the city. — pro meis studiis, in reward of my efforts. — satis praesidii, in appos. with the clause st... meminerit (§ 70, 5, r.).

§ 24. per se ipsum praestare, guarantee [so far as he may] on his own part.

ORATION FOR ARCHIAS.

Argument.

Chap. 1. Exordium. Claim of Archias to Cicero's services, both from personal reasons and as a man of letters. — 2. Apology for the unusual character of his plea — Narratio. 3. Early career of Archias; he is enrolled as a citizen of Heraclia. — Confirmation. 4. His technical claim: his registry, acts of citizenship, domicile. — 5. Argument from the public records. 6. The case is now closed. But there are other reasons why, as a man of letters, he should be admitted. The great service of these pursuits to the statesman. — 7. Testimony of famous men in the past. — 8, 9. All men recognize the
post's claims: examples. — 10. Greek is a surer passport to fame than Latin. Men inferior to Archias have been thus honored. — 11, 12. Fame is the strongest motive to acts of public virtue. — Peroratio. 13. Appeal to the court: summary of Archias's claim.

**PAGE**

134. § 1. hujusce rei, i.e. dicendi. — ratio, theoretic acquaintance, contrasted with exereta, practice. — A. Licinius: following the custom of naturalized foreigners, as well as freedmen, Archias had taken the gentile name of his noble friends and patrons, the Luculli. Cicero's motive in always speaking of him by his Roman name is obvious. — inde usque, from as far back as that. — principem, master. — a quo relates to huic, which is dat. after ferre; quo relates to id: surely, to the man himself, from whom we have received that whereby, &c. — ceteris, every body else, whom he could assist: alio, those few others whom he could save.

135. § 2. a nobis, by me, construed with dicit. — neque, and not. — ne nos quidem, nor I either.

§ 3. questione legitima, a court established by law (i.e. the Lex Papia, see Introd.). — publico, as distinguished from private cases. — severissimos: this old Roman severity was not likely to be conciliated by Cicero's praises of literature. — forensi sermones is not used here in its restricted meaning, suited to the courts, but, as political speeches were also delivered on the Forum, it means rather public speaking. — abhorret, differs widely. — hic prætore: Q. Cicero was himself a poet and man of critical taste. — loqui and uti have me understood as subj.

§ 4. Antiochis: Antioch was the largest and most important of the cities of the Roman Empire in Asia. It was founded by Seleucus Nicator, first king of Syria, about B.C. 300. — contigit, sc. ei, i.e. Archias. — urbe, see § 46, 2, b. — post, afterwards.

136. § 5. tuno, at that time. This was the long period of comparative quiet between the Gracchan disturbances (B.C. 133-121) and the tribunate of Drusus (B.C. 91, see note, § 9), followed by the Social War and the civil wars of Marius and Sulla. — Latii: not the geographical Latium merely, but including all towns which at that time possessed Latin citizenship; that is, the Latin colonies, such as Venusia, the birth-place of the poet Horace.

Colonies sent out by Rome were of two classes: 1. Roman colonies, in which a small garrison of soldiers (usually 300 in number) was established as a governing aristocracy. The native population was held by them in a harsh subjection. 2. Latin colonies, in which the colonists, whether native Romans or not, formed a quasi-independent community. They were usually quite numerous, went with their families, and did not possess Roman citizenship; but, on the other hand, the right of coining money and other rights of sovereignty. These Latin colonies, together with the original Latium, formed the res publica Latinum, and stood towards Rome in the relation of civitates foederatae. Therefore Roman citizens who went into exile could sojourn in these towns as if they formed an part of Italy. This was called jus exuli.
Tarentini et Regini: see note, Verr. VI. § 21. — Neapolitani: Neapolis, Naples, was a Greek city, founded by Cumæ, but not as an independent civitas, therefore merely called the new-town (of Cumæ). — absentibus, people at a distance. — Mario et Catulo (coss. B. C. 102): of these, Marius was renowned for his exploits, while Catulus was a good officer, and also a man of culture. He was father of the Catulus who opposed the passage of the Manilian Law. — Luculli: Lucius, the one who fought against Mithridates, and his brother Marcus: both of them belonged to the highest ranks of the aristocracy, and were men of distinguished taste and culture. — prætextatus: Roman boys wore the toga prætexta, i.e. with a broad purple stripe, which was also worn by magistrates. On entering upon manhood, at about the age of sixteen, the prætexta was laid aside, and the toga virilis, a plain robe of unbleached wool, was assumed. The shape of the toga was that of an elongated semicircle. — sic etiam hoo: the sentence is incomplete. Read, This quality of genius [was so marked], that, &c.

§ 6. Metello Numidico: the most distinguished member of this family (see note, Verr. I. § 21), cousin of Balearicus (see R. A., § 50). He was predecessor of Marius in the war against Jugurtha, and from this received his agnomen. — Æmilio, sc. Scauro: see note, Verr. I. § 52. — Catulo: see note, § 5. — L. Crasso: the most distinguished orator of his time, a man of genius and culture (see note, Verr. V. § 19): he died B. C. 91. — Drusum (M. Livius), tribune, B. C. 91, in which year he attempted to carry through a series of moderate reforms, in which he was aided by Crassus and other eminent men. He met with the most bitter opposition, especially from L. Philippus (see Manil. § 62), and was at last assassinated. — Octavios: see Cat. III. § 23. — Catonem: probably father of the famous Cato of Utica. — Hortensiorum: the orator Hortensius was distinguished for the elegance of his taste and the luxuriousness of his life. — cum M. Lucullo: probably on some private business, as Lucullus was at this time not much over twenty years old. — Heracliam, an important Greek city, on the southern coast of Lucania. In the war with Pyrrhus it espoused the side of the Romans, and entered (B. C. 278) into an alliance of the closest and most favorable character (equissino jure ac iudere).

137. § 7. Silvani, etc.: the Lex Plautia-Papiria of B. C. 89.

The most thoughtful Romans had long been of the conviction that it was necessary to extend the citizenship to the Italian allies, and thus include these vigorous and sound communities within the Roman system. C. Gracchus first proposed reforms in this direction, and they were the most important part of the scheme of Drusus (B. C. 91), who for this purpose entered into close political relations with leading Italians. When his death destroyed all hope of peaceful reform, the Italians had recourse to arms, in the Social or Italian War (B. C. 90-89); and, although they were unsuccessful in the field, the objects that were aimed at were gained. The Lex Julia of L. Caesar (B. C. 90), bestowed the citizenship upon all who had remained faithful (including all the Latins, see note, § 5);
and the *Lex Plautia-Papiria*, of the tribunes M. Plautius Silvanus and C. Papirius Carbo (not to be confounded with his infamous cousin Gnæus, the Marian leader after the death of Cinna), extended it to other Italian communities. These towns now exchanged their independence or Roman citizenship, and became incorporated with the Roman republic. Many of them therefore, as Heraclea, hesitated about making the change, and did it with great reluctance. They lost all rights of independent government (such as that of coinage money, the *magna exilii*, etc.). Latin became the official language; justice was administered by Roman law; and in most cases their government was organized on the model of Rome, having *duumviri* for consuls, and a *curia* for the Senate. The passage here given from the *Pautian-Papirian* law contains its application to citizens of foreign birth, like Archias.

*feretatur, was proposed.* It was not left possible for any aliens to take advantage of the law by obtaining Italian citizenship for this purpose. — *domiolium*: domicile, or permanent residence. — *essent profesi, declared their intention.* — *Q. Metellum, sc. Plinium, prætor b. c. 89*: the most eminent member of this family, and one of the leaders of the aristocracy.

§ 8. *tabulas, archives.* The *tabularium*, as at Rome, was the building where the archives were kept. — *municipli*: since the bestowal of the Roman citizenship, the Italian *civitates* had become Roman *municipia* (see note, R. A. § 5).

§ 9. *civitatem datam*: i. e. by the law before cited. — *colegio*: since the prætors were elected as a body, their special functions being determined by lot, they may be regarded as a *collegium*, or "board," in those few cases in which they are regarded as a whole, and their special and individual powers do not come into consideration (Mommm. Rom. St. i. p. 63). In this case it would seem that the names might be entered with any one of the prætors. — *Appi* (Claudii—the name Appius was confined to the Claudian *gens*), husband of Cæcilia, the friend of Roscius (see note, R. A. § 50), and father of the infamous Clodius. Claudiius and Gabinius alone are mentioned as colleagues of Metellus, probably because the provinces of all the other prætors carried them away from Italy; for, before the time of Sulla, when it was made their duty to remain in the city during their term of office, and govern provinces only as *pro-prætors* (see note, Verr. i. § 12), it was the custom for all but the prætor *urbanus* and *peregrinus* to administer a province during their year of office, as prætors. — *L. Lentulum*: nothing further is known of him; he probably presided over a court (judices) to determine cases involving citizenship under the new law.

**III. § 10. multis and præditis are dat. after impertiebant; arte, abl. after prædita.** — *Græcia*, i. e. Græcia Magna, the Greek cities of Italy. — *Locrensis*: Locri Epizephyrii, a Greek city near Regium. — *quod* relates to *id*, which is governed by *largirí* understood; *hunc*, Archias. — *civitatem datam*, i. e. by the *Lex Plautia-Papiria*; *legem Papiam*, see Introd. — *illis*, sc. *tabulis*, i. e. of Tarentum, Regium, and Neapolis.

× § 11. Census: the list of citizens made out by the censors.

The Censors were two in number, elected from men of consular dignity, originally at a minimum interval of four years (vomma. Röm. Chron. p. 164), afterwards once in five years,—the interval called a tetrarch.—And holding office for eighteen months. They ranked as magistratus maiorer, but did not possess the imperium, and had no power to convene either the Senate or an assembly of the people. Their functions were — 1, to inspect the registry of citizens of every case and order (see note, § 28); 2, to punish immorality, by removal from the Senate, the equestrian centuries, or the Tribe (see note, Verr. I. § 18), nota censoria, insanias, ignominias; 3, the general superintendence of the finances (giving out contracts for collecting the revenues, see note, Verr. I. § 13), and of the public works. In the intervals of the censorship, these last were under the care of the aediles (see note, Verr I. § 36). Sulla tacitly abolished the office of censor, but it was revived in the consulship of Pompey and Crassus, b. c. 70 (see note, Verr I. § 54). The censors between the passage of the Lex Plautia-Papiria and the case of Archias were: —

b. c. 89. Lucius Caesar and Publius Crassus.
b. c. 86. Q. Marcius Philippus and M. Perperna.
b. c. 70. Lucius Gellius and Gnaeus Lentulus.
b. c. 65. the elected censors, Catulus and Crassus, could come to no agreement, and abdicated. They are therefore not mentioned here.

apud exercitum, in the war against Mithridates: see oration for Manilian Law. — in Asia: this was in the first Mithridatic war, in which Lucullus served as quaestor to Sulla. — quoniam, etc.: i. e. even in the census lists there might be fraudulent names. — esse versatum, had availed himself of. — testamentum, etc., acts which no foreigner could do.—in beneficia, etc.: his name was reported for a gratuity, i. e. on the ground of some special merit.

§ 12. suppeditat, he supplies. Its obj. is the clause ubi...conquiescet.—suppetere has for subj. the clause quod...rerum.—contentionem, strain.

139. ad communem fructum, to the general advantage. —nullius tempore, the needs of no one; i. e. as a client.

§ 13. ceteris follows conceditur; temporum limits quantum, which relates to tantum. — ceteris, all: i. e. everybody spends time on his own business or recreation; some on dissipation and gaming. — tempestivis conviviiis, early dinners, i. e. beginning by daylight, or in business hours, — a mark of luxury and idleness. — quae, i. e. the ability to speak; illa, the præcepta, mentioned below.

§ 14. honestatem, honor. —parvi, of slight account. — accederent, were brought to them. — imagines, portraits.

140. § 16. Africanum, Scipio the younger (Æmilianus): C. Lælius was his most intimate friend, a man of fine culture. L. Furius Philo was also a great friend of literature. M. Porcius Cato, called the Censor, was one of the leading men of Rome in the first half of the second century b. c.: a shrewd, hard-headed Roman, full of prejudices, and priding himself on his blunt manners. He was a distinguished antiquarian, and wrote books on antiquities and agriculture. — senem: he gives the name to Cicero's dialogue on Old Age (Cato Major).
§ 17. **Rosci** : Q. Roscius, the most eminent actor of his time, defended by Cicero in a speech which is still extant. — non debusisse, § 58, 11, a.

§ 18. **doctrina, theory ; præceptis, rules ; arte, practical skill.** — Q. **Ennius**, almost the earliest name in Roman literature. He was a native of Rudiae in Magna Graecia, but wrote in Latin (born B.C. 239). His principal work was the **Annales**, an epic poem upon Roman history. He also wrote tragedies and other works.

§ 19. **Homerum, etc.** : Colophon, Chios, and Smyrna were Ionian cities of Asia Minor; Salamis an island near Athens. The names of the cities thus claiming Homer are given in the following verse:

Smyrna, Chios, Colophon, Salamis, Rhodos, Argos, Athenae.

§ 20. **Themistoclem** : the great Athenian statesman and general, who won the battle of Salamis, in the second Persian invasion (B.C. 480), and afterwards, by his skilful policy, raised Athens to its greatest height of power. — **L. Plotium**, a Roman teacher of rhetoric.

§ 21. For the statements in this section, see oration for Manilian Law. — ejusdem, i.e. Lucullus. — quae, these things (just mentioned) : quorum limits ingenii.

§ 22. **Africano superiori** : the conqueror of Hannibal. — in sepolchro Scipionum : this tomb, on the Appian Way, has been discovered, and in it a bust of *peperino* (not marble), which has by some been supposed to be that of Ennius, referred to here. Probably, however, in here means on. — *huius* : M. Porcius Cato, called *Ulicensis*, from his killing himself at Utica after Caesar's victory. Cato the Censor was his great-grandfather. — **Maximi**, etc. : Q. Fabius Maximus, "the shield of Rome," in the Second Punic War; M. Marcellus, "the sword of Rome" (see note, Verr. V. § 6); Q. Fulvius Flaccus, a distinguished officer in the same war. — illum, Ennius.

§ 23. **Heracliensem** : Heraclia (see note, § 6) is here scornfully compared with the insignificant Rudiae.

§ 24. **Sigeum**, a promontory near Troy. — **Magnus**, i.e. Pompey. — **Mityleneum** : Mitylene was an *Æolian* city in the island Lesbos, the home of the famous lyric poets Alcaeus and Sappho. — *rustici*, country people.
Notes.

§ 25. civitate donaretur, § 51, 1, c.—de populo, of the people, i. e. of low birth.—quod fecisset, which he had made as an epigram (poetical address) to him.—tantummodo, i. e. this was its only poetical merit.—eis rebus: i. e. confiscated goods.

§ 26. Cordubae, at Cordova in Spain: later the birthplace of Seneca and Lucan.—pingue atque peregrinum, clumsy and outlandish.—optimus quisque, § 17, 5, c.

§ 27. Brutus: D. Junius Brutus (cos. b. c. 138) conquered the Lusitanians (of Portugal).—L. Accius (Attius), a tragic poet, distinguished for vigor and sublimity, born b. c. 170: he lived long enough for Cicero in his youth to converse with him.—Fulvius: M. Fulvius Nobilior (cos. b. c. 189) subdued Ætolia. He was distinguished as a friend of Greek literature, and built, from the spoils of war, a temple to Hercules and the Muses.—togati, see note, Cat. III. § 15.

§ 28. adornavi, I supplied him, i. e. with facts and other materials

§ 30. imagines, busts (see note, Verr. V. § 15).—afutura est (absum), shall be void to my sense.

§ 31. vetustate: i. e. long continued friendship (see § 5).—quae omprobetur, § 65, 2.
Cicero De Senectute

(Cato Major)

A Dialogue on Old Age


Boston
Published by Ginn Brothers
4 Beacon Street
1875
Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1873, by
J. H. AND W. F. ALLEN AND J. B. GREENOUGH,
in the office of the Librarian of Congress, at Washington.

Cambridge:
Press of John Wilson and Son.
NOTE.

This volume is one of a series of School Classics, to be prepared on the same plan and under the same joint editorship with the "Select Orations of Cicero," published in June. It will be soon followed by Sallust's Catiline, now in press, and by others of the series as hereafter announced.

BOSTON, October 25, 1873.
INTRODUCTION.

Greek philosophy, at its beginning, six centuries before our era, had consisted in fanciful speculations upon the source and origin of the universe; but before Cicero's time it had come to embrace all human knowledge, and to be the substance of all liberal education. It consisted of three divisions,—Natural Philosophy, Ethics, and Dialectics (including Logic and Rhetoric), of which the second was regarded as the most important. This learning was unknown to the Romans until 155 B.C., when Carneades the Academician, Critolaus the Peripatetic, and Diogenes the Stoic, the most famous philosophers of their time, came on an embassy from Athens to Rome, and discoursed upon their respective doctrines. Their learning and eloquence captivated the young nobles, especially Scipio and Lælius, who are introduced in the following treatise. From that time on, all young Romans of distinction were instructed in the new education.

Cicero, born fifty years later, was carefully educated in these liberal arts, and always retained an interest in them, of which his orations contain many indications. He early formed the design of setting forth in Latin the whole body of philosophy, a design which he may be said to have in the main accomplished.

The first division, Natural Philosophy, is covered, though not very fully, by De Natura Deorum, Timæus, and Phænomena, and discussions of natural questions are interspersed in the ethical works. To Dialectics, the second branch, belong the first nine works in the list,* including Canonic, or the science of the test of truth. The remainder of the list, except the Letters, belong to Ethics.

* See the list in "Select Orations," p. xv.
Introduction.

The circumstances which led Cicero to devote himself more especially in his later years to philosophy have been briefly touched on in the sketch of his life prefixed to the Orations. During the first year of Cæsar's supremacy (B.C. 46), we are told that he gathered a sort of school about him in his retreat at Tusculum, where "he trained Pansa, Hirtius, and Dolabella like a preceptor," seeking distraction from the defeats and calamities of his public life.* The death of his daughter Tullia, early in the following year, with other and more ignoble domestic sorrows, confirmed his disposition to solitude, and his desire to find comfort in "the calm and still air of delightful studies."† The memory of his griefs he sought to banish by spending whole days in composition. To this year belong, among other philosophical writings, the Academics, the De Finibus, and the Tusculan Questions. The death of Cæsar, with the new political hopes it brought, broke off these labors for a while; but before the final struggle with Antony began was another short interval of literary activity, in which were composed the treatises De Natura Deorum, De Divinatione, De Fato, De Gloria, and De Officiis, as well as the two brief Dialogues De Senectute (Cato Major), and De Amicitia (Lælius).

Probably no one of his shorter writings is better known or more generally admired than the dialogue on Old Age. It

* "While I languished in idleness, and the condition of the State was such that it must needs be ruled by one man's counsel and care, I thought, first, that philosophy should be unfolded to our people for the sake of the State itself, holding it to be of great consequence to the honor and glory of the body politic (civitas), that things so noble and weighty should be had in Latin writings. I was urged to this, besides, by that sorrow of heart, caused by the great and heavy blows of fortune; for which if I could have found any greater comfort, I should not have taken refuge primarily in this; but in no way can I better share that comfort, than by giving myself not only to the reading of books, but to the handling of philosophy at large." N. D. i. 14.

† Mærorem minui; dolorem nec potui, nec si possem vellem.—Att. xii. 28.
was written at the age of sixty-two years and upwards, and
was addressed to his friend Atticus, who was three years
older.* It belongs to the division of Ethics, which had for
its subject-matter the nature of the _summum bonum_, and the
conduct of life. Since the third century B.C. philosophy
had lost the hope of substituting reason for violence in the
management of affairs, and had aimed to find for the individ-
ual philosopher, in virtue or pleasure or elsewhere, a satis-
faction to outweigh the inevitable ills of life. Every relation
and incident of life was a subject of philosophical discus-
sion, either from the pleasure it could afford, or the pain it
was vulgarly supposed to cause.

In this treatise Cicero, imitating Aristo of Ceos, endeav-
ors to show that old age, usually considered one of the ills
of life, is to the wise man deprived of its terrors. In form
it imitates the Socratic or Platonic dialogue, the slight part
taken in it by the other speakers serving only to give an air
of reality, and to mark the divisions of the subject, while the
name of Cato gives dignity and weight to the argument.†
The dialogue is put, apparently, in the last year of Cato’s
long life, and represents the old man discoursing, calmly
and cheerfully, with the younger Scipio (Æmilianus),
brother-in-law of Cato’s elder son, and his friend Lælius,
the same who gives his name to the dialogue on Friendship.
Cicero himself was strongly attracted by some points of the
old statesman’s life and character, his plebeian birth, his
political struggles, his intellectual eminence, and his genuine
love of rural occupations. The incidents of his career he
has studied carefully, and introduced into his discourse, with
here and there a bit of his antique style, — _antiquior sermo_,

* Ad senem senex de senectute. — Læl. i. 5. Legendus mihi
sæpius est _Cato Major_ ad te missus. Amariorem enim me senectus
facit: stomachor omnia. — Att. xiv. 21.

† Catonem induxi senem disputantem, quia nulla videbatur aptior
persona quæ de ills ætate loqueretur, quam ejus qui et diutissime
senex fuisset, et in ipsæ senectute præter ceteros floruisset. . . .
Itaque ipse mea legens sic afficior interdum, ut Catonem, non me,
loqui existimem. — Læl. i. 4.
horridiora verba. But though the discourse is put in Cato's mouth, it is Cicero that speaks. Not merely is there the ripe Latin of the last century of the Republic, and the perfection of style of the greatest of Roman authors, but the thoughts and sentiments, even, are not such as belong to the tough and hard-headed Cato, whom Cicero employs as a lay-figure, to be dressed in the mental costume of his own day.

And, withal, he fashions the antique character into something of his own more modern likeness. The Cato of the dialogue is mild-mannered, reflective, at home in philosophical literature, and even not disinclined to music, after the example of Socrates. The real Cato was harsh in temper, narrow in prejudice, a shrewd hater of the elder Scipio who was his rival, and of the whole party of refinement. He was a man "of iron strength of body and mind, of antique sternness and firmness of character, of simplicity and thrift, of patriotism that was close to narrow bigotry, of strength of will and patient temper, of unwearied force of toil and thirst for knowledge, with a copious knowledge of law and a vigorous original eloquence, of bravery and generalship, of nervous activity in his province as husbandman and householder, as statesman and writer, with a high reputation for practical sagacity, commanding the unshaken regard of the people and senate, in both public and private life, and all this to the very end of his great old age."†

So far as any connection with the substance of the book is concerned, we might dismiss Cato with these few words. It is necessary, however, briefly to describe his life and character, by way of explaining the allusions in the body of the work.

Marcus Porcius Cato — "the Elder" or the "Censor" — was born at Tusculum, of a plebeian family, B.C. 234. His

* Brutus, 17, 68.

† Lahmeyer. Cicero seems to have been aware of this inconsistency in the delineation (see § 3). Perhaps he meant to recommend philosophy by making even Cato in his last years attracted by it.
Introduction.

Youth was spent in "thrift, hardship, and tillage," varied, as he came of age, by pleading in the local courts. He served in South Italy against Hannibal under Fabius Maximus (B.C. 212 and 209), again under Nero (B.C. 207) probably as military tribune, in Sicily and Africa as questor under Scipio (B.C. 204), as consul in Spain (B.C. 195), and as legatus at Thermopylae, where he contributed largely to the victory over Antiochus. Though by birth a simple yeoman, as Marius was a hundred years later, he was never like him a popular partisan, but became himself a leading member of the aristocracy. Gifted with a shrewd common sense, and an effective popular eloquence, the energetic, upright young rustic became known to the patrician Lucius Valerius Flaccus, who was his fast friend in Rome, and afterwards his colleague as consul, legatus, and censor. With all his intellectual vigor he had the prejudices of the narrow and bigoted conservatism that marked the temper of the elder Republic; and it was one of his acts to expel the Athenian envoys mentioned above from Rome, for fear of corrupting the Roman youth. His son Marcus, who died B.C. 152, — a man of marked genius and merit, — married the daughter of Æmilius Paulus, and so was brother-in-law of the younger Scipio. Another son, born when Cato was eighty years old, was the grandfather of Cato Uticensis, the most able and honest of Cæsar's enemies. After a long controversy with Scipio Nasica, Cato succeeded (B.C. 150) in forcing on the third and last war with Carthage. He died the following year, at the age of eighty-five.

Cato is best known by the severity with which he exercised the censorship. This gave him the name by which he is best known, Censorius, or the censor. This office was then at the height of its efficiency, and was an engine of almost despotic power. The men holding it had the unrestricted right to make out the list of Senators, that is, to determine who should govern Rome for the next five years; and, on the other hand, to punish, by expulsion from the Senate, by a private stigma of infamy, or even by the entire
deprivation of political rights, any person whom they chose. (See § 42.) A cause must be assigned; but even if this were omitted, there seems to have been no appeal from their judgment. Flaccus, the colleague of Cato, stood steadily by him in his action as censor, and, with his narrowness, obstinacy, prejudice, but entire honesty, he exercised the power of his office with relentless vigor. If it was especially his own private enemies that he punished, no doubt he sincerely believed them to be dangerous to the State, or they would not be enemies of his.

These characteristics clung to him through life. Whatever was new he opposed; and in this way he has the credit of having resisted many baneful innovations, as also many salutary ones. He had no capacity to distinguish between the steady movement of national life and those insidious influences from outside, which eat out the national vigor. By his stubborn conservatism he gained the repute of being a typical Roman of the old school; while, in fact, the glory and strength of Rome lay in her ability to draw into herself, and not exclude or destroy, the life of the races she subdued.

The writings of Cato were: 1. De Re Rustica, the first Latin treatise on agriculture, full of practical observations and directions, in great part still extant; 2. Origines, the first historical work in Latin, curiously and briefly told, from the earliest legendary stories down to his own day, of which only fragments remain; 3. various writings on politics, antiquities, and war, with numerous orations, of which Cicero had read "more than a hundred and fifty."*

* Brut. 17.
ON OLD AGE.

Cato Major, sive De Senectute.

O Tite, si quid te adiuero curamve levasso
Quae nunc te coquit et versat in pectore fixa,
Ecquid erit praemi?

Licet enim mihi versibus eisdem adfari te, Attice, qui-
bus adfatur Flamininum

Ille vir haud magna cum re, sed plenus fidei.

Quamquam certo scio, non, ut Flamininum,

Sollicitari te, Tite, sic noctisque diesque;

novi enim moderationem animi tui et aequitatem,
tequa non cognomen solum Athenis deportasse, sed
humanitatem et prudentiam intellego. Et tamen te
suspicor eisdem rebus quibus meipsum interdum gra-
vius commoveri, quarum consolatio et major est et in
aliud tempus differenda. Nunc autem visum est mihi
de senectute aliquid ad te conscribere. 2. Hoc enim
onere quod mihi commune tecum est, aut iam urguentis
aut certe adventantis senectutis, et te et me ipsum
levari volo: etsi te quidem id modice ac sapientes,
sicut omnia, et ferre et laturum esse certo scio. Sed
mihi, cum de senectute vellem aliquid scribere, tu
occurrrebas dignus eo munere quo uterque nostrum
communiter uteretur. Mihi quidem ita iucunda hujus
libri confectione fuit, ut non modo omnis absterserit se-
nectutis molestias, sed effecerit mollem etiam et iucun-
dam senectutem. Numquam igitur laudari satis digne
philosophia poterit, cui qui pareat omne tempus aetatis
sine molestia possit degere. 3. Sed de ceteris et dix-
imus multa, et saepe dicemus: hunc librum ad te de

ii. 4. Scipio. Saepe numero admirari soleo cum hoc C. Laelio cum ceterarum rerum tuam excellentem, M. Cato, perfectamque sapientiam, tum vel maxime quod numquam tibi senectutem gravem esse senserim, quae plerisque senibus sic odiosa est ut onus se Aetna gravius dicant sustinere. Cato. Rem haud sane, Scipio et Laeli, difficilem, admirari videmini. Quibus enim nihil est in ipsis opis ad bene beateque vivendum, eis omnis aetas gravis est: qui autem omnia bona a se ipsis petunt, iiis nihil potest malum videri quod naturae necessitas adserat. Quo in genere est in primis senectus, quam ut adipiscantur omnes optant, eandem accusant adepti: tanta est stultitiae inconstantia atque perversitas. Obrepere aiunt eam citius quam putavissent. Primum, quis coēgit eos falsum putare? Qui enim citius adolescentiae senectus quam pueritiae adolescentia obrepit? Deinde, qui minus gravis esset iiis senectus, si octingentesimum annum agerent quam si octogesimum? Praeterita enim aetas quamvis longa cum effluxisset, nulla consolatio permulcere posset stultam senectutem. 5. Quocirca si sapientiam meam admirari soletis, quae utinam digna esset opinione vestra nostroque cognomine, in hoc sumus sapientes quod naturam optumam ducem tamquam deum sequimur, eique paremus; a qua non veri simile est, cum ceterae
partes aetatis bene descriptae sint, extremum actum tam-
quam ab inerti poëta esse neglectum. Sed tamen
necesse fuit esse aliquid extremum, et tamquam in
arborum bacis terraeque fructibus maturitate tempestiva
quasi vietum et caducum, quod ferundum est molliter
sapienti. Quid est enim aliud Gigantum modo bellare
cum dis nisi naturae repugnare? 6. LAELIUS. Atqui,
Cato, gratissimum nobis, ut etiam pro Scipione polli-
cear, feceris, si, quoniam speramus volumus quidem
certe senes fieri, mucho ante a te didicerimus quibus
facillime rationibus ingravescentem aetatem ferre pos-
simus. CATO. Faciam vero, Laeli, praeertim si
utrique vestrum, ut dicis, gratum futurum est.
LAE-
LIUS. Volumus sane, nisi molestum est, Cato, tam-
quam longam aliquam viam confeceris quam nobis
quoque ingrediundum sit, istuc quo perveniisti videre
quaie sit.

III. 7. CATO. Faciam ut potero, Laeli. Saepe
enim interfui querellis aequalium meorum—pares
autem, vetere proverbio, cum paribus facillime congre-
gantur—quaes C. Salinator, quae Sp. Albinus, homi-
nes consulares nostri fere aequales deplorare solebant,
tum quod voluptatibus carerent, sine quibus vitam nul-
lam putarent, tum quod spernerentur ab ipsis quibus
essent coli soliti. Qui mihi non id videbantur accus-
sare quod esset accusandum. Nam si id culpa senec-
tutis accideret, eadem mihi usu venirent reliquisque
omnibus maioribus natu, quorum ego multorum co-
gnovi senectutem sine querella, qui se et libidinum
vinculis laxatos esse non moleste ferrent, nec a suis
despicerentur. Sed omnium istius modi querellarum
in moribus est culpa, non in aetate. Moderati enim et
nec difficiles nec inhumani senes tolerabilem senectu-
tem agunt; importunitas autem et inhumanitas omni
aetati molesta est. 8. LAELIUS. Est ut dicis, Cato;
sed fortasse dixerit quispiam tibi propter opes et copias
et dignitatem tuam tolerabiliorem senectutem videri, id autem non posse multis contingere. Cato. Est istuc quidem, Laeli, aliquid, sed nequaquam in isto sunt omnia. Ut Themistocles fertur Seripho cuidam in iurgio respondisse, cum ille dixisset non eum sua sed patriae gloria splendorem adsecutum: ‘Nec (hercule),’ inquit ‘si ego Seriphius essem, nec tu, si Atheniensis sis, clarus umquam fuisses.’ Quod eodem modo de senectute dici potest. Nec enim in summa inopia levis esse senectus potest, ne sapienti quidem, nec insipienti etiam in summa copia non gravis. 9. Aptissima om- nino sunt, Scipio et Laeli, arma senectutis artes exer- citationesque virtutum, quae in omni aetate cultae, cum diu multumque vixeris, mirificos ecserunt fruc- tus, non solum quia numquam deserunt, ne extremo quidem tempore aetatis,—quamquam id quidem maxi- mum est,—verum etiam quia conscientia bene actae vitae multorumque bene factorum recordatio iucun- dissima est.

iv. 10. Ego Quintum Maximum [eum qui Taren- tum recepit] senem adulescens ita dilexi ut aequalem. Erat enim in illo viro comitate condita gravitas, nec senectus mores mutaverat; quamquam eum colere coepi non admodum grandem natu, sed tamen iam aetate provectum. Anno enim post consul primum fuerat quam ego natus sum, cumque eo quartum con- sule adulescentulus miles ad Capuam profectus sum, quintoque anno post ad Tarentum. Quaestor deinde quadriennio post factus sum, quem magistratum gessi consulis Tuditano et Cethego, cum quidem ille ad- modum senex suasor legis Cinciae de donis et muneri- bus fuit. Hic et bella gerebat ut adulescens, cum plane grandis esset, et Hannibalem iuveniliter exsul- tantem patientia sua molliebat; de quo praecclare familiaris noster Ennius:
Unus homo nobis cunctando restituit rem,
Noenum rumores ponebat ante salutem.
Ergo postque magisque viri nunc gloria claret.

11. Tarentum vero qua vigilantia, quo consilio recepit illum quidem me audiente Salinatori, qui amisso oppido fugerat in arcem, glorianti atque ita dicenti, 'Mea opera, Quinte Fabi, Tarentum recepisti,' 'Certe,' inquit ridens, 'nam nisi tu amisisses, numquam recepissem.' Nec vero in armis praestantior quam in toga, qui consul iterum, Sp. Carvilio collega quiescente, C. Flaminio tribuno plebis quoad potuit restitut agrum Picentem et Gallicum viritem contra senatus auctoritatem dividenti; augurque cum esset, dicere ausus est optimis auspiciis ea geri quae pro rei publicae salute gerentur, quae contra rem publicam ferrentur contra auspicia ferri.


13. Quorsus igitur haec tam multa de Maximo? Quia proiecto videtis nefas esse dictu miseram fuisse talem senectutem; nec tamen omnes possunt esse Scipiones aut Maximi, ut urbium expugnationes, ut pedestrices navalisve pugnas, ut bella a se gesta, ut triumphos recordentur. Est etiam quiete et pure atque eleganter actae aetatis placida ac lenis senectus, qualem acceperimus Platonis, qui uno et octogesimo anno scribens est mortuus; qualem Isocratus, qui eum librum qui Pana-
thenaicus inscribitur quarto et nonagesimo anno scripsisse se dicit, vixitque quinquennium postea; cujus magister Leontinus Gorgias centum et septem complevit annos, neque umquam in suo studio atque opere cessavit. Qui, cum ex eo quatereretur cur tam diu vellet esse in vita, 'Nihil habeo' inquit 'quod accusem senectutem.' 14. Praeclarum responsum, et docto homine dignum. Sua enim vitia insipientes et suam culpam in senectutem conferunt; quod non faciebat is cuius modo mentionem feci Ennius:

Sicut fortis equus, spatio qui saepe supremo
Vicit Olympia, nunc senio confectus quiescit.

Equi fortis et victoris senectuti comparat suam. Quem quidem probe meminisse potestis. Anno enim undevesimo post eius mortem hi consules T. Flamininus et M'. Acilius facti sunt; ille autem Caepione et Philippo iterum consulibus mortuus est: cum ego quinque et sexaginta annos natus legem Voconiam magna voce et bonis lateribus suasisset. Annos septuaginta natus, — tot enim vixit Ennius, — ita ferebat duo quae maxima putantur onera paupertatem et senectutem, ut eis paene delectari videretur. 15. Etenim, cum complector animo, quattuor reperio causas cur senectus misera videatur: unam, quod avocet a rebus gerendis; alteram, quod corpus faciat infirmius; tertiam, quod privat omnibus fere voluptatibus; quartam, quod haud procul absit a morte. Earum, si placet, causarum quanta quamque sit iusta una quaeque videamus.

It Unfits for Active Life.

debant, nihil agebant? 16. Ad Appi Claudi senectutem accedebat etiam ut caecus esset; tamem is, cum senentia senatus inclinaret ad pacem cum Pyrrha foedusque faciendum, non dubitavit dicere illa quae versibus persecutus est Ennius:

Quo vobis mentes, rectae quae stare solebant
Antehac, dementes sese flexere viae?
ceteraque gravissime: notum enim vobis carmen est; etiam ipsius Appi exstat oratio. Atque haec ille egit septimo decimo anno post alterum consulatum, cum inter duos consulatus anni decem interfuissent, censorque ante superiorem consulatum fuiisset; ex quo intellegitur Pyrrha bello grandem sane fuisse: et tamem sic a patribus accepi mus. 17. Nihil igitur adserunt qui in re gerunda versari senectutem negant; [similesque sunt] ut si qui gubernatorem in navigando nihil agere dicant, cum alii malos scandant, alii per foros cursent, alii sentinam exhauriant, ille clavum tenens quietus sedeat in puppi. Non facit ea quae iuvenes: at vero maiora et meliora facit. Non viribus aut velocitate aut celeritate corporum res magnae geruntur, sed consilio, auctoritate, sententia; quibus non modo non orbari, sed etiam augeri senectus solet. 18. Nisi forte ego vobis, qui et miles et tribunus et legatus et consul versatus sum in vario genere bellorum, cessare nunc videor cum bella non gero. At senatui quae sint gerenda praescribo, et quo modo: Karthagini male iam diu cogitanti bellum multo ante denuntio, de qua vereri non ante desinam quam illum excisam esse cognovero. 19. Quam palmam utinam Di inmortales, Scipio, tibi reservent, ut avi reliquias persequare! cu ius a morte sextus hic et tricesimus annus est: sed memoriam illius viri omnes excipient anni consequentes. Anno ante me censorem mortuus est, novem annis post meum consulatum, cum consul iterum me
consule creatus esset. Num igitur, si ad centesimum annum vixisset, senectutis eum suae paeniteret? Nec enim excursione nec saltu nec eminus hastis aut com- minus gladiis uteretur, sed consilio, ratione, sententia. Quae nisi essent in senibus, non summum consilium maiores nostri appellassent senatum. 20. Apud La- cedaemonios quidem ii qui amplissimum magistratum gerunt, ut sunt, sic etiam nominantur senes. Quod si legere aut audire voletis externa, maximas res pub- licas ab adolescentibus labefactatas, a senibus susten- tatas et restitutas reperietis.

Cedo, quí vestram rem públicam tantam ámisistis tám cito?

Sic enim percontantur, ut est in Naevi poëtæ Ludo.
Respondentur et alia et hoc in primis:

Provéniebant orátores noví, stulti adulescentuli.

Temenitas est videlicet florentis aetatis, prudentia se- nescentis.

studium cum rem neglegere familiarem videretur, a filiis in iudicium vocatus est ut, quem ad modum nostro more male rem gerentibus patribus bonis interdici solet, sic illum quasi desipientem a re familiari removenter judices. Tum senex dicitur eam fabulam quam in manibus habebat et proxime scripsisset, Oedipum Coloneum, recitasse iudicibus, quae sis esseque num illud carmen desipientis videretur: quo recitato sententiis iudicum est liberatus. 23. Num igitur hunc, num Homerum, num Hesiodum, Simonidem, Stesichorum, num quos ante dixi, Isocraten, Gorgian, num philosophorum principes, Pythagoram, Democritum, num Platonem, num Xenocraten, num postea Zeno- nem, Cleanthem, aut eum quem vos etiam vidistis Romae, Diogenem Stoicum, coegit in suis studiis obmutiscere senectus? an in omnibus his studiorum agitatio vitae aequalis fuit?

24. Age, ut ista divina studia omittamus, possum nominare ex agro Sabino rusticos Romanos, vicinos et familiaris meos, quibus absentibus numquam fere ulla in agro majora opera fiunt, non serendis, non perscripientis, non condendis fructibus. Quamquam in his minus hoc mirum est; nemo enim est tam senex qui se annum non putet posse vivere: sed idem in eis elaborant quae sciunt nihil ad se omnino pertinere:

Serit arbores quae alteri saeclo prosint,
ut ait Statius noster in Synephebis. 25. Nec vero dubitat agricola, quamvis sit senex, quaerenti cui serat, respondere: Dis immortalibus, qui me non accipere modo haec a majoribus voluerunt, sed etiam posteris prodere.

viii. Et melius Caecilius de sene alteri saeculo prospiciente quam illud idem:

Edepōl senectus, sí nil quicquam aliúd viti
Adpórtes tecum, cum ádvenis, unum Íd sat est,
Quod diú vivendo múlta quae non vól videt.
Et multa fortasse quae volt! atque in ea quae non volt saepe etiam adulescentia incurrit. Illud vero idem Caecilius vitiosius:

Tum equidem in senecta hoc deputo miserrimum,
Sentire ea aetate ipsum esse odiosum alteri.

26. Iucundum potius quam odiosum! Ut enim adulescentibus bona indole praeditis sapientes senes delectantur, leviorque fit senectus eorum qui a juventute coluntur et diligentur, sic adulescentes semen praeceptis gaudent, quibus ad virtutum studia ducuntur. Nec minus intellego me vobis quam mihi vos esse iucundos. Sed videtis ut senectus non modo languida atque iners non sit, verum etiam sit operosa et semper agens aliquid et moliens, tale scilicet quale cuiusque studium in superiore vita fuit. Quid, qui etiam addiscunt aliquid? ut et Solonem versibus gloriistem videmus, qui se cotidie aliquid addiscementem dicit senem fieri: et ego feci, qui litteras Graecas senex didici, quas quidem sic avide adripui, quasi diuturnam sitim explere cupiens, ut ea ipsa mihi nota essent, quibus me nunc exemplis uti videtis. Quod cum fecisse Socratem in fidibus audirem, vellem equidem etiam illud,—discebant enim fidibus antiqui,—sed in litteris certe elaboravi.

ix. 27. Nec nunc quidem viris desidero adulescentis, —is enim erat locus alter de vitis senectutis, —non plus quam adulescens tauri aut elephanti desiderabam. Quod est, eo decet uti; et quicquid agas agere pro viribus. Quae enim vox potest esse contemptior quam Milonis Crotoniatae? qui, cum iam senex esset, athletasque se exercerit in curriculo videret, aspexisse lacertos suos dicitur, inlacrimansque dixisse: 'At hi quidem mortui iam sunt.' Non vero tam isti quam tu ipse, nugator! neque enim ex te umquam es nobilitatus, sed ex lateribus et lacertis tuis. Nihil Sex. Aelius tale, nihil multis annis ante Ti. Coruncaniius, nihil modo P. Crassus, a quibus iura civibus praeclarebant—
tur, quorum usque ad extremum spiritum est provecta prudentia.


x. 31. Videtisne ut apud Homerum saepissime Nestor de virtutibus suis praedicet? Tertiam enim iam aetatem hominum vivebat, nec erat ei verendum ne vera praedicans de se nimirisvideretur aut insolens
aut loquax. Etenim, ut ait Homerus, 'ex eius lingua melle dulcior fluebat oratio,' quam ad suavitatem nullis egebat corporis viribus: et tamen dux ille Graeciae nusquam optat ut Ajaxis similis habeat decem, sed ut Nestoris, quod si sibi acciderit, non dubitat quin brevi sit Troia peritura. 32. Sed redeo ad me. Quartum ago annum et octogesimum: vellem equidem idem possem gloriari quod Cyrus: sed tamen hoc quo dicere, non me quidem iis esse viribus quibus aut miles bello Punico aut quaestor eodem bello aut consul in Hispania fuerim, aut quadriennio post, cum tribunus militaris depugnavi apud Thermopylas M. Glabri-one consule; sed tamen, ut vos videtis, non plane me enervavit, non adfixit senectus; non curia viris meas desiderat, non rostra, non amici, non clientes, non hospites. Nec enim umquam sum adsensus veteri illi laudatoque proverbio, quod monet mature fieri senem, si diu velis senex esse. Ego vero me minus diu senem esse mallem, quam esse senem ante quam essem. Itaque nemo adhuc convenire me voluit cui fuerim occupatus.

33. At minus habeo virium quam vestrum utervis. Ne vos quidem T. Ponti centurionis viris habetis: num idcirco est ille praestantior? Moderatio modo virium adsit, et tantum quantum potest quisque nitatur; ne ille non magno desiderio tenebitur virium. Olympiae per stadium ingressus esse Milo dicitur, cum umeris sustineret bovem. Utrum igitur has corporis an Pythagorae tibi malis viris ingenii dari? Denique isto bono utare, dum adsit; cum absit, ne requiras: nisi forte adolescentes pueritiam, paulum aetate progressi adolescentiam debent requirere. Cursus est certus aetatis, et una via naturae eaque simplex; suaque cuique parti aetatis tempestivitas est data, ut et infirmitas puerorum, et feroxitas iuvenum, et gravitas iam constantis aetatis, et senectutis maturitas naturale quid-
dam habeat quod suo tempore percipi debeat. 34. Audire te arbitror, Scipio, hospes tuus avitus Masinissa quae faciat hodie nonaginta natus annos; cum ingresses sus iter pedibus sit, in equum omnino non ascendere; cum autem equo, ex equo non descendere; nullo im- bri, nullo frigore adduci ut capite operto sit; summam esse in eo corporis siccitatem; itaque omnia exsequi regis officia et munera. Potest igitur exercitatio et temperantia etiam in senectute conservare aliquid pristini roboris.

xi. Ne sint in senectute vires. Ne postulantur quidem vires a senectute. Ergo, et legibus et institutis, vacat aetas nostra muneribus iis quae non possunt sine viribus sustineri. Itaque non modo quod non possumus, sed ne quantum possimus quidem cogimus. 

35. 'At multi ita sunt imbecilli senes ut nullum offici aut omnino vitae munus exsequi possint.' At id quidem non proprium senectutis vitium est, sed commune vale- tudinis. Quam fuit imbecillus P. Africani filius, is qui te adoptavit! quam tenui aut nulla potius valetudine! Quod ni ita fuisset, alterum illud exstitisset lumen civitatis; ad paternam enim magnitudinem animi doctrina uberior accesserat. Quid mirum igitur in senibus, si infirmi sunt aliquando, cum id ne adolescentes quidem effugere possint? Resistendum, Laeli et Scipio, senec- tuti est, eiusque vitia diligentia compensanda sunt: pugnandum tamquam contra morbum sic contra senec- tumet.

36. Habenda ratio valetudinis; utendum exercitationibus modicis; tantum cibi et potionis adhibendum ut reficientur vires, non opprimantur. Nec vero corpori solum subveniendum est, sed menti atque animo multo magis; nam haec quoque, nisi tamquam lumini oleum instilles, exstinguuntur senectute. Et corpora quidem exercitationum defetigatione ingrecescunt: animi autem exercitando levantur. Nam quos ait
Caecilius 'comicos stultos senes,' hoc significat credulos, obliviosos, dissolutos; quae vitia sunt non senectutis, sed inertis, ignavae, somniculosae senectutis. Ut petulantia, ut libido magis est adolescenteium quam senum, nec tamen omnium adolescentium, sed non proborum; sic ista senilis stultitia, quae deliratio appellari solet, senum levium est, non omnium. 37. Quattuor robustos filios, quinque filias, tantam domum, tantas clientelas Appius regebat et caecus et senex. Intentum enim animum tamquam arcum habebat, nec languescens succumbebat senectuti. Tenebat non modo auctoritatem, sed etiam imperium in suos: metuebant servi, verebantur liberi, carum omnes habebant: vigebat in illa domo mos patrius et disciplina.

38. Ita enim senectus honesta est, si se ipsa defendit, si ius suum retinet, si nemini mancipata est, si usque ad ultimum spiritum dominatur in suos. Ut enim adolescentem in quo est senile aliquid, sic senem in quo est aliquid adolescentis probo: quod qui sequitur corpore senex esse poterit, animo numquam erit.

Septimus mihi liber Originum est in manibus: omnia antiquitatis monumenta conligo: causarum inlustrium, quascumque defendi, nunc cum maxime conficio orationes; ius augurium, pontificium, civile tracto; multum etiam Graecis litteris utor, Pythagoreorumque more exercendae memoriae gratia, quid quoque die dixerim, audierim, egerim, commemoro vesperi. Hae sunt exercitationes ingeni, haec curricula mentis: in his desudans atque elaborans corporis viris non magno opere desidero. Adsum amicis: venio in senatum frequens, ultroque adfero res multum et diu cogitatas, easque tueor animi non corporis viribus. Quas si sequi nequirem, tamen me lectulus meus oblectaret ea ipsa cogitantem quae iam agere non possem; sed ut possim facit acta vita. Semper enim in his studiis laboribusque viventi non intellegitur quando obrepatur.
senectus. Ita sensim sine sensu aetas senescit; nec subito frangitur, sed diuturnitate exstinguitur.

xii. 39. Sequitur tertia vituperatio senectutis, quod eam carere dicunt voluptatibus. O praecclaram munus aetatis, si quidem id auferat a nobis quod est in adulescentia vitiosissimum! Accipite enim, optimi adulescentes, veterem orationem Archytae Tarentini, magni in primis et praeclari viri, quae mihi tradita est cum essem adulescens Tarenti cum Q. Maximo: ‘Nullam capitaliorem pestem quam voluptatem corporis hominisibus dicebat a natura datam, cuius [voluptatis] avidae libidines temere et ecfrenate ad potiendum incitarentur; 40. hinc patriae prodigiones, hinc rerum publicarum eversionses, hinc cum hostibus clandestina conloquia nasci; nullum denique scelus, nullum malum facinus esse, ad quod suscipiendum non libido voluptatis inpel leret; supra vero et adulteria et omne tale flagitium nullis excitari aliis inlecebris nisi voluptatis. Cumque homini sive natura sive quis deus nihil mente praestabilius dedisset, huic divino muneris ac dono nihil tam esse inimicum quam voluptatem. 41. Nec enim libidine dominante temperantiae locum esse, neque omnino in voluptatis regno virtutem posse consistere. Quod quo magis intellegi posset, fingere animo iubebat tanta incitatum aliquem voluptate corporis quanta percipi posset maxima: nemini censebat fore dubium quin tam diu, dum ita gauderet, nihil agitare mente, nihil ratione, nihil cogitatione consequi posset. Quocirca nihil esse tam detestabile tamque pestiferum quam voluptatem; si quidem ea, cum maior esset atque longior, omne animi lumen exstingueret.’ Haec cum C. Pontio Sàmnite, patre eius a quo Caudino proelio Sp. Postumius T. Veturius consules superati sunt, locutum Archytam Nearcimus Tarentinus, hospes noster, qui in amicitia populi Romani permanerat, se a majoribus natu accepisse dicebat, cum quidem ei sermoni
42. Quorum haec? Ut intellegereitis, si voluptatem aspernari ratione et sapientia non possemus, magnum esse habendam senectuti gratiam, quae efficeret ut id non liberet quod non oporteret. Inpedit enim consilium voluptas; rationi inimica est; mentis (ut ita dicam) praestringit oculos, nec habet ulla cum virtute commercium. Invitus feci ut fortissimi viri T. Flaminini fratrem L. Flamininum e senatu eicerem septem annis post quam consul fuisset; sed notandum putavi libidinem. Ille enim, cum esset consul, in Gallia exoratus in convivio a scorto est ut securi feriret aliquem eorum qui in vinculis essent damnati rei capitalis. Hic Tito fratre suo censore, qui proximus ante me fuerat, elapsus est; mihi vero et Flacco neutiquam probari potuit tam flagitiosa et tam perdita libido, quae cum probo privato coniungeret imperi dedecus.  

xiii. 43. Saepe audivi ex maioribus natu, qui se porro pueros a senibus audisse dicebant, mirari solitum C. Fabricium, quod, cum apud regem Pyrrhum legatus esset, audisset a Thessalo Cinea esse quendam Athenis qui se sapientem profiteretur, eumque dicere omnia quae faceremus ad voluptatem esse referenda: quod ex eo audientis M'. Curium et Ti. Coruncanium optare solitos ut id Samnitibus ipsique Pyrrho persuaderetur, quo facilius vinci possent, cum se voluptatibus dedissent. Vixerat M'. Curius cum P. Decio, qui quinqueante eum consulem se pro re publica quarto consulatu deoverat. Norat eundem Fabricius, norat Coruncanium, qui cum ex sua vita, tum ex eius quem dico Deci facto iudicabat esse profecto aliquid natura pulchrum atque praeclarum, quod sua sponte peteretur, qualque spreta et contempta voluptate optumus quisque sequeretur.  
44. Quorum igitur tam multa de voluptate? Quia
non modo vituperatio nulla, sed etiam summa laus senectutis est, quod ea voluptates nullas magno opere desiderat. Caret epulis exstructisque mensis et frequentibus poculis. Caret ergo etiam vinulentia et cruditate et insomniis. Sed si aliquid dandum est voluptati, quoniam eius blanditiis non facile obsistimus, —divine enim Plato escam malorum appellat voluptatem, quod ea videlicet homines capiantur ut pisces,—quamquam inmoderatis epulis caret senectus, modicis tamen conviviis delectari potest. C. Duellium, Marci filium, qui Poenos classe primus devicerat, redeuntem a cena senem saepe videbam puer; delectabatur crebro funali et tibicine, quae sibi nullo exemplo privatus sumpserat: tantum licentiae dabat gloria. 45. Sed quid ego alios? Ad me ipsum iam revertar. Primum habui semper sodalis. Sodalitates autem me quaeestore constitutae sunt, sacris Idaeis Magnae Matris acceptis. Epulabar igitur cum sodalibus omnino modice, sed erat quidam fervor aetatis, qua progresdiente omnia fiunt in dies mitiora. Neque enim ipsorum conviviorum delectationem voluptatibus corporis magis quam coetu amicorum et sermonibus metiebar. Bene enim majores accubitionem epularem amicorum, quia vitae conjunctionem haberet, convivium nominaverunt; melius quam Graeci qui hoc idem tum coporationem tum concensationem vocant; ut quod in eo genere minimum est id maxime probare videantur.

xiv. 46. Ego vero propter sermonis delectationem tempestivis quoque conviviis delector, nec cum aequalibus solum, qui pauci admodum restant, sed cum vestra etiam aetate atque vobiscum; habeoque senectuti magnam gratiam, quae mihi sermonis aviditatem auxit, potionis et cibi sustulit. Quod si quem etiam ista delectant, ne omnino bellum indixisse videar voluptati, cuius est fortasse quidam naturalis modus, non intellego ne in istis quidem ipsis voluptatibus carere
sensu senectutem. Me vero et magisteria delectant a majoribus instituta; et is sermo qui more maiorum a summo adhibetur in poculo; et pocula, sicut in Symposio Xenophonthis est, minuta atque orantia, et refrigero ratio aestate, et vicissim aut sol aut ignis hibernus. Quae quidem etiam in Sabinis sequei soleo, conviviumque vicinorum cotidie compleo, quod ad multa noctem quam maxime possimus vario sermone producimus.

47. ‘At non est voluptatum tanta quasi titillatio in senibus.’ Credo: sed ne desideratur quidem. Nihil autem quod molestum quod non desideres. Bene Sophocles, cum ex eo quidam iam adfecto aetate quaereret, utereturne rebus veneris: ‘Di meliora!’ inquit: ‘ego vero istinc sicut a domino agresti ac furioso profugi.’ Cupidis enim rerum talium odiosum fortasse et molestum est carere; satiatis vero et expletis iucundius est carere quam frui. Quamquam non caret is qui non desiderat: ergo non desiderare dico esse iucundius.

48. Quod si ipsis voluptatibus bona aetas fruitor libentius, primum parvolis fruitor rebus, ut diximus; deinde iis quibus senectus, etiam si non abunde potitur, non omnino caret. Ut Turpione Ambivio magis delectatur qui in prima cavea spectat, delectatur tamen etiam qui in ultima; sic adulescentia voluptates propter intuens magis fortasse laetatur, sed delectatur etiam senectus procul eas spectans, tantum quantum sat est.

49. At illa quanti sunt, animum, tamquam emeritis stipendiis libidinis, ambitionis, contentionum, inimiciariarum, cupiditatum omnium, secum esse secumque (ut dicitur) vivere! Si vero habet aliquod tamquam pabulum studi atque doctrinae, nihil est otiosa senectute iucundius. Videamus in studio dimetiendi paene caeli atque terrae C. Galum, familiarem patris tui, Scipio. Quotiens illum lux noctu aliquid describere ingressum, quotiens nox oppressit, cum mane coe-
pisset! Quam delectabat eum defectiones solis et lunaes multo ante nobis praedicere! 50. Quid in levi-oribus studiis, sed tamen acutis? Quam gaudebat Bel- lo suo Punico Naevius! quam Truculentus Plautus! quam Pseudulo! Vidi etiam senem Livium, qui cum sex annis ante quam ego natus sum fabulam docuisset Centone Tuditanoque consulibus, usque ad adolescen-tiam meam processit aetate. Quid de P. Licini Crassi et pontifici et civilis iuris studio loquar? aut de huius P. Scipionis, qui his paucis diebus pontifex maximus factus est? Atqui eos omnis quos commemoravi his studiis flagrantis senes vidimus. M. vero Cethegum, quem recte Suadae medullam dixit Ennius, quanto studio exerceri in dicendo videbamus etiam senem! Quae sunt igitur epularum aut ludorum aut scortorum voluptates cum his voluptatibus comparandae? Atque haec quidem studia doctrinae: quae quidem prudenti-bus et bene institutis pariter cum aetate crescut, ut honestum illud Solonis sit, quod ait versiculo quodam, ut ante dixi, senescere se multa in dies addiscentem; qua voluptate animi nulla certe potest esse maior.

xv. 51. Venio nunc ad voluptates agricolarum, qui-bus ego incredibiliter delector; quae nec ulla impedi-untur senectute, et mihi ad sapientis vitam proxime videntur accedere. Habent enim rationem cum terra, quae numquam recusat imperium, nec cuquam sine usura reddit quod accept, sed alias minore, plerumque maiore cum faenore. Quamquam me quidem non fructus modo, sed etiam ipsius terrae vis ac natura delectat; quae cum gremio mollito ac subacto spar-sum semen except, primum id occaecatum cohibet (ex quo occatio quae hoc efficit nominata est); deinde tepesfactum vapore et conpressu suo diffundit et elicit herbescentem ex eo viriditatem; quae nixa fibris stir-pium sensim adulescit, culmoque erecta geniculato vaginis iam quasi pubescens includitur; e quibus
cum emersit, fundit frugem spici ordine structam
et contra avium minorum morsus munitur vallo aristarum. 52. Quid ego vitium ortus, satus, incrementa
commemorem? Satiari delectatione non possum, ut
meae senectutis requietem oblectamentumque noscatis.
Omitto enim vim ipsam omnium quae generantur e
terra, quae ex fici tantulo grano aut ex acini vinaceo
aut ex ceterarum frugum aut stirpium minutissimis
semibus tantos truncos ramosque procreet. Malleoli,
plantae, sarmenta, viviradices, propagines, nonne effi-
ciunt ut quemvis cum admiratione delectent? Vitis
quidem, quae natura caduca est, et nisi fulta est fertur
ad terram, eadem ut se erigat claviculis suis quasi
manibus quicquid est nacta conplectictur; quam, ser-
pentem multiplici lapsu et erratico, ferro amputans
coeacet ars agricolarum, ne silvescat sarmentis et in
omnis partis nimia fundatur. 53. Itaque ineunte vere
in iis quae relicita sunt exsistit tamquam ad articulos
sarmentorum ea quae gemma dicitur, a qua oriens
uva se ostendit; quae et suco terrae et calore solis
augescens primo est peracerba gustatu, deinde ma-
turata dulcescit, vestitaque pampinis nec modico
tepore caret, et nimios solis defendit ardores. Qua
quid potest esse cum fructu laetius, tum aspectu pul-
chrius? Cujus quidem non utilitas me solum, ut ante
dixi, sed etiam cultura et natura ipsa delectat: admini-
culorum ordines, capitum iugatio, religatio et propa-
gatio vitium, sarmentorum ea quam dixi aliorum
amputatio, aliorum inmissio. Quid ego irigationes,
quid fessiones agri repastinationesque proferam, quibus
fit multo terra secundior? 54. Quid de utilitate loquar
stercorandi? Dixi in eo libro quem de rebus rusticis
scripsi, de qua doctus Hesiodus ne verbum quidem
fecit, cum de cultura agri scriberet: at Homerus, qui
multis (ut mihi videtur) ante saeculis fuit, Laertam
lenientem desiderium, quod capiebat e filio, colentem
agrum et eum stercorantem facit. Nec vero segetibus solum et pratis et vineis et arbustis res rusticae laetae sunt, sed hortis etiam et pomariis; tum pecudum pastu, apium examinibus, florum omnium varietate. Nec consiones modo delectant, sed etiam insitiones, quibus nihil inventit agricultura sollertius.

xvi. 55. Possum persequi permulta oblectamenta rerum rusticarum; sed ea ipsa quae dixi sentiouisse longiora. Ignoscetis autem; nam et studio rerum rusticarum provectus sum, et senectus est natura loquacior, ne ab omnibus eam vitiis videar vindicare. Ergo in hac vita M'. Curius, cum de Samnitibus, de Sabinis, de Pyrrho triumphavisset, consumpsit extremum tempus aetatis: cuius quidem ego villam contemplans—abest enim non longe a me—admirari satis non possum vel hominis ipsius continentiam vel temporum disciplinam. 56. Curio ad focum sedenti magnum aurum pondus Samnites cum attulissent, repudiati sunt; non enim aurum habere praecularum sibi videri dixit, sed eis qui haberent aurum imperare. Poteratne tantus animus efficere non iucundam senectutem? Sed venio ad agricolas, ne a me ipso recedam. In agris erant tum senatores, id est senes; siquidem aranti L. Quinctio Cincinnato nuntiatum est eum dictatorem esse factum, cujus dictoris iussu magister equeitum C. Servilius Ahala Sp. Maelium regnum adpetentem occupatum interemit. A villa in senatum arcessebatur et Curius et ceteri senes, ex quo qui eos arcessebant viatores nominati sunt. Num igitur horum senectus misera bilis fuit qui se agri cultione oblectabant? Mea quidem sententia haud scio an nulla beatior possit esse: neque solum officio, quod hominum generi universo cultura agrorum est salutaris, sed et delectatione, quam dixi, et saturitate copiaque rerum omnium quae ad victum hominum, ad cultum etiam deorum pertinent; ut, quoniam haec quidam desiderant, in gratiam iam cum
On Old Age.  [Cat. Maj.

voluptate redeamus. Semper enim boni adsiduique domini referta cella vinaria, olearia, etiam penaria est, villaque tota locuples est: abundat porco, haedo, agno, gallina, lacte, caseo, melle. Iam hortum ipsi agricolae succidiam alteram appellant. Conditiona facit haec supervacaneis etiam operis aucupium atque venatio. 57. Quid de pratorum viriditate aut arborum ordinibus aut vinearum olivetorumve specie plura dicam? Brevi praecidam: agro bene culto nihil potest esse nec usu uberius nec specie ornatus, ad quem fruendum non modo non retardat, verum etiam invitat atque adlectat senectus. Ubi enim potest illa aetas aut calescere vel apricatione melius vel igni, aut vicissim umbris aquisve refrigerari salubrius? 58. Sibi igitur habeant arma, sibi equos, sibi hastas, sibi clavam et pilam, sibi natationes atque cursus: nobis senibus ex lusionibus multis talos relinquant et tesseras; id ipsum utrum lubebit, quoniam sine iis beata esse senectus potest.

xvii. 59. Multas ad res perutiles Xenophonitis libri sunt, quos legite, quaeo, studiose, ut facitis. Quam copiose ab eo agri cultura laudatur in eo libro qui est de tuenda re familiari, qui Oeconomicus inscribitur! Atque ut intellegatis nihil ei tam regale videri quam studium agri colendi, Socrates in eo libro loquitur cum Critobulo, Cyrum minorem, Persarum regem, praestantem ingenio atque imperi gloria, cum Lysander Lacedaemonius, vir summæ virtutis, venisset ad eum Sardis eique dona a sociis attulisset, et ceteris in rebus comem erga Lysandrum atque humanum fuisse, et ei quendam consaepturn agrum diligenter consitum ostendisse: cum autem admiraretur Lysander et proceritates arborum et directos in quincuncem ordines et humum subactam atque puram et suavitatem odorum qui adflarentur ex floribus, tum eum dixisse, mirari se non modo diligentiam sed etiam sollertiam eius a quo
essent illa dimensa atque discripta; et Cyrum respondisse: 'Atqui ego ista sum omnia dimensus; mei sunt ordines, mea discriptio; multae etiam istarum arborem mea manu sunt satae.' Tum Lysandrum, intuentem purpuram eius et nitorem corporis ornatumque Persicum multo auro multisque gemmis, dixisse, 'Recte vero te, Cyre, beatum ferunt, quoniam virtutis tuae fortuna coniuncta est.'

60. Hac igitur fortuna frui licet senibus; nec aetas inpedit quo minus et ceterarum rerum et in primis agri colendi studia teneamus usque ad ultimum tempus senectutis. M. quidem Valerium Corvinum accepiimus ad centesimum annum perduxisse, cum esset acta jam aetate in agris eaque soli et siccis; cujus inter primum et sextum consulatum sex et quadraginta anni interfuerunt. Ita quantum spatium aetatis majores ad senectutis initium esse voluerunt, tantus illi cursus honorum fuit; atque huius extrema aetas hoc beator quam media, quod auctoritas habebat plus, laboris minus. Apex est autem senectutis auctoritas. 61. Quanta fuit in L. Caecilio Metello! quanta in A. Atilio Calatino! in quem illud elogium: 'Unum hunc plurimae consentiunt gentes populi primarium fuisse virum.' Notum est carmen incisum in sepulcro. Iure igitur gravis, cujus de laudibus omnium esset fama consentiens. Quem virum nuper P. Crassum pontificem maximum, quem postea M. Lepidum eodem sacerdotio praedictum, vidimus! Quid de Paulo aut Africano loquar, aut, ut iam ante, de Maximo? quorum non in sententia solum, sed etiam in nutu residebat auctoritas. Habet senectus, honorata praeertim, tantam auctoritatem ut ea pluris sit quam omnes adulescentiae voluptates.

xviii. 62. Sed in omni oratione mementote eam me senectutem laudare quae fundamentis adulescentiae constitueta sit. Ex quo efficitur id quod ego magno
quondam cum adsensu omnium dixi, 'Miseram esse senectutem quae se oratione defenderet.' Non cani nec rugae repente auctoritatem adriperse possunt; sed honeste acta superior aetas fructus capit auctoritatis extremos. 63. Haec enim ipsa sunt honorabilia quae videntur levia atque communia,—salutari, adpeti, decedii, adsurgi, deduci, reduci, consuli; quae et apud nos et in alii civitatibus, ut quaeque optime morata est, ita diligentissime observantur. Lysandrum Lacedaemonium, cuius modo feci mentionem, dicere aiunt solitum Lacedaemonem esse honestissimum domicilium senectitis: nusquam enim tantum tribuitur aetati, nusquam est senectus honorator. Quin etiam memoriae proditum est, cum Athenis ludis quidam in theatrum grandis natu venisset, magno consulisse locum nusquam ei datum a suis civibus; cum autem ad Lacedaemonios accessisset, qui, legati cum essent, certo in loco consederant, consurrexisse omnes illi dicuntur, et senem sessum recepisse. 64. Quibus cum a cuncto consessu plusus esset multiplex datus, dixisse ex iis quendam, Atheniensis scire quae recta essent, sed facere nolle. Multa in nostro collegio praeclera, sed hoc de quo agimus in primis, quod, ut quisque aetate antecedit, ita sententiae principatum tenet; neque solum honore antecedentibus, sed iis etiam qui cum imperio sunt, majores natu augures anteponuntur. Quae sunt igitur voluptates corporis cum auctoritatis praemiis comparandae? quibus qui splendide usi sunt, ii mihi videntur fabulam aetatis peregisse, nec tamquam inexcercitati histriones in extremo actu conruisse.

65. 'At sunt morosi et anxii et iracundii et difficiles senes.' Si quaerimus, etiam avari: sed haec morum vitia sunt, non senectutis. Ac morositas tamen et ea vitia quae dixi habent aliquid excusationis, non illius quidem iustae, sed quae probari posse videatur: con-
temni se putant, despici, inludi; praeterea in fragili corpore odiosa omnis offensio est. Quae tamen omnia dulciora sunt et moribus bonis et artibus; idque cum in vita tum in scaena intelligi potest ex iis fratribus, qui in Adelphis sunt. Quanta in altero diritas, in altero comitas! Sic se res habet: ut enim non omne vinum, sic non omnis aetas matura vetustate coacescit. Severitatem in senectute probo, sed eam (sicut alia) modicam; acerbitatem nullo modo. Avaritia vero senilis quid sibi velit non intellego. Potest enim quicquam esse absurdius, quam quo viae minus restet eo plus viatici quaerere?

xix. 66. Quarta restat causa, quae maxime angere atque sollicitam habere nostram aetatem videtur, adpropinquatio mortis, quae certe a senectute non potest esse longe. O miserum senem, qui mortem contemnendam esse in tam longa aetate non viderit! quae aut plane neglegenda est, si omnino exstinguit animum, aut etiam optanda, si aliquo eum deducit ubi sit futurus aeternus. Atqui tertium certe nihil inventi potest. 67. Quid igitur timeam, si aut non miser post mortem aut beatus etiam futurus sum? Quamquam quis est tam stultus, quamvis sit adulescens, cui sit exploratum se ad vesperum esse victum? Quin etiam actas illa multo pluris quam nostra casus mortis habet: facilius in morbos incidunt adulescentes; gravius aegrotant; tristius curantur. Itaque pauci veniunt ad senectutem. Quod ni ita accideret, melius et prudentius viveretur: mens enim et ratio et consilium in senibus est, qui si nulli fuissent, nullae omnino civitates fuissent. Sed redeo ad mortem impenitem. Quod est istud crimen senectutis, cum id ei videatis cum adulescentia esse commune?

68. Sensi ego in optimo filio, tu in exspectatis ad amplissimam dignitatem fratribus, Scipio, mortem omni aetati esse communem. 'At sperat adulescens
diu se victurum, quod sperare idem senex non potest.' Insipieuter sperat. Quid enim stultius quam incerta pro certis habere, falsa pro veris? 'At senex ne quod speret quidem habet.' At est eo meliore condicione quam adolescens, cum id quod ille sperat hic consecutus est. Ille volt diu vivere; hic diu vixit. 69. Quamquam, O Di boni! quid est in hominis vita diu? Da enim supremum tempus: exspectemus Tartessiorum regis aetatem. Fuit enim, ut scriptum video, Arganthonius quidam Gadibus qui octoginta regnaverat annos, centum viginti vixerat. Sed mihi ne diuturnum quidem quicquam videtur in quo est aliquid extremum: cum enim id advenit, tum illud quod praeterit effluxit; tantum remanet quod virtute et recte factis consecutus sis. Horae quidem cedunt et dies et menses et anni, nec praeteritum tempus umquam revertitur, nec quid sequatur sciri potest. Quod cuique temporis ad vivendum datur, eo debet esse contentus. 70. Neque enim histrioni, ut placeat, peragenda fabula est; modo in quocumque fuerit actu probetur; neque sapienti usque ad Plaudite veniendum est. Breve enim tempus aetatis satis longum est ad bene honesteque vivendum. Sin processerit longius, non magis dolendum est quam agricolae dolent, praeterita verni temporis suavitate aeatatem autumnumque venisse. Ver enim tamquam adolescentiam significat, ostenditque fructus futuros: reliqua autem tempora demetendis fructibus et percipiendis accommodata sunt. 71. Fructus autem senectutis est, ut saepe dixi, ante partorum bonorum memoria et copia. Omnia autem quae secundum naturam fiunt, sunt habenda in bonis. Quid est autem tam secundum naturam quam senibus emori? quod idem contingit adolescentibus adversante et repugnante natura. Itaque adolescentes mihi mori sic videntur, ut cum aquae multitudine flammæ vis opprimitur: senes autem sic ut cum sua sponte, nulla
adhibita vi, consumptus ignis exstinguuitur; et quasi poma ex arboribus, cruda si sunt, vix evelluntur, si matura et cocta, decidunt, sic vitam adulescentibus vis aufert, senibus maturitas. Quae quidem mihi tam iucunda est, ut, quo propius ad mortem accedam, quasi terram videre videar, aliquandoque in portum ex longa navigatione esse venturus.

xx. 72. Senectutis autem nullus est certus terminus, recteque in ea vivitur, quoad munus offici exsequi et tueri possis [mortemque contemnere]. Ex quo fit ut animosior etiam senectus sit quam adulescentia et for- tior. Hoc illud est, quod Pisistrato tyranno a Solone responsum est, cum illi quaerenti, qua tandem re fre- tus sibi tam audaciter obsisteret, respondisse dicitur ‘Senectute.’ Sed vivendi est finis optimus, cum in- tegra mente certisque sensibus opus ipsa suum eadem quae coagmentavit natura dissolvit. Ut navem, ut aedificium idem destruit facillime qui construxit, sic hominem eadem optime quae conglutinavit natura dis- solvit. Iam omnis conglutinatio recens aegre, inveter- ata facile divellitur. Ita fit ut illud breve vitae reliquum nec avide adpetendum senibus nec sine causa deserendi sit; vetatque Pythagoras iniusu imperatoris, id est dei, de praesidio et statione vitae decedere. 73. Solo- nis quidem sapientis est elegium, quo se negat velle suam mortem dolore amicorum et lamentis vacare. Volt, credo, se esse carum suis; sed haud scio an melius Ennius:

Nemo me lacrumis decoret, neque funera fletu
Faxit. Cur i volito vivos per ora virum.

Non censet lugendam esse mortem, quam inmorta- litas consequatur. 74. Iam sensus moriendi aliquis esse potest, isque ad exiguum tempus, praesertim seni : post mortem quidem sensus aut optandus aut nullus est. Sed hoc meditatum ab adulescentia debet esse, mortem ut neglegamus, sine qua meditatione tranquillo animo
esse nemo potest. Moriendum enim certe est, et incertum an hoc ipso die. Mortem igitur omnibus horis inpendentem timens qui poterit animo consistere? 7a. De qua non ita longa disputacione opus esse videtur, cum recorder non L. Brutum, qui in liberanda patria est interfectus; non duos Decios, qui ad voluntarium mortem cursum equorum incitaverunt; non M. Atilium, qui ad supplicium est profectus, ut sidem hosti datam conservaret; non duos Scipiones, qui iter Poenis vel corporibus suis obstruere voluerunt; non avum tuum L. Paulum, qui morte eluit collegae in Cannensi ignominia tementatem; non M. Marcellum, cuius interitum ne crudelissimus quidem hostis honore sepulturae carere passus est,—sed legiones nostras, quod scripsi in Originibus, in eum locum saepe profectas alacri animo et erecto, unde se redituras numquam arbitrarentur. Quod igitur adolescences—et ii quidem non solum indocti sed etiam rustici—contemnunt, id docti senes extimescant? 76. Omnino, ut mihi quidem videtur, rerum omnium satietas vitae facit satietatem. Sunt pueritiae studia certa: num igitur ea desiderant adolescences? Sunt ineuntis adolescentiae: num ea constans iam requirit aetas quae media dicitur? Sunt etiam eius aetatis: ne ea quidem quae turn in senectute. Sunt extrema quaedam studia senectutis. Ergo, ut superiorum aetatum studia occidunt, sic occidunt etiam senectutis. Quod cum evenit, satietas vitae tempus maturum mortis adfert.

xxi. 77. Non enim video cur quid ipse sentiam de morte non audeam vobis dicere, quod eo cernere mihi melius videor, quo ab ea propius absurum. Ego vestros patres, tu Scipio, tuque Laelii, viros clarissimos mihi que amicissimos vivere arbitror, et eam quidem vitam quae est sola vita nominanda. Nam, dum sumus inclusi in his conpagibus corporis, munere quodam necessitatis et gravi opere perfungimur. Est enim
animus caelestis ex altissimo domicilio depressus, et quasi demersus in terram, locum divinæ naturæ aeternitatique contrarium. Sed credo deos immortalis sparsisse animos in corpora humana, ut essent qui terras tuerentur, quique caelestium ordinem contemplantes imitarentur eum vitae modo atque constantia. Nec me solum ratio ac disputatio impulit ut ita crederem, sed nobilitas etiam summorum philosophorum et auctoritas. 78. Audiebam Pythagoram Pythagoreosque, incolas paene nostros, qui essent Italici philosophi quondam nominati, numquam dubitasse quin ex universa mente divina delibatos animos haberemus. Demonstrabantur mihi praeterea quae Socrates suprema vitae die de immortalitate animorum disseruisset, is qui esset omnium sapientissimus Apollinis oraculo iudicatus. Quid multa? Sic mihi persuasi, sic sentio, cum tanta celeritas animorum sit, tanta memoria praeteritorum futurorumque prudentia, tot artes, [tantæ scientiae,] tot inventa, non posse eam naturam quae res eam contineat esse mortale: cumque semper agitetur animus, nec principium motus habeat, quia se ipse moveat, ne finem quidem habiturum esse motus, quia numquam se ipse sit relicturus; et cum simplex animi natura esset, neque haberet in se quicquam admixtum dispar sui atque dissimile, non posse eum dividi, quod si non possit, non posse interire: magnoque esse argumento homines scire pleraque ante quam nati sint, quod iam pueri, cum artis difficilis discant, ita celeriter res innumerabilis adripiant, ut eas non tum primum accipere videantur, sed reminisce et recordari. Haec Platonis fere.

xxii. 79. Apud Xenophonem autem moriens Cyrus major haec dicit: 'Nolite arbitrari, O mei carissimi filii, me, cum a vobis discesserò, nusquam aut nullum fore. Nec enim dum eram vobiscum animum meum videbatis, sed eum esse in hoc corpore ex iis rebus
quas gerebam intellegebatis. Eundem igitur esse creditote, etiam si nullum videbitis. 80. Nec vero clarorum virorum post mortem honores permanerent, si nihil eorum ipsorum animi efficerent, quo diutius memoriam sui teneremus. Mihi quidem persuaderi numquam potuit animos dum in corporibus essent mortalibus vivere, cum excessissent ex eis emori; nec vero tum animum esse insipientem cum ex insipienti corpore evasisset; sed cum omni admixtione corporis liberatus purus et integer esse coepisset, tum esse sapientem. Atque etiam, cum hominis natura morte dissolvitur, ceterarum rerum perspicuum est quo quaeque discedat, abeunt enim illuc omnia unde orta sunt; animus autem solus nec cum adest nec cum discedit adparet. 81. Iam vero videtis nihil esse morti tam simile quam somnum. Atqui dormantium animi maxime declarant divinitatem suam; multa enim cum remissi et liberi sunt futura prospiciunt. Ex quo intellegitur quales futuri sint, cum se plane corporis vinculis relaxaverint. Qua re, si haec ita sunt, sic me colitote' inquit 'ut deum. Sin una est interiturus animus cum corpore, vos tamen, deos verentes, qui hanc omnem pulchritudinem tuentur et regunt, memoriam nostri pie inviolateque servavitis.'

xxiii. 82. Cyrus quidem haec moriens. Nos, si placet, nostra videamus. Nemo umquam mihi, Scipio, persuadebit aut patrem tuum Paulum, aut duos avos Paulum et Africanum, aut Africani patrem aut patruum, aut multos praestantis viros quos enumerare non est necesse, tanta esse conatos quae ad posteritatis memoriam pertinenter, nisi animo cernerent posteritatem ad se pertinere. An censes — ut de me ipso aliquid more senum glorier — me tantos labores diurnos nocturnosque domi militiaeque suscepturum fuisse, si isdem finibus gloriem meam quibus vitam essem terminaturus? Nonne melius multo fuisset otiosam aetatem
et quietam sine ullo labore et contentione traducere? Sed nescio quo modo animus erigens se posteritatem ita semper prospiciebat, quasi cum excessisset e vita tum denique victurus esset. Quod quidem ni ita se haberet, ut animi inmortales essent, haud optimi cuiusque animus maxime ad immortalitatis gloriam niteretur. 83. Quid, quod sapientissimus quisque aequissimo animo moritur, stultissimus iniquissimo? Nonne vobis videtur is animus, qui plus cernat et longius, videre se ad meliora proficisci; ille autem cui obtusior sit acies non videre? Equidem efferor studio patres vestros, quos colui et dilexi, videndi; neque vero eos solum convenire aveo quos ipse cognovi, sed illos etiam de quibus audivi et legi et ipse conscripsi. Quo quidem me proficiscendem haud sane quis facile retraxerit, nec tamquam Peliam recoxerit. Et si quis deus mihi largiatur ut ex hac aetate repuerascam et in cunis vagiam, valde recusem; nec vero velim, quasi decurso spatio, ad carceres a calce revocari. 84. Quid enim habet vita commodi? Quid non potius laboris? Sed habeat sane: habet certe tamen aut satietatem aut modum. Non lubet enim mihi deplorare vitam, quod multi et i docti saepe secerunt: neque me vixisse paenitet, quoniam ita vixi ut non frustra me naturam existemum; et ex vita ita discedo tamquam ex hospitio, non tamquam e domo. Commorandi enim natura devourorium nobis, non habitandi dedit. 85. O praeclarum diem, cum in illud divinum animorum concilium coetumque proficiscar, cumque ex hac turba et conluvione discedam! Proficiscar enim non ad eos solum viros de quibus ante dixi, verum etiam ad Catonem meum, quo nemo vir melior natus est, nemo pietate praestandior; cujus a me corpus est crematum, — quod contra decuit ab illo meum, — animus vero non me deserens, sed respectans, in ea profecto loca discessit, quo mihi ipsi cernebat esse veniendum. Quem ego
meum casum fortiter ferre visus sum, non quo aequo
animo ferrem, sed me ipse consolabar existumans non
longinquum inter nos digressum et discessum fore.

88. His mihi rebus, Scipio, — id enim te cum Laelio
admirari solere dixisti, — levis est senectus, nec solum
non molesta sed etiam jucunda. Quod si in hoc erro,
qui animos hominum inmortalis esse credam, liben-
ter erro; nec mihi hunc errorem, quo delector, dum
vivo extorqueri volo. Sin mortuus, ut quidam minuti
philosophi censent, nihil sentiam, non vereor ne hunc
errorem meum philosophi mortui inrideant. Quod si
non sumus inmortales futuri, tamen exstingui homini
suo tempore optabile est. Nam habet natura ut alia-
rum rerum omnium, sic vivendi modum. Senectus
autem aetatis est peractio tamquam fabulae, cuius
defetigationem fugere debemus, praesertim adiuncta
satietate.

Haec habui de senectute quae dicerem, ad quam
utinam perveniatis, ut ea quae ex me audistis, re ex-
perti, probare possitis.
NOTES.
NOTES.

Argument.

CHAP. 1. Cicero sets forth to his friend Atticus his motive in composing the work — 1. Scipio and Laelius ask of Cato his experience of old age. — 2. Cato recounts the charges commonly made against old age, and qualifies them. — 4, 5. He speaks of the old age of Fabius Maximus, employed in politics and war, and of other examples, both Greek and Roman, philosophers and poets. There are four complaints against old age: exclusion from active life, the enfeebling of the bodily powers, deprivation of sensual pleasure, and the near approach of death. — 6. Does old age unfit for active life? Age has its own activities: Claudius, Cato, etc. — 7, 8. The alleged defect of memory: examples of aged poets, philosophers, orators, etc., and of others, who continue to learn in advanced life. — 9, 10. Lack of bodily vigor: only the athletes mourn this, and even this is not universal among the old. Exercise and temperance resist old age: examples of Nestor and Cato himself. Cyrus and Masinissa. — 11. Nor is strength needed, and if many old men are inferior, so are many young men. We must withstand old age, both bodily and mentally, as did Appius Claudius; for only a self-respecting independent old age is honored. — 12. Age, it is true, is incapable of bodily pleasure: but in this it has the advantage over youthful passion. — 13. The false teaching of the Epicureans respecting pleasure. — 14. Old age has still the true joys of companionship, and society, and authorship. — 15. So also the occupations and delights of husbandry: testimony of Hesiod and Homer. — 16. Curius and Cincinnatus; agriculture is peculiarly fit for the old. — 17. Xenophon, Cyrus, Valerius, and others. — 18. But only a well-spent youth can prepare for an honorable age: the unhappiness of age is the fault of temerity in the old. — 19. The approach of death: comparison of exposure to death in age and youth. — 20. Death is no evil; but either a cessation of being, or a blessed change. — 21. The good man hopes for immortality. — 22. The dying Cyrus. — 23. The hope which sustains honorable labors; anticipation of a noble life.

§ 1. Titus. In addressing his friend Titus Pomponius Atticus, Cicero elegantly applies some hexameters from Ennius's Annales, addressed to Titus Quinctius Flamininus the conqueror of Macedon (B.C. 193). The incident here referred to was when, after being for 40 days baffled in an attempt to cross the mountain passes of Epirus, he was at last approached by a faithful herdsman, who offered to guide him across. The victory of Cynoscephalae which followed, B.C. 197, gave Flamininus unlimited control over Greece, which he used with great moderation. At the Isthmian games near Corinth, he formally restored their independence to the Greeks, after which both Greece and Macedonia remained independent for about fifty years. — adjuro, § 30, 6, a. — curam, anxiety, an account of the success of the enemy in baffling him. — levasso = levavero (§ 30, 6, e). — coquit, versât, burns and goods: for the quantity see § 83, u. — ille vir, the herdsman. — plenius, § 83, a. — fidel retains the original long ś of the fifth declension. — quamquam (corrective), and yet. — moderationem et aequitatem (both with
animi), self control and even temper. — cognomen, the surname Atticus, due to the Greek culture and sympathies of Pomponius, and his long residence at Athens. — deportasse, brought off, a kind of technical military term. — eiisdem rebus, i. e. the civil war and the despotism of Caesar. — me ipsum, § 67, i, b, r. — quarum, obj. gen. — major, a more serious matter.

§ 2. hoc (§ 54, 1, c), not merely antecedent of quod, but demonstrative: this burden (i. e. old age). — certe, at any rate (§ 51, 3, c).
— senectute: the Romans distinguished the ages of puéritia, adolescentia, juvenitas, aetas seniorum, and senectus, in periods of about fifteen years, but not very exactly. — te quidem: here quidem merely emphasizes te. — mihi: not really emphatic, but opposed to te and tu, according to the Roman fashion (see Or for Roscius, § 1). — eo munere, a tribute. — uteretur, enjoy. — confectio, composition.
— abatersit, brushed away. — molestias, vexations. — mollem, undisturbed ("smooth"). — cui ... possit, a subjunct of charact. (§ 65, 2. Probably originally an apodosis, which it much resembles here: compare "Latin Subjunctive," p. 19). — omne tempus stasis, every period of life, i. e. even old age, the most unpromising.

§ 3. ceteris, the other topics of philosophy.

26. misimus, I send (§ 58, 8).—autem, however. The thought is, "I do not write it, however, as a treatise in my own person, but have put it in the mouth of a fit speaker; not Tithonus, but, etc." — Tithono, the husband of Eos (Aurora). The gods gave the gift of immortality to him at her request, but she forgot to ask for perpetual youth, so he became a stock example of age. Life soon became a burden to him; as a second boon, he was changed into a cicada (katydid). — Aristò, a Peripatetic philosopher of the Island of Ceos, who lived in the third cent. B.C. — esset (§ 60, 2), i. e. if I had. — auctoritatis, dignity. — in fabula, in a mythical tale. — Lælius et Scipionem, these two names are types of friendship, like Damon and Pythias, or David and Jonathan. Cicero's treatise De Amicitia, the companion to that De Senectute, has its name from Lælius.

P. Cornelius Scipio Æmilianus (cos. b.c. 147; known also as Africanus Minor, to distinguish him from his grand-father by adoption, the conqueror of Hannibal) was son of L. Æmilius Paulus, the conqueror of Macedonia, but passed by adoption into the family of Scipio. As a statesman and general he was first of his age; of unblemished private character, and of a calm good sense which was the quality most needed in his time. Mommersn says of him: "The history of Rome presents various men of greater genius than Scipio Æmilianus, but none equalling him in moral purity, in the utter absence of political selfishness, in generous love of his country, and none, perhaps, to whom destiny has assigned a more tragic part." He was assassinated, b.c. 129, probably by the infamous Carbo. C. Lælius is known to us principally by his association with Scipio: he was in his time a man of high culture and considerable influence, especially noted as a public speaker.

ipse, as opposed to the part he plays in this book. — attributo, you must ascribe it (fut. imperat. on account of the future protasis videbitur). — plura, sc. dicere (§ 49, 2, c). — jam, presently.
§ 4. sāpe numero, oftentimes.—excellentem, as compared with others; perfectam, with absolute wisdom.—quod ... senserim, informal indir. discourse following admirari, § 66, 1, d.—Ætna, a proverbial expression from Euripides, referring to the myth of Enceladus buried beneath Mount Etna.—haud sane, not very,—a kind of lūtotes, always with a jocose turn, as our "not much of a," etc.—omnia bona ... petunt: this Stoic sentiment is put naturally in the mouth of Cato, to whose character that doctrine had a special fitness.—eandem accusant aedepi, and yet they find fault with it when reached.—putavissent, subj. of indir. disc. (for indic. of direct, which the Latin prefers in these expressions where we say "would have thought").—quamvis longa, however long.—cum effluxisset, i. e. in the case supposed.

§ 5. quae utinam esset, and I wish it were.—cognomine, i. e. Cato = catus, shrewd, or from the title sapiens, bestowed on him.—in hoc sapientes, a philosopher; alluding to the Stoic doctrine, secundum naturam vivere.

3. extremum actum, i. e. life is a drama, and its author will not leave its last act void of interest.—inerti, without skill (ars).—tamen, yet: however excellent the composition, it must have a beginning, middle, and end.—bacis (baccis), meaning the smaller fruits, as olives, etc.—maturitate tempestiva, in the fulness of time.—ferundum, old form.—molliter, patiently (lit. smoothly, or without resistance, also used in a bad sense).—Gigantum, a brood of monsters, who revolted against Zeus, and were punished by being thrust under the earth; Enceladus, for instance, under Etna. They were often confounded with the Titans, an earlier race of demigods, children of Uranus and Rhea, who revolted against Kronos.

§ 6. atqui (regularly of the minor premiss), and now (that being so).—ut pollicear, § 64, 1, b.—feceris, § 58, 7, R.—sieri, belonging to the last verb, volumus: speramus would take a fut. infin).—quidem simply emphasizes volumus.—certe, at all events.—vero, of course.—volumus sane (stronger than Cato’s gratum esse), why certainly, we are anxious.—confeceris, § 61, 1, R.—ingrediendum (§ 72, 5, b, R.), nom. of the gerund form, governing the acc. quam. (In Greek this usage is regularly retained with the verbal τεινω, and in Sanskrit is universal. An arcaism in Latin: perhaps used here intentionally as such).—istuc, neut. acc. (§ 20, 1, n).—quale, i. e. what is the nature of.

§ 7. æqualium (i. e. in age), mate, explaining pares, below.—que, cognate acc., referring by synesis to querellis.—Salinator: C. Livius Salinator, cos. b. c. 188; Sp. Postumius Albinus, cos. 186: men of no special note.—tum, tum, now, now.—quod carerent (§ 66, 1, d), see § 39.—accusare, find fault with.
usu (probably dat. for usui) venirent, would be experienced by.—mutilorum, agreeing with quorum (§ 50, 2, c, R³).—sine querella § 50, 3, d, R.—qui ferrent, § 65, 2. —moribus, character (as determined by habit).—ātēs, time of life. —moderatī, well regulated. —diffīciles, hard to please (of the temper); inhumanī, churlish (of breeding merely). —autem, on the other hand.

4. § 8. dignitatem, respectability. —est . . . aliquid, there is something in that, to be sure. —nequaquam, not by any means. —Themistocles, whose policy created the naval power of Athens. The anecdote, referring to the honors he received at Sparta, is told by Herodotus (viii. 125) of a citizen of Belbina, an islet near Sunium. Seriphus is one of the smallest of the Cyclades. —summa inopia, the depth of poverty.—levīs, a trifling matter. —non gravis, otherwise than burdensome. (Both wisdom and estate are needed for the comfort of age, just as talent and opportunity were both needed for the glory of Themistocles.)

§ 9. omnino, in general.—arma, defences.—artes —study. —cum . . . vixeris, gen. cond. (§ 59, 5, a).—diu multum, i. e. a long and varied life. —ne . . . quidem, even. —bene factorum, see § 72, 2, a.

§ 10. Q. Maximum: Q. Fabius Maximus Verrucosus, the chief citizen of Rome in the early years of the Second Punic War, held command against Hannibal, and from his cautious policy received the name Cunctator: the present chapter is chiefly devoted to him. In his fifth consulship (B.C. 209) he recovered Tarentum, the third city in Italy; the Roman commander, M. Livius Macatus had lost the city, but continued to hold the citadel, from which he gave Fabius vigorous aid. —condita, seasoned (relieved). —consul primum, B.C. 233: this fixes the date of Cato’s birth at 234. —adulescentulus: Cato was at this time (B.C. 214) twenty years old.

Seventeen was the age at which the young man was liable to military service, and this date (B.C. 217) is given by Plutarch and Nepos for Cato’s first campaign. Nepos adds that in 214 he was military tribune, which is inconsistent with the rule that this office required five years of service, as well as with the word miles in the text. His questorship (in B.C. 204) agrees with the rule that ten years of service (or at least of presenting one’s self for conscription) was necessary before holding any civil office.

quinto anno post, i. e. counting in the fifth year, B.C. 209; quadrennio post, i. e. after the expiration of the full four years’ interval, B.C. 204. —quem magistratum, which office (of prætor). —cum quidem, at which very time. (The whole of this prelude, suited to the garrulousness of age, indicates also the respective dates of these lives.) —legis Cinciae, B.C. 204, ordaining ne quis ob causam orandam pecuniam domum vic acciperet. This was one of a series of laws designed to shut out the governing aristocracy from active business. (The idea seems to have been similar to that which re-
quires members of the British Parliament to serve without compensation: government was the business of a rich hereditary aristocracy. — plane grandis, quite advanced in years. — patientia, stubborn endurance. — familiaris, rather an unwarranted term under the circumstances. Towards the end of his life Cato modified his stern conservatism so far as to make a study of Greek (see § 3); but at the time alluded to he was the last man in Rome to make an "intimate" of a mere man of letters, of Greek birth too, like Ennius. Indeed, he reproached M. Fulvius Nobilior, the leader in the Hellenizing movement of the day, for having taken Ennius with him on his campaign in Aetolia. — cunctando, hence the name Cunctator. — nonum, earlier form of non = ne unum (œnum), as the English none. — poenebat, § 83, 1, g. — post, i. e. not only then, but as it is now. — magis, more (than it otherwise would).

5. § 11. cum quidem, when, you know. — Salinatori: a mistake of Cicero's. M. Livius Salinator was a distinguished and successful general in the campaign against Hasdrubal, B.C. 207; it was M. Livius Macatus that lost Tarentum, and gave efficient service from the citadel in its recovery. — certe, no doubt. — vero, in truth. — in toga, i. e. in civil affairs: "pacis est in signe et oti toga; contra autem arma tumultus atque bellum" (In Pis. 30). — consul iterum (B.C. 228), being consul for a second term. — C. Flaminio, the chief popular leader of his day, often held up to reproach by writers, like Cicero, of aristocratic sympathies. The reproach was enhanced by his disgraceful blunder in the battle of L. Trasimenum, B.C. 217, in which his army was cut to pieces, and he himself killed.

In spite of his ill repute as a demagogue, and his military failure, Flaminius was the author of some very salutary measures. In his tribunate, B.C. 232, he carried the law here referred to, dividing the Gallic and Picene territory among poor citizens, — the policy afterwards revived by the Gracchi, and perhaps the most hopeful remedy of the evils of the State. This measure he carried by a popular vote against the opposition of the Senate, an act which was strictly unconstitutional, inasmuch as this was an administrative measure, which fell within the province of the Senate. In his censorship, B.C. 220, he laid out the Flaminian Way, to the Picene and Gallic region, and built the Flaminian Circus. Shortly after, in the Senate, he was a chief supporter of the Claudian Law, by which Senators were prohibited from engaging in trade. As this was a measure of directly the same tendency as the Cincian Law (see § 10), to maintain the authority of a non-commercial aristocracy, it certainly seems free from demagogism. Inasmuch, however, as it thwarted the pecuniary interests of the Senators, it made them bitterly hostile to him.

dicere ausus est. The expression here quoted was safe enough in the mouth of a leader of the aristocracy — as Fabius was — at once Senator, executive officer, and interpreter of the omens. But it of course struck at the root of the whole Roman polity and religion, betraying a decline of faith, which was the first symptom of national decay. — optimis auspiciis, etc., compare Iliad, xii. 243.

§ 12. quo modo tulit: the indic. (instead of the subj. of indir. question) is perhaps chosen as belonging to the old style (§ 67, 2, d); otherwise the antecedent modus must be understood, which
seems harsh. — *fili consularis*: this son, who had the same name as his father, was consul B.C. 213. It is of him that the story is told, strongly characteristic of Roman customs, that his father, being sent as *legatus* to his camp, and meeting him as he proceeded with his train of lictors, neglected to alight from his horse, as respect for the consul required. Upon this a lictor, at the son’s order, commanded him to dismount; when he sprang at once to his feet, with the words, “I wished to see, my son, how well you knew that you were consul” (Liv. xxiv. 44). — *est . . . laudatio, his eulogy is extant*. — *quem philosophum*, etc., i.e. a nobler temper than any philosopher. — *juris augurii*: i.e. the ecclesiastical or canon law of the Romans.

It was characteristic of both Greeks and Romans, and one of the chief sources of their enduring freedom, that they had no priestly class, but that the religion of the State and the political administration of the State were in the same hands. A few priestly offices of low grade were held as professions by men of low rank: a few priesthoods of great dignity but of no political influence, such as that of *rex sacrificius, flamenc*, the *Salii*, etc., were held for life by men of rank, selected solely for their patrician birth: but the great colleges of *pontifices*, augurs, etc., which had control of the religious institutions in their relation to the government, were invariably made up of leading statesmen. For example, Cicero was *augur*, Caesar was *pontifex*. From this it resulted that the interests of a priesthood were never, as in Egypt and other eastern countries, suffered to interfere with the interests of the State. The *jus augurium* was the code of rules by which the college of augurs interpreted the auspices, or expressed will of the gods.

multae, etc., a good knowledge of literature for a Roman; they were, of course, behind the Greeks.

§ 13. *quorusr*, sc. *spectant, to what end?*— *profecto, doubtless*. — *nefas, an outrage*. — *neq tamen omneas, though indeed not all*. — *pedestris*: the term *infantry* is often applied, in Greek and Latin, to the whole land force as distinct from the marine. — *est . . . senectus, there is an old age*, etc. (§ 76, 1, b). — *placita ac levia, calm and serene*, as becomes a philosopher. — *Isocrates*, the “old man eloquent” who died at the report of “that dishonest victory at Chæronea, fatal to liberty,” at the age of ninety-nine.

6. *Gorgias*, the celebrated sophist, or professional teacher of rhetoric and philosophy, whom Plato introduces in controversy with Socrates on the grounds of moral truth. His last words are said to have been, “Now Sleep bears me to his brother” (Death). — *cessavit, relaxed*. — *cum . . . quaeretur*, the regular construction with *quaero* (§ 52, 2, c, r.). — *quod, adv. acc.*, § 52, 3, a.

§ 14. *sua vita conferunt, charge their own failings upon*. — *spatio supremo, at the end of the course* (the regular term). — *Olympia*, cognate acc. (§ 52, 1, b), imitated from the Greek perhaps. — *confectus*, § 83, a. — *quem . . . potestis, whom, by the way, you may well remember*. — *anno*, etc., i.e. it is now nineteen years since he died. — *hi consules*: T. Quintius Flamininus and M. Acilius Balbus, coss. B.C. 150, the assumed date of this dialogue.

— *Caepione*: Q. Marcianus Philippus (*iterum*) and Cn. Servilius Ca—
picio, coss. B.C.169. — legem Voconiam: this was one of the principal sumptuary laws of the Romans, or laws designed to control the private life and luxury of individuals.

"The Voconian law, passed during the later republic, 169 B.C., imposed a restriction on the institution of women as heirs. It applied only to large estates. A person whom the census placed in the first class, as having a rated property of at least one hundred thousand asses (i.e., one thousand dollars, which in purchasing power was worth as much as ten thousand now), such a person was forbidden to appoint a woman as heir... The alleged design of the statute is said to have been to restrain the growing luxury and extravagance of women, by withholding from them the means of being luxurious and extravagant on a large scale. It can hardly be supposed, however, that this was the principal reason for the measure. A stronger reason must have been the desire of the wealthy class to keep large estates in the families, the agnate families, to which they belonged; if such an estate became the inheritance of a woman, it was apt to pass by her marriage into another family." — Hadley, Introduction to Roman Law, p. 308.

bonis lateribus, with sound lungs. — delectari, enjoy.

§ 15. etenim (§ 43, 3, d), here passes from the general to the particular.— a rebus gerendis, from active life (not necessarily, though usually, war). — an, or is it (§ 71, 2, b). — res seniles, offices of age. — administratrum, § 65, 2. — tamen, notwithstanding these infirmities. — nihil agebat, was he idle? — Paulus (see note, § 3): his daughter married Marcus, son of Cato, a young man of great promise, who died B.C. 152, as pretor elect.— Fabricii etc.: these were statesmen of the war with Pyrrhus, all plebeians and men equally distinguished for ability and integrity. C. Fabricius Luscinus was ambassador to Pyrrhus; M'. Curius Dentatus defeated the Samnites, B.C. 290, and Pyrrhus at Beneventum, B.C. 275; Ti. Coruncanius was the first plebeian pontifex maximus. — cum... defendebant, § 62, 2, n.

7. § 16. Claudii: App. Claudius, known as Cæcus (the blind) or the Censor, one of the few men of real genius among the statesmen of the old Republic. In his censorship (B.C. 311) he attempted some democratic innovations (which were set aside by his successor, Q. Fabius Maximus, ancestor of the Cunctator) and built the first military road, the Appia Via; he also was the first to bring a supply of fresh water into the city by the Aqua Appia. The incident here related of him, that when blind and old he had himself brought into the Senate in order to oppose negotiations with Pyrrhus, and to insist that there should be no negotiations with a foreign enemy on the soil of Italy, is the most illustrious in his life. The speech in which he enforced this policy was extant in the time of Cicero, and passed as the earliest specimen of Roman prose literature. — accedebat, i.e. to the infirmity of age was added the accident that (ut) he was blind (§ 70, 4, a). — persecutus est, has given in full. — consulatum: his two consulships were B.C. 307 and 296. It was very unusual for any but a consul man to be made censor. — grandem, advanced in years.
§ 17. at vero, yet in reality. — oonailio, advice; auctoritate, influence; sententia, official opinion (in the Senate). — quibus, with orbiri as abl. of separation; with augeri as abl. of specification.

§ 18. nisi forte (as nisi vero), always ironical — miles, etc., the regular grades of military service. The legatus was often a man of consular rank. — præscribo, i. e. in virtue of his personal influence. — Karthagini. This was hardly a ground for boasting. With his characteristic narrowness of spirit and selfish patriotism, Cato could not bear to see the brilliant commercial prosperity which Carthage continued to enjoy, even after being humbled in the second Punic War. He determined that it should not be only humbled, but destroyed, and for several years ended every speech with the words: Ita censeo, et Karthaginem esse delendam. — cogitant (§ 72, 1, a), which has long been plotting mischief.

§ 19. avi reliquias, “what your grandfather left unfinished.” — sextus et tricosimus; this would give us B.C. 185: the death of the elder Africanus is, however, usually given as 183, the same year with that of Hannibal and Philopomen. — ante me censorem: Cato’s censorship was B.C. 184, his consulship 195; the interval here given, novem annis, expresses the number of full years intervening. Scipio’s second consulship was B.C. 194.

§ 20. peeniteret (§ 59, 3, d), i. e. and were living now. — nec enim, for he would not, you see, etc. (num in the question implying a negative answer. Notice the connectives: three divisions with nec, one having a subordinate with aut; then three without connectives). — onailio: the primary function of the Senate was advisory. — senatum, in its primary sense as a body of elders.

§ 21. quidem, in fact. The Spartan Senate (yepouoia) consisted of twenty-eight men over sixty, and the two Kings. The small number enables Cicero to call this a magistratus, which term he could not apply to the Roman Senate. — externa, i. e. foreign history. — oedo, come; qui, how? — Nevi: Cn. Navius, the earliest native Roman poet, flourished in the time of the second Punic War. He wrote comedies and tragedies, and an epic poem upon the first Punic War. He was distinguished for bold and original satire. — proveniebant (an agricultural word), i. e. a crop of them were springing up. — videlicet = and naturally, for, etc.

§ 21. at memoria (objection): i. e. memory is lost, which is needed for active business. — nisi exerceas, gen. cond. (§ 59, 5, a). — tardior, rather dull. — qui Aristides esset (§ 66, 2) = the acc. Aristidem, which would be ambiguous: that he ever saluted Aristides as Lysimachus. — equidem, for my part. — sepulcra legens: Cato was writing his history, the Origines. — quod alunt, as they say;
this expression points to a proverb. The same whim has prevailed in modern times. — quemquam, emphatic: I never heard of any man who in his old age, etc. — vadimonia constituta, recognizances given, hence acting as bail, a very common occurrence with men of property, for in all personal actions the defendant gave bail to appear.

§ 22. quid, sc. factunt. — juris consulti: these were persons who made jurisprudence a study, and whose formally expressed opinions (responds) had much the same weight that judicial decisions have at the present day (see Maine's Ancient Law, Ch. II. p. 42).

They (jurisconsulti) were consulted by private persons to ascertain and secure their rights, by advocates, jurors (judices), and even by the praetors, who, though their duties were judicial, were themselves rarely lawyers, but politicians in the regular career of office. Until the Empire, their decisions had no binding force, but only a moral influence. Augustus gave to some jurists the jus respondendi, the right to interpret the law with binding force. See Hadley, Int. to Roman Law, pp. 61 and 65.

By the side of the jurists who had authority in questions of civil law, are mentioned the pontifices and augurs, who had the superintendence of what we may call ecclesiastical law (for the jus augurium, see Note on § 12). The jus pontificium, exercised by the college of pontifices, had authority in the entire field of religious institutions, except so far as foreign rites were under the superintendence of the quindecimviri sacris faciundis, who had charge of the Sibylline books. The Pontifex Maximus was therefore the head of the ecclesiastical institutions of Rome; this office was conferred upon Augustus, as a regular part of the Emperor's functions, who by this act became head of Church as well as of State. This combination of supreme civil and ecclesiastical powers continued until the Christian emperors.

sene, in their old age. — manent (emphatic), continue. — ingenia, powers of mind, including memory and others necessary to active life. — permaneat, § 57, 3, c. — neque ea solum, and that, not only, etc. — quod, agreeing with studium (§ 76, 3, a.)

9. rem familiarem, property. — ut . . . removeret, purpose of vocatus est. — nostro more, i. e. by the laws of the Twelve Tables. — patribus, dat. after interdici, which is used impersonally (§ 51, 2, f.). — bonis (§ 54, 1), abl. of separation: i. e. from the control of their property. — desipientem, growing foolish. — fabulam, play. — in manus, i. e. not yet publicly exhibited. — proxima, last, and so a proof that he had not lost his powers. This play contains the celebrated chorus in praise of the moral beauty of the neighborhood of Athens. Nothing could have better won the good opinion of his judges.

§ 23. num: i. e. do you suppose that, etc. — studiorum agitatio, the pursuit of letters.

§ 24. age, ut omissamus (§ 64, 1, b), but come: to pass over, etc. — divina, i. e. poetry and philosophy, which tend to preserve the powers. — possum nominare (§ 60, 2, c), I could name. — ex agro Sabino, in the central mountain region of Italy, where Cato had an estate. — rusticos, plain farmers. — numquam fere, hardly
ever. — serendis, etc., § 73, 3. d. — fructibus, crops. — condendis, i. e. curing and storing. — quamquam (corrective), and yet. — idem (pl.), they also. — nihil . . . pertinere, to have no concern for them. — sērit ārbōrēs, etc., Cretic tetram. (§ 82, 6). — sæculo, generation: old men, therefore, do engage in active labors. — Statius: Cæcilius Statius, a freedman of Insubrian birth, who, like his contemporary Plautus, translated and worked over the comedies of Menander and other Greek writers. None of his plays are extant. Died, B. c. 168.

§ 25. neo vero, and in fact the farmer never hesitates. — melius, i. e. in the preceding. — illud idem, the same poet says in that which follows. — videt, one sees.

10. illud vero, etc., and this still worse.

§ 26. delectantur, find pleasure in. — levior, less burdensome. — gaudent, enjoy (§ 54, 10, a). — languida, feeble; iners, helpless; operosa, laborious. — scilicet, that is to say. — quid, how is it with, etc. — addiscunt, learn something new. — senem fieri, grows old. — ego, I too (opposed to Solon). — litteras Græcas, Greek. — quas quidem adripui, and I have seized them too. — quasi, as it were.

—ea ipsa, these very stories. — vellem equidem (§ 60, 2, b, § 57, 4, c), I should have liked (emph.) to do that too; but in letters, at any rate, I have accomplished something. — fidibus (abl. inst.), sc. canere.

§ 27. desidero, feel the want of. — alter, see § 15. — vox, language. — contemptior, more despicable. — Milonis: Milo of Crotona, a Greek city of Magna Graecia, a famous athlete. It is of him that the story is told that, by lifting a calf every day, he was able to lift it when it became an ox. — jam . . . esset, was now getting old. — at: i. e. I still live, but, etc. — Ælius: Sex. Ælius Paetus, named Catus from his acuteness, the most distinguished jurist of his time: juris civilis omnium peritissimus (Cic. Brut. 78), cos. B.c. 198. The Ælian gens was distinguished for the number of jurists it produced. For Ti. Coruncanius, see note, § 15. P. Licinius Crassus, also an eminent jurist, pontifex maximus; cos. B.c. 205. — jura civibus præscribebantur, the rights of their fellow-citizens were settled, i. e. in their official opinion.

11. § 28. orator, emphatic: as to the orator, etc. — est (emph.), for his task is indeed, etc. — omnino, to be sure. — canorum, resonance. — nescio quo pacto (§ 67, 2, e), somehow. — quod equidem, etc., and in fact I have not lost it yet. — decorum, becoming. — sermo, style. — remissus, unexcited. — composita, smooth; mitis, gentle. — si . . . nequeas, gen. cond. (§ 59, 5, a). — Scipioni, etc.; i. e. young men like them.

§ 29. omne . . . munus, the performance of every duty. — quo quidem opere, and than this task. — mihi vero videbantur, for my part I used to think. — Cn. et P. Scipiones; two brothers who held command in the early years of the second Punic War, and who
fell in battle in Spain within a month of each other, B.C. 212. From them respectively were descended the two branches of the Scipio family. Publius was father of the elder Africanus; Cneius of Nasica, pronounced optimus Romanorum (§ 45), from whom were descended several generations with the same agnomen, all more or less famous. — Amilius: L. Amilius Paulus, cos. B.C. 216, killed in the battle of Cannæ, father of the victor of Pydna (see note, § 3), and grandfather of the younger Africanus. — bonarum artium, liberal arts. — quamvis, § 61, 2. — etsi, though indeed.

§ 30. quidem, for instance. — ego, opposed to Xenophon. — Metellum: L. Caecilius Metellus, cos. B.C. 231 and 247, and pontifex maximus, grandfather of the well-known Metellus Macedonicus. —  puer, when I was a boy. — esse, § 58, 11, b. — extre mo: at his first consulship he must have been at least forty-three. — mihi: the dat. for the acc. here emphasizes the person. — quidem, to be sure. — sentile, the way with old men.

§ 31. videtisane, don't you see? — praedicet, talks at large. Nestor is ingeniously introduced as an excuse for garrulity and an honorable example of age, as Ajax is of brute strength and the vigor of youth.

§ 32. vellem equidem, I could wish to be sure. — queo: this verb is used in later Latin only with a negative. — non quidem ... sed tamen (below), equivalent to though not endowed; etc. — Glabrion: M’. Acilius Glabrio, probably ancestor of a family of some distinction in Cicero’s time; as consul, B.C. 191, he defeated Antiochus the Great, at Thermopylae. — enervavit, unstrung; adfizit, broken down. — hospites, friends from abroad (see “Orations,” Rosc. Am. § 5, note). — nec enim, for (let me tell you) I never, etc. — laudato, much praised. — fieri (§ 70, 3, a): Cato takes the proverb to mean, “lead the quiet life of an old man;” it probably really means, “avoid the follies of youth.” — itaque, etc., and so, thus far no one has sought to meet me, to whom I was “engaged.” — fuerim, subj. of charact.

§ 33. ne vos quidem, nor have you either. — modo (§ 57, 3, c), provided. — ne, assuredly. — tenebitur, held back. — Milo, see § 27. — Pythagore, opposed to Milo, as head of the school in which he was a disciple. Once, it is said, while Pythagoras was discoursing, the roof gave way, and would have fallen but for the single strength of Milo. — utrum ... an, § 71, 2. — cum abat, § 59, 1, a. — cursus, succession. — simplex, unvarying. — sua tempestivitas, to each period of life its own fitness to the time. — ferocitas, fierce energy. — constantia, well settled.

§ 34. Masinissa, king of Numidia, a valuable ally to Scipio in the war with Hannibal; grandfather of Jugurtha. — autem, on
the other hand.—siccitatem = toughness; lit. freedom from humors, the supposed source of disease.—officia, required duties; munera, functions: privileges as well as duties.—potest (emphatic position), can, though often they do not.—no sint, § 57, 3, c.—postulantur a, required of (not by).—quod, adv. acc. (§ 52, 3, a).

§ 35. imbecilli, helpless.—omnino, at all.—quidem, at any rate.—vitium, defect (connected with both senectutis and valetudinis).—paternam, his father’s.—resistendum (§ 73, 1, r.), we must make a stand (old age being so far a matter of bodily health).

§ 36. habenda ratio, regard must be had (lit. account must be taken of it, a business term).—utendum, § 72, 5, b, r.—subveniendum est, we must come to the relief.—quidem, it is true.—quos ait, those whom he speaks of as.

14. Cecilius, see note, § 24.—oomios, of the comedy, a stock character in Greek and Roman plays.—hoc, by this.—petulantia, wantonness.—non proborum, stronger than improborum.—dilirato, dotage.—levium, frivolous.

§ 37. robustos, grown up.—languescens, though enfeebled.—auctoritatem, moral authority (such as exists nowadays); imperium, power of command, or military authority, including power of life and death (implied in the patria potestas).—metuebant servi (emphatic position of the verb), he was feared by his slaves, revered by his children, held dear by all.

§ 38. ita . . . si, only on condition that.—se ipsa defendit, is its own defence.—nemini mancipata, in no man’s power.—ut enim, etc., see § 32.—sequitur, aims at.—conligo nunc cum maxime, just at this very time I am putting together.—conficio: the speeches were carefully worked over afterwards by the orators for publication, as Cicero’s were,—often quite different from the real ones, as in the case of Milo.—adsum, i. e. attend in the courts, etc., a regular duty of Roman citizens.—ultro adfero, i. e. not merely attend to the necessary business of the hour. Though no senator, strictly, could introduce a measure of his own motion, yet when called to vote, he could speak on any point whether “in order” or not, as did Cato (delenda est Carthago).—tamen, even then.—sed ut possim, etc. = but I can, and that I can is the result of my past life.—viventi, while he lives, depending grammatically on obrepat, but belonging also to intellegitur.—intellegitur, i. e. one does not notice.—obrepat, creeps upon.

15. § 39. sequitur, next comes.—tertia, see § 15.—quod diount, because as they say, etc. (notice the difference of the Latin idiom) —statas, age, standing here (as in English) for old age; rarely, as in § 45, it may mean youth.—si quidem, if really: nearly equivalent to since.—orationem, discourse; tradita, reported.—Archytæ: Archytas was a Pythagorean of Tarentum,
of about the middle of the fourth century B.C. (Plato died in 348).—
voluptatem, § 67, 1, b, R.—avidae, i. e. in their eagerness for.—
temere, heedlessly; ecfrenate, uncurbed.—incitarentur, are im-
pelled (for the tense, see § 58, 10, d).

§ 40. hinc = a corporis voluptate.—proditiones, acts of
treason (a common Latin use of the plural); eversiones, over-
throws.—nasci, spring.—denique, in a word.—solus, a more
abstract term than factus. In Cicero's time, factus appears to
have been mostly used in a bad sense; but not originally, and
hence it is here qualified with malum.—stupra vero, and as to de-
baucherries, etc.—excitari, stirred up.—muneris, function (if
given by nature); dono, gift (if bestowed by divine power).

§ 41. nee enim, etc., for (of course) there is no room for self-
control when lust is tyrant.—fingere animo, imagine.—jubebat,
ceasebat: observe the partial return to the direct narrative.—per-
cipi (reaped)=experienced.—nihil agitare, pursue no subject.—
nihil...consequi, establish nothing by argument or reflection.—
quocivora resumes as a conclusion the first statement, nullam esse,
etc., in the indirect form, whence the subjunctives esset, extin-
gueret.—haec, etc., thus my host Nearchus used to say (that) he
had heard that Archytas discoursed with Pontius. Pontius was the
noble Samnite who gave the wise advice, that unless the Roman
army at the Caudine Forks should be massacred to a man, it should
be released without dishonorable conditions. The neglect of this
counsel, with the infamous duplicity of the Romans, cost the life of
that gallant state.—omn quidem, at the very time when (inter-
fuisset is the subj. of indir. disc., not on account of omn).

16. L. Camillo, etc.: this was B.C. 349, the year before Plato's
death. Plato's latest authentic visit to Sicily (his third) was 361;
it is probable therefore that Cicero was wrong here.

§ 42. quorum haec, what has this been driving at? (§ 49,
2, c).—intellegaretis, etc., imperf. as following the implied past
tense.—invitus feci ut eicerem (§ 70, 4, c) = I reluctantly ex-
pelled.—T. Flaminini, see § 1; his brother Lucius was consul
B.C. 192. During his consulship he carried on war successfully in
Cisalpine Gaul, at which time occurred the incident here related.—
fuisset, subj. as following eicerem.—septem annis; this was the
full number of years intervening between the consulship of L. Flamin-
inus (B.C. 192) and the consulship of Cato and L. Flaccus (184); the
censorship of T. Flamininus and M. Marcellus was B.C. 189. (The
story is an illustration of the preceding sentence, but the old man's
loquacity destroys the logical connection).—notandum; the tech-
nical word for the formal mark of disapprobation nota censoria, offi-
cially passed upon a man by the censors.—exoratus est, was pre-
vailed on, compare Liv. xxxix, 43; Plutarch Flamin. 18.
§ 43. Cineas: Cineas was a pupil of Demosthenes, whom Pyrrhus sent as ambassador to Rome after his first victory, over Lævinus (B.C. 280). Two years later was the Roman embassy of Fabricius and others to Pyrrhus, to whom Cineas returned the hospitality which he had experienced in Rome.—quendam, i.e. Epicurus, whom Cicero never loses an opportunity to attack, and to whom the Stoics were especially opposed (see "Orations," note to Sest. § 9).—ut id persuaderetur (§ .51, 2, c, f), that they might be persuaded of this.—Samnitibus; the Samnites were a vigorous and powerful nation of Central Italy, the last and most persistent defenders of Italian independence against Rome. The third Samnite War ended, with their overthrow, B.C. 290.—dissent, for fut. perf. of dir. disc.—vixerat (emphatic): he had lived with him, and so knew him better than to suppose him influenced by pleasure.—Decdo: P. Decius Mus, consul for the fourth time, B.C. 295. In his consulship was fought, at Sentinum, the decisive battle against the great coalition of Italian nations, headed by the Samnites (third Samnite War). When Decius saw that the battle was going hard with his men, he devoted himself to the gods by a solemn act of consecration (see Livy, viii. 9), rushing into the thickest of the enemy, and perished. His death was followed by a complete victory, which broke up the alliance, although the war dragged on five years longer. The story went that the father of Decius had devoted himself in like manner in the Latin War, forty-two years before, B.C. 337.—Curius, the oldest of the three statesmen here mentioned (cos. B.C. 290), had had personal intercourse (vixerat) with Decius; while Fabricius and Coruncanius were only acquaintances (norat).—profecto, without question.—aliquid natura, etc., the fundamental moral doctrine of the Stoics.

II. § 44. cruditate, indigestion.—si dandum est . . . po-test, see § 64, 1, b.—Duellium, cos. B.C. 260, in which year he gained a naval victory over the Carthaginians. Knowing the superiority of the enemy in naval tactics, he undertook to balance this by a kind of boarding-bridge, which grappled the enemies' ships and held them fast, after which the battle became essentially a land fight, decided by the prowess of the soldiers rather than by naval manoeuvres. This victory over the enemy on their own ground, in a branch of warfare in which the Romans were wholly inexperienced, naturally was of incalculable value in raising their spirits and confidence, and gained great reputation for their commander. A column, adorned with the beaks of ships, was erected on the Forum in his honor, of which fragments are still extant.—sumps-erat: this honor appears to have been granted by authority, not assumed by himself, as the text would imply.

§ 45. sodales: the worship of the several gods was cared for by
a guild, sodalitas, consisting of a number of guild-brethren, sodales. Whenever a new worship was introduced, a new guild was organized to take charge of it. The innovation in Cato’s questorship, here spoken of, could not have been the establishment of the sodalitas, for this was an institution of great antiquity; it was probably the custom of public banquets of the brethren that came up at this time. By the expression habui semper sodales Cato probably means that he has kept up his membership and his attendance at the banquets. — Magnae Matris, i.e. Rea or Cybele, a goddess of nature, worshipped with wild rites on Mt. Ida, and in other parts of Asia Minor.

The Romans found in the Sibylline Books, during the war with Hannibal, a prophecy that a foreign enemy would be expelled from Italy when the Idian mother should come from Pessinus to Rome. An embassy was accordingly sent to King Attalus of Pergamus, who actually gave into their possession the meteoric stone which was the fetish of this worship. The oracle prescribed that it should be received by the man qui vir optimus Romae esset, and the Senate fixed upon the young Publius Scipio Nasica, son of Cneius (see § 29). From this time the worship of the Great Mother was one of the most popular of the religions of Rome: it was celebrated in the Megalesia, April 4–10, with processions, beating of drums, and dramatic exhibitions.

omnia, on the whole (opposed to the exception following). — ipsorum emphasizes conviviorum, as opposed to higher pleasures. — sermonibus, conversation.—compotatio, συμπόσιον; concenatio, συνδείνυον.

§ 46. tempestivis, beginning earlier, and continuing later than the usual hour. — qui pauci, § 50, 2, n. — modus, degree.

18. me, i.e. for my part I like even formal drinking usages. — magisteria: the office of master or president of the feast (magister, arbiter bibendi), who regulated drinking and promoted hilarity.—a majoribus: it was, however, a Greek custom.—more majorum, i.e. with respect for age or rank.—a summo; the three tables of the triclinium formed three sides of a square, and were known as summus, medius, imus. Three guests, summus, medius, and imus, reclined at each table. The conversation began a summo, that is, at the extreme left, and was passed along from one to the other. The place of honor was the lowest at the middle table. — Symposium; the Banquet, one of Xenophon’s works, in which Socrates is introduced. — romentia, drunk by sips. — ignis hibernus, the winter’s fire. — in Sabinis, on my Sabine estate.

§ 47. quasi, so to speak. — ne . . . quidem, not . . . either. — adfecto estate, stricken in years. — uteretur, etc., enjoyed sensual pleasures. — meliora, sc. duint. — vero, why. — istinc, from them (from those you speak of). — agreei, rough. — non caret: “inest velle in carendo” (Tusc. i. 36).

§ 48. Turpione: Turpio Ambivius, a leading actor of the time of Cato; he played in Terence’s pieces. — delectatur, enjoys. — cavea: the part of the theatre occupied by the spectators, consist-
ing of concentric rows of seats rising one above the other, whence the name: *prima, ultima, front and back row* (§ 47, 8). — propter, near at hand (the original adverbial use of the preposition).

§ 49. *illa* = the following; *at*, opposed to the concession that age takes less delight. — *animum, the soul.* — *emeritis stipendiis,* i.e. discharged from the service. The required term of military service was sixteen years, after which the man, having served his campaigns ("earned his pay"), was exempt. — *si vero, if again.* — *tamquam, as it were.* — *otiosa, of retirement* (from public business). — *videbamus, we used to see.* — *Galum:* C. Sulpicius Gallus, cos. B.C. 166. He served as tribune of the soldiers under Αemilius Paulus (father of Scipio), B.C. 168, and foretold an eclipse of the moon on the night before the battle of Pydna. — *dimetiendi pæne, almost measuring out the universe.* — *illum . . . oppressit, he was overcome by,* etc. — *describere, draw.*

19. § 50. *quid, how is it?* — *levioribus, more trivial.* — *acutis, requiring a keen intellect.* — *quam gaudebat, what pleasure did he take.* — *Nævius,* "the first Roman who deserves to be called a poet, and, so far as the accounts preserved regarding him, and the few fragments of his works allow us to form an opinion, one of the most remarkable and most important names in the whole range of Roman literature" (Mommsen). He flourished in the last part of the third cent. B.C. He wrote comedies and tragedies, but his principal work was an epic, in Saturnian verse, on the history of the first Punic War, in which he himself had served. — *Plautus* lived shortly after Nævius, and translated (very freely) the comedies of Menander, Philoemen, and others from the Greek. Twenty of these are extant (including both of those here mentioned), and form the earliest complete specimens of Roman literature now existing. — *vidi etiam* (emphatic), *I myself saw:* the earlier examples I had only heard of. — *Livium:* Livius Andronicus, a Greek by birth (of Tarentum), was brought to Rome prisoner, and there (B.C. 240) exhibited the first plays, adapted from the Greek. These were wretched translations, so that it is only as helping to give an impulse that they can be reckoned as belonging to Roman literature. — *fabulam doouisset, brought out a play:* the regular word, from the author teaching the actors and chorus. — *Crassii,* see note, § 27. — *P. Scipio hos,* not the young Scipio (Æmilianus) present, but his second cousin, P. Scipio Nasica Corculum, son of P. Nasica (see note, § 45). He received the name Corculum (from cor) from his intellectual eminence. — *his paucis diebus, a few days ago.* — *atqui, now; vero, then again.* — *Cethegum; M. Cornelius Cethegus,* cos. B.C. 204, is mentioned in Cicero's Brutus (§ 57) as the earliest Roman orator; *quem vero exset, et de quo sit memoria proditus, eloquentem fuisse et ita esse habitum, primus est M.*
Cornelius Cethegus. — Ennins, see note, § I. — videbamus, I used to see: Cethegus died B.C. 196. — quae ... voluptates, what pleasures are there in feasts, etc. — pariter, in even pace. — honestum, honor to him. — illud, that famous saying.

§ 51. incredibiliter delector, I take a marvellous delight. — nec (= et non) ... et, regular correlatives in Latin (§ 43, 2, a). — proxime accedere, to come nearest. — habant rationem (a mercantile phrase), deal (lit. keep a debt-and-credit account). — reousat imperium, dishonors one's draft (also mercantile). — me quidem, for my part. — non fructus modo (referring to the preceding fœnore): i.e. that is not all, but the growth is as pleasant as the profit. — quae ... aristarum, this whole passage is full of technical terms of husbandry: subacto, subduced, or well tilled; ooccatum, hid, and imprisoned; occatio, really from ooca, harrow: the etymology is absurd; vapore, moist heat; diffundit, swells it; viriditatem, green growth (the blade); herbesoentem, sprouting; nixa, supported by (§ 54, 10, a); geniculato, jointed; vaginis, sheaths, covering the tender ear; quasi pubescent, as if with the down of youth (and so needing protection).

§ 50. fundit spici (gen.) frugem, yields the grain in the ear. — structam, arranged (laid). — vallo, rampart: the beard of the grain is compared to the palisades of an entrenchment.

§ 52. vitium, of vines (as contrasted with standing grain). — ortus, etc., growth, planting, propagation. — ut noscamit, § 64, 1, b. — vim ipsam, the mere vital force (power of growth) as opposed to cultivation. — adini vinaceo, grape-stone. — malleoli, shoots cut from the last year's growth, in such a way as to take also the adjoining wood projecting on each side in the shape of a hammer: prominens utrimque, malleoli speciem præbet (Col.); plantæ, suckers, cut from the main stock; sarmenta, scions, cut from the ends of branches; viviradioes, quicksets, taken with a bit of the root; propagines, layers, starting as a new plant while still connected underground with the parent stock, or pegged down to take root further on. — nonne efficunt, etc., are they not enough to fill any one (however insensible) with delight and wonder? — claviculis, tendrils. — quam serpentem, which as it twines. — multiploè, manifold (in many ways at once); erratico, straying (in many ways successively). — amputans, trimming. — silvescat sarmentis, become a forest of shoots. The growth of "new wood" (sarmenta) in one season from a single bud has sometimes amounted to more than 100 feet, including ramifications.

§ 53. existit, starts forth. — tamquam, etc., close to the joints (as it were) of the runners. — suco (succo), moisture. — latius, more gladdening. — ante, see § 51. — caputum jugatio, connecting of the tops of the stakes or props (admiculata), for the vines to run
across; *religatio*, tying up; *propagatio*, training, or guiding forward of the young shoots; *immissio*, sparing to grow; or, perhaps, training of other shoots in the spaces left. — *repastinationes*, trenching.

§ 54. *dixi* (emphatic), *I have already told*. — *de rebus rusticis*: the title of the book is *De Re Rustica*. It is tolerably well preserved. — *doctus*, like the Greek *ooφος*, skilled, often used of poets. The reference is to Hesiod’s “Works and Days.” — *ne verbum quidem*: probably because the rich plains of Boeotia needed no manuring. — *Laërtam*, Laërtes, father of Ulysses (Od. xxiv. 225). The *desiderium* is for the long absence of his son at the siege of Troy, and during his subsequent wanderings. Homer does not represent him as *stercorantem*, but as digging, which in Cicero’s mind might include the other.

§ 55. *segetibus*, *grain-fields*; *pratis*, *meadows* (for grazing); *arbustis*, usually plantations of trees for the training of vines, as may be seen at the present day in Italy; here, perhaps, olive-groves and the like. — *hortis*, *kitchen gardens*; *pomaria*, *fruit-orchards*; *consitiones*, *insitiones*; the plural is used to indicate the various modes of planting and grafting.

§ 56. *dixit*, *as he said*. — *poteratne non*, could it fail? — *sed venio*: what was just said had no relation to farming. — *in agris*, a *villa*, emphatic position: *it was in the country that*, etc. — *Cincinnato*: Cincinnatus was dictator twice. The famous incident of his being called from the plough belongs to his first dictatorship, B.C. 458; the second (B.C. 439), *seditionis sedande causa*, was occasioned by the uneasiness of the patricians at the popularity and ambition of Spurius Mælius. The only offence of Mælius, so far as was proved, was that he lavished his wealth to relieve the poor in a time of famine. This brought him into suspicion of scheming to make himself king, and rumor had it that he had filled his house with arms, and held nightly meetings of conspirators. — *aranti*, (emphatic position), *it was while ploughing*. — *aecessus batur*, this tense expresses the practice in old times; *viatores*, from *via*, the broad country roads. — *se oblectabant*, *solaced themselves*. — *in gratiam redeamus*, *be reconciled with*.

§ 59. *hortum* (emphatic), and as to the garden. — *conditoria*: bowling and hunting give a spice to these necessary and regular occupations. (Preserve the emphasis by using the passive: “*these are made more palatable by,*” etc.) — *supervacaneis operis*, by employments of our leisure.
§ 57. speeae, sightliness. — melius, better (than in the country). — refrigerari, refresh itself.

§ 58. habitant . . . relinquuant, observe the chiastic arrangement. — clavam, single-stick; pilam, ball; talos, a kind of dice marked only on four sides, or huckle-bones, tossed in the air and caught on the back of the hand, just as boys do now: five at a time were used; tesseras, dice, inscribed with numbers. — id ipsum, and that too; utrum (= utrumque) lubebit, as (whichever) they like.

§ 59. Xenophontis libri: three small treatises on husbandry, horsemanship, and hunting (with hounds). — Economicus: including husbandry, or the general management of an estate. — regem, prince, belonging to the royal family. — Lysander, a distinguished Spartan general, who defeated the Athenians at Ægospotami, b.c. 404. He used against Athens the aid and treasure of Cyrus. — Sardis, acc. plur. (lit to him, to Sardis). — proceritates = proceras arbores. — recte, laid off. — in quincuncem; the rows so disposed that every combination of three trees forms the letter V. — subactam, subdued by skilful tillage. — puram, clean (of weeds or rubbish). — adflarentur, wafted. — ejus a quo, etc., of the one who had planned and arranged it.

23. atqui ego, but I am the one that, etc.—istas, those you speak of. — nitorem corporis, his body shining with ointment. — virtutis tuae (emph.), your own merit.

§ 60. hac igitur (emph.), this fortune, then, old men can enjoy, etc. — studia, interest in. — Corvinum: M. Valerius Corvinus, one of the leading men of Rome in the fourth century b.c.; distinguished in the first Samnite War. His cognomen was derived from the circumstance that, when he was engaged in single conflict with a Gaul, a raven perched on his helmet and attacked the Gaul with his beak and claws (Livy, vii. 26). — quidem, for example. — perduxisse, sc. senectutem. — quantum spatium, i.e. forty-five years (see note, § 2). — autem, now. — apex, the crowning glory.

§ 61. Metello, see note, § 30. — Calatino: a leader in the first Punic War, cos. b.c. 258 and 254. He was also dictator. — primarium virum, the first of men. — Crassum, see note, § 27. — Lepidum: M. Aemilius Lepidus, cons. b.c. 187 and 175; pontifex maximus, and six times appointed princeps senatus, the highest dignity in the State. At his death in 152 he charged his sons to bury him with no display and moderate expense: — imaginum specie, non sumptibus nobilitari magnorum virorum funera solere (Liv. Epit. xl.). — Paulo, the conqueror of Macedonia. — Maximo, Q. Fabius, see § 10. — pluris sit, is worth more.

§ 62. mementote, you must bear in mind. — adulescentiae, i.e. of honorable youth, implied in fundamentis.
24. quae se defenderet (subj. of charact.), i. e. which has occasion to defend itself. — cani, gray locks.

§ 63. salutari, to have men call on you (as the Romans did early in the morning); adepti, grasp your hand; decedit, make way for you (impersonal); adsurgi, rise at your entrance; deducti, escort you (down to the forum); reduci, escort home; consuli, ask your advice. — quae, things which. — ut quaeque, etc., in proportion as their morals are good. — Athenis, abl. of place; ludia, of time. — honestissimum, most full of honor. — ludia, sc. Panathenaeis: the great Athenian festival, commemorating the union of the demes of Attica into one city. It was held once in four years in the month Hecatombaeon (July), and comprised all features of Grecian festivals.

§ 64. multiplex, i. e. in many ways. — nostro collegio, i. e. of augurs. — sententiae principatum, precedence in giving his opinion. In the Senate the order was, first acting magistrates, then ex-magistrates (honore antecedentibus); but in this college age had precedence. — cum imperio sunt, are invested with the imperium, or supreme power; that is, hold an office of the highest grade, consul or praetor. — fabulum peregrisse, to have acted out the play. — conruisse, broken down.

§ 65. morum vitia, defects of character. — non quidem, not, it is true. — probari, appear plausible. — offensio, vexation (contretemps).

25. inludi, i. e. treated with mock respect. — Adelphis: “The Brothers,” one of the plays of Terence, still extant. It was represented for the first time at the funeral of L. Æmilius Paulus (father of Scipio), B.C. 160. — diritas (duritas), harshness; comitas, gentleness. — quid sibi velit, what it means.

§ 66. sollicitam habere, keep it anxious. — certe, at all events. — non viderit, has not seen (for himself). — neglegenda, made nothing of. — aliquo, into some place. — atqui tertium certe: this cheerful view of a future state was the common ground of ancient philosophy. It is stated with strong emphasis and conviction in Plato’s “Apology of Socrates” (see Tusc. i. 41).

§ 67. quid timeam, § 57, 6. — exploratum, made clear. — tristius curantur, i. e. their treatment costs more pain. — vivereetur, mankind would live. — qui si, etc., and if there had been none. — quod ..., crimem, what sort of a charge is that?

§ 68. optimo filio, see Introduction. — fratribus, two younger sons of Æmilius Paulus, who died, the one aged 12, five days before his father’s triumph over Perseus, the other aged 15, eight days afterwards. As his two elder sons had been adopted into the Fabian and Cornelian gentes, he left no representatives of his family.

26. § 69. quamquam, and yet. — da ..., tempus, grant the very greatest age. — Tartessiorum: Tartessus, a town in the south
of Spain, of Phœnician origin. It was at the height of its prosperity under King Arganthonus, about B.C. 550. Afterwards Gades, Cadiz, became the chief town of this region, for which reason Cicero mentions it here as if it were identical with Tartessus.

§ 70. ut placeat, to give pleasure.—modo probetur, § 57, 3, c. — plaudite, the last word of the play, calling upon the spectators to applaud. — significat, typify.

§ 71. ante partorum bonorum, of previously acquired blessings (in philosophical sense). — secundum naturam, following nature: the Stoic maxim.

27. quoad possis, general condition. — animosior, more courageous. — qua tandem re, on what thing, pray. — coagentavit, compacted.

§ 73. Solonis: Solon was one of "the seven wise men of Greece." — vacare, be without. — consequatur, subj. of indir. disc. following esse.

§ 74. sensus moriendi, sensation in dying. — in exiguum tempus, only for a moment. — meditatum, dwell upon, lit. practised. — ab adolescentia, from youth.

28. incertum an, we know not but. — animo consistere, have any firmness of mind.

§ 75. Brutum: L. Junius Brutus, the leader in the revolution which expelled the Tarquins from Rome, B.C. 509. — Decios, see note, § 43. — Attilium: M. Attilius Regulus, a commander in the first Punic War. The story goes that, being captured by the enemy, he was sent to Rome to treat for an exchange of prisoners, under a promise to return; that he advised his countrymen, however, against the exchange, and returned to Carthage and died there: it was believed that he was put to death with horrible tortures. This story of the embassy has been generally held doubtful since the time of Niebuhr. — Scipiones, see note, § 29. — Paulum, see § 29: his colleague Varro, whose mismanagement brought on the disaster of Cannæ, escaped alive, while Paulus perished. — Marcellum: M. Claudius Marcellus, a leading commander in the second Punic War; killed in an ambuscade, in his fifth consulship, B.C. 208. His chief exploit was the capture of Syracuse, B.C. 212. — alacri ... erecto, with high and eager courage. — indocti, untrained (in philosophy).

§ 76. omnino, on the whole (to sum up all). — studia certa, appointed tasks. — constans ... media, well-settled period of middle life, so called. — oocidunt, fall away. — maturum, seasonable.

§ 77. cur, quid, each interrogative introducing an indirect question. — quo ... proprius absun, the nearer I am to it. — Læli: the father of Lælius was a very intimate friend of Cato. — eam vitam [vivere], to live that kind of life. — oompagibus, pent-house.
—munere . . . perfungimur, we are fulfilling (as it were) a task of necessity and a burdensome work.

29. ratio ao disputatio, theory and argument.

§ 78. incolas: because the chief seat of the Pythagoreans was Crotona, in Magna Græcia (Southern Italy). — quin . . . habermus (§ 58, 10, d'), that we have souls drawn (as drops from a fountain) from the universal divine intelligence. — Socrates: in Plato’s celebrated dialogue “Phædo.” — sapientissimus:

“Whom, well inspired, the oracle pronounced Wisest of men.” — Paradise Regained.

disseruisset (§ 66, 1, c). — prudentia, foresight. — semper agitetur, is always in motion. That which follows is a brief statement of the Platonic argument. — sciro pleraque, etc.: the existence of innate ideas is an essential part of this argument. — reminisci, call to mind; recordari, dwell upon in thought.

§ 79. Cyrus, in the Cyropædia, viii. 7, (17–22): the expression is somewhat changed in passing through the lips of Cato, but the general thought is the same.

30. § 80. neo vero, etc., the honors paid the dead prove that their souls still live. — emori, perish. — insipientem, incapable of sense. — atque etiam, and again. — natura, constitution. — jam vero, and finally.

§ 81. atqui, now. — remissi, unhindered (cf. § 37, intentum tamquam arcum). — colitote ut deum: the second form (fut. imp.), because the command is to be performed in future. The expression in Xenophon is, “If these things are as I think, and the soul forsakes (survives) the body, do what I ask in reverence of my soul.” — hanc (with a gesture), this glorious universe.

§ 82. nos, we on our part. — patrem aut patrum, Publius and Cneius Scipio (see note, § 29). — nisi cernenter, without seeing. — excessisset, for fut. perf. indic., attracted to subj by esset. — suscepturum fuisse, would have undertaken, (§ 67, 1, c). — nec quomodo, somehow or other.

31. immortalitatis gloriam — deathless glory.

§ 83. equidem, for my own part. — efferor, I am carried away. — aveo, I am eager. — retraxerit, fut. perf. for fut. (§ 58, 7, r.). — conscrispit, in the Origines. — Peliam: Pelias, son of Poseidon, and usurping king of Iolcos. It was he who sent his nephew Jason, the rightful king, for the Golden Fleece. When the enchantress Medea returned with Jason to Iolcos, she persuaded the daughters of Pelias to cut up their father and boil him in a cauldron in order to make him young again, having first done the same herself with Ἂσον the father of Jason. She took pains, however, that the enchantment should fail with them, and thus avenged her husband upon his enemy. — spatio, see note, § 14. — calce, the goal, anciently marked with chalk or lime.
§ 84. non lubet, I've no inclination. — multi et si docti, many men, and learned men too. — pœnitet, regret. — devorsorium, an inn (for turning aside from the highway).

§ 85. habeat, sc. commodi. — sane, if you will. — tamen, after all. — conluvione, confused medley (muddle). — Catonem meum, his son (see Introd.). — quod contra, whereas on the contrary (compare quem contra, Phil. ii. 8, 18). — decuit (§ 58, 11, a), sc. oremari. — respectans, looking back upon me. — profecto, doubtless.

§ 86. non quo, § 66, 1, d, R. — æquus, untroubled. — digressum, walking in different paths; discessum, separation from one another.

§ 86. his, notice the emphasis. — qui . . . credam, i. e. in thinking (§ 65, 2, ε). — libenter erro, I am glad to err. — minutii, petty. — peractio, the closing act (see § 5): the word occurs nowhere else. — defetigationem, utter weariness.
### INDEX

TO THE SYNTAX OF ALLEN AND GREENOUGH'S LATIN GRAMMAR, WITH
PARALLEL REFERENCES TO GILDESRLEEVE'S GRAMMAR.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>198</td>
<td></td>
<td>48</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>324, 326</td>
<td></td>
<td>b</td>
<td>617</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>618, 623</td>
<td></td>
<td>c</td>
<td>622</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>618</td>
<td></td>
<td>d</td>
<td>618</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>616, 623</td>
<td></td>
<td>e</td>
<td>616 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>613 R 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>f</td>
<td>613 R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>203</td>
<td></td>
<td>g</td>
<td>203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>319 R 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>h</td>
<td>319 R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>197, 324</td>
<td></td>
<td>i</td>
<td>281 &amp; R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>281</td>
<td></td>
<td>j</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>281 R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>k</td>
<td>281 R 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>281 R 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>l</td>
<td>281 &amp; R 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>281 Exc. 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>m</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>198</td>
<td></td>
<td>n</td>
<td>198</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>199 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>o</td>
<td>688, 300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>357</td>
<td></td>
<td>p</td>
<td>357</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>360</td>
<td></td>
<td>q</td>
<td>360</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>360 R 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>r</td>
<td>360 R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>360 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>s</td>
<td>360 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>202 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>t</td>
<td>202 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>202 R 5</td>
<td></td>
<td>u</td>
<td>202 R 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>616 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>v</td>
<td>616 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>202 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>w</td>
<td>202 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>198 R 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>x</td>
<td>198 R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>359</td>
<td></td>
<td>y</td>
<td>359</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>364</td>
<td></td>
<td>z</td>
<td>364</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>379</td>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>379</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>372</td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>366</td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>366</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>369</td>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>369</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>368</td>
<td></td>
<td>E</td>
<td>368</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>372</td>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>357 R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>G</td>
<td>357 R 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>370 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>370 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>368 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>368 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>361 R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td>361 R 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>357 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>K</td>
<td>357 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>361 R 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>361 R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>373, 374</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>373, 374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>374 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>374 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>361 R 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>361 R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>375</td>
<td></td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>R 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>R</td>
<td>R 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>377 &amp; R 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>377 &amp; R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>T</td>
<td>R 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>R 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>U</td>
<td>R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>V</td>
<td>R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>356</td>
<td></td>
<td>W</td>
<td>356</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>356 &amp; R 6</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>356 &amp; R 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>356 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>356 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>356 R 4</td>
<td></td>
<td>Z</td>
<td>356 R 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>356 R 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>356 R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>356 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>356 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>356 R 4</td>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>356 R 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>356 R 5</td>
<td></td>
<td>E</td>
<td>356 R 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>356 R 6</td>
<td></td>
<td>F</td>
<td>356 R 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>356 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>G</td>
<td>356 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>356 R 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
<td>356 R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>356 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>J</td>
<td>356 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>K</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>356 R 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>356 R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>356 R 4</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>356 R 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>356 R 5</td>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>356 R 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>356 R 6</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>356 R 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>P</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>356 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>Q</td>
<td>356 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>a</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>R</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>b</td>
<td>356 R 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>S</td>
<td>356 R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>356 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>T</td>
<td>356 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>U</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>356 R 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>V</td>
<td>356 R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>f</td>
<td>356 R 4</td>
<td></td>
<td>W</td>
<td>356 R 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>g</td>
<td>356 R 5</td>
<td></td>
<td>X</td>
<td>356 R 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>h</td>
<td>356 R 6</td>
<td></td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>356 R 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Z</td>
<td>356 R 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Digitized by Google
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>52</td>
<td>R 207</td>
<td>54</td>
<td>R 401</td>
<td>57</td>
<td>N 254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>289</td>
<td></td>
<td>404</td>
<td></td>
<td>R 257,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>207</td>
<td></td>
<td>379</td>
<td></td>
<td>603, 610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>129 R I</td>
<td></td>
<td>380</td>
<td></td>
<td>258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>331</td>
<td></td>
<td>379</td>
<td></td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>349 R I</td>
<td></td>
<td>397</td>
<td></td>
<td>264, 266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>330</td>
<td></td>
<td>387</td>
<td></td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>606</td>
<td></td>
<td>407, 373 R I</td>
<td></td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>333</td>
<td></td>
<td>408-9</td>
<td></td>
<td>260 R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>334</td>
<td></td>
<td>408 R</td>
<td></td>
<td>205, 268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>330 R I</td>
<td></td>
<td>438 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>420</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>333</td>
<td></td>
<td>384, 392</td>
<td></td>
<td>341 R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>394, 337</td>
<td></td>
<td>433, 535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&amp; R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>434</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>331 R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>302 R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>R 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>335</td>
<td></td>
<td>271, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>328</td>
<td></td>
<td>597</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>304 R</td>
<td></td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>333</td>
<td></td>
<td>335</td>
<td></td>
<td>535</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>328</td>
<td></td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>346 R</td>
<td></td>
<td>R 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>340</td>
<td></td>
<td>344, 384, 388</td>
<td></td>
<td>534, 560</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>337</td>
<td></td>
<td>343</td>
<td></td>
<td>R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>53</td>
<td>335-8</td>
<td></td>
<td>311 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>197 R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>194 R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>547 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>338</td>
<td></td>
<td>39 R</td>
<td></td>
<td>341 R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>388-9</td>
<td></td>
<td>412 R I</td>
<td></td>
<td>418 R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>388</td>
<td></td>
<td>R 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>R 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>385-6, 384 R 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>341</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>410 R 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
<td>R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>413</td>
<td></td>
<td>R 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>387</td>
<td></td>
<td>384 R I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>419</td>
<td></td>
<td>419</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>413</td>
<td></td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>417</td>
<td></td>
<td>417</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>418</td>
<td></td>
<td>418</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>419</td>
<td></td>
<td>419</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>384 R I</td>
<td></td>
<td>Appendix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>418 R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>end</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>416 R</td>
<td></td>
<td>R 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>AppX 3, 356 R 4</td>
<td></td>
<td>246 R 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>418 R</td>
<td></td>
<td>418 R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>417 R</td>
<td></td>
<td>417 R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>416 R</td>
<td></td>
<td>416 R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>566, 576</td>
<td></td>
<td>566, 576</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td>403</td>
<td></td>
<td>403</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>414 R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>245 R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>246</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>247</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>250-258</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>597-599</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>509, 499, 563</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>266 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>266-7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>266 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>575</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>258 R 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>253, 255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>253</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>254</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&quot;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>266 R 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Parallel References.
### Parallel References

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>71</td>
<td>d</td>
<td>460, 468</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>j</td>
<td>593</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e</td>
<td>473</td>
<td></td>
<td>c</td>
<td>930</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f</td>
<td>473</td>
<td></td>
<td>c</td>
<td>537</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>72</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>d</td>
<td>comp. 275, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>373 R</td>
<td></td>
<td>b</td>
<td>536, 524 &amp; 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>375 R</td>
<td></td>
<td>a</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>438</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>390, 673</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>439</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>390, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>243</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>443</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>73</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>687</td>
<td></td>
<td>b</td>
<td>comp. 426</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>f</td>
<td>R</td>
<td></td>
<td>a</td>
<td>426</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 74     | c  | 435     | 73 | r     | 435 |
|        | d  | 436     |    | 1     | 435 |
|        |    |         |    | 2     | 437 |